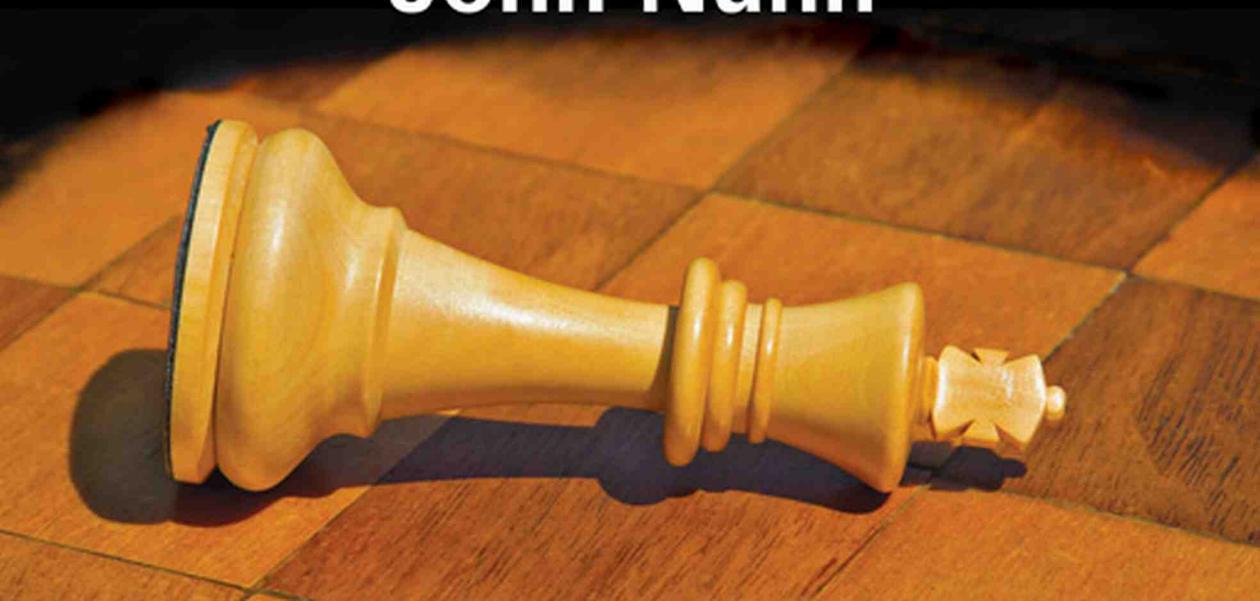
GAMBIT

1001 Deadly Checkmates

Solve the puzzles and measure your skill!

John Nunn



GAMBIT

1001 Deadly Checkmates

John Nunn

GAMBIT

First published in the UK by Gambit Publications Ltd 2011

Copyright © John Nunn 2011

The right of John Nunn to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise), without prior permission of the publisher. In particular, no part of this publication may be scanned, transmitted via the Internet or uploaded to a website without the publisher's permission. Any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

ISBN-13: 978-1-906454-25-8
ISBN-10: 1-906454-25-6

DISTRIBUTION:
Worldwide (except USA): Central Books Ltd, 99 Wallis Rd, London E9 5LN, England.
Tel +44 (0)20 8986 4854 Fax +44 (0)20 8533 5821. E-mail: orders@Centralbooks.com

Gambit Publications Ltd, 99 Wallis Rd, London E9 5LN, England.
E-mail: info@gambitbooks.com
Website (regularly updated): www.gambitbooks.com

Edited by Graham Burgess
Typeset by John Nunn
Cover photograph by John Nunn
Printed in Great Britain by the MPG Books Group, Bodmin and King's Lynn.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Gambit Publications Ltd
Managing Director: Murray Chandler GM
Chess Director: Dr John Nunn GM
Editorial Director: Graham Burgess FM
German Editor: Petra Nunn WFM
Webmaster: Dr Helen Milligan WFM

Contents

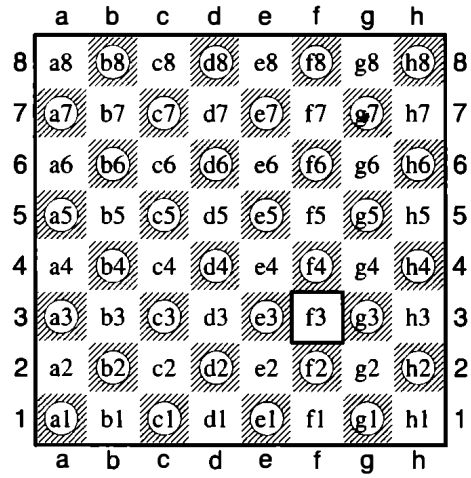
Symbols and Notation		4
Preface by Murray Chandler		5
Introduction		6
1	Elementary Mates	8
	Solutions	24
2	Back-Rank Mates	31
	Solutions	41
3	Mate in the Endgame	46
	Solutions	62
4	The Lethal Long Diagonal	71
	Solutions	78
5	Pawn-Promotion Mates	82
	Solutions	88
6	Mates with Rook and Minor Piece	92
	Solutions	102
7	Deadly Doubled Rooks	107
	Solutions	113
8	Destroying the Defences	117
	Solutions	126
9	Death on the Rook's File	131
	Solutions	140
10	Queen Sacrifices	146
	Solutions	162
11	Mate by Line-Opening	170
	Solutions	179
12	Mate by Blocking Squares	184
	Solutions	189
13	Mate Involving Discovered or Double Check	192
	Solutions	208
14	Hunting the King	217
	Solutions	221
15	Miscellaneous Mates	224
	Solutions	248
16	Mate Revision Test	261
	Solutions	272
17	Extreme Mate Challenge	278
	Solutions	288
Final Score-Chart		296
Index of Players		297

Symbols and Notation

#	checkmate
+	check
++	double check
x	capture
!!	brilliant move
!	good move
?	bad move
??	blunder
1-0	Black resigned
0-1	White resigned
Ch	championship

♔	king
♕	queen
♖	rook
♗	bishop
♘	knight

Algebraic Notation



Moves are shown by giving the piece symbol followed by the destination square. For instance, if a knight moves to the square marked in the diagram, this is written as ♘f3 in algebraic notation. If two pieces of the same type can move to the same square, more information is given. For instance, if there are knights on g1 and e5, then the one on e5 moving to f3 is written as ♘ef3.

For pawn moves, only the arrival square is given (e.g. e4 means that a pawn moves to the e4-square). For pawn captures, the file the pawn is leaving is also given. Thus exf4 means that a pawn on the e-file makes a capture that brings it to the f4-square.

Preface by Murray Chandler

Some time ago I wrote a little book called **How to Beat Your Dad at Chess**, which explains, in very simple terms, the most basic checkmate patterns. Little did I imagine how popular this book would become. Subsequently, many readers have asked for a follow-on book, with additional checkmate puzzles to solve. A sort of 'How to Beat Your Dad Workbook' if you like, where solving the positions reinforces and expands your checkmate pattern-recognition.

I am therefore delighted to recommend this superb new book, **1001 Deadly Checkmates**, written by John Nunn, my long-time friend and colleague. John has done six months of original research to find the instructive checkmate positions for this book, and the selection of puzzles is simply outstanding. As well as being able to practise old favourites – like back-rank mates and standard queen sacrifices – you will also learn many new and advanced patterns.

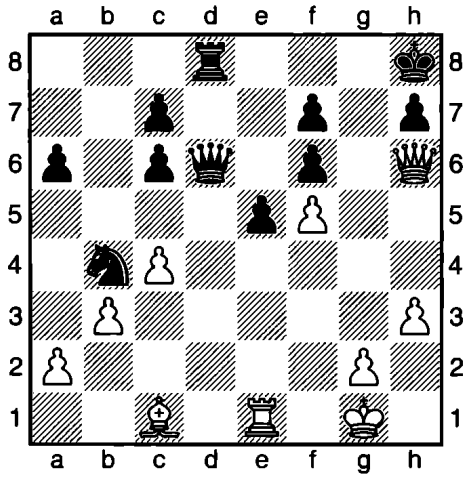
Studying these 1001 checkmates will automatically enable you to recognize similar possibilities time and again in the future. This is exactly the thinking technique that top chess masters use, when they so effortlessly launch their devastating attacks.

So enjoy solving these wonderful puzzles, checking the solutions and totalling your points. Before you know it, you will be utilizing these lethal checkmating motifs in your own games.

Murray Chandler

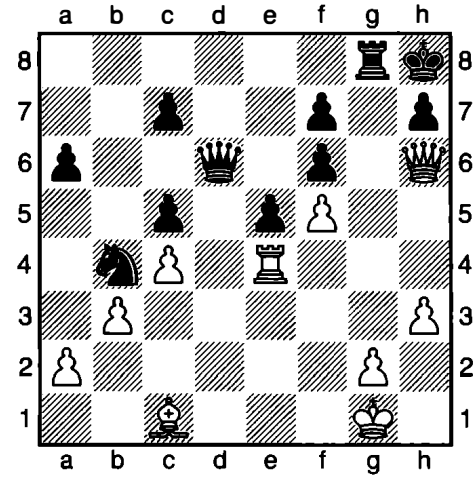
Introduction

In chess, checkmate (often shortened to just 'mate') finishes the game. If you win a pawn, the game continues and the struggle probably has a long way to go, but there's no coming back from checkmate; it's game over. One of the easiest ways to improve your chess and win more games is to make sure that you spot any mating opportunities that arise. How can this be achieved? Chess-players work to a great extent by 'pattern recognition', spotting similarities to ideas they have seen before. One of the best ways to make sure you don't overlook mating ideas is to increase your experience of mating patterns, and that is what this book sets out to achieve.



Nunn – Portisch
World Cup, Reykjavik 1988

Players of all standards can benefit from studying mating patterns. In this position I was facing leading Hungarian grandmaster Lajos Portisch, who was eight times in the Candidates stage of the World Championship. Portisch played **1...c5?** (the immediate 1...♖g8 would have drawn after, for example, 2 ♖e2 ♕d1+ 3 ♔h2 ♕xe2 4 ♕xf6+ ♖g7 5 ♕d8+ with perpetual check) and I replied **2 ♖e4**, threatening 3 ♖h4 and mate on h7. Portisch continued **2...♖g8**, which is the only defence to White's threat, aiming to meet 3 ♖h4? with 3...♕d1+ 4 ♔h2 ♖xg2+! 5 ♔xg2 ♕e2+ forcing perpetual check.



Then came the shock. I crashed through with **3 ♕xh7+!** and for a moment Portisch looked stunned. At first he couldn't see the point of the queen sacrifice; then he realized that it was a forced mate after 3...♔xh7 4 ♖h4+ ♔g7 5 ♗h6+ followed by 6 ♗f8#. **Portisch resigned (1-0)** and it was a point to me. If a strong grandmaster such as Portisch can overlook a mating pattern, then anybody can.

You will find this pattern and many others as you work through the book. By solving 1001 mating puzzles of varying difficulty, you will greatly expand your knowledge of typical mating ideas. This will help you to execute such ideas in your own games and to spot when your opponent is planning to mate you.

There isn't much text in the book, as the intention is that the reader learns by solving the puzzles. It's simplest just to start at the beginning and work through the book. Even if you are a more advanced player, some of the puzzles

contain unusual mating ideas that you may not have seen before.

The first chapter of elementary puzzles consists of mates in one or two moves and should serve as a useful introduction. Then there are a series of chapters devoted to specific types of mate, such as back-rank mates. Chapter 15 contains an extensive collection of mates that do not fall into easily-defined categories, while in Chapter 16 there is a revision test covering the many different types of mate featured in the book. *1001 Deadly Checkmates* ends with the Extreme Mate Challenge, a collection of more difficult mating puzzles.

Each position can earn you between 1 and 5 points according to difficulty, with a progression from 1 to 5 throughout each chapter. There is a score-chart at the end of each chapter where you can fill in your score. When you have worked through each chapter, add up your points and see how close you are to the maximum possible. At the end there is a chart where you can total your points for the whole book. How close can you get to the perfect score of 2,630 points?

The value of books of this type depends largely on the selection of positions, and this is where I put in most of my effort; indeed, about two-thirds of the time spent writing the book was used on the selection of material. I started by building up a short-list of about 10,000 positions. Many of these proved unsuitable because, for example, the mate wasn't clear-cut, or because there were alternative mates. Then I carefully considered each remaining position, selecting those which were most instructive and useful. Finally, the list was whittled down to the positions in this book. What is special about the selection is that it is based on **mates that actually occur in games**. Over 95% of the positions are from the year 2000 or later, so the vast majority will be new even to those who have read previous puzzle books. What struck me in particular is that even very strong players can overlook mates that don't fall into the standard patterns. My selection is based on real-life experience and therefore offers an especially wide range of mating ideas, including many that are rarely found in textbooks.

You may find similar ideas arising in more than one position. This is intentional. Not only does a modest amount of repetition help to reinforce important ideas, but the positions have been arranged in a logical sequence so that a later position will repeat an idea from an earlier one, but with an additional subtlety or finesse. By working through the positions, your skill will gradually develop and you will learn to spot more and more difficult mating ideas.

In each position you are looking for a forced mate. In some positions there are other, slower, ways to win, for example by gaining material, but in general you only get points for finding the quickest mate (in a few cases, which are specifically mentioned, you also get points for playing the winning moves in an alternative order). The solutions are unique in the sense that there is always one route to mate that is significantly quicker than any other.

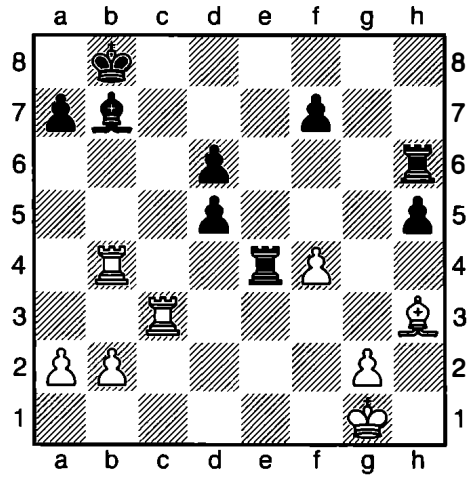
I have made an effort to give complete solutions. However, readers should be aware that in some cases the defender can delay mate by 'spite checks' (giving away pieces with check) or by interposing pieces that can just be taken. In most cases I don't mention such pointless delaying tactics.

The positions in this book feature some unexpected and beautiful mating combinations, which I hope will provide entertainment as well as instruction. Good luck on your journey through the *1001 Deadly Checkmates*!

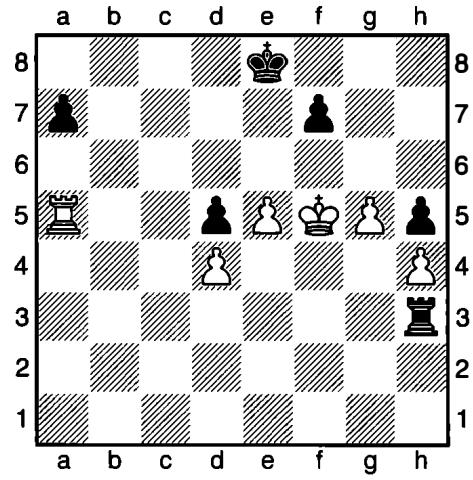
1 Elementary Mates

This first chapter provides a gentle warm-up since all the positions involve mates in one or two moves. Here we meet in a simple form some ideas which will arise again later in the book.

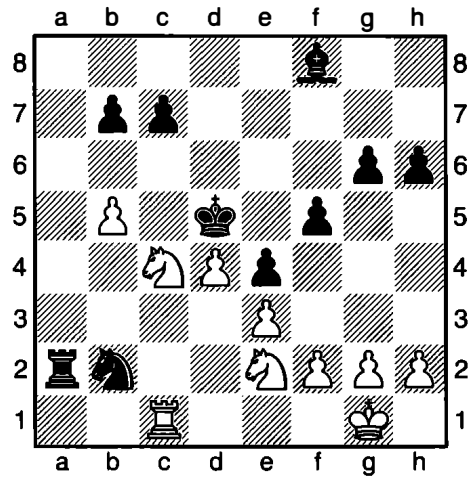
Learning to spot mates is the simplest way to improve your chess and win more games. Players often miss opportunities involving unusual mates because it's easy to overlook something that is unfamiliar. The wide range of ideas in this chapter will help increase your repertoire of mating patterns and give you a better chance of mating your next opponent!



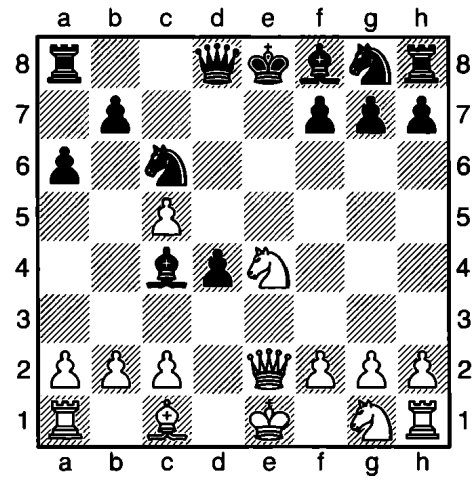
1) White to play (1 point)



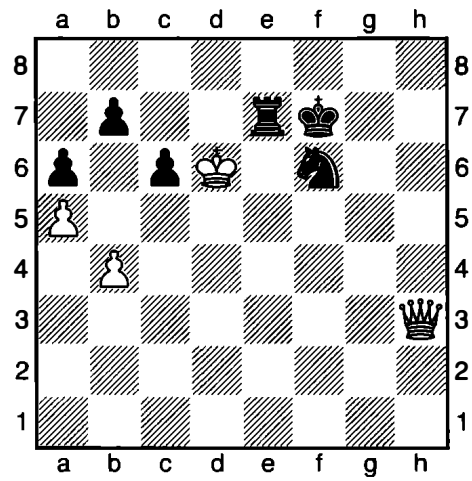
4) Black to play (1 point)



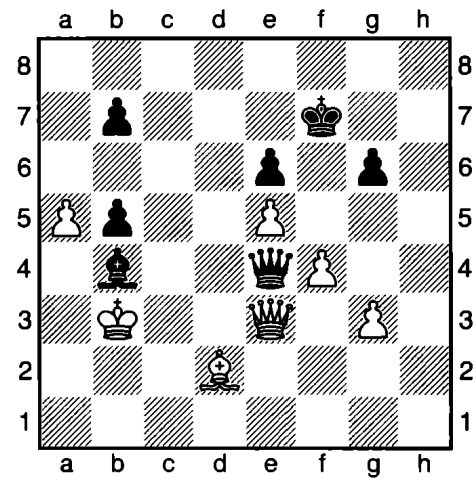
2) White to play (1 point)



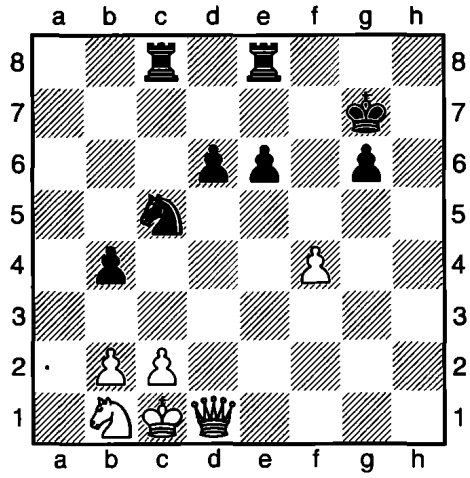
5) White to play (1 point)



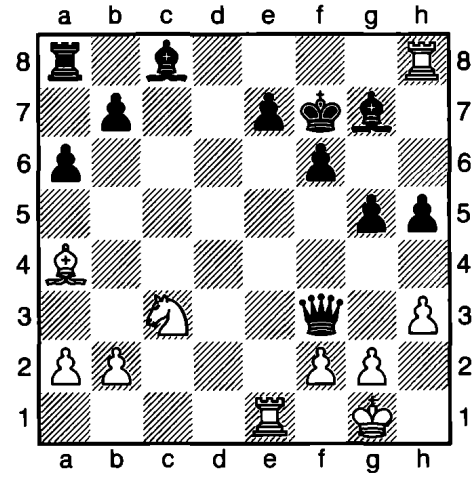
3) Black to play (1 point)



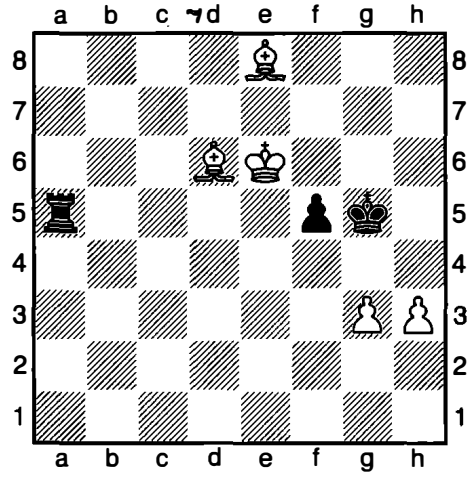
6) Black to play (1 point)



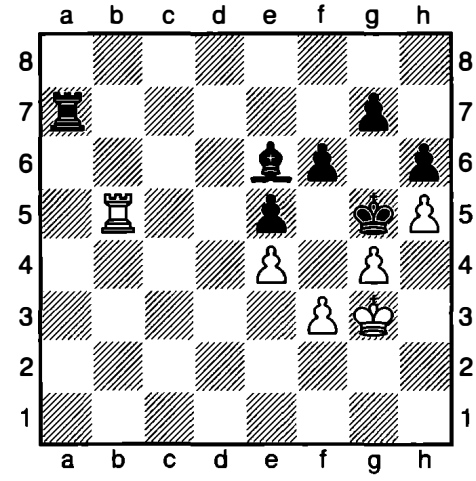
7) Black to play (1 point)



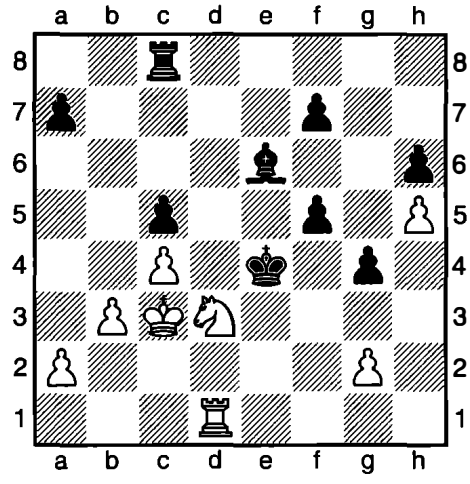
10) White to play (1 point)



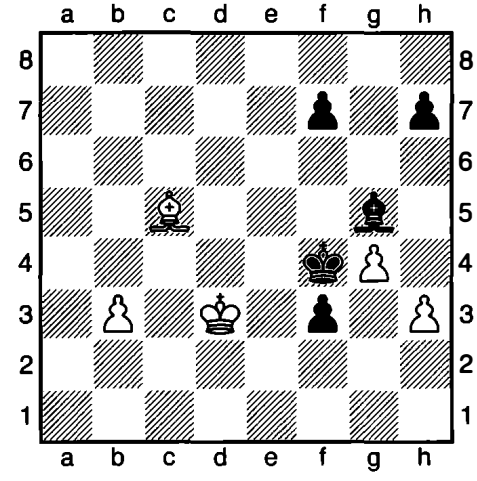
8) White to play (1 point)



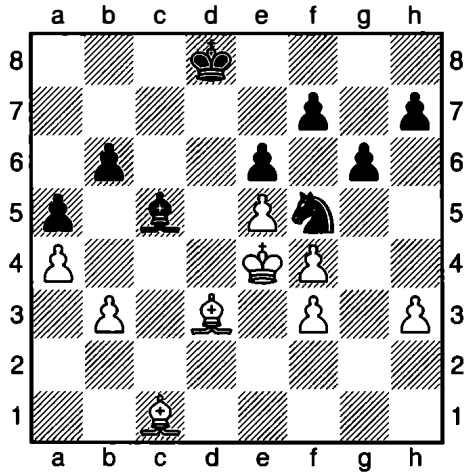
11) White to play (1 point)



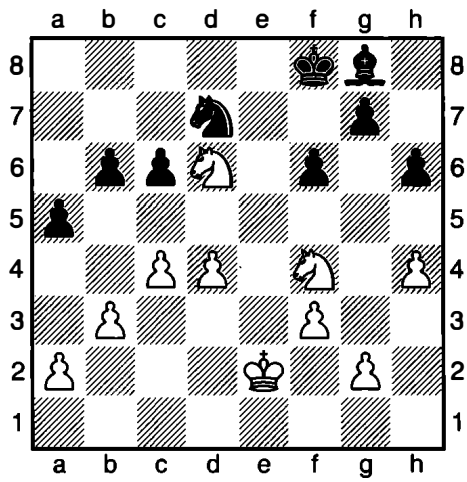
9) White to play (1 point)



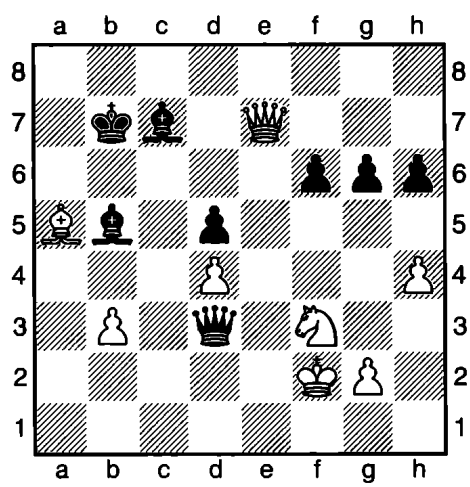
12) White to play (1 point)



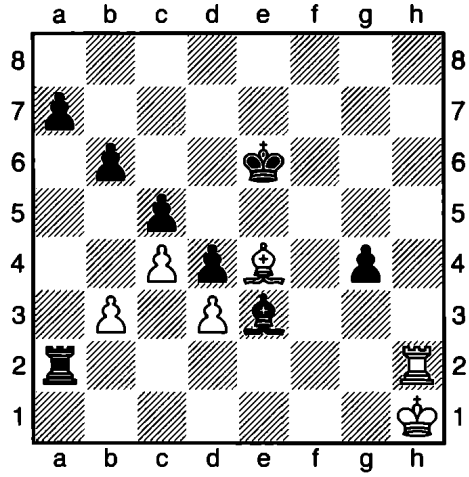
13) Black to play (1 point)



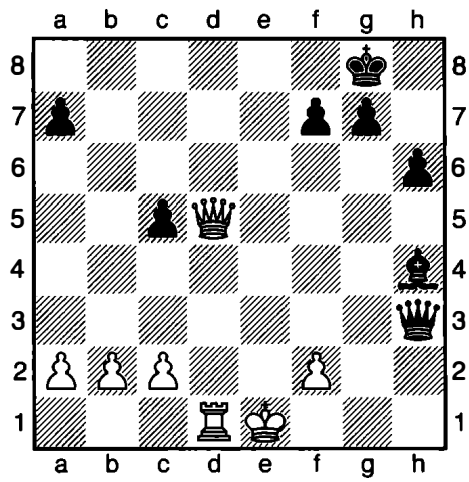
14) White to play (1 point)



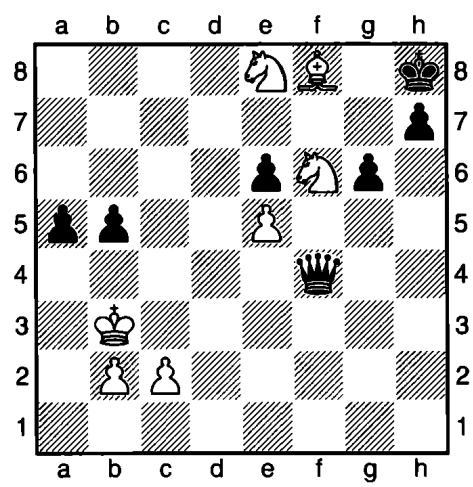
15) Black to play (2 points)



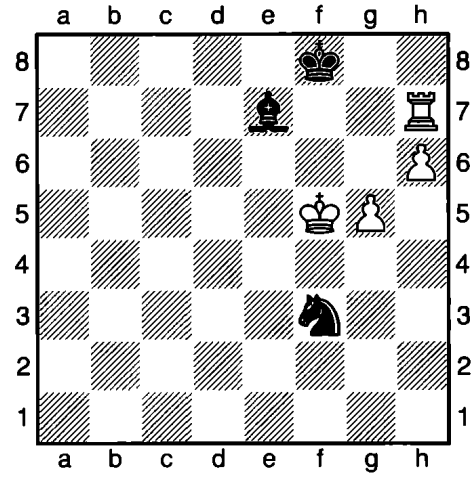
16) Black to play (2 points)



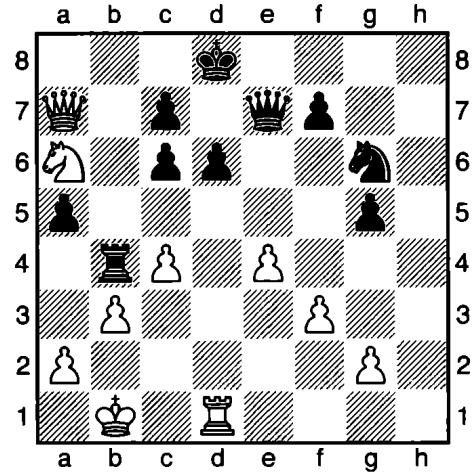
17) Black to play (2 points)



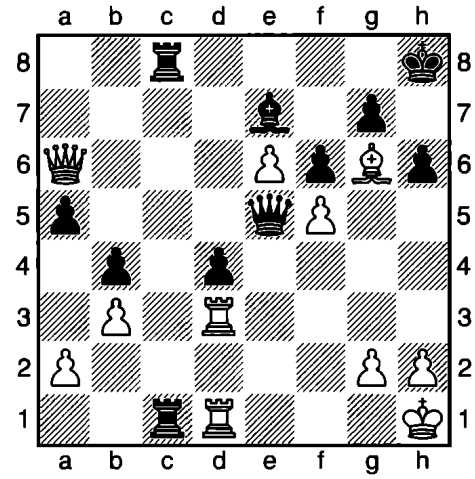
18) Black to play (2 points)



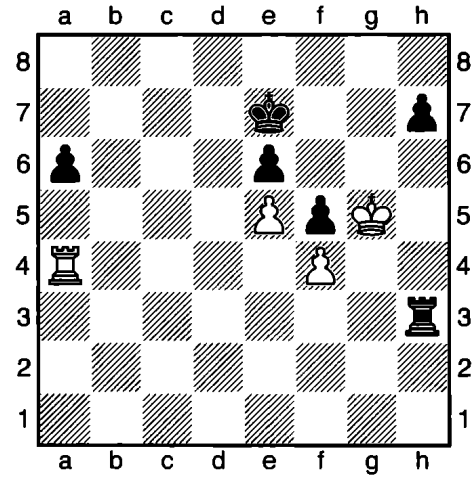
19) White to play (2 points)



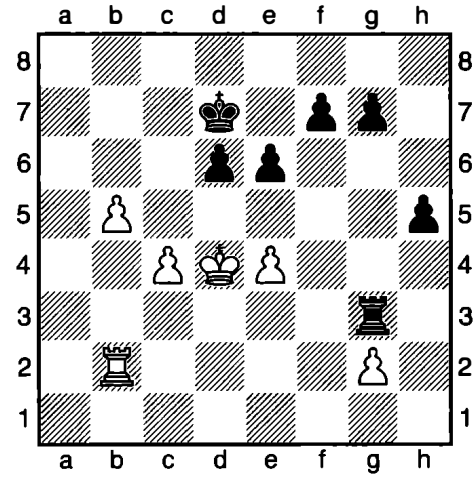
22) White to play (2 points)



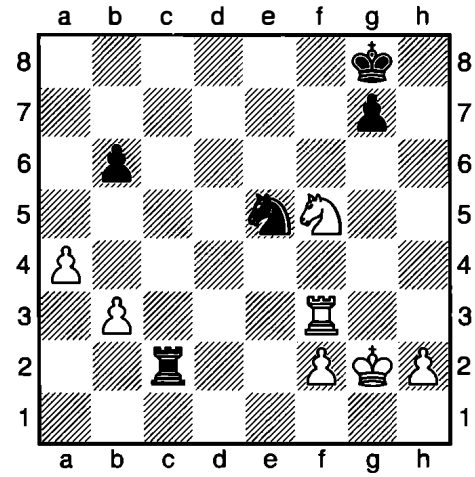
20) Black to play (2 points)



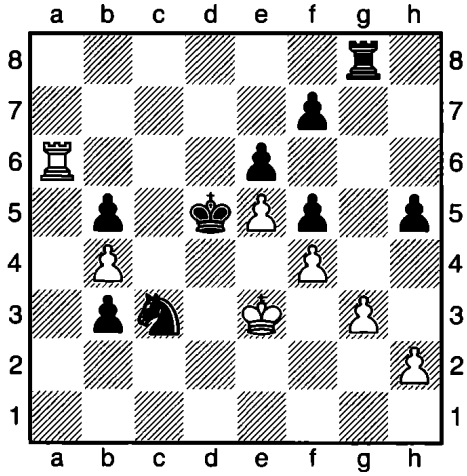
23) Black to play (2 points)



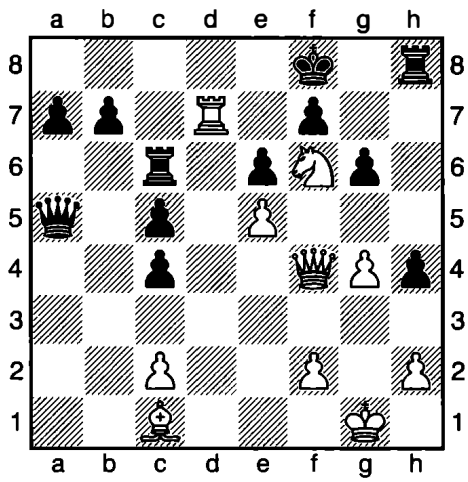
21) Black to play (2 points)



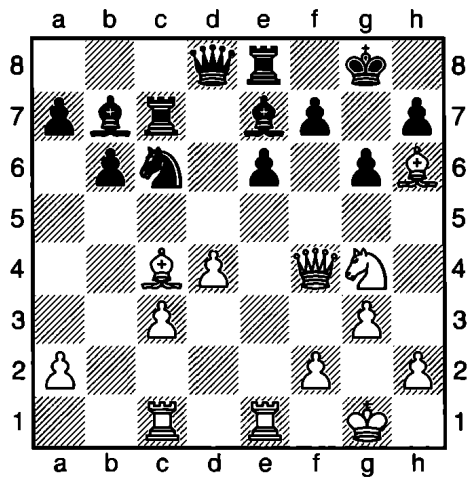
24) White to play (2 points)



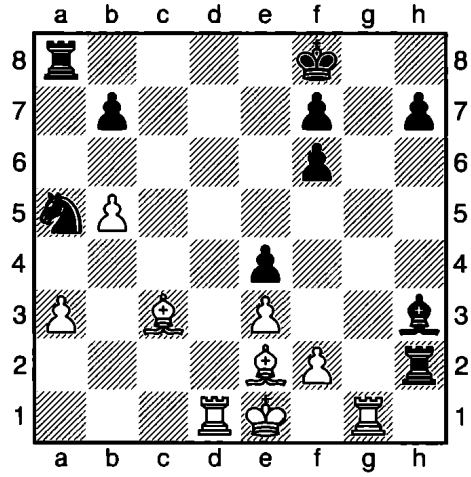
25) White to play (2 points)



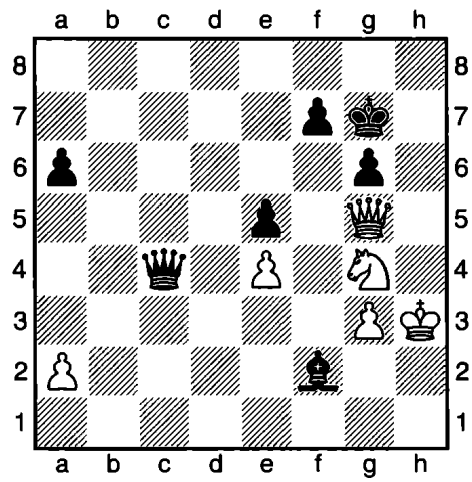
26) White to play (2 points)



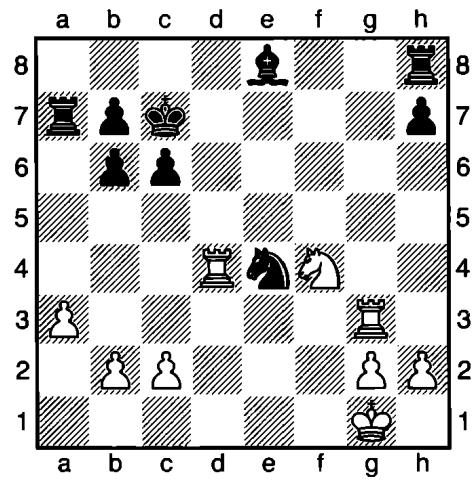
27) White to play (2 points)



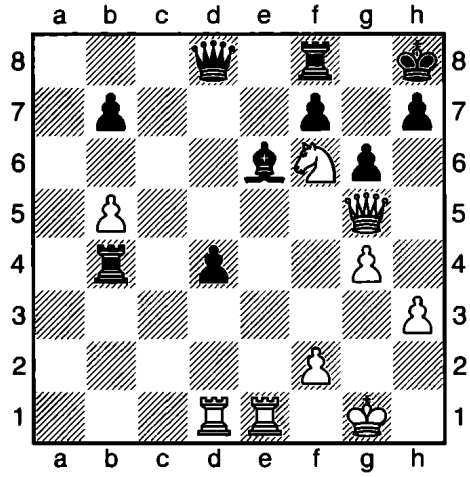
28) White to play (2 points)



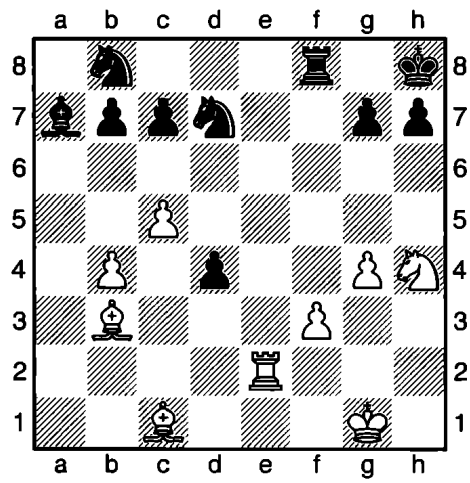
29) White to play (2 points)



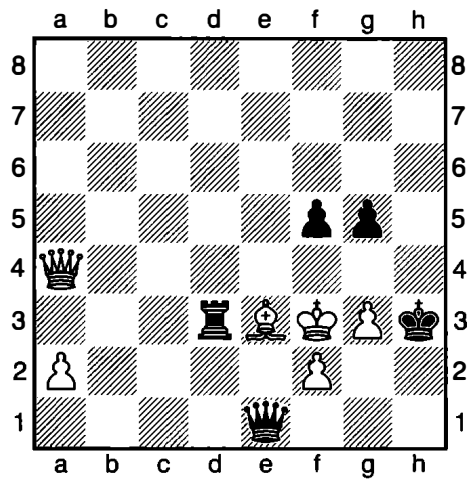
30) White to play (2 points)



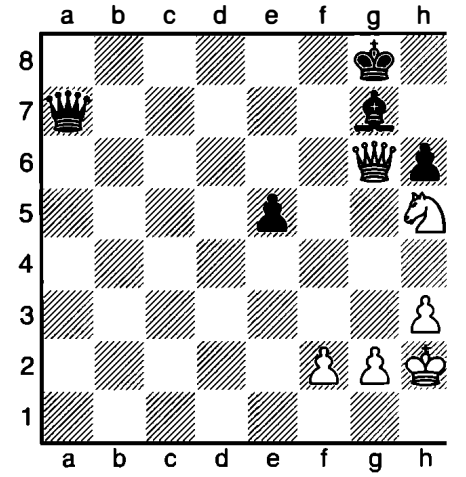
31) White to play (2 points)



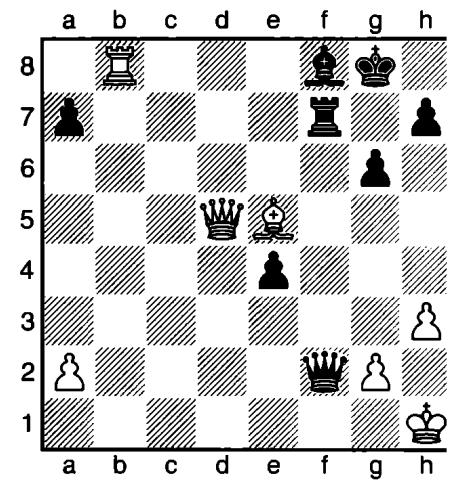
32) White to play (2 points)



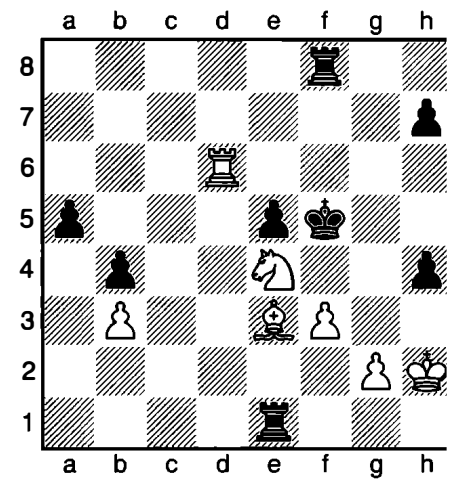
33) Black to play (2 points)



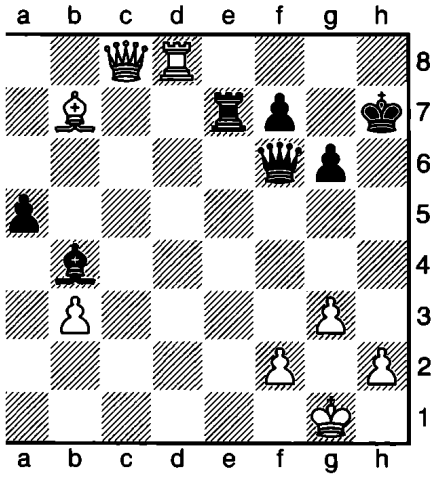
34) White to play (2 points)



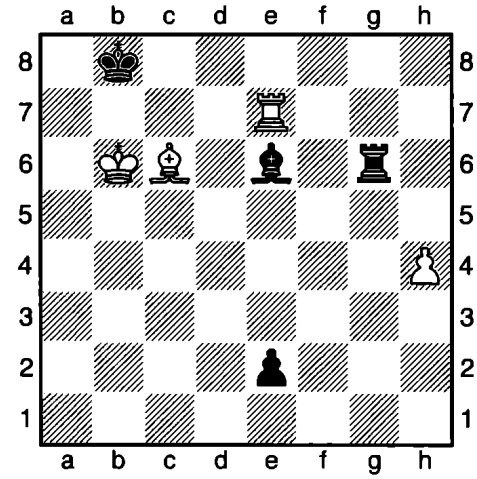
35) White to play (2 points)



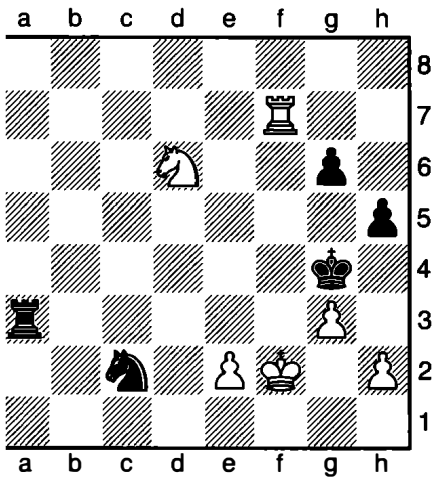
36) White to play (2 points)



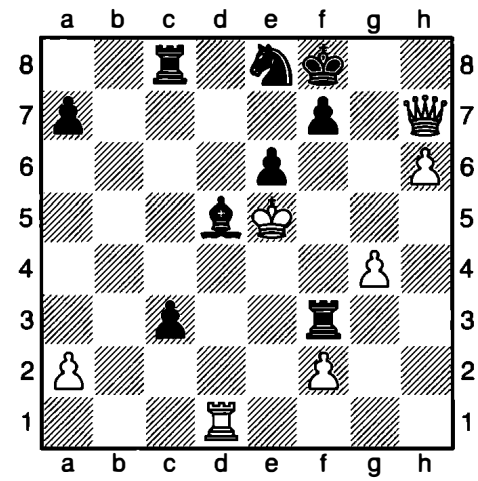
White to play (2 points)



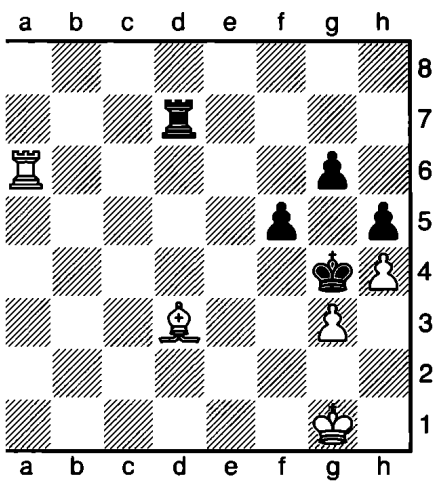
40) White to play (2 points)



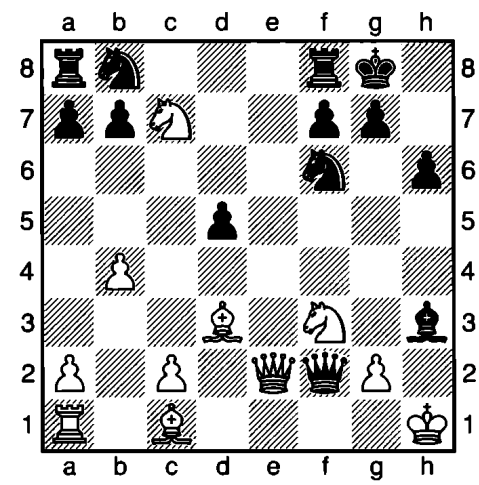
White to play (2 points)



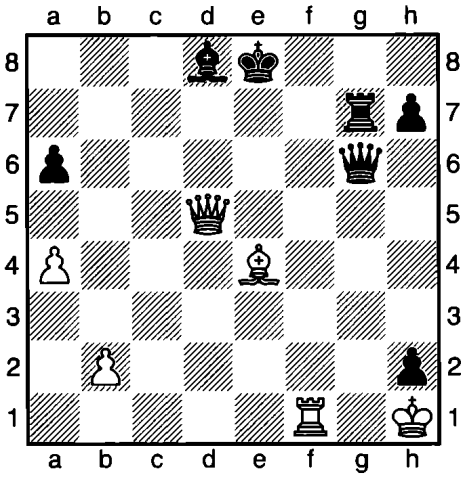
41) Black to play (2 points)



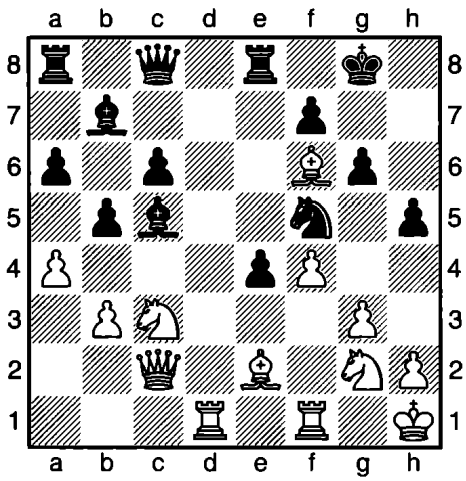
White to play (2 points)



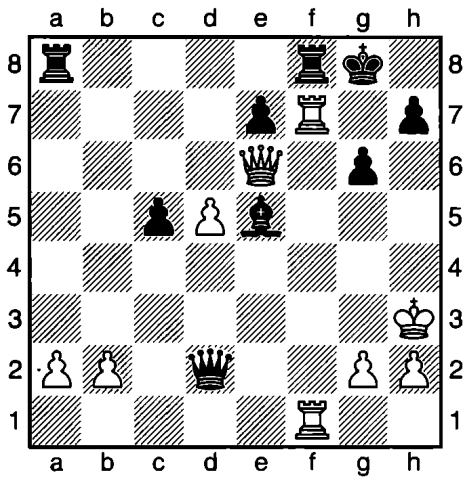
42) Black to play (2 points)



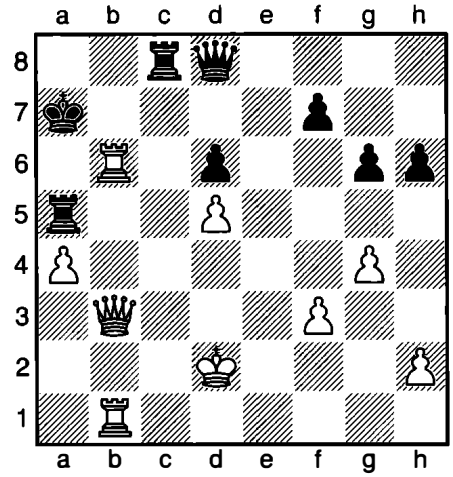
43) Black to play (2 points)



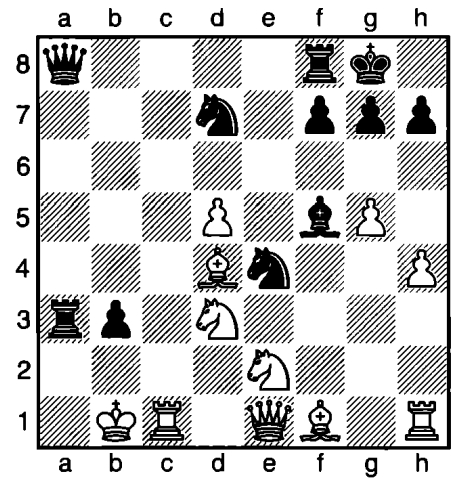
44) Black to play (2 points)



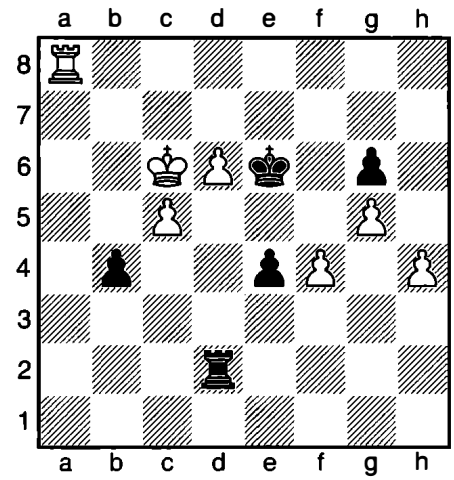
45) Black to play (2 points)



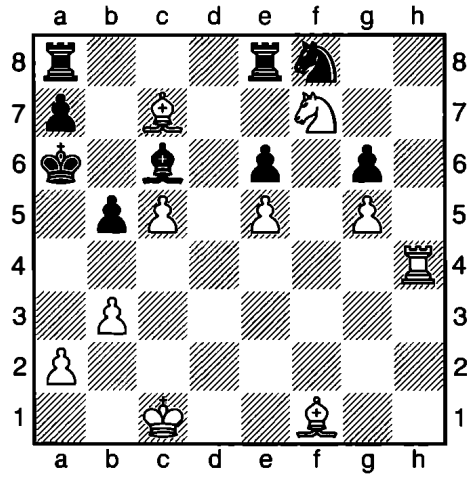
46) White to play (2 points)



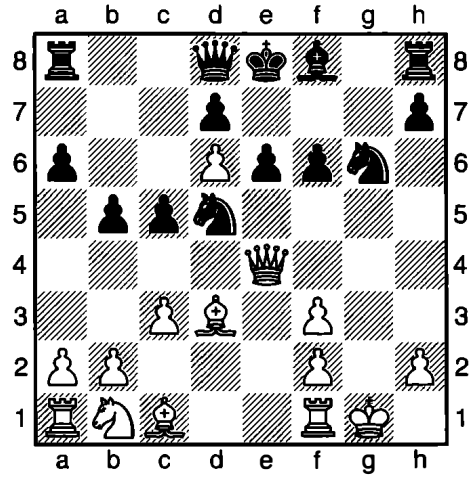
47) Black to play (2 points)



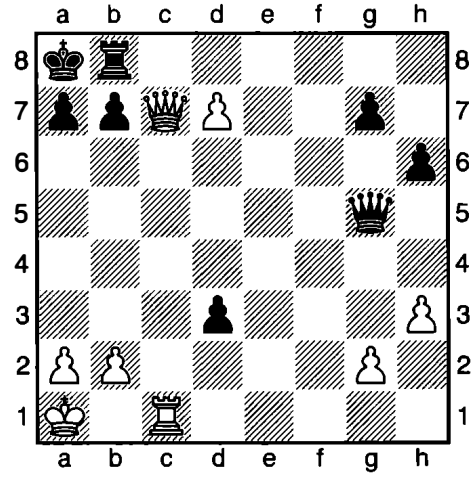
48) White to play (2 points)



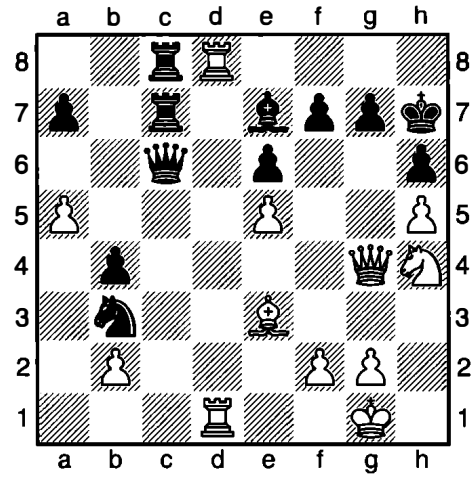
49) White to play (2 points)



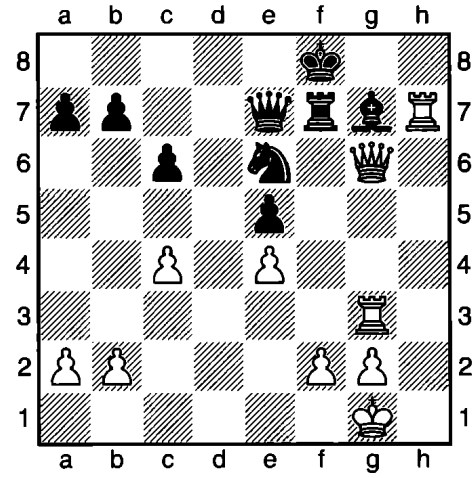
50) White to play (2 points)



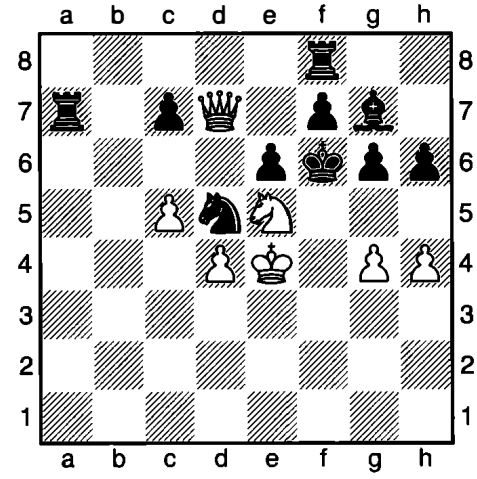
51) White to play (2 points)



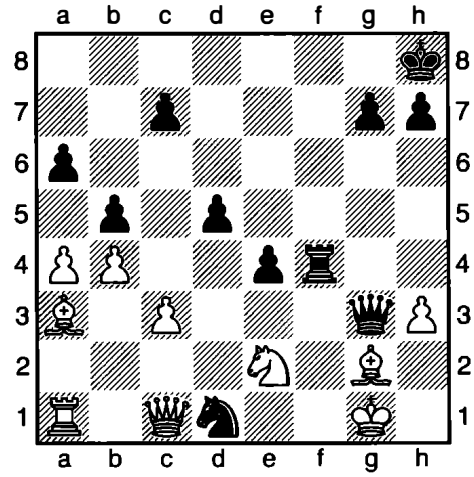
52) White to play (2 points)



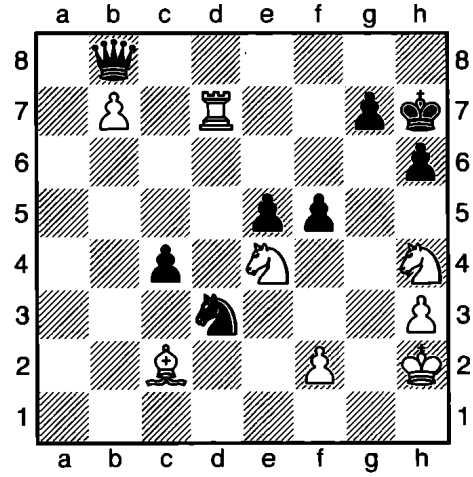
53) White to play (2 points)



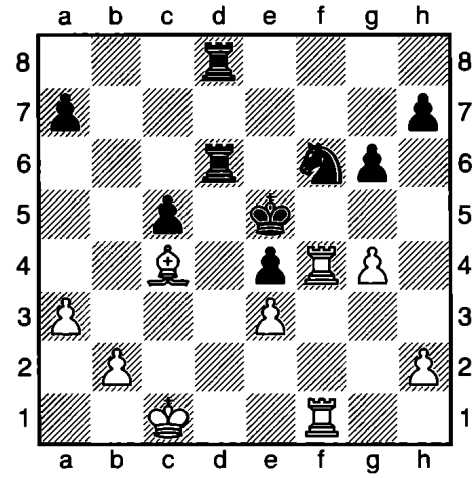
54) White to play (2 points)



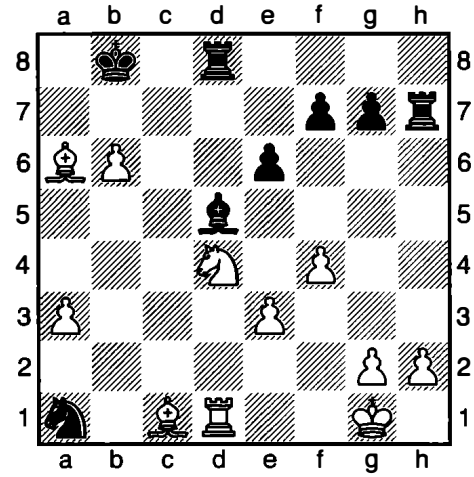
55) Black to play (2 points)



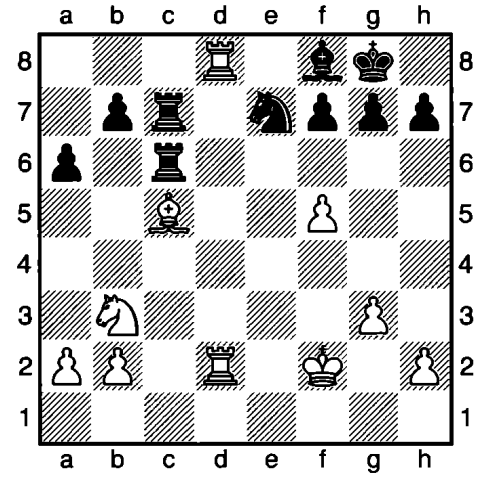
58) White to play (2 points)



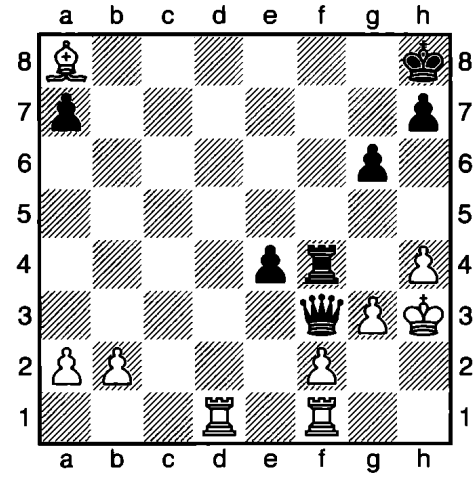
56) White to play (2 points)



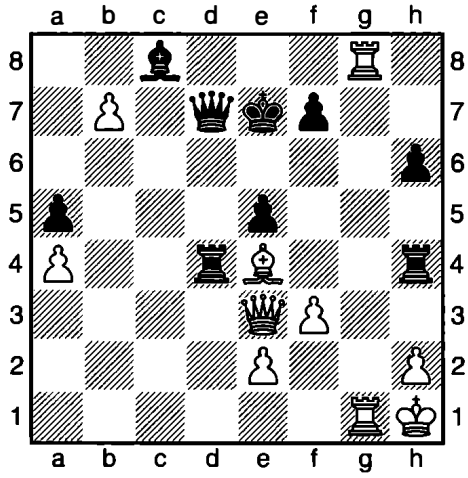
59) White to play (2 points)



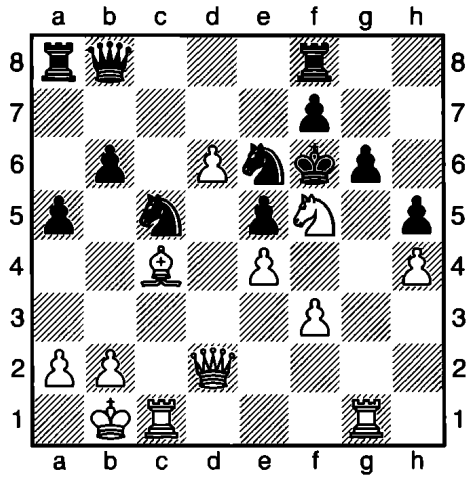
57) White to play (2 points)



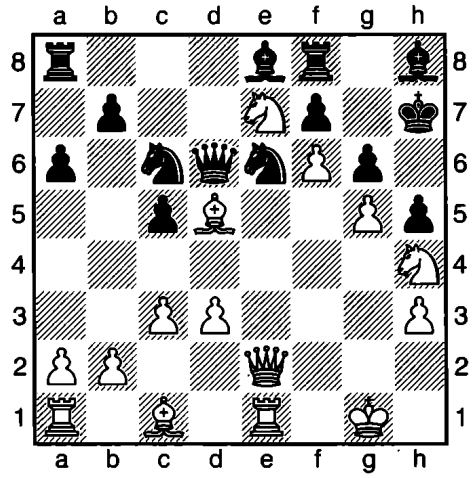
60) Black to play (2 points)



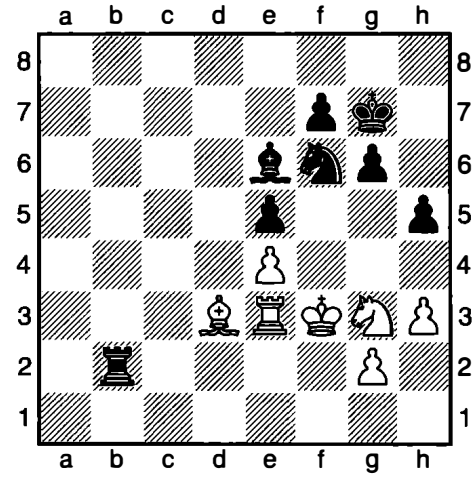
61) Black to play (2 points)



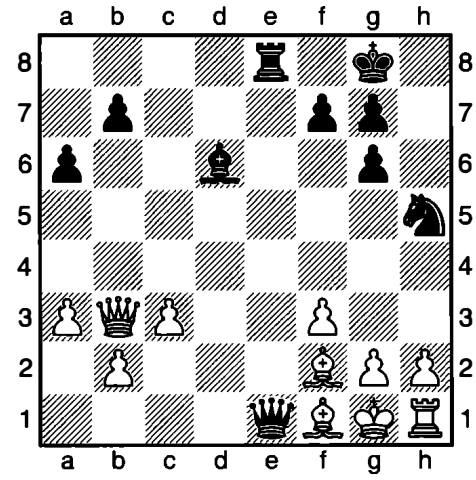
62) White to play (2 points)



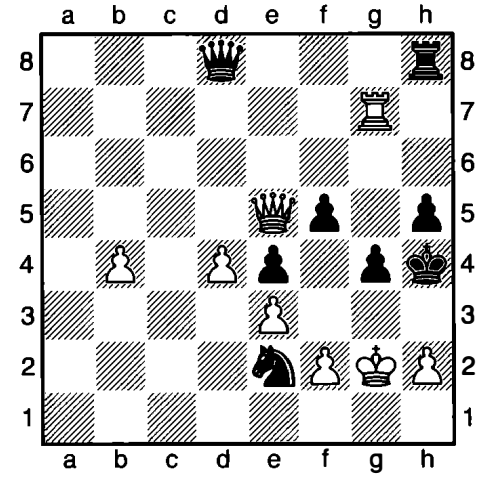
63) White to play (2 points)



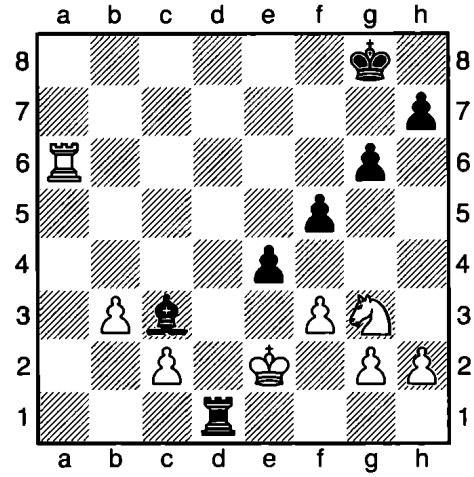
64) Black to play (2 points)



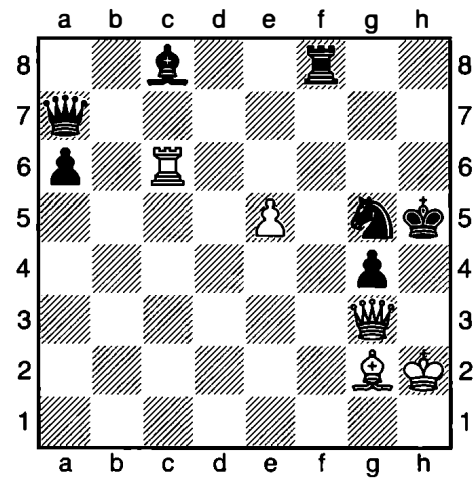
65) Black to play (2 points)



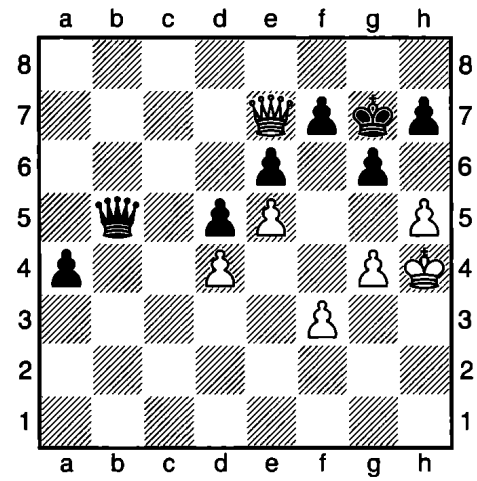
66) White to play (2 points)



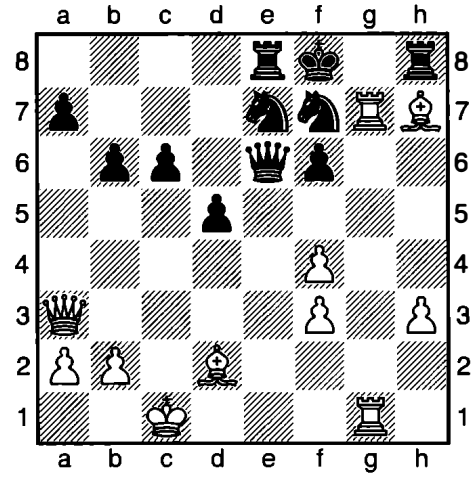
67) Black to play (2 points)



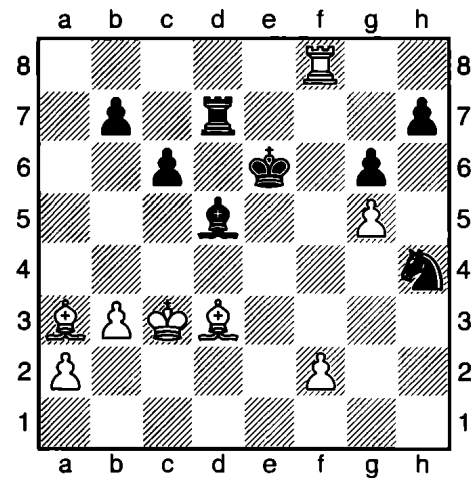
68) White to play (2 points)



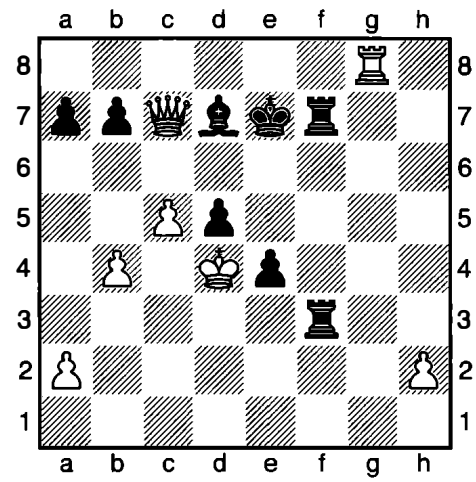
69) White to play (2 points)



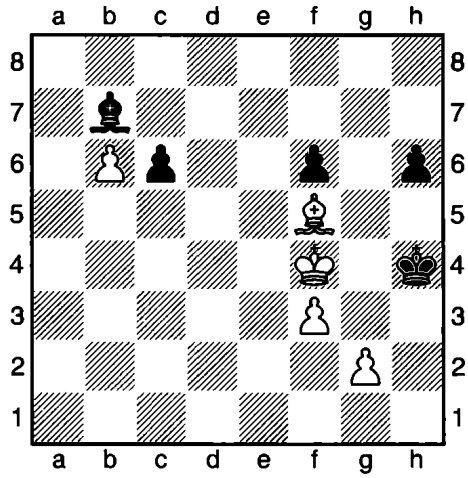
70) White to play (2 points)



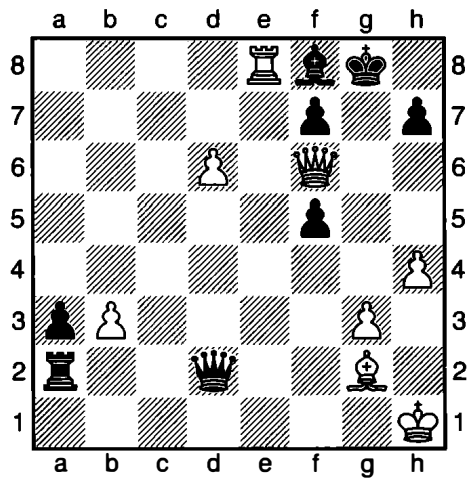
71) White to play (2 points)



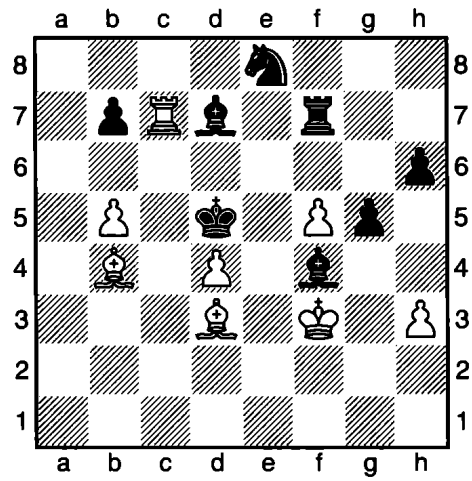
72) Black to play (2 points)



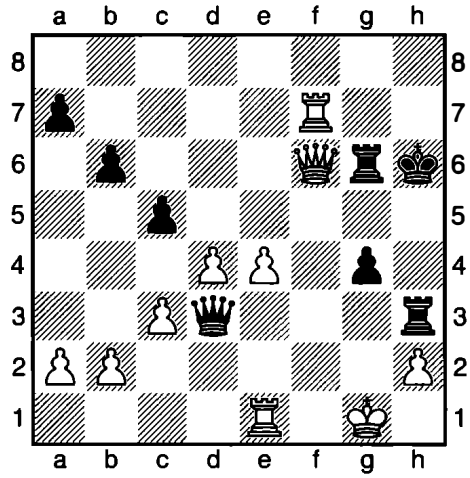
73) White to play (2 points)



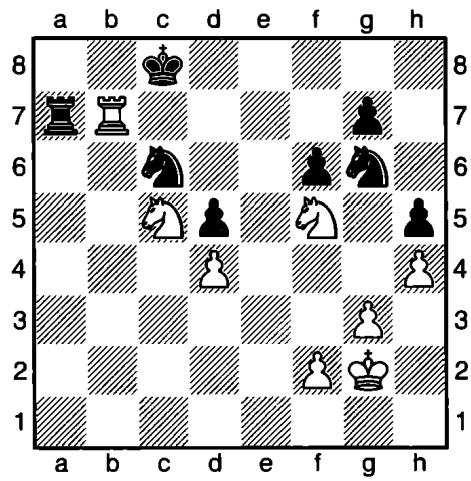
74) White to play (2 points)



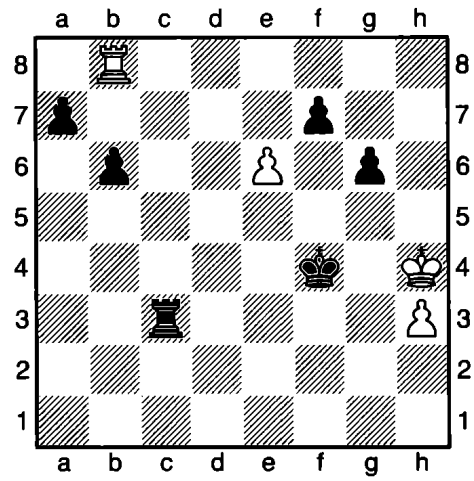
75) White to play (2 points)



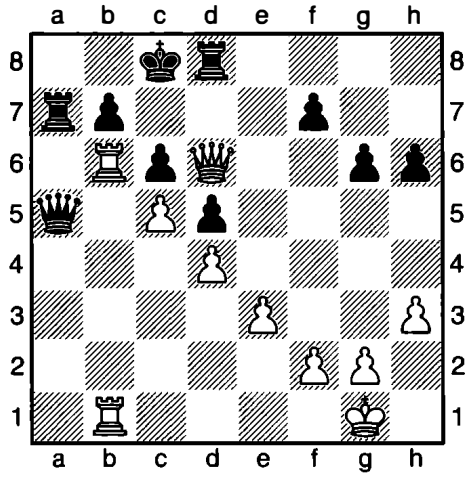
76) White to play (2 points)



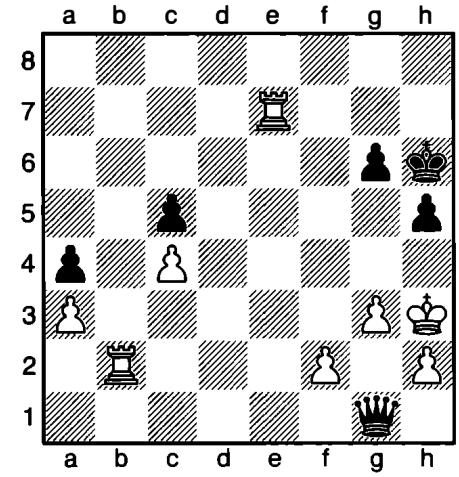
77) White to play (2 points)



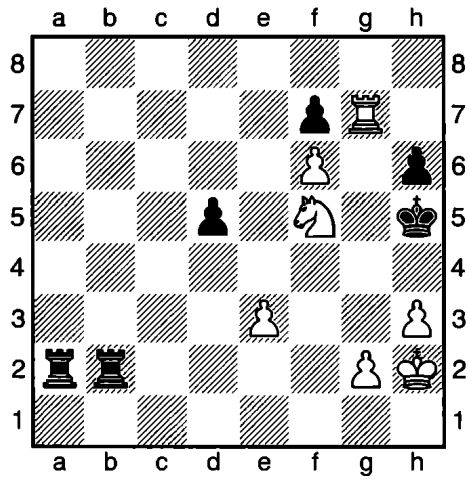
78) Black to play (2 points)



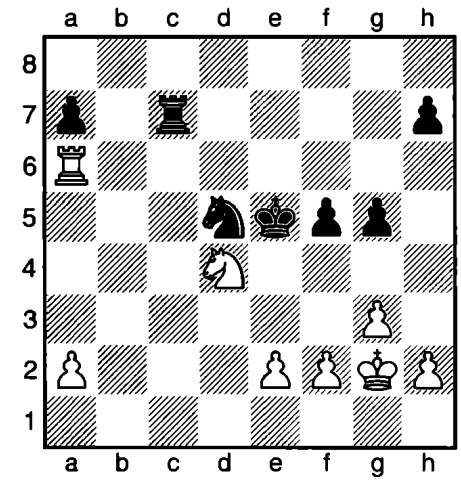
79) White to play (2 points)



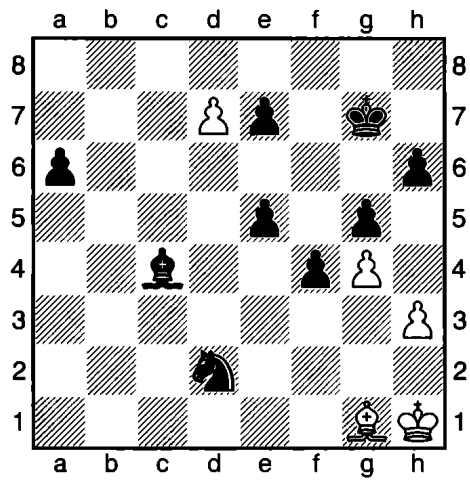
82) Black to play (2 points)



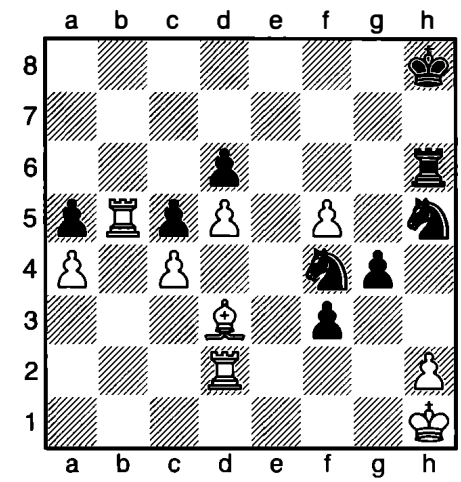
80) White to play (2 points)



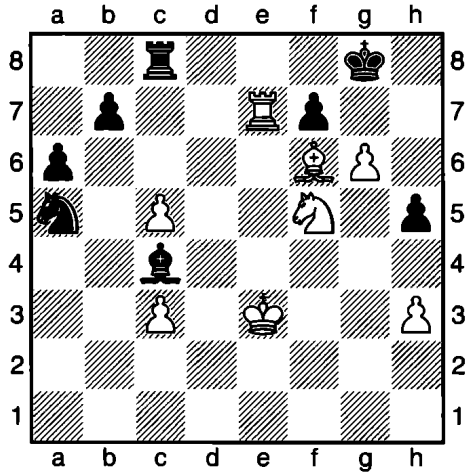
83) White to play (2 points)



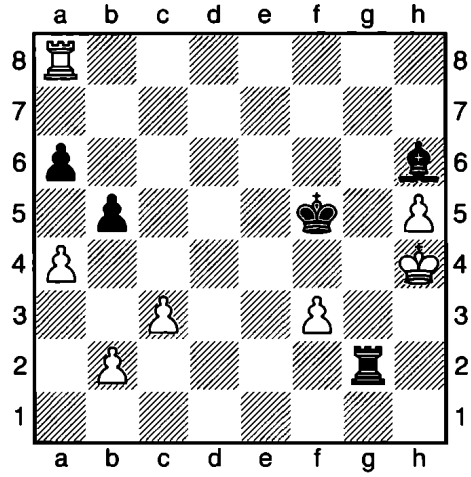
81) Black to play (2 points)



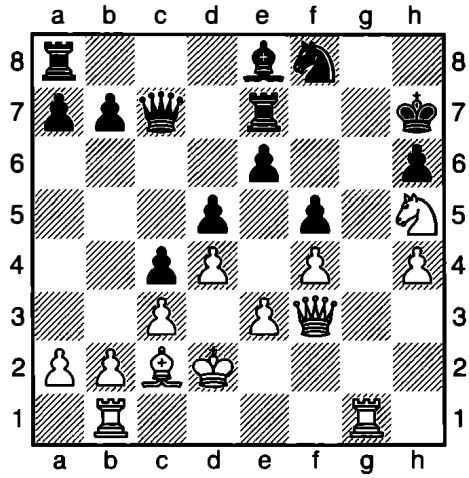
84) Black to play (2 points)



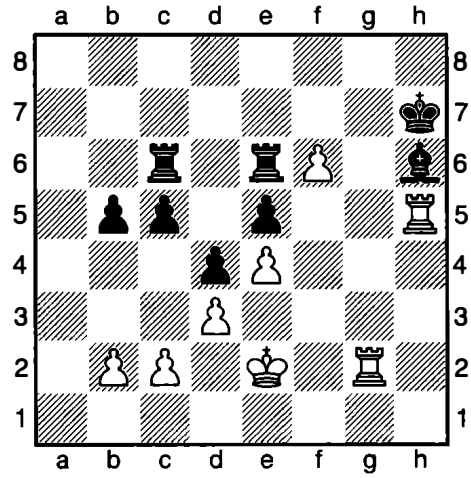
85) White to play (2 points)



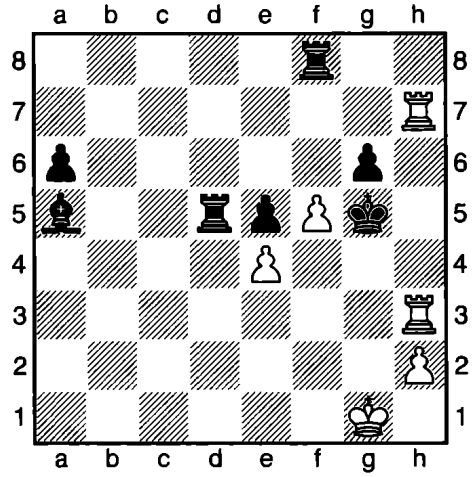
88) Black to play (2 points)



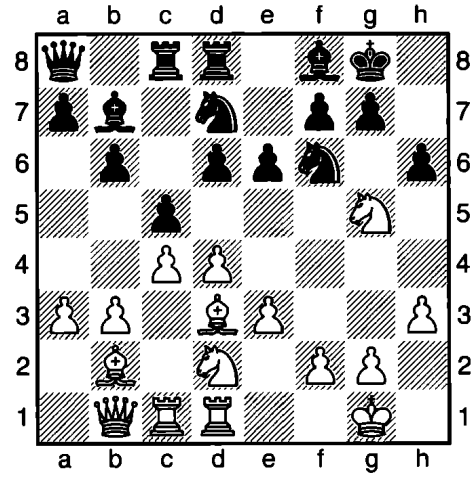
86) White to play (2 points)



89) White to play (2 points)



87) White to play (2 points)



90) White to play (2 points)

Solutions for Elementary Mates

1) G. Jones – P. Short
Bunratty 2009
White made use of the pin along the b-file:
1 ♖c8#

2) P. Vorobjov – O. Sepp
Estonian Ch, Rakvere 2009
1 ♘f4#

3) Bu Xiangzhi – Nakamura
Gibraltar 2008
1...♘e4#

4) S. Ivanov – S. Alho
Espoo 2008
1...♖f3#

5) Woeber – A. Kania
European Seniors Team Ch, Dresden 2008
Black resigned (**1-0**) without waiting for **1 ♘f6#**.
After the knight move, Black's king is under attack from both queen and knight, so this is a *double check*. Double checks are exceptionally dangerous because they can only be met by a king move. When, as here, the king has no safe square, the result is mate. There will be many more examples of double checks in Chapter 13.

6) Zeltwanger – Schiendorfer
Triesen 2008
1...♕b1#

7) Szirmai – Vokač
Prague 2007
1...♘b3#

8) De Haan – T. Vandenbussche
Belgian Team Ch 2004/5
1 ♗f4#

9) Hautot – Marechal
Belgian Team Ch 2002/3
Black resigned (**1-0**) in anticipation of **1 ♖e1#**.

10) Mi. Horvath – Kal. Horvath
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4
1 ♗e8#

11) Gombocz – Dolnik
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4
1 f4#

12) Matejović – Vrana
Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♗d6#

13) Muutnik – K. Pulkkinen
Estonian-Finland match, Tallinn 2008
1...♘g3#

14) Tkachev – Ivanchuk
Moscow (blitz) 2009
1 ♘g6#

15) Dreev – T.L. Petrosian
Budva 2009
1...♕f1+ 0-1
2 ♔e3 ♕e2#.

16) K. Lie – L. Lovik
Norwegian Ch, Bergen 2009
1...♖a1+ 2 ♔g2 ♖g1#

17) T. Vandenbussche – P. Vandevoort
Namur 2009
1...♕e3+ 0-1
Black utilizes the pin of the f-pawn and mates after 2 ♔f1 ♕xf2#.

18) Windelband – Ulms
Germany (team event) 2007/8
White is threatening mate in one by ♗g7#, so Black must act quickly.
1...♕c4+ 2 ♔a3 ♕a4#

19) Langheinrich – H. Poetsch
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1 ♖h8+ ♔f7 2 g6#

20) V. Nikolaev – S. Goriunov
St Petersburg (Under-18) 2008
1...♕e1+! 0-1
Black mates by 2 ♖xe1 ♖xe1#. This type of mate is called a *back-rank mate*, and the whole of Chapter 2 is devoted to it.

21) Korochkin – Kovpak
Kolomna Ch 2008
1...e5+ 2 ♔d5 ♖d3#

22) I. Kosov – V. Ni
Orsha 2008
1 ♕a8+ ♔d7
1...♖b8 only delays mate by one move.
2 ♘c5#

23) Ta. Balla – Duong The Anh
Budapest 2008
1...♔f7 0-1
White cannot prevent 2...h6#.

24) S.K. Mousavi – Zanan
World Under-12 Ch, Kemer 2009
1 ♘e7+ 1-0
After the king moves, White plays 2 ♖h3#.

25) P. Welz – Sloth
World Seniors Ch, Condino 2009
1 ♖d6+ ♔c4 2 ♖d4#

26) Turutin – Valeev
Moscow 2009
1 ♕h6+! 1-0
1...♖xh6 2 ♗xh6#.

27) Ju. Bolbochan – Pachman
Moscow Olympiad 1956
1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7
1...♔h8 is met by 2 ♗g7# or 2 ♕g7#.
2 ♗xe6#

28) Vakhidov – Nesterov
Bishkek Zonal 1993
1 ♗b4+ ♔e8 1-0
Black resigned in anticipation of 2 ♖g8#. This is another type of back-rank mate in which two of the squares on the second rank are controlled by white pieces instead of being blocked by black pawns.

29) Nabaty – Sidorenko
Beersheba 2008
1 ♕h6+ 1-0
1...♔g8 2 ♘f6#.

30) Manakova – Khropova
Moscow Women's Ch 2008
1 ♘e6+ 1-0
1...♔b8 and 1...♔c8 are both met by 2 ♖d8#.

31) Potkin – Navara
Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008
1 ♕h6! 1-0
White threatens 2 ♕xh7#, and if 1...♕xf6 then 2 ♕xf8#.

32) Granda – Lopez Heras
Benidorm 2008
Black resigned (**1-0**) before White could play **1 ♘g6+! hxg6 2 ♖h2#**. We shall see more of this type of line-opening sacrifice in Chapter 11.

33) Mostertman – H. van Vliet
Dutch Under-17 Ch, Venlo 2008
1...♖xe3+! 2 fxe3 ♕f1#

34) H. Delgado – Forgas Moreno
Havana 2008
1 ♘f6+ 1-0
White mates after 1...♔f8 2 ♕e8# or 1...♔h8 2 ♕h7#. Queen and knight often make a good mating team.

35) I. Deriabin – M. Yusupov
Alushta 2008
Black resigned (**1-0**) as White can force mate in two by **1 ♖xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♕d8#**.

36) Safarli – Khotenashvili
Baku 2008
1 g4+ 1-0
1...hxg3+ 2 ♘xg3#.

37) Gonda – Godena
Mitropa Cup, Olbia 2008
1 ♕h3+ 1-0
1...♔g7 2 ♕h8#.

38) S. Kasparov – Movsziszian
Sort 2008
1 ♖f4+ ♔g5
Or 1...♔h3 2 ♖h4#.
2 ♘f7#

39) E. Medvedev – V. Karpov
Tomsk 2008
1 ♔g2 1-0
Trapping Black's king and threatening 2 ♗e2# and 2 ♖xg6#. Black cannot prevent both mates.

40) V. Ten – Kuporosov
Tomsk 2008
1 ♖a7 1-0
White can safely ignore Black's advanced e-pawn, because there is no way to prevent mate by 2 ♖a8#.

41) Brynell – H. Tikkanen
Swedish Ch, Växjö 2008
1...f6+ 2 ♔d4 0-1
As 2...♖c4# is mate.

42) Kotainy – A. Izrailev
Dortmund 2008
1...♗xg2+ 0-1
2 ♔h2 ♘g4#.

43) Jor. Fluvia – Matnadze
Barbera del Valles 2008
1...♕g1+ 0-1
In view of 2 ♖xg1 hxg1♕#. Chapter 5 is devoted to mates involving pawn promotion.

44) Tassopoulos – A. Dimitrov
Greek Team Ch, Kallithea 2008
1...♘xg3+! 0-1
2 hxg3 ♕h3#.

45) K. Hedjazian – R. Ludwig
Creon 2008
1...♕h6+ 2 ♔g4 ♕h5#

46) Makepeace – Stayt
Liverpool 2008
1 ♖a6+! 1-0
It's mate next move by 2 ♕b7# whichever way Black takes.

47) Moskwinski – J. Worek
Warsaw 2008
1...♖a1+! 0-1
After 2 ♗xa1 (2 ♔b2 is met by 2...♕a2# or 2...♕a3#) Black mates by 2...♕a2#.

48) Olejarczyk – Czarnecki
Warsaw 2008
1 ♖f8 1-0
Threatening 2 ♖f6#, which Black can only delay for one move by giving up his rook on d6.

49) D. Benidze – G. Oliver
World Junior Ch, Gaziantep 2008
1 ♘d6 1-0
Black cannot prevent 2 ♖a4#.

50) F. Huguet – Lelong
French Team Ch 2006/7
1 ♕xg6+! hxg6 2 ♗xg6#

51) T. Filipiak – Joehnk
Leipzig 2005
1 ♕xb8+! 1-0
1...♔xb8 2 ♖c8#.

52) Ferčec – I. Sarić
Umag 2005
1 ♕g6+! 1-0
1...fxg6 2 hxg6#.

53) Martin Becker – S. Hirsch
Germany (team event) 2006/7
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
This opens the g-file for a queen mate after 1...♗xh8 2 ♕g8#.

54) El. Hernandez – I. Martin Alvarez
Azkoitia 2004
1 g5+! hxg5 2 ♘g4#

55) So – Giri
Wijk aan Zee 2010

1...♖f1+! 0-1
2 ♔xf1 ♕f2#.

56) A. Gonzalez Perez – J.A. Alvarez
Santa Clara 2003
1 ♖f5+! 1-0
1...gxf5 2 ♖xf5#.

57) Zivić – J. Mladenović
Nisa 2003
1 ♖xf8+ 1-0
1...♔xf8 2 ♖d8# is another type of back-rank mate.

58) S. Gromovs – R. Pace
Cesenatico 2003
1 ♘f6+ 1-0
1...♔h8 2 ♘g6#.

59) Battaglini – F. Rey
Issy-les-Moulineaux 2003
1 ♘c6+ 1-0
White mates after 1...♗xc6 2 ♖xd8# or 1...♔a8 2 b7#.

60) F. Kelemen – Barva
Gyongyos 2003
1...♖xh4+! 2 ♔xh4 ♕h5#

61) Dobrov – I. Simeonidis
Nikea 2003
1...♖xh2+! 0-1
2 ♔xh2 ♕h3#.

62) V. Lazarev – Solomunović
2nd Bundesliga 2002/3
1 ♕g5+! 1-0
1...♘xg5 2 hxg5#.

63) F. Apaydin – Celiker
Izmir Ch 2003
1 ♕xh5+! 1-0
This sacrifice opens the line from e4 to h7 and forces mate after 1...gxh5 2 ♗e4#.

64) L. Rouillon – D. Justo
Le Mans 2002
1...♗g4+ 0-1
2 hxg4 hxg4#.

65) L. Konings – Werle
Amsterdam 2002
1...♕xf2+! 0-1
2 ♔xf2 ♗c5#.

66) O. Uwira – M. Heindrich
Dotzheim 2002
1 ♕g3+! 1-0
After 1...♘xg3 White can mate by 2 fxg3# or 2 hxg3#.

67) Kozakov – A. Maksimenko
Lvov 2001
1...♖e1+ 2 ♔f2 e3#

68) Schlindwein – Ravnik
Feffernitz 2000
1 ♕h4+! 1-0
1...♔xh4 2 ♖h6#.

69) G. Schumacher – Bolwerk
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1 h6+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔xh6 2 ♕f8# or 1...♔g8 2 ♕d8+ ♕e8 3 ♕xe8#.

70) Hrbolka – Satransky
Czech Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♖g8+ 1-0
After 1...♖xg8 2 ♖xg8# Black's knight on e7 is pinned, and so cannot capture the white rook.

71) Orso – R. Szekeres
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♖f6+ 1-0
1...♔e5 2 f4#.

72) Ruppaner – Vargyas
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1...♖d3+ 2 ♔e5 ♖f5#

73) Magony – Szaz
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♗g4 1-0
Black cannot prevent 2 g3#.

74) Boguszlavszkij – A. Meszaros
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♖xf8+! 1-0
1...♔xf8 2 ♕h8#.

75) T. Varga – Mihalyfi
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♗e4+ ♔xd4 2 ♗c3#

76) Trent – Eames
British League (4NCL) 2005/6
1 ♕h8+ 1-0
1...♔g5 2 ♖f5#.

77) Klundt – Krauseneck
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1 ♘d6+ ♔d8 2 ♘e6#

78) Saleron – Donrault
French Team Ch 2005/6
1...g5+ 0-1
2 ♔h5 ♖xh3#.

79) R. Shaw – M. Gray
British League (4NCL) 2005/6
1 ♖xc6+! bxc6 2 ♖b8#

80) Limp – Tsuboi
São Paulo 2006
1 ♘g3+ 1-0
1...♔h4 2 ♖g4#.

81) Mir. Jablonski – B. Siwiec
Torun Ch 2006
White is about to promote a pawn, so Black must act quickly.
1...♗d5+ 2 ♔h2 ♘f1#

82) Nikitina – Tukhvatullin
Ufa 2006
1...♕f1+ 0-1
2 ♔h4 g5#.

83) Prusikin – Stuhl
Schwäbisch Gmünd 2006
1 ♘f3+ 1-0
1...♔e4 2 ♖e6#.

84) T. Kononenko – Mirzoev
Seville 2006
1...♘g3+ 0-1
2 ♔g1 ♘h3#.

85) Bosiočić – Atakisi
Antalya 2006
1 ♘h6+ 1-0
1...♔f8 2 g7#.

86) Jugelt – W. Brandt
Bad Zwischenahn 2006
1 ♘f6+ ♔h8 2 ♖g8#

87) J.B. Rodriguez – Glavina
Spain (team event) 2006
1 ♖g3+ 1-0
White mates after 1...♔f4 2 ♖h4# or 1...♔f6 2 ♖xg6#.

88) B. Sanmartin Agustin – I. Trigo Conde
Spain (team event) 2006
1...♖h2+ 0-1
2 ♔g3 ♗f4#.

89) S. Johannessen – W. Meier
European Seniors Team Ch, Dresden 2006
1 ♖g7+ 1-0
1...♔h8 2 ♖xh6#.

90) V. Kovačević – B. Kovačević
Croatia Cup, Šibenik 2008
1 ♗h7+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♘xh7 2 ♕xh7# or 1...♔h8 2 ♘xf7#.

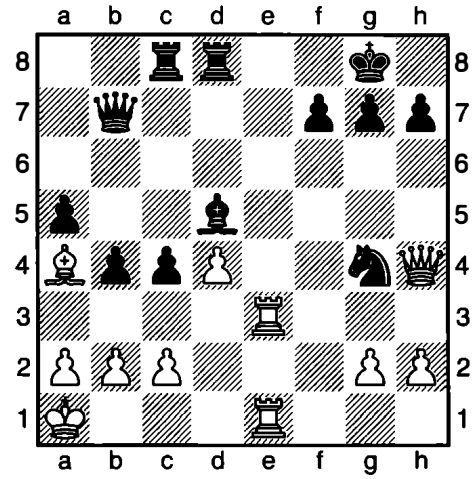
Score-Chart for Elementary Mates

Position number	Points	Score
1	1	
2	1	
3	1	
4	1	
5	1	
6	1	
7	1	
8	1	
9	1	
10	1	
11	1	
12	1	
13	1	
14	1	
15	2	
16	2	
17	2	
18	2	
19	2	
20	2	
21	2	
22	2	
23	2	
24	2	
25	2	
26	2	
27	2	
28	2	
29	2	
30	2	
31	2	
32	2	
33	2	
34	2	
35	2	
36	2	
37	2	
38	2	
39	2	
40	2	
41	2	
42	2	
43	2	
44	2	
45	2	
46	2	
47	2	
48	2	
49	2	
50	2	
51	2	
52	2	
53	2	
54	2	
55	2	
56	2	
57	2	

Position number	Points	Score
58	2	
59	2	
60	2	
61	2	
62	2	
63	2	
64	2	
65	2	
66	2	
67	2	
68	2	
69	2	
70	2	
71	2	
72	2	
73	2	
74	2	
75	2	
76	2	
77	2	
78	2	
79	2	
80	2	
81	2	
82	2	
83	2	
84	2	
85	2	
86	2	
87	2	
88	2	
89	2	
90	2	
Total	**166**	

2 Back-Rank Mates

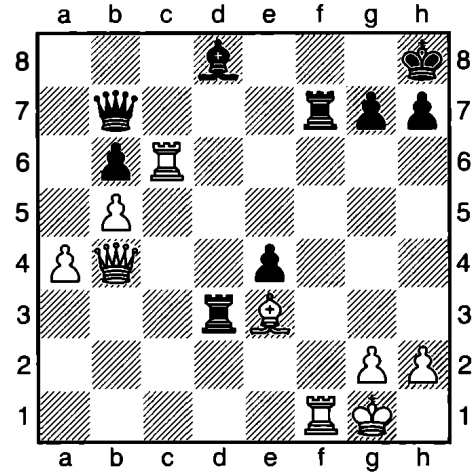
The back-rank mate is one of the most common checkmating ideas in chess and can arise when a king is unable to escape from the first rank.



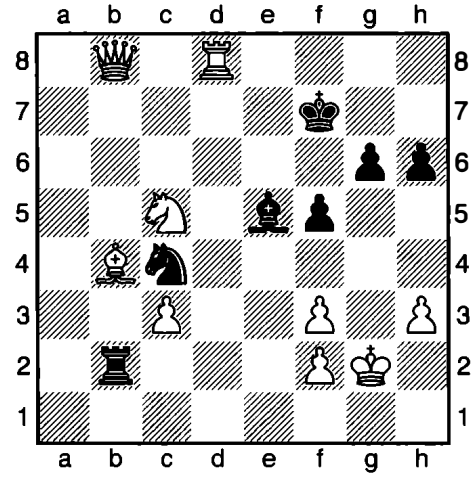
Dragičević – Krivec
Queenstown 2009

In this position, Black's king is hemmed in by three of its own pawns and so cannot move off the first rank. This situation should ring a warning bell, because if White can get a rook unopposed to Black's first rank then it will be mate. White can't play 1 ♖e8+?? at once since 1...♖xe8 2 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 destroys White's rooks. However, by first sacrificing his queen to eliminate one of Black's rooks, White can make this line work: **1 ♕xd8+!** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**), since 1...♖xd8 2 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 3 ♖xe8# is mate.

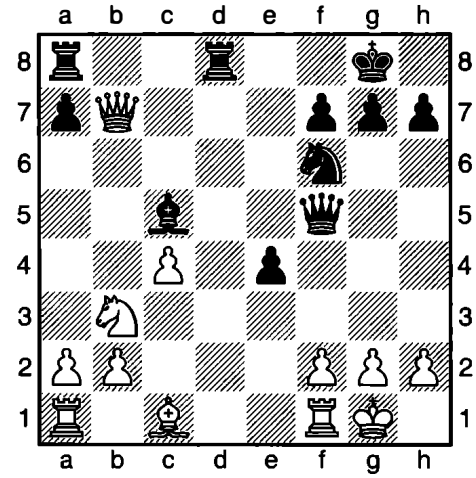
Back-rank mates aren't necessarily based on a row of three pawns blocking in the enemy king, as it's also possible for the squares on the second rank to be covered by friendly pieces. There are many different versions of this theme, and knowing them will prove a great point-winner.



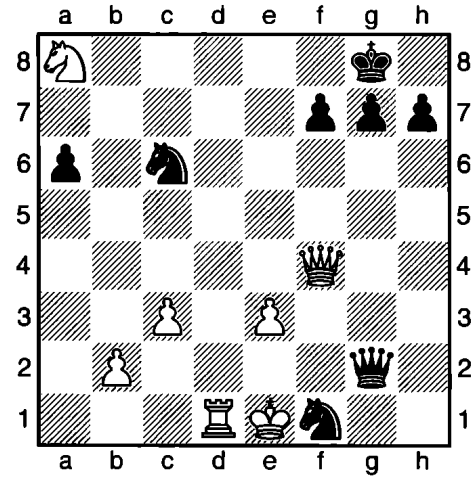
91) White to play (1 point)



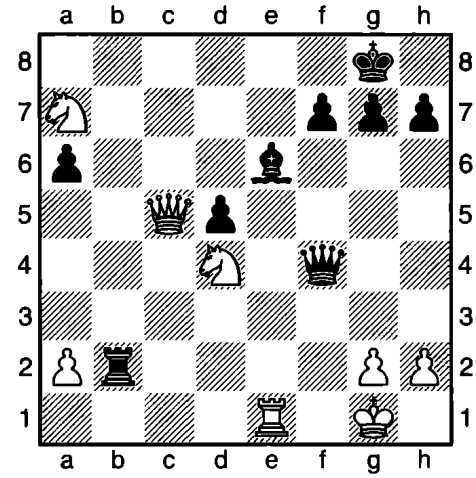
94) Black to play (1 point)



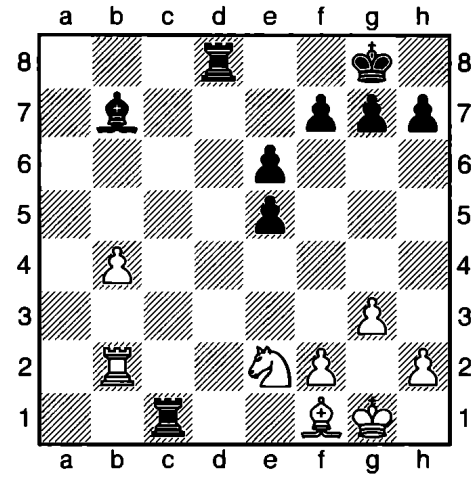
92) Black to play (1 point)



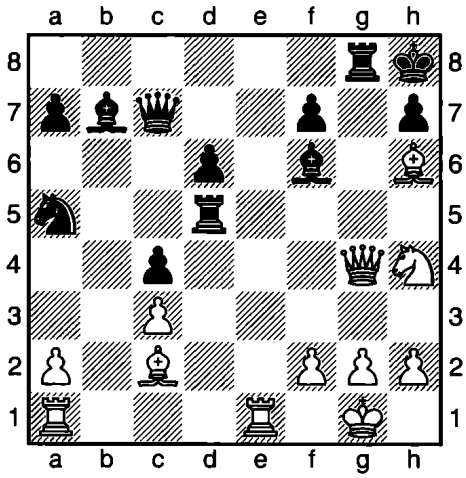
95) White to play (1 point)



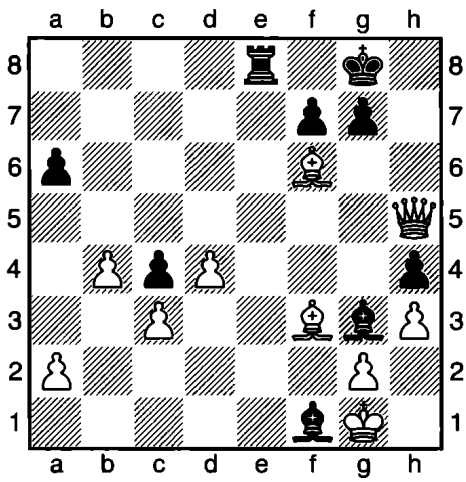
93) White to play (1 point)



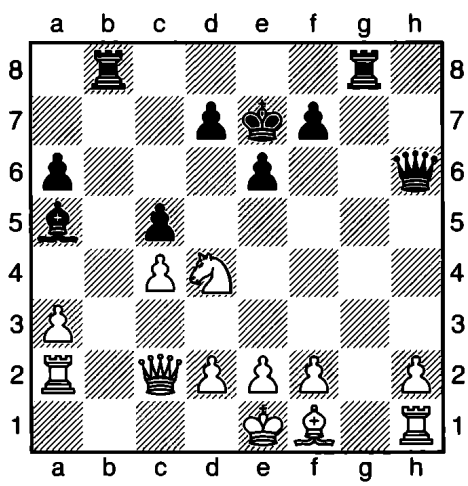
96) Black to play (1 point)



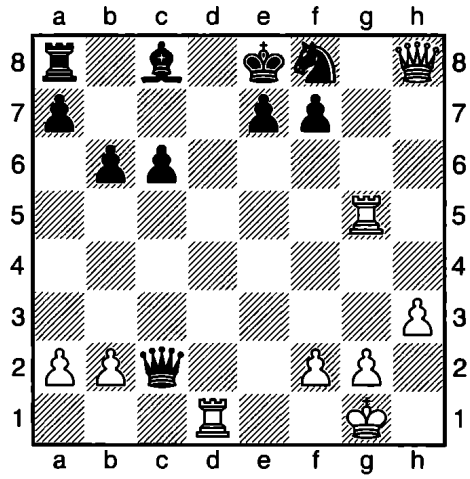
97) White to play (1 point)



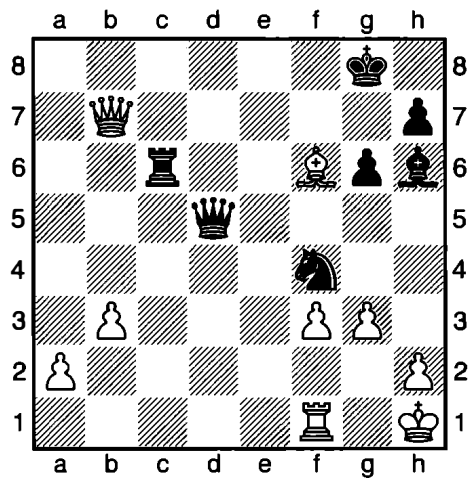
98) Black to play (1 point)



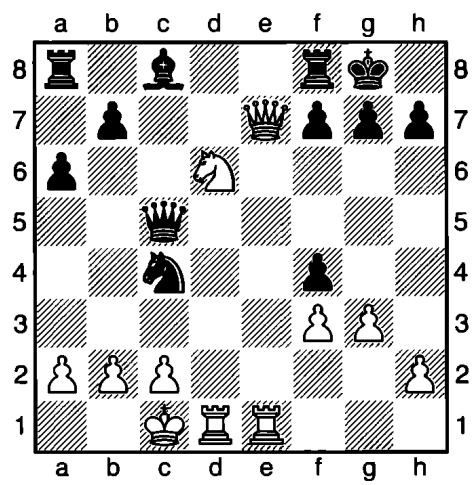
99) Black to play (1 point)



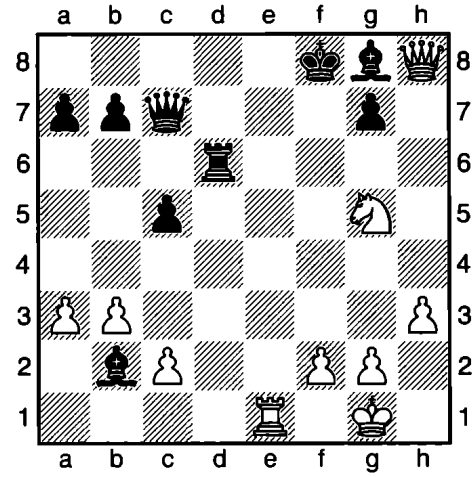
100) White to play (1 point)



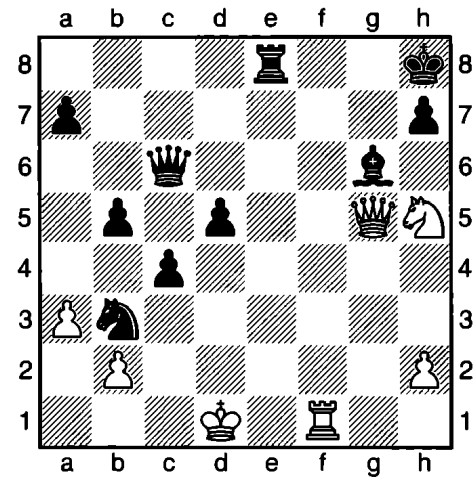
101) Black to play (1 point)



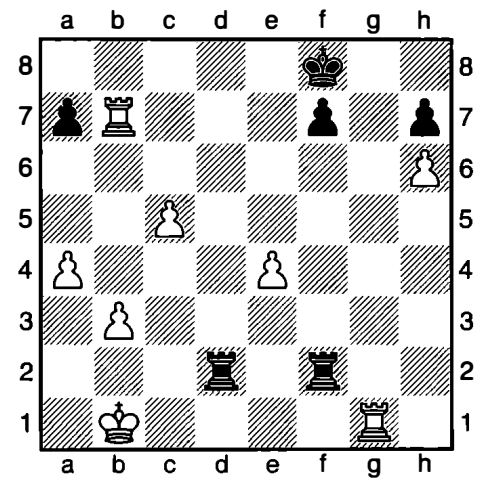
102) White to play (1 point)



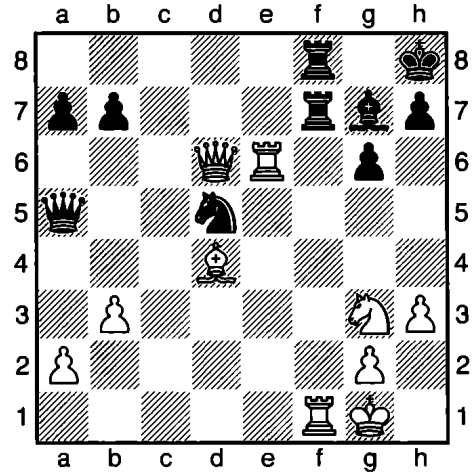
103) White to play (1 point)



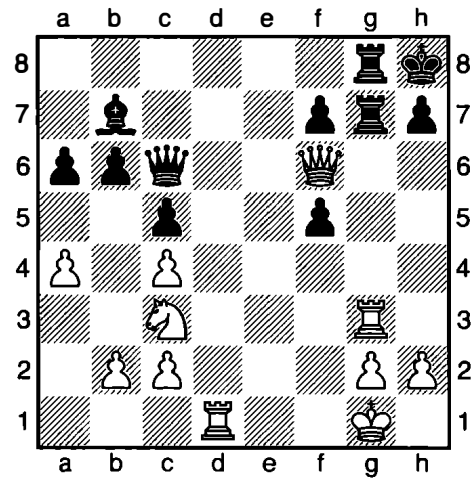
104) White to play (1 point)



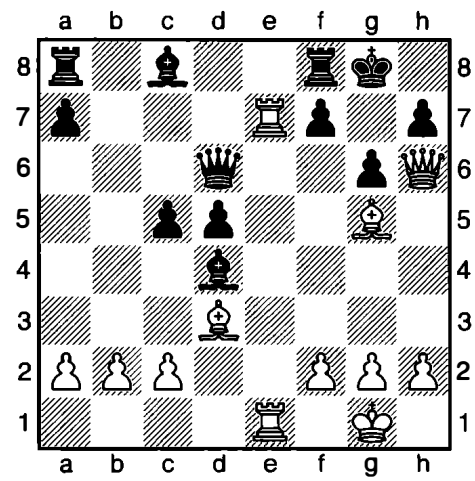
105) White to play (1 point)



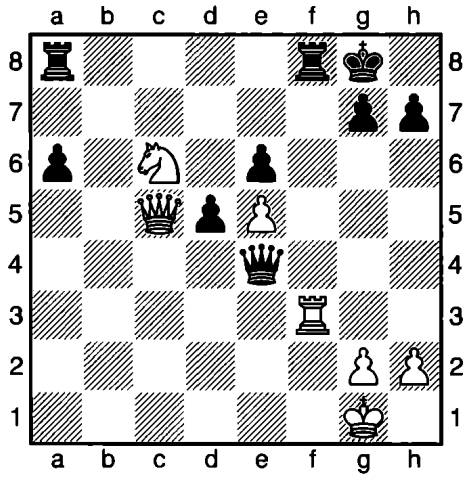
106) White to play (1 point)



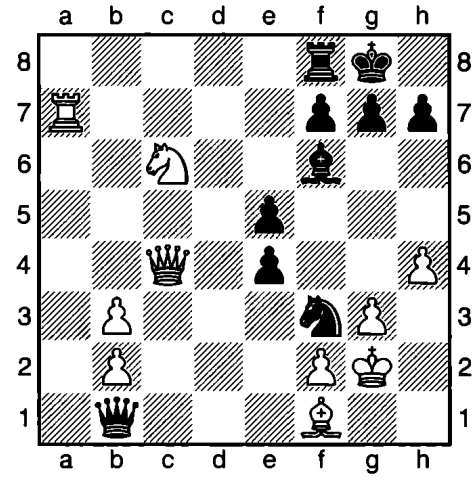
107) White to play (2 points)



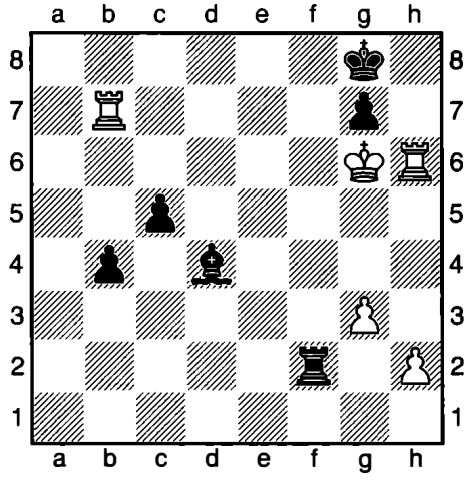
108) White to play (2 points)



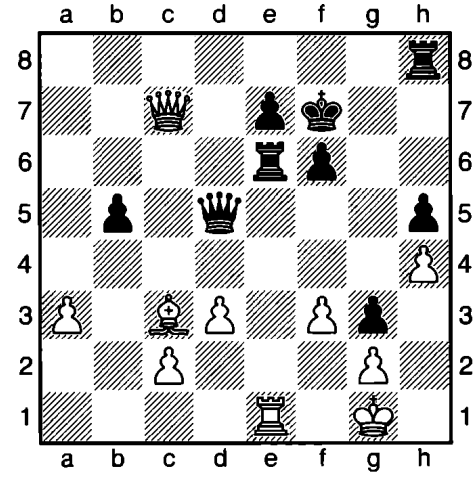
109) White to play (2 points)



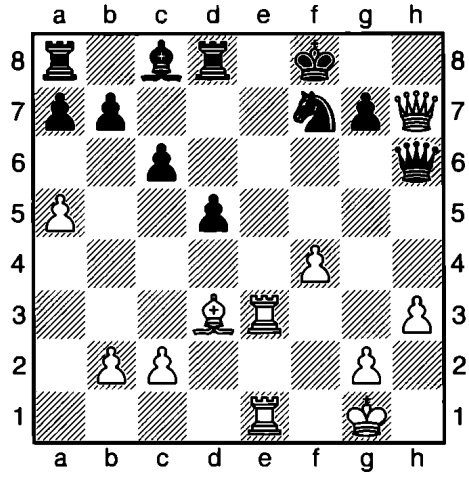
112) White to play (2 points)



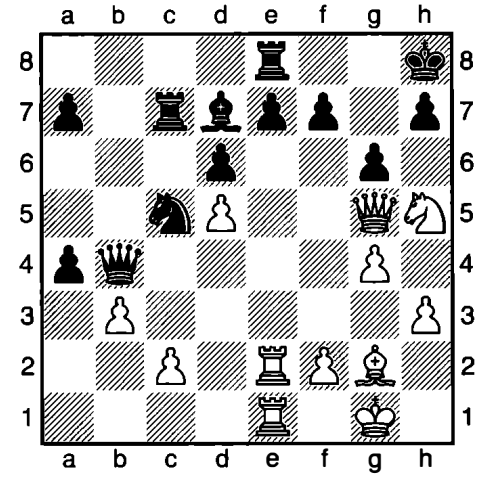
110) White to play (2 points)



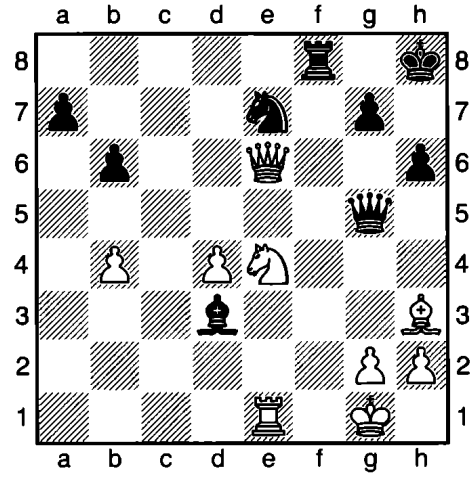
113) Black to play (2 points)



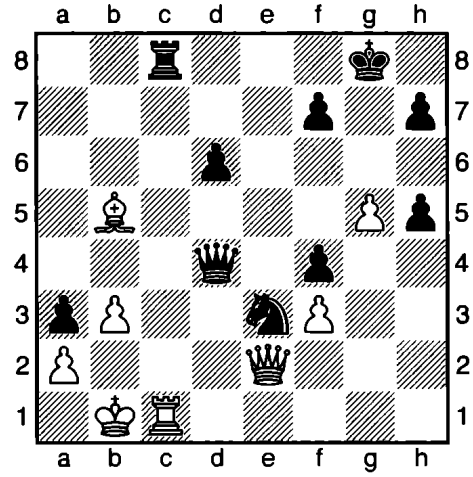
111) White to play (2 points)



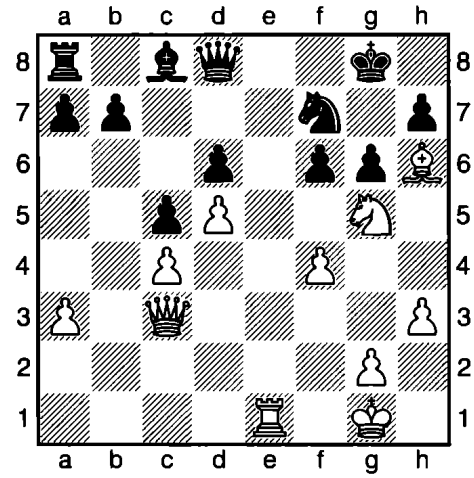
114) White to play (2 points)



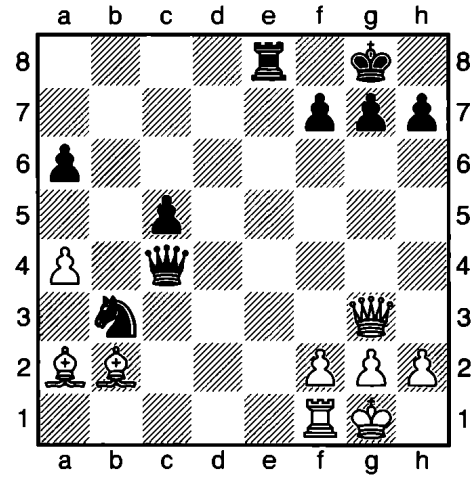
115) Black to play (2 points)



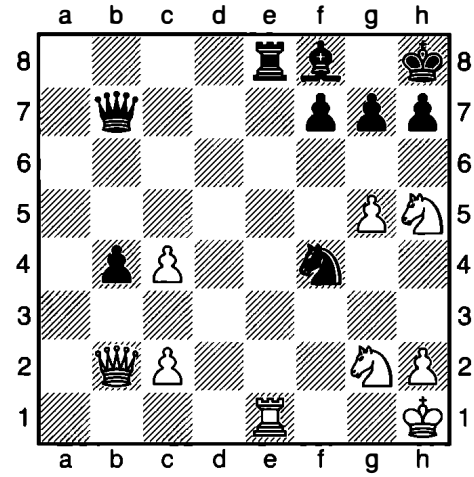
118) Black to play (2 points)



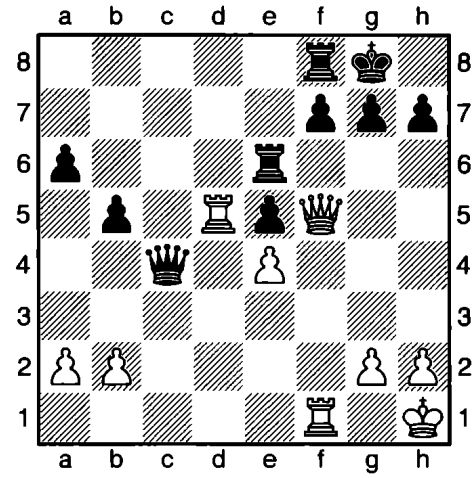
116) White to play (2 points)



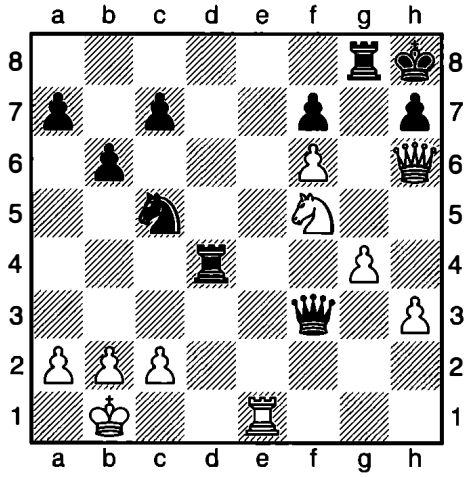
119) Black to play (2 points)



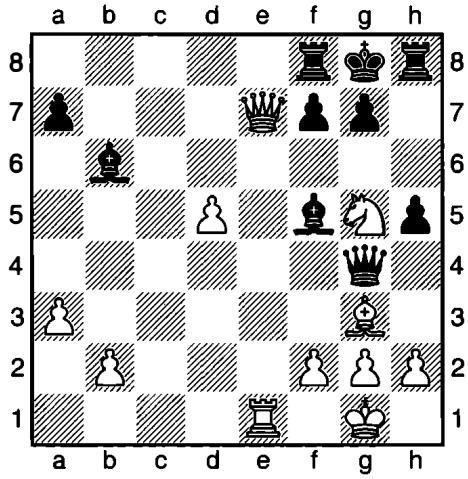
117) White to play (2 points)



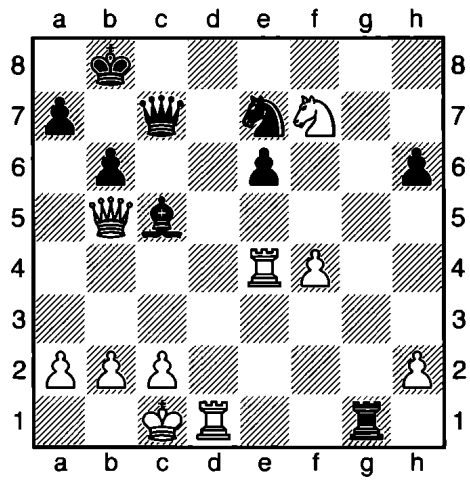
120) White to play (2 points)



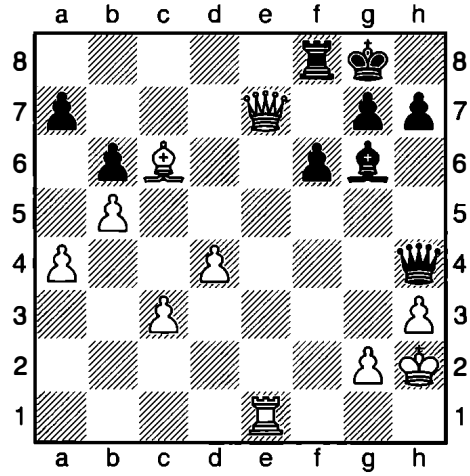
121) White to play (2 points)



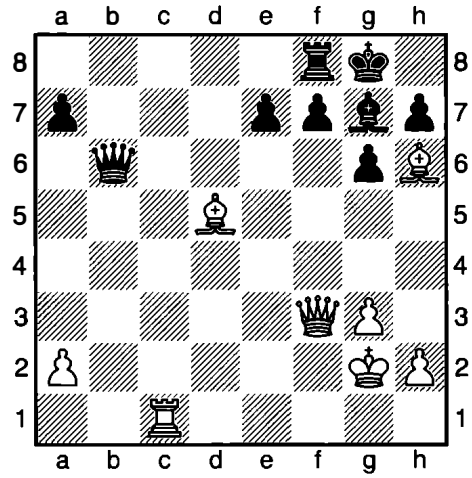
122) White to play (2 points)



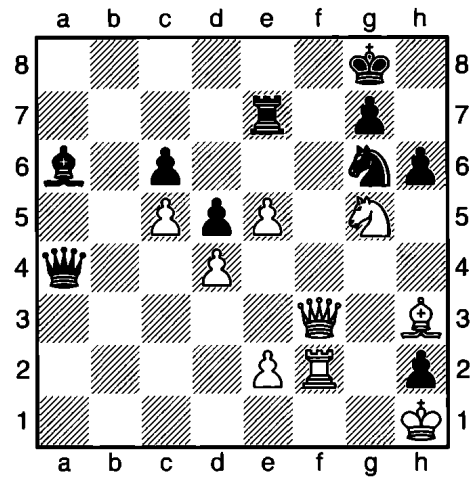
123) Black to play (2 points)



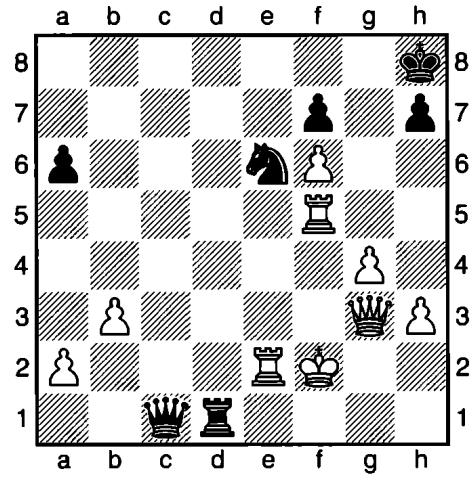
124) White to play (2 points)



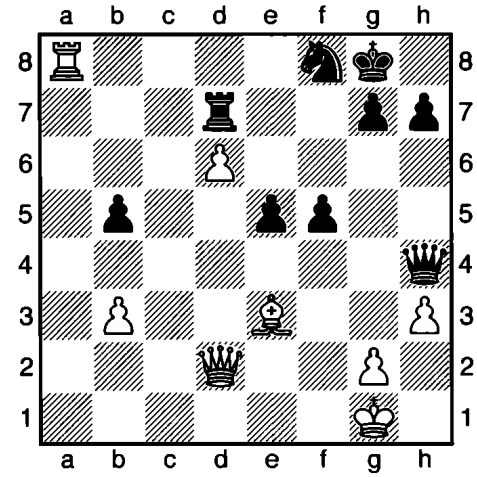
125) White to play (2 points)



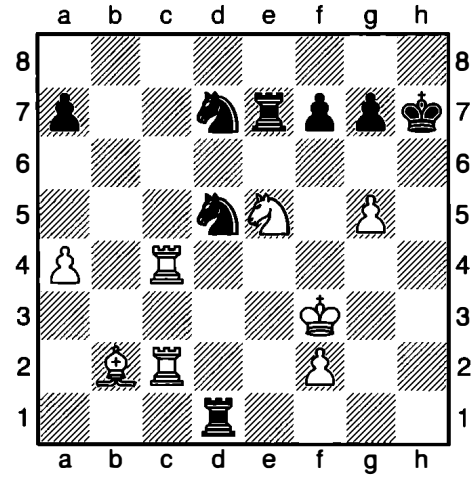
126) White to play (3 points)



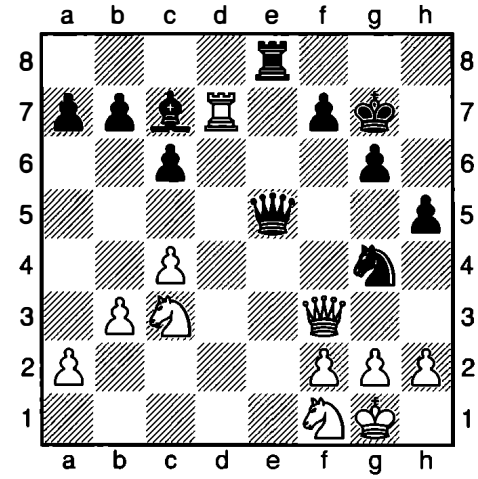
127) White to play (3 points)



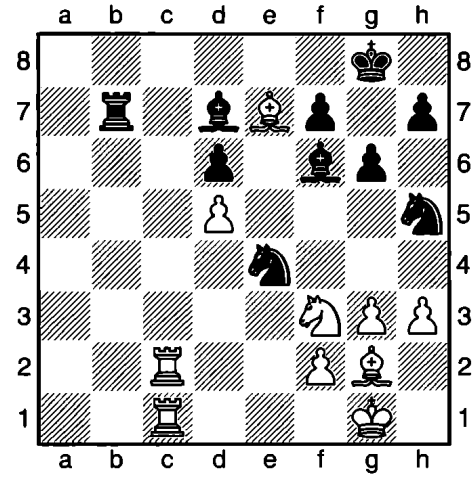
130) White to play (3 points)



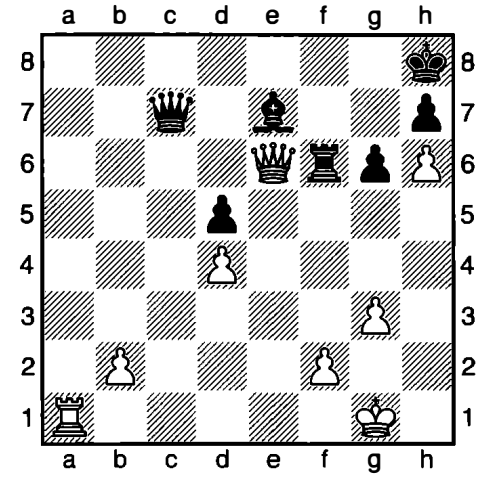
128) White to play (3 points)



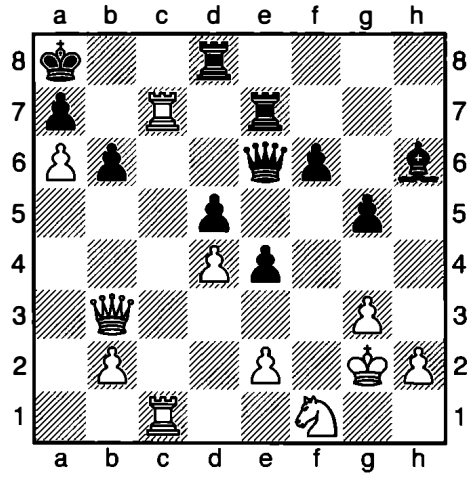
131) Black to play (3 points)



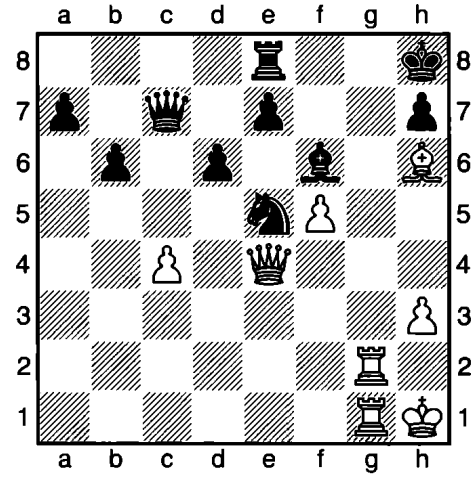
129) White to play (3 points)



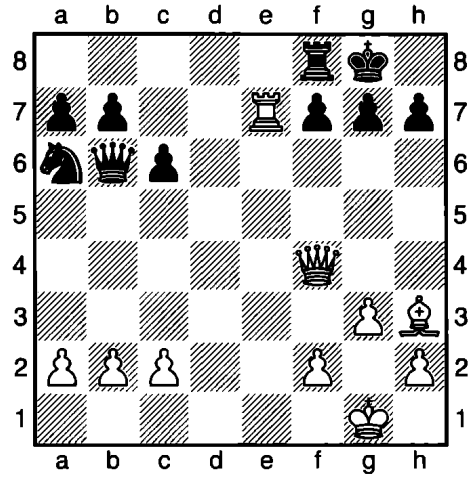
132) White to play (3 points)



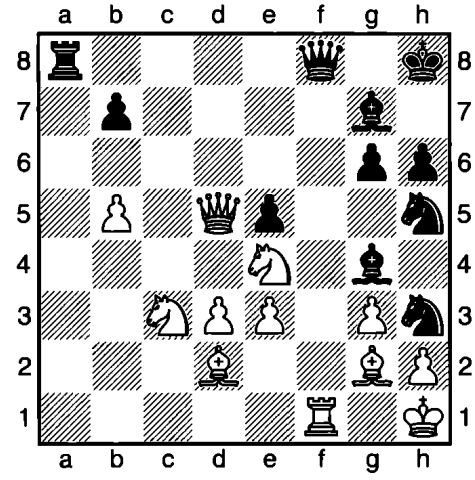
133) White to play (3 points)



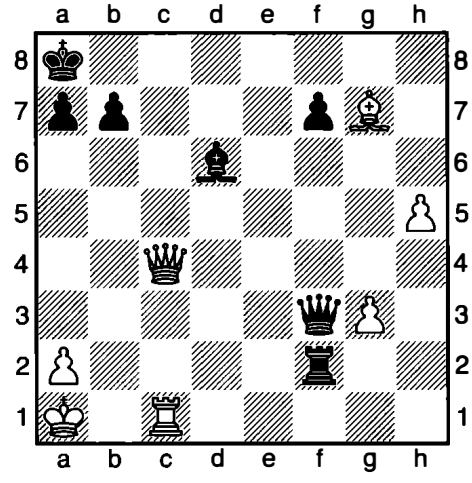
136) White to play (3 points)



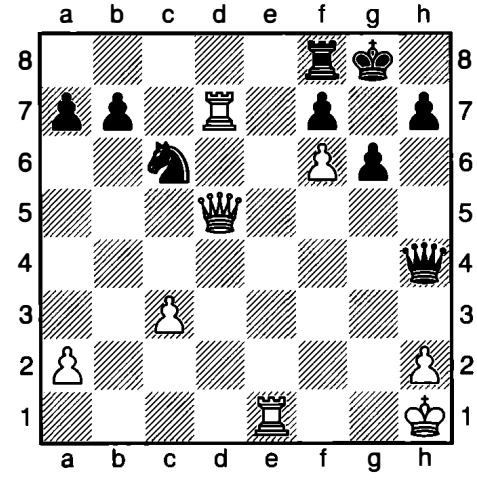
134) White to play (3 points)



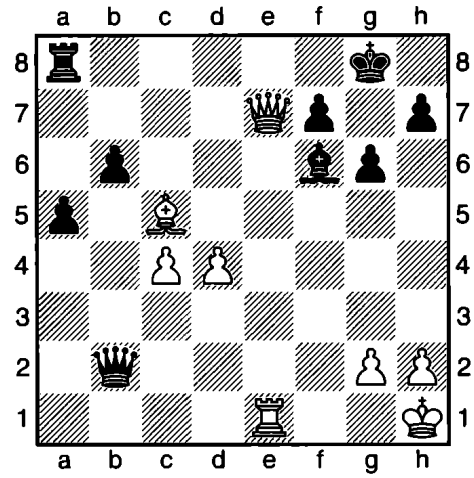
137) Black to play (3 points)



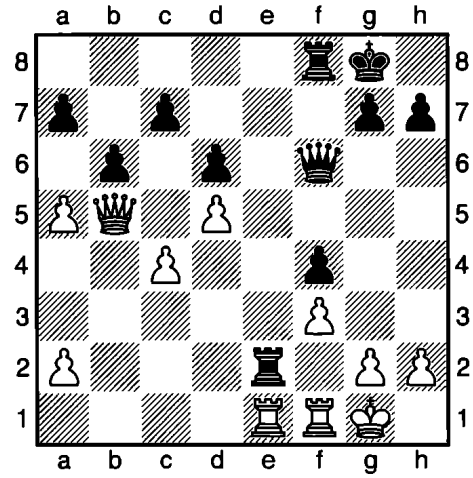
135) White to play (3 points)



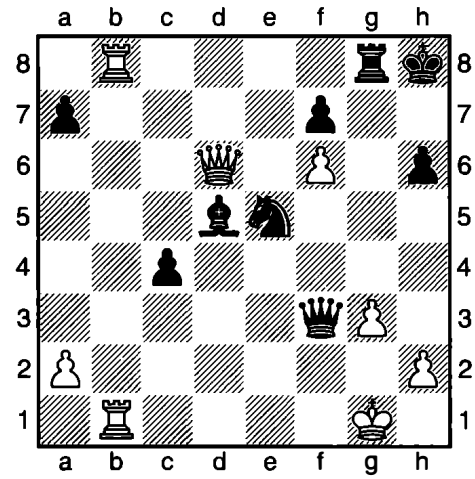
138) White to play (3 points)



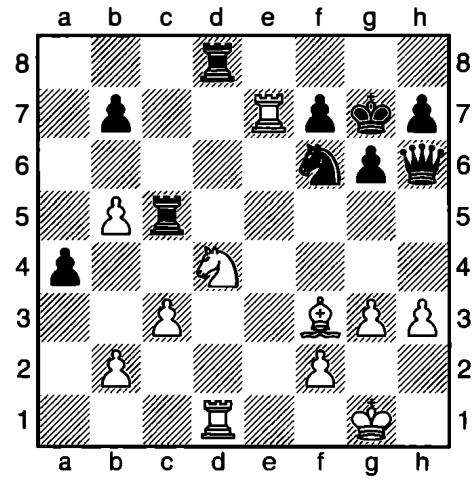
139) White to play (3 points)



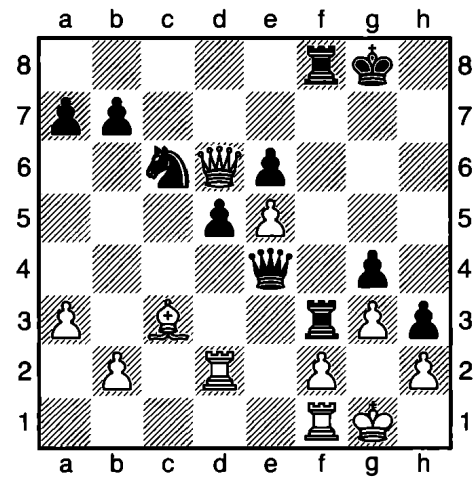
142) Black to play (4 points)



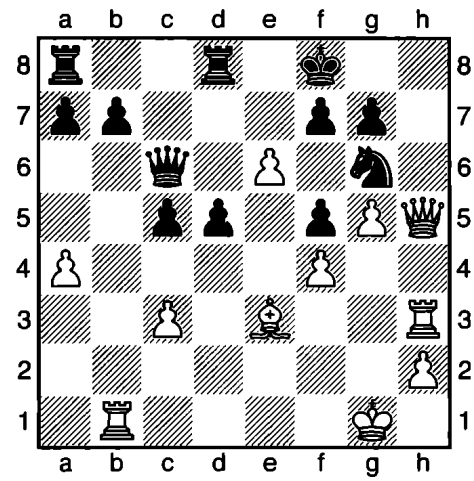
140) White to play (3 points)



143) White to play (4 points)



141) Black to play (4 points)



144) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Back-Rank Mates

91) Thakur – K. Jha
New Delhi 2008

1 ♕f8+! 1-0

1...♖xf8 2 ♖xf8# is a typical back-rank mate, with Black's king obstructed by its own pawns on g7 and h7.

92) B. Schaper – S. Reisch
Germany (team event) 2007/8

1...♕xf2+! 0-1

White is mated after 2 ♔h1 ♕xf1# or 2 ♖xf2 ♖d1#. This is one of the most common back-rank combinations and one of the most frequently overlooked.

93) Appolonov – Vakhlamov
Moscow 2008

1 ♕c8+! 1-0

White clears the way for his rook to reach the back rank after 1...♗xc8 2 ♖e8#.

94) Tkachev – Karpov
Moscow (blitz) 2009

1...♘e3+ 0-1

2 ♔g1/h1 ♖b1+ and mate next move. In this example, the squares on the second rank are covered by enemy pieces rather than blocked by friendly pawns.

95) Rothuis – Coene
Bussum 2008

1 ♕b8+! 1-0

1...♘xb8 2 ♖d8#.

96) Ry. Sokolowski – Pi. Staniszewski
Koszalin 2008

1...♖xf1+! 2 ♔xf1 ♖d1#

97) Barletta – Gioseffi
Saint Vincent 2008

1 ♕xg8+! 1-0

1...♔xg8 2 ♖e8#.

98) Poobalasingam – Likavsky
Tromsø 2008

1...♖e1

Threatening 2...♗e2# or 2...♗d3#. Not, however, 1...♗d3? because 2 ♗e5 blocks the e-file.

2 ♕e5

Now the rook is attacked, so Black must choose the correct square for his bishop.

2...♗e2#

It's mate since the bishop cuts off the queen's attack on the rook.

99) Tvauri – Nippgen
2nd Bundesliga 2008/9

1...♕xd2+! 0-1

2 ♕xd2 ♖b1#.

100) T. Horvath – Vesin
Geneva 2003

1 ♕xf8+! 1-0

1...♔xf8 2 ♖d8#.

101) Loginov – P. Wells
Budapest 1994

1...♕xf3+! 2 ♔g1

Or 2 ♖xf3 ♖c1+ and mate next move.

2...♘h3#

2...♕g2# and 2...♘e2# are just as good.

102) J. Mohammad – Jam. Ahmed
Bangladeshi Ch, Dhaka 2009

1 ♕xf8+! 1-0

1...♔xf8 2 ♖e8#.

103) Keprt – Holeksa
Czech Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♕xg8+! 1-0

1...♔xg8 2 ♖e8#.

104) Rabovszky – K. Kalmar
Aggtelek 2002

1 ♕e5+! 1-0

It's mate after 1...♔g8 2 ♕g7# or 1...♖xe5 2 ♖f8#.

105) Garancovsky – Gerbery
Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♖g8+! 1-0
1...♔xg8 2 ♖b8+ and mate next move.

106) Jenni – S. Bücker
Internet (playchess.com) 2006
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♖xf8 2 ♖xf8#.

107) Külaots – K. Stokke
Gjøvik 2009
1 ♕xg7+! ♖xg7 2 ♖d8+ ♖g8 3 ♖dxg8#
Or 3 ♖gxg8#.

108) Nunn – T.C. Fox
Bristol 1980
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♗h6+ 1-0
After 2...♗g7 3 ♖e8# Black is mated at once, while 2...♔g8 3 ♖e8+ leads to mate next move.

109) Reilhac – Beudaert
French Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♖xf8 2 ♘e7+ ♔h8 3 ♖xf8#.

110) Barle – Cebalo
Bled 2008
1 ♖b8+
1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♖b8+ is equally good.
1...♖f8 2 ♖h8+! 1-0
2...♔xh8 3 ♖xf8#.

111) Pingitzer – Jusić
Stockerau 1992
1 ♕g8+!
1 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 2 ♕g8+! works just as well.
1...♔xg8 2 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 3 ♖xe8#

112) J. Ramirez Garcia – Bolado
Madrid Ch 2008/9
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 (1...♔h8 2 ♕xf8#) 2 ♖a8+ ♖f8 3 ♗c4+ ♔h8 4 ♖xf8#. This is a deeper version of the typical 'queen sacrifice on f7' idea first seen (with reversed colours) in Position 92.

113) Ulianin – Rakhmanov
St Petersburg 2009
1...♕d4+! 0-1
White is mated after 2 ♔h1 ♕xh4+ 3 ♔g1 ♕h2+ 4 ♔f1 ♕h1#, 2 ♔f1 ♕f2# or 2 ♗xd4 ♖xe1#.

114) C. Hess – G. Marten
Bad Homburg 2009
1 ♕f6+ 1-0
1...exf6 (1...♔g8 2 ♕g7#) 2 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 3 ♖xe8#.

115) Kirszenberg – Autran
Calvi 2005
1...♕e3+! 2 ♘f2
2 ♖xe3 ♖f1# and 2 ♔h1 ♕xe1# lead to immediate mate.
2...♕xf2+ 0-1
3 ♔h1 ♕f1+ 4 ♖xf1 ♖xf1#.

116) Noroozi – N. Ryahi
Teheran 2005
1 ♕xf6! 1-0
White threatens 2 ♕g7#, and the lines 1...♕f8 2 ♗xf8 ♔xf8 3 ♕xf7#, 1...♘xh6 2 ♕xd8+ ♔g7 3 ♖e7+ ♘f7 4 ♖xf7+ ♔h6 5 ♖xh7# and 1...♕xf6 2 ♖e8# all lead to a quick mate.

117) A. Kovaliov – Stević
Calvia Olympiad 2004
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♗xg7 2 ♖xe8+ ♗f8 3 ♖xf8#.

118) Z. Lanka – Nemet
Rostock 2002
1...♕a1+! 0-1
2 ♔xa1 ♖xc1#.

119) Ho. Ledesma – W. Diaz
Buenos Aires 2002
1...♕xf1+! 0-1
2 ♔xf1 ♘d2+ 3 ♔g1 ♖e1#.

120) Joh. Bourne – Parkin
British League (4NCL) 2000/1
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
After 1...♖xf7 2 ♖d8+ White mates in two more moves.

121) Degraeve – L. Arnold
French Team Ch 2001
1 ♕g7+! 1-0
1...♖xg7 2 fxg7+ ♔g8 3 ♖e8#.

122) Mastrovasilis – Stavrakakis
Thessaloniki 2001
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♗d6+ ♔g8 3 ♖e8#

123) N. Bojković – M. Šćekić
Serbian Ch, Kragujevac 2000
1...♕xf4+! 0-1
2 ♖xf4 (2 ♔b1 ♖xd1#) 2...♗e3+ 3 ♔b1 ♖xd1#.

124) Helstroffer – Geske
Bad Zwesten 2006
1 ♗d5+ ♗f7
1...♖f7 is met by 2 ♕e8# or 2 ♕d8#.
2 ♕xf7+! 1-0
2...♖xf7 3 ♖e8#.

125) Frih – Calas
French Team Ch 2003/4
1 ♕xf7+! ♖xf7 2 ♖c8+ ♗f8 3 ♖xf8#

126) Kharashuta – Ali. Balaian
European Women's Ch, St Petersburg 2009
1 ♗e6+ 1-0
1...♔h8 2 ♕f8+ ♘xf8 3 ♖xf8# and 1...♖xe6 2 ♕f7+ ♔h8 3 ♕f8+ ♘xf8 4 ♖xf8# both lead to a back-rank mate.

127) Ja. Szabo – An. Balazs
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♕b8+ ♖d8
1...♘d8 allows White to mate immediately by 2 ♖e8#.
2 ♕xd8+! 1-0
2...♘xd8 3 ♖e8#.

128) Timman – Krivoshei
2nd Bundesliga 2007/8
1 ♖h4+ ♔g8 2 ♖c8+ ♘f8
2...♖e8 3 ♖xe8+ ♘f8 4 ♗a3 leads to mate in a few moves.
3 ♖xf8+! 1-0
3...♔xf8 4 ♖h8#.

129) N. Gasparian – Aghabekian
Armenian Women's Ch, Erevan 2008
1 ♖c8+ ♗e8
1...♔g7 2 ♗f8+ and 1...♗xc8 2 ♖xc8+ ♔g7 3 ♗f8+ lead to basically the same mate.
2 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 3 ♗f8+ 1-0
Followed by 4 ♗h6#.

130) T. Willemze – V. Grabliauskas
European Clubs Cup, Ohrid 2009
1 ♕d5+ ♖f7
1...♔h8 2 ♖xf8#.
2 ♖xf8+ 1-0
2...♔xf8 3 ♕a8+ and mate next move.

131) T. Forster – B. Konig
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4
1...♕xh2+!
A spectacular and slightly unusual queen sacrifice.
2 ♘xh2 ♖e1+ 0-1
3 ♘f1 ♗h2+ 4 ♔h1 ♖xf1#.

132) Lupulescu – L. Filip
Romanian Ch, Eforie Nord 2009
1 ♖a8+ ♖f8 2 ♕f6+! 1-0
Mate follows after 2...♗xf6 3 ♖xf8# or 2...♔g8 3 ♕g7#.

133) Y. Demina – Yul. Yakovich
European Women's Ch, St Petersburg 2009
1 ♕xd5+! 1-0
The queen sacrifice forces a black piece away from control of c8, so that 1...♖xd5 and 1...♕xd5 are both met by 2 ♖c8+ and mate next move.

134) Giri – R. Picard
Bussum 2009
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 2 ♖e8+ ♖f8 3 ♗e6+ ♔h8 4 ♖xf8#.

135) E. Andreev – Aleskerov
Cherepovets 2005
1 ♕c8+ ♗b8 2 ♕xb8+! 1-0
2...♔xb8 3 ♗e5+ ♔a8 4 ♖c8#.

136) U. Krause – P. Rahls
2nd Bundesliga 2004/5

1 ♖g8+! ♖xg8 2 ♖xg8+ 1-0
2...♔xg8 3 ♕a8+ ♔f7 4 ♕f8#.

137) Adla – Goasdoue
French Team Ch 2003/4

1...♕xf1+! 0-1
2 ♗xf1 ♗f3+ 3 ♗g2 ♖a1+ and Black mates in two more moves.

138) Apicella – D. Ionescu
Paris Ch 2004

1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 2 ♖e8+ ♖f8 3 ♖g7+ ♔h8 4 ♖xf8#.

139) O. Orel – M. Kovač
Slovenian Ch, Dobrna 2002

1 ♕e8+! ♖xe8
1...♔g7 2 ♗f8+ followed by ♗h6+ leads to the same mate.

1-0
Black resigned without waiting for 2 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 3 ♗f8+ and 4 ♗h6#.

140) A. Ledger – Cherniaev
Hastings (weekend) 2000

1 ♖xg8+ ♔xg8 2 ♕f8+! 1-0
Black is mated after 2...♔h7 3 ♕g7# or 2...♔xf8 3 ♖b8#.

141) N. Bojković – L. Zaitseva
Yugoslav Team Ch, Cetinje 1992

Black could have mated with the beautiful sequence **1...♖xg3+! 2 fxg3** (2 hxg3 ♕g2#) **2...♕h1+! 3 ♔xh1 ♖xf1#**. Instead, she continued with the prosaic **1...♖e8** and White resigned (**0-1**) since, although this doesn't lead to mate, White faces heavy material loss.

142) Mate. Hoffmann – Spal
Klatovy 2000

1...♕d4+ 2 ♔h1 ♕f2! 0-1
Black's spectacular queen move threatens 3...♕xg2# and leads to a quick mate after 3 ♖xe2 ♕xf1#, 3 ♖g1 ♖xe1 or 3 ♖xf2 ♖xe1+ 4 ♖f1 ♖xf1#.

143) J. Wehner – Alexandrovsky
Germany (team event) 2005/6

1 ♘e6+ ♔h8
1...♔g8 2 ♖xd8+ and White mates in two more moves.

2 ♖xd8+ ♘g8 3 ♖xg8+! 1-0
3...♔xg8 4 ♖e8+ ♕f8 5 ♖xf8#.

144) Jasnikowski – Mat. Westphal
2nd Bundesliga 2000/1

1 ♖xb7!
Threatening 2 ♕h8+ ♘xh8 3 ♖xh8#.

1...♕xb7
Other moves are no better; for example, 1...♔g8 2 ♕h7+ ♔f8 3 ♕h8+ ♘xh8 4 ♖xh8#.

2 ♗xc5+ ♔e8
Or 2...♔g8 3 ♕h7#.

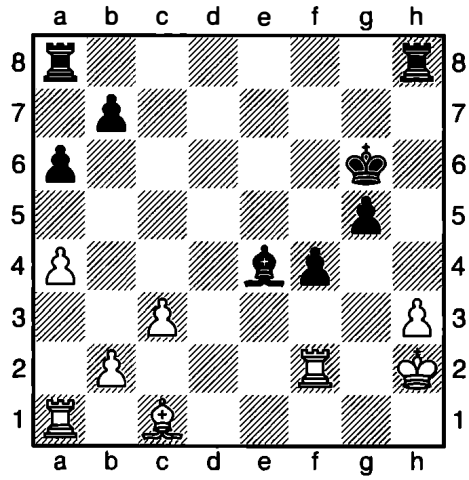
3 ♕h8+! 1-0
Mate follows after either 3...♘f8 4 ♕xf8# or 3...♘xh8 4 ♖xh8#.

Score-Chart for Back-Rank Mates

Position number	Points	Score
91	1	
92	1	
93	1	
94	1	
95	1	
96	1	
97	1	
98	1	
99	1	
100	1	
101	1	
102	1	
103	1	
104	1	
105	1	
106	1	
107	2	
108	2	
109	2	
110	2	
111	2	
112	2	
113	2	
114	2	
115	2	
116	2	
117	2	
118	2	
119	2	
120	2	
121	2	
122	2	
123	2	
124	2	
125	2	
126	3	
127	3	
128	3	
129	3	
130	3	
131	3	
132	3	
133	3	
134	3	
135	3	
136	3	
137	3	
138	3	
139	3	
140	3	
141	4	
142	4	
143	4	
144	5	
Total	**116**	

3 Mate in the Endgame

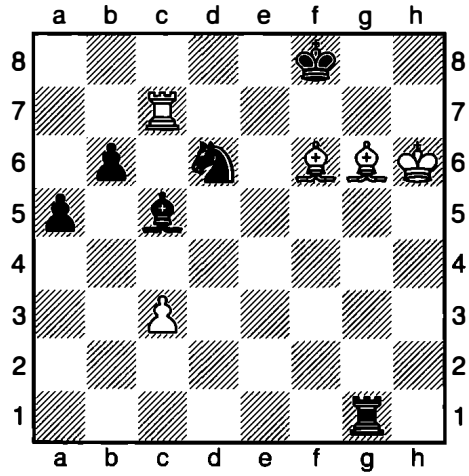
One of the great chess myths is that there are few tactical possibilities in the endgame. This is simply wrong; endgames contain just as many tactics as the other phases of the game. It's true that direct mating attacks are somewhat less likely, since there's less material to play with, but mating chances nevertheless do arise. Moreover, since players don't expect to be mated in the endgame, they often take fewer defensive precautions and this allows the vigilant attacker to strike.



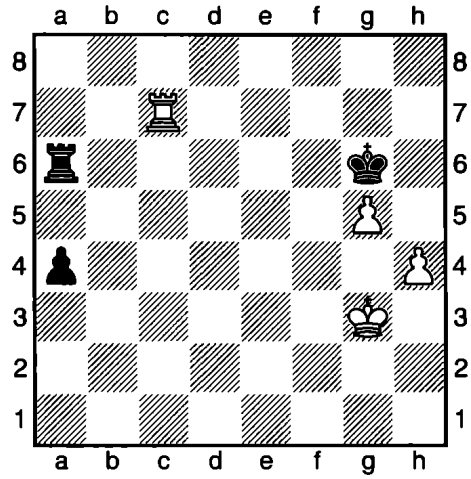
Z. Djukić – Pandurević
Bizovac 2003

Here Black played **1...♖xh3+!** and White resigned (**0-1**) since mate is forced after 2 ♔xh3 ♖h8+ 3 ♔g4 ♖h4#. The final position is very attractive, with all Black's pieces except the queenside pawns playing a role.

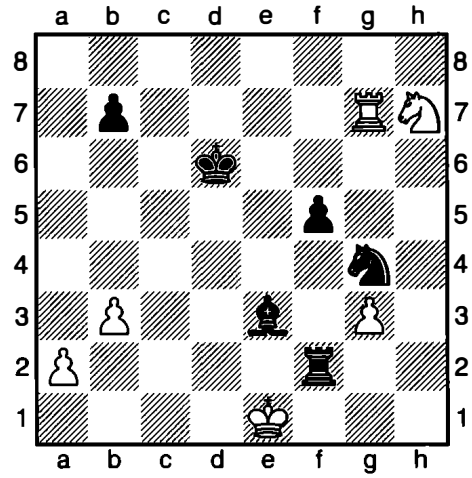
After solving the 90 exercises in this chapter, you will be well prepared to strike just when your opponent least expects it!



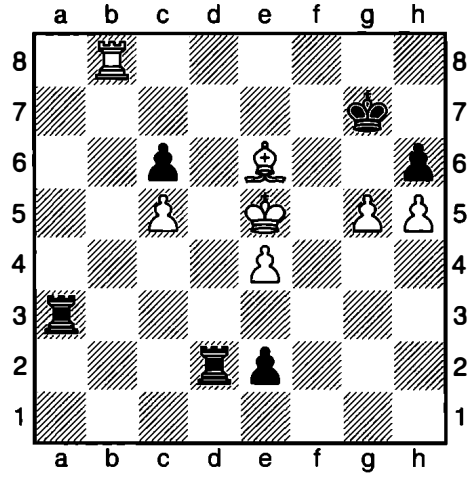
145) White to play (1 point)



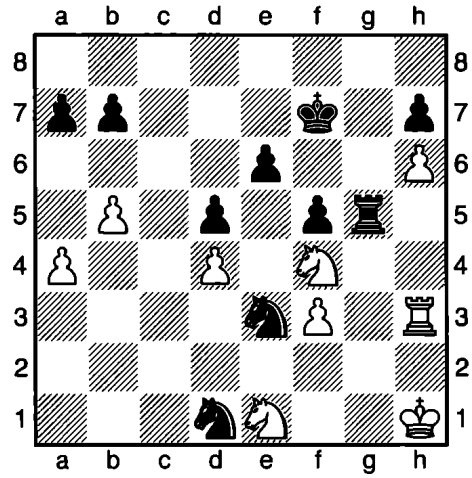
146) White to play (1 point)



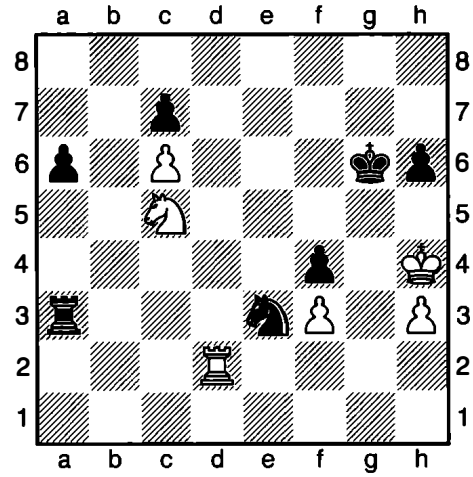
147) Black to play (1 point)



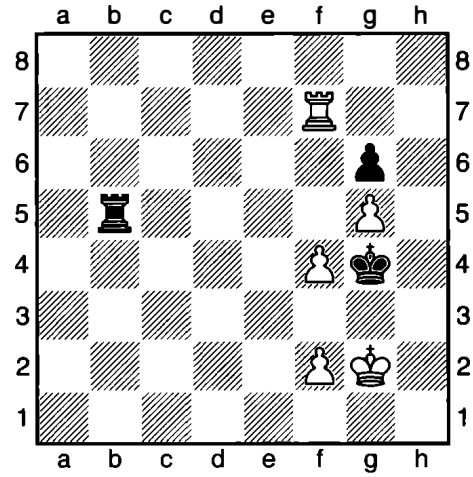
148) White to play (1 point)



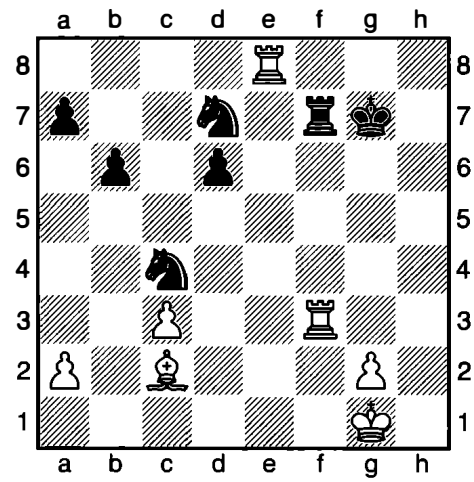
149) Black to play (1 point)



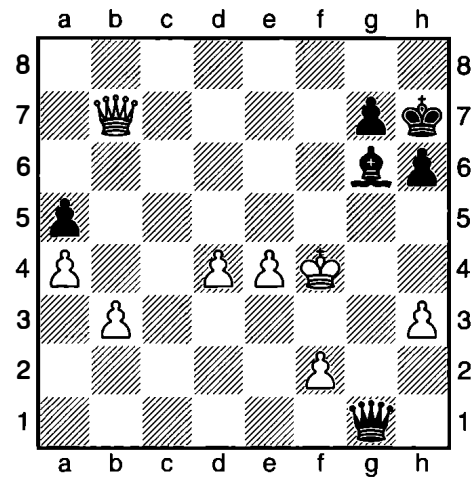
150) Black to play (1 point)



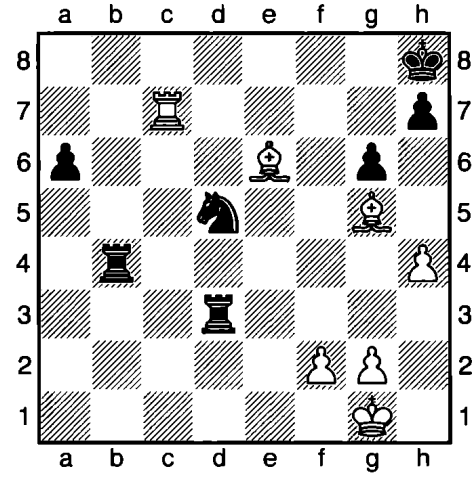
151) White to play (1 point)



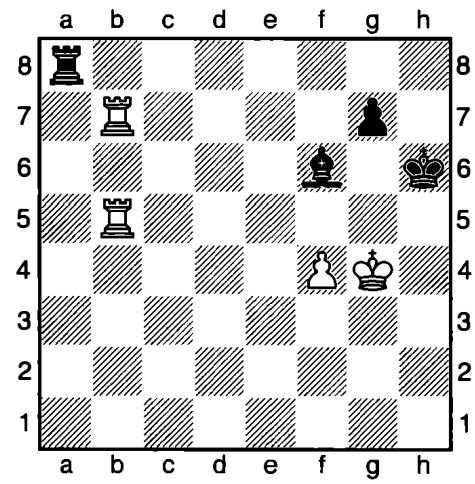
152) White to play (1 point)



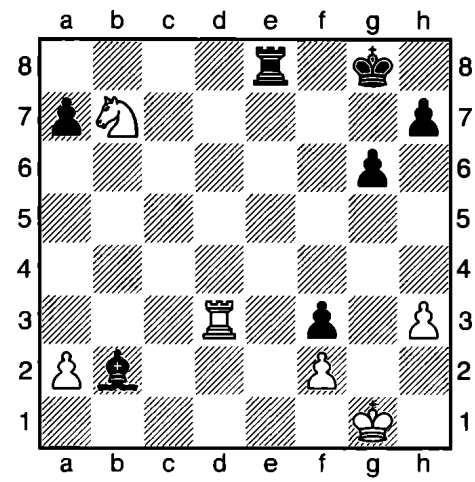
153) Black to play (1 point)



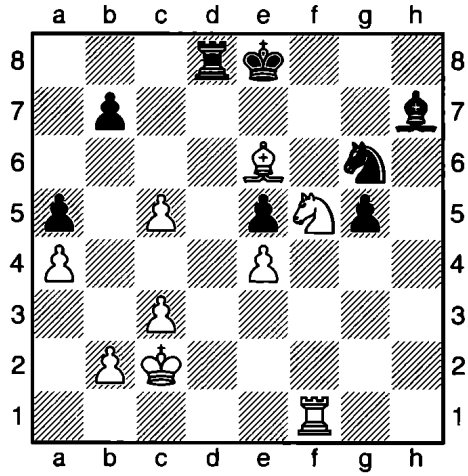
154) White to play (1 point)



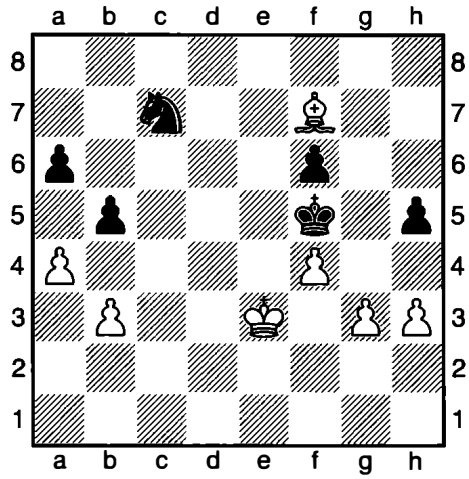
155) White to play (1 point)



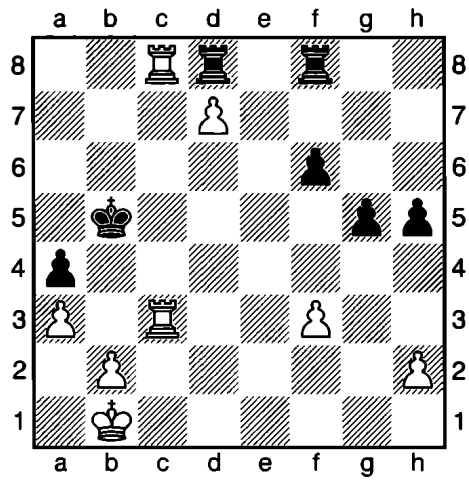
156) Black to play (1 point)



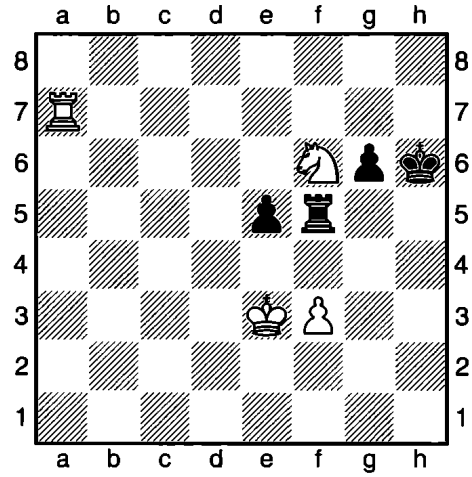
157) White to play (1 point)



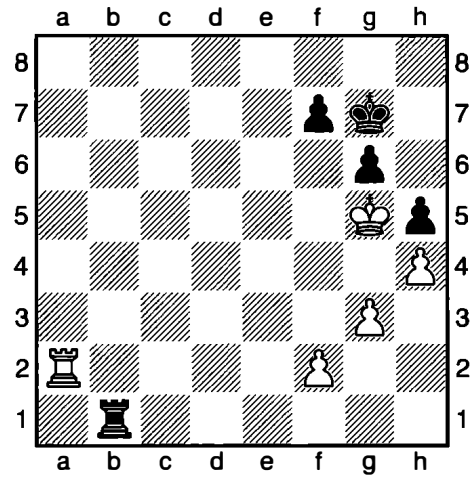
158) White to play (1 point)



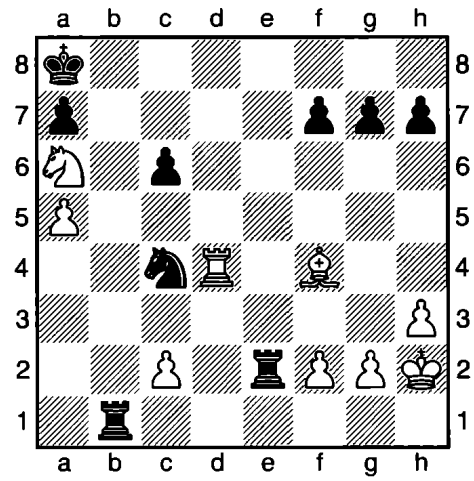
159) White to play (1 point)



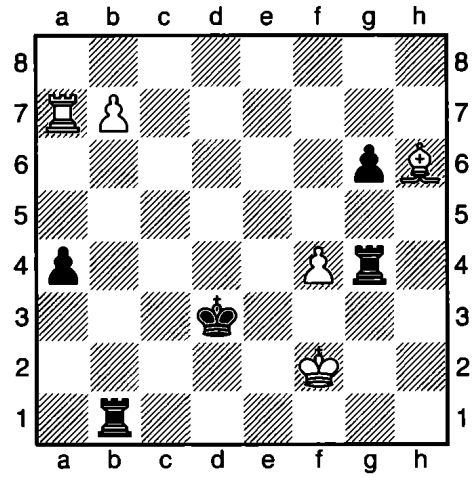
160) White to play (1 point)



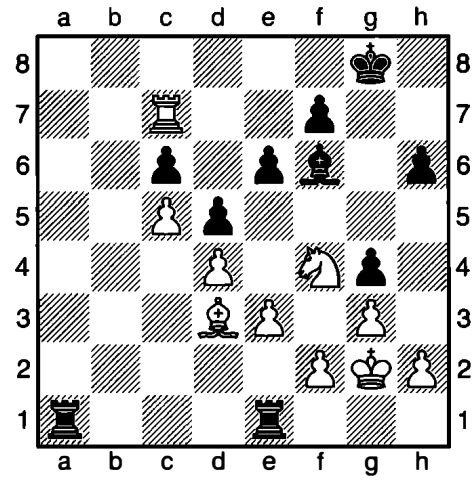
161) Black to play (1 point)



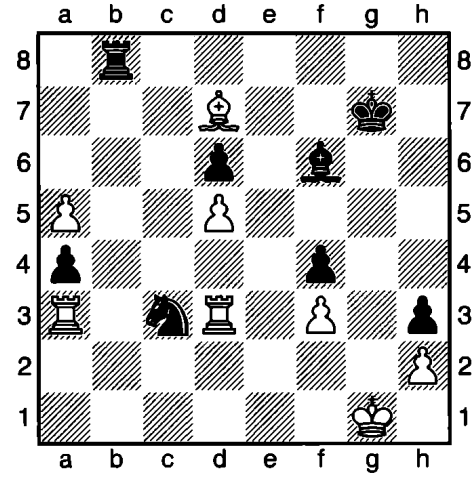
162) White to play (1 point)



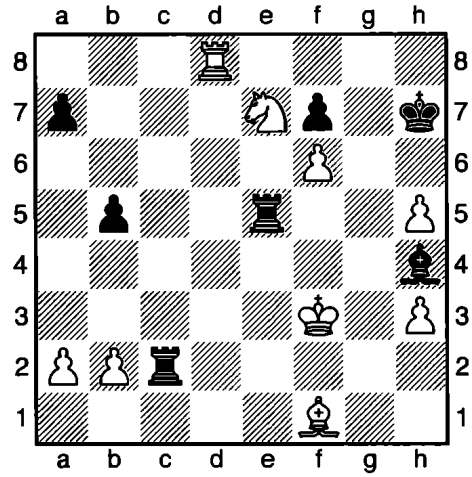
163) Black to play (1 point)



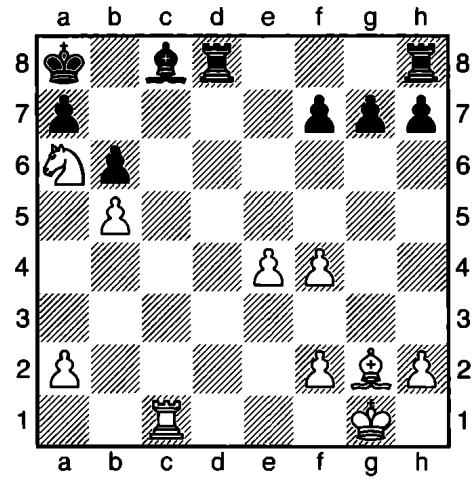
164) White to play (2 points)



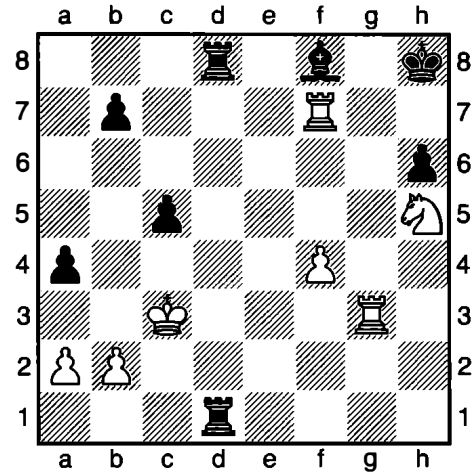
165) Black to play (2 points)



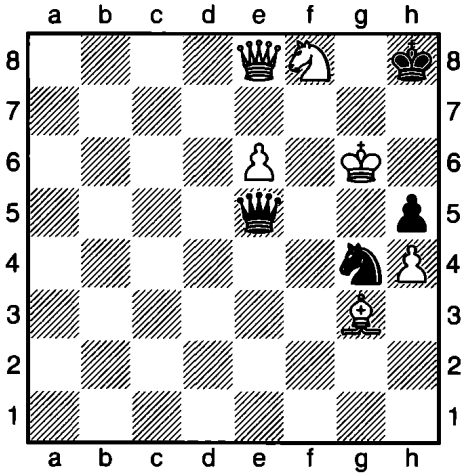
166) Black to play (2 points)



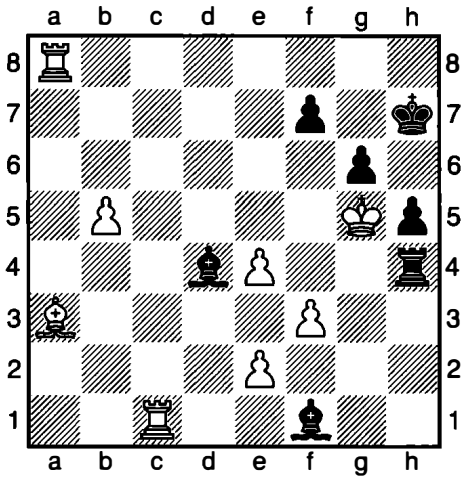
167) White to play (2 points)



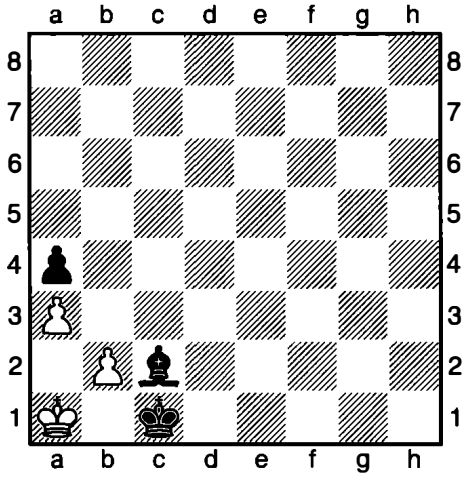
168) White to play (2 points)



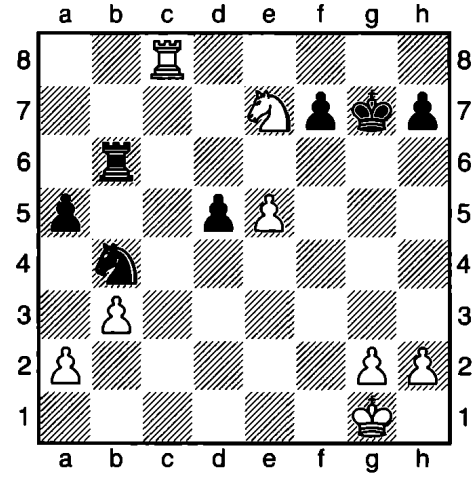
169) Black to play (2 points)



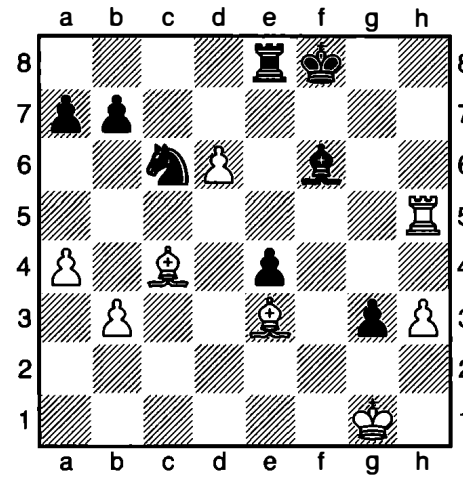
170) Black to play (2 points)



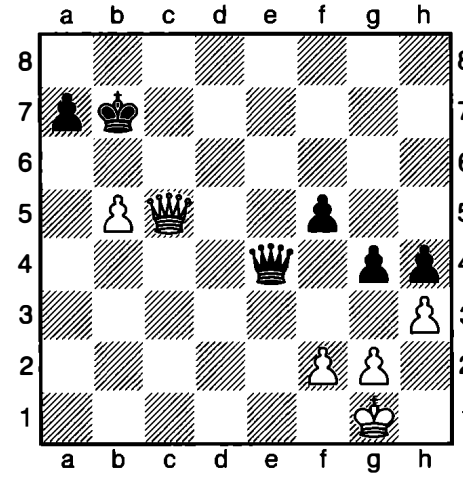
171) Black to play (2 points)



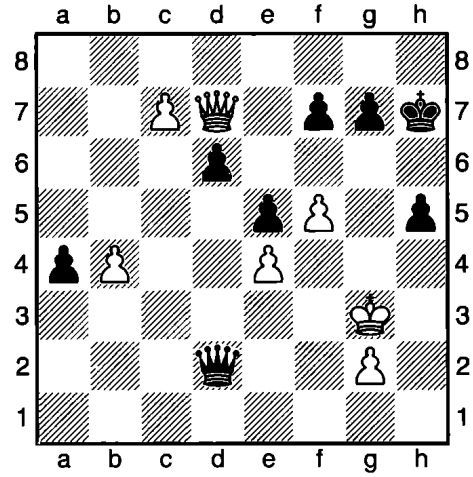
172) White to play (2 points)



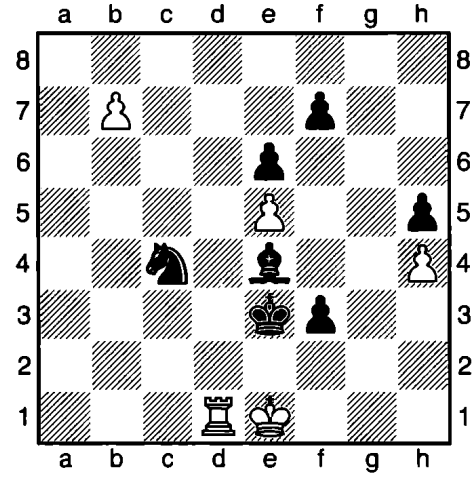
173) White to play (2 points)



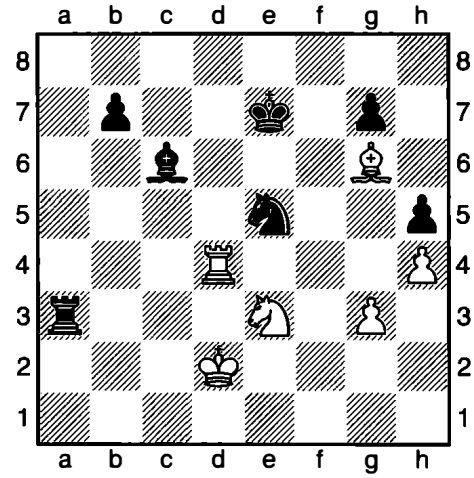
174) Black to play (2 points)



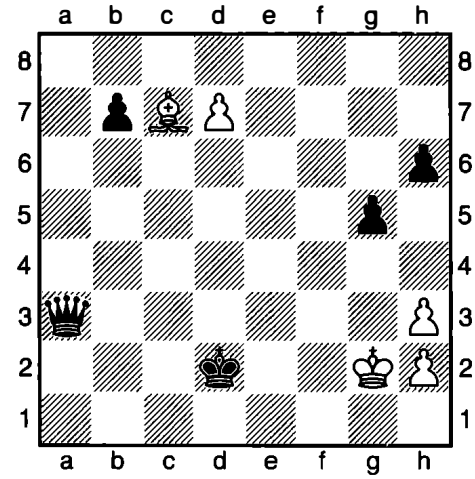
175) Black to play (2 points)



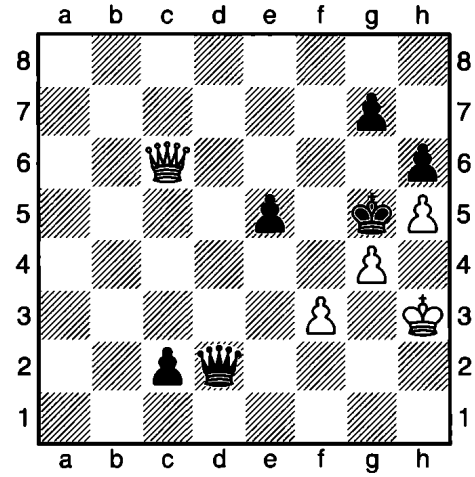
178) Black to play (2 points)



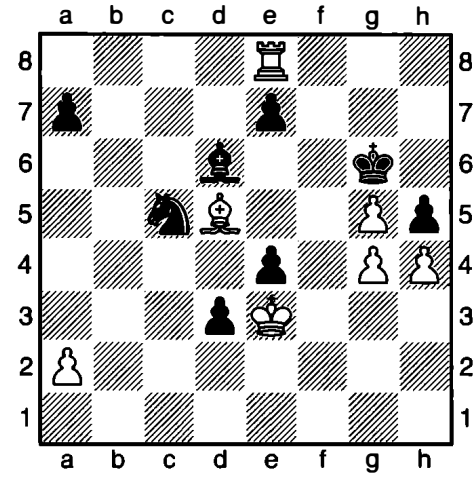
176) White to play (2 points)



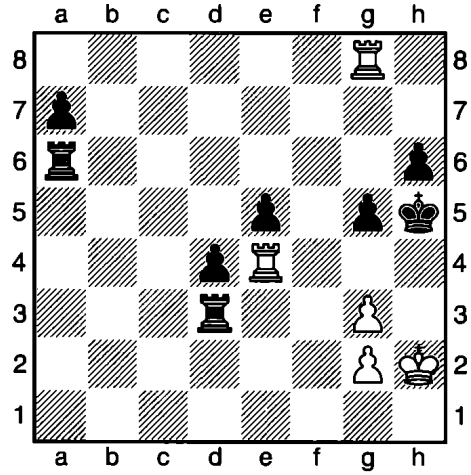
179) Black to play (2 points)



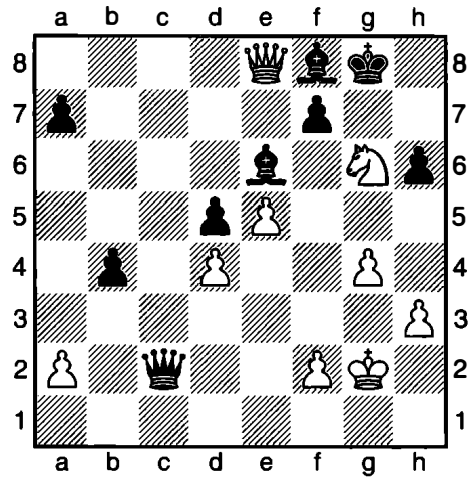
177) White to play (2 points)



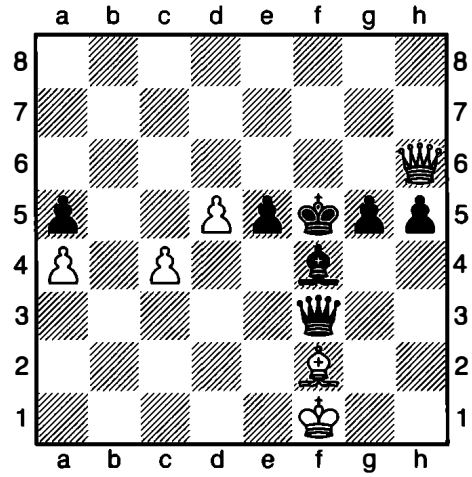
180) White to play (2 points)



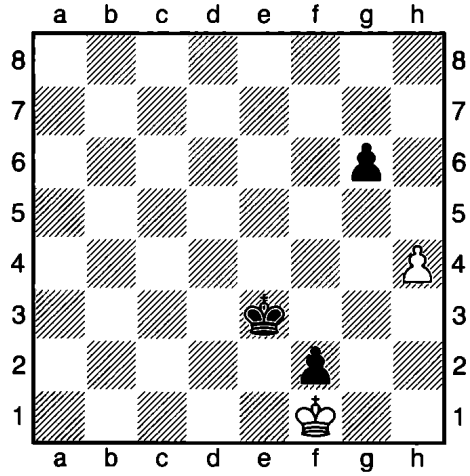
181) White to play (2 points)



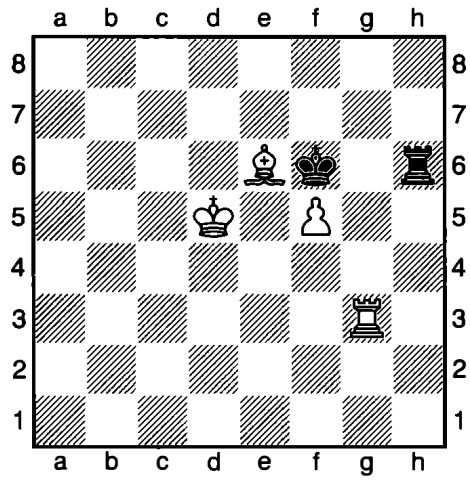
182) White to play (2 points)



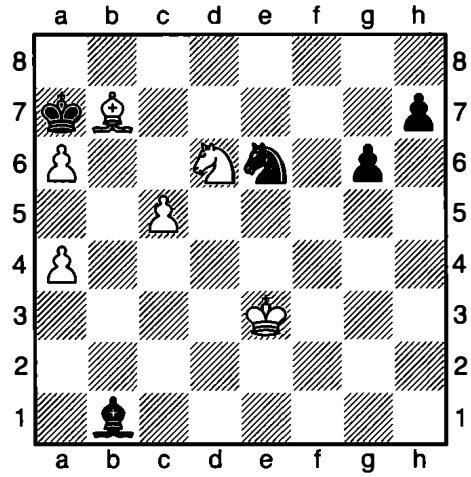
183) White to play (2 points)



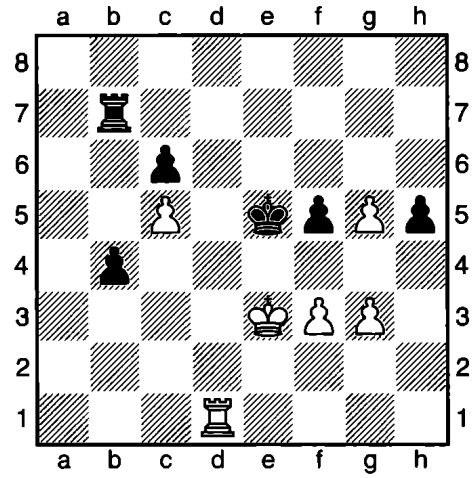
184) Black to play (2 points)



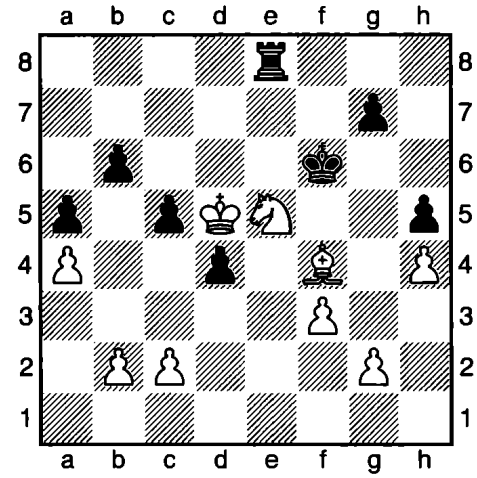
185) White to play (2 points)



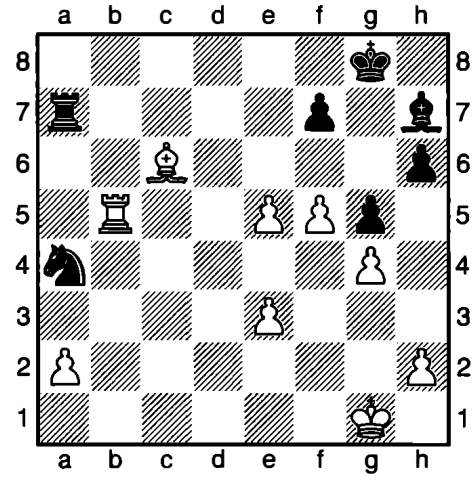
186) White to play (2 points)



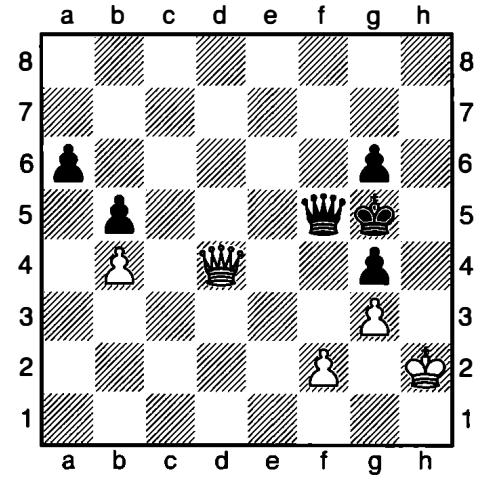
187) White to play (2 points)



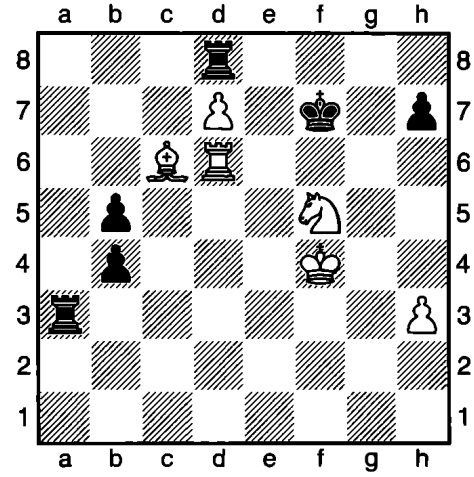
190) White to play (2 points)



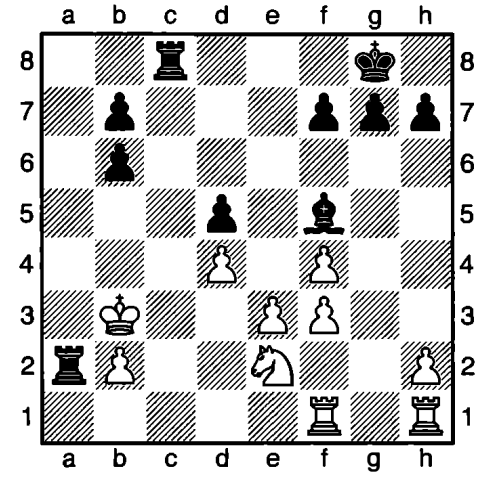
188) White to play (2 points)



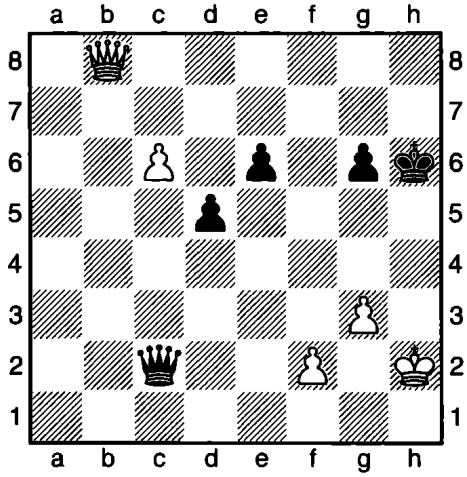
191) White to play (2 points)



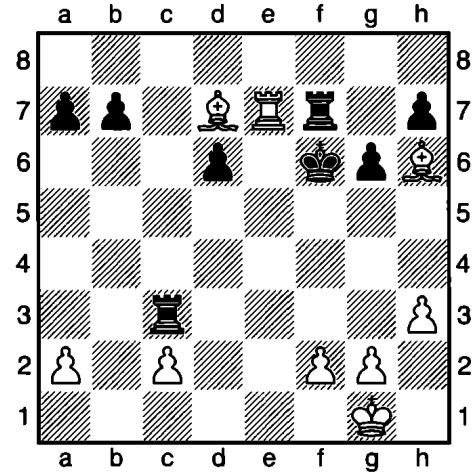
189) White to play (2 points)



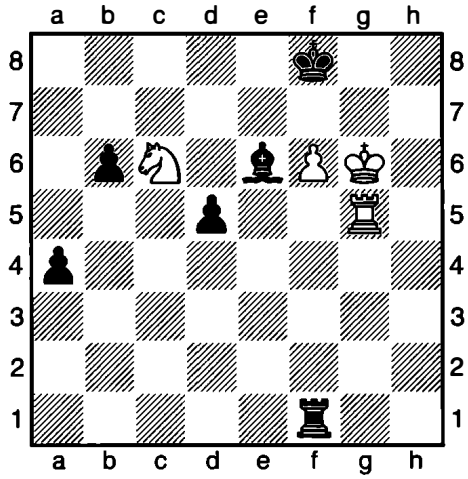
192) Black to play (2 points)



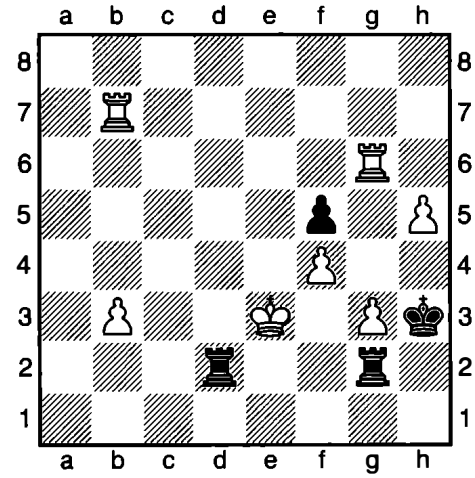
193) White to play (2 points)



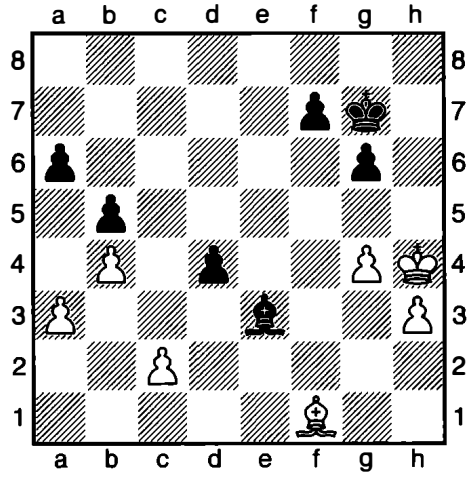
196) White to play (2 points)



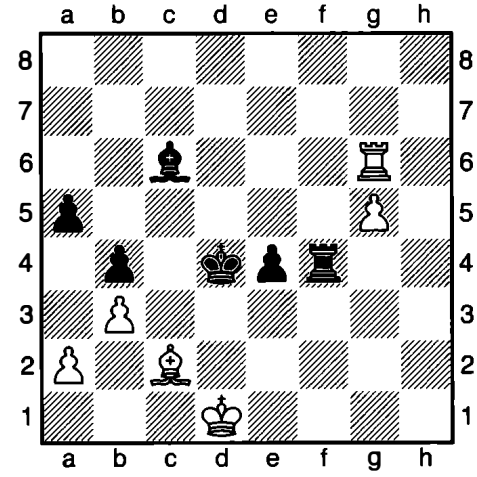
194) Black to play (2 points)



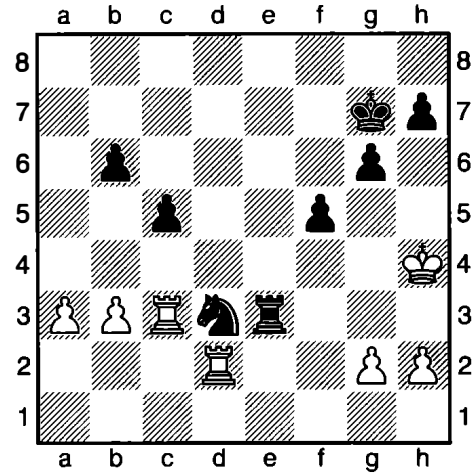
197) Black to play (3 points)



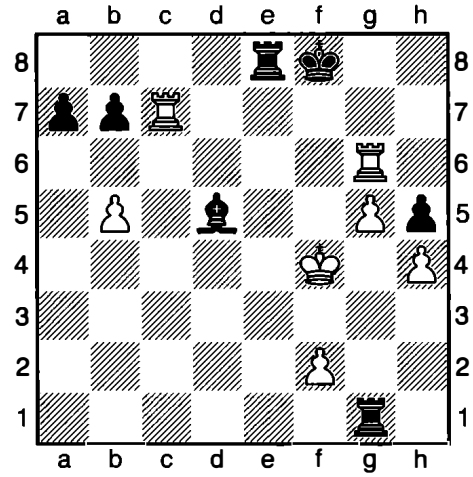
195) Black to play (2 points)



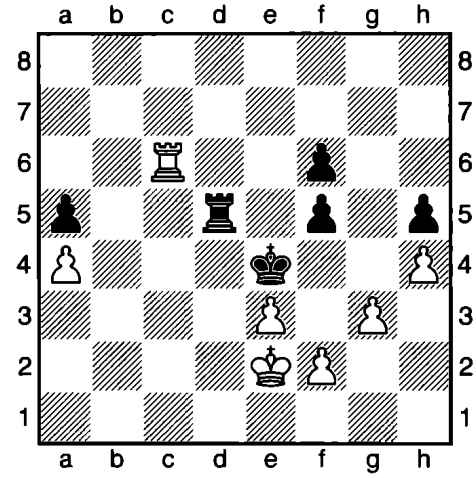
198) Black to play (3 points)



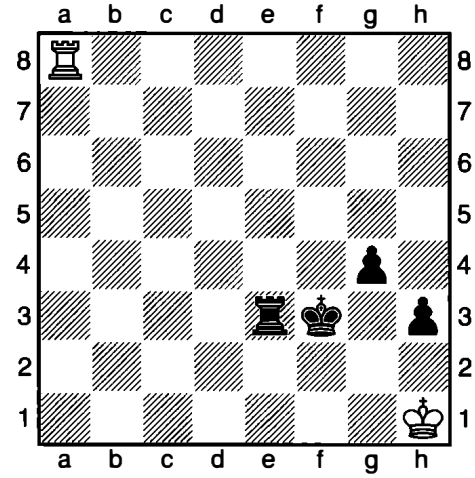
199) Black to play (3 points)



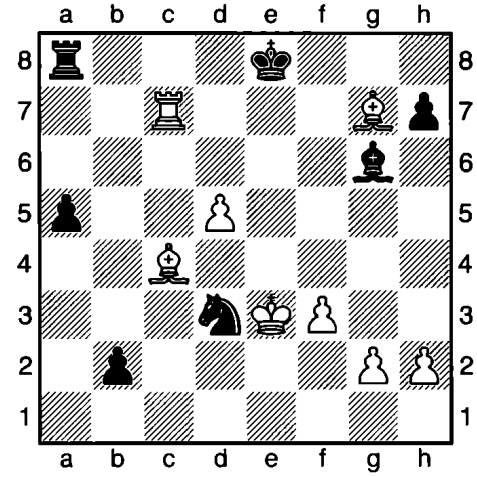
202) Black to play (3 points)



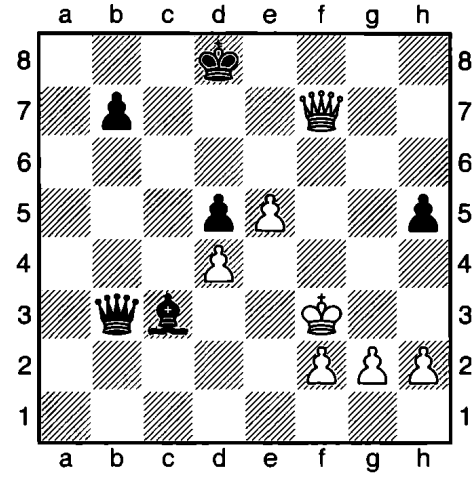
200) White to play (3 points)



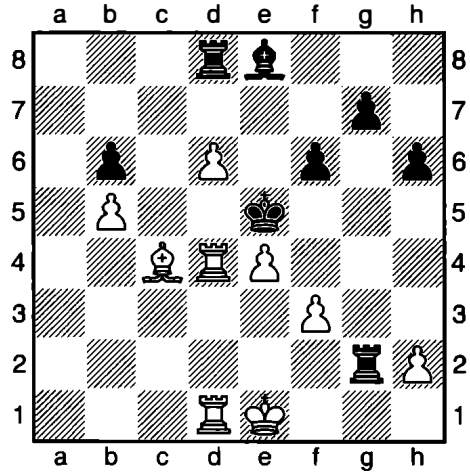
203) Black to play (3 points)



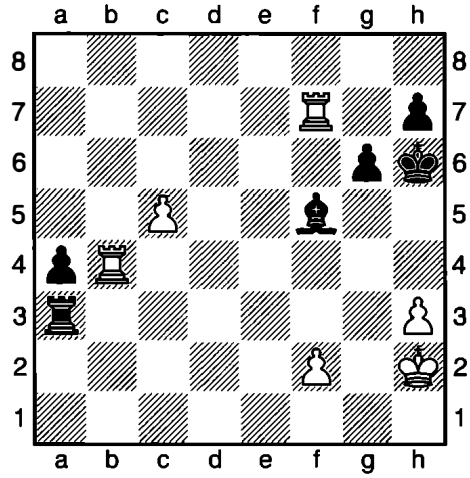
201) White to play (3 points)



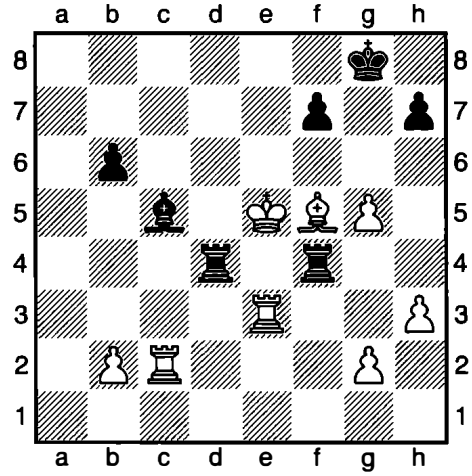
204) Black to play (3 points)



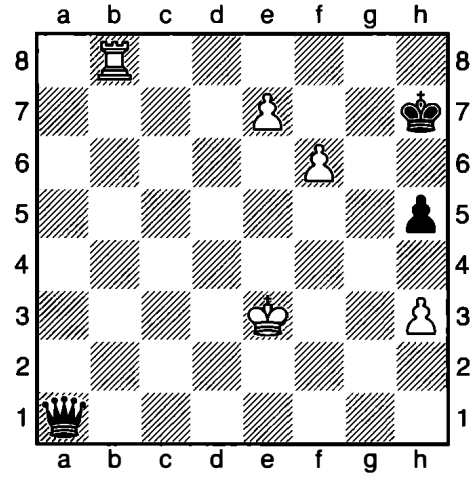
205) White to play (3 points)



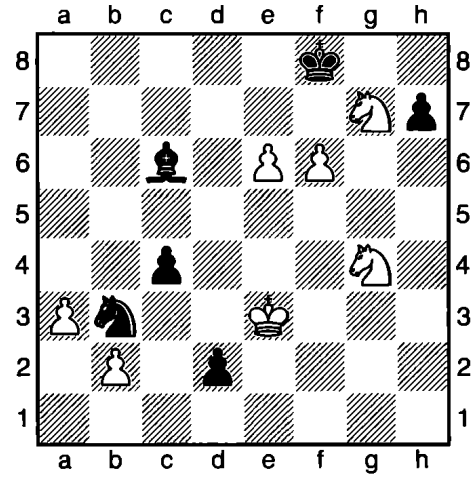
206) White to play (3 points)



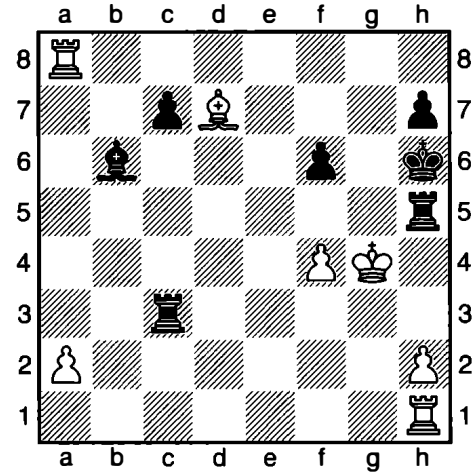
207) Black to play (3 points)



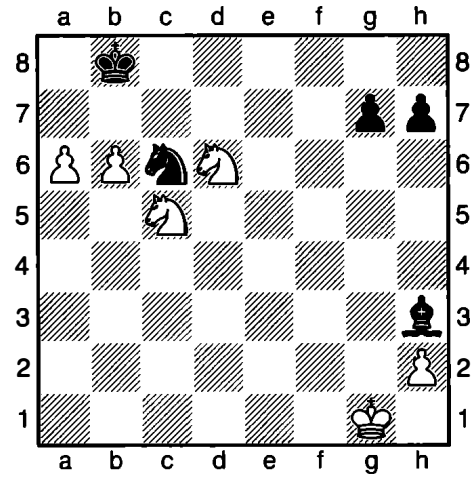
208) White to play (3 points)



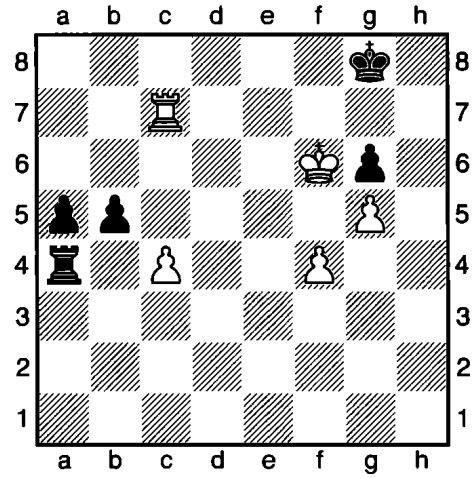
209) White to play (3 points)



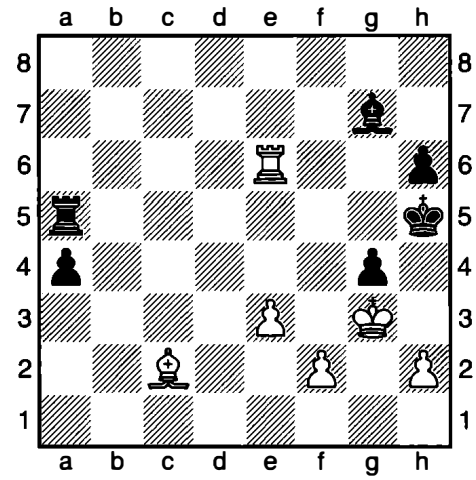
210) Black to play (3 points)



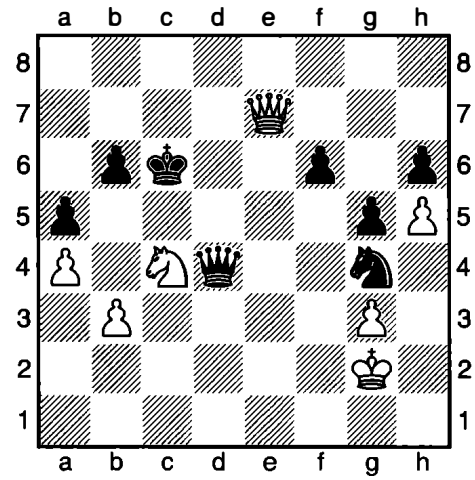
211) White to play (3 points)



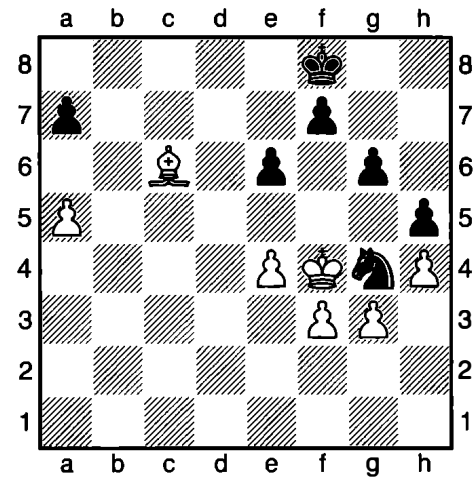
214) White to play (3 points)



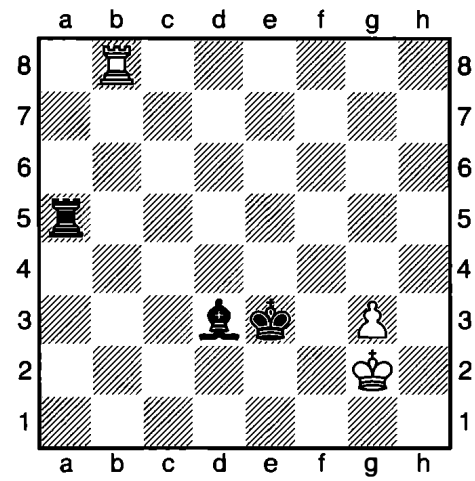
212) White to play (3 points)



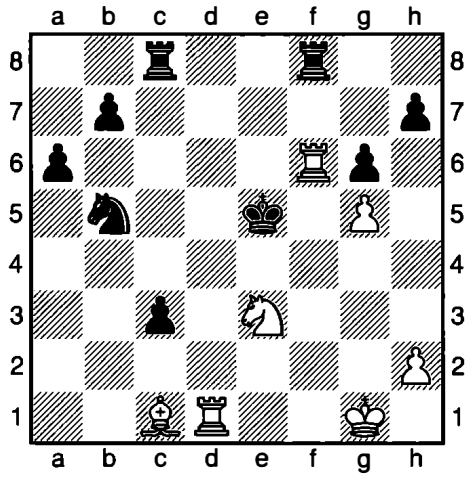
215) Black to play (3 points)



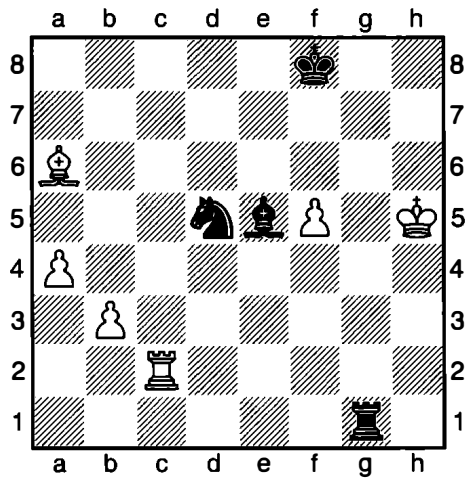
213) Black to play (3 points)



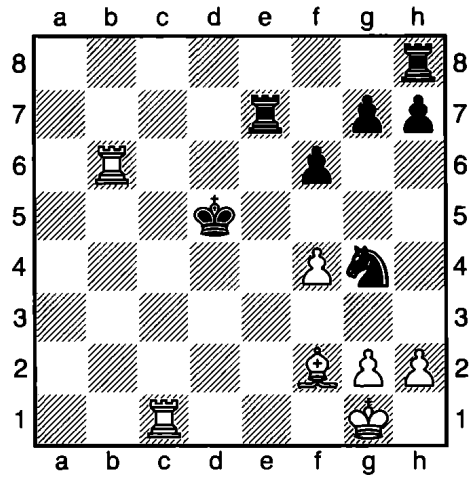
216) Black to play (3 points)



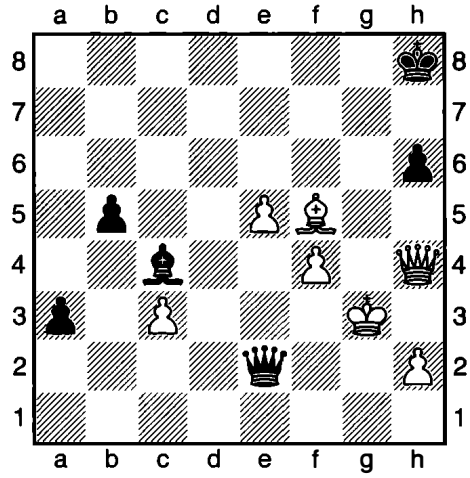
217) White to play (3 points)



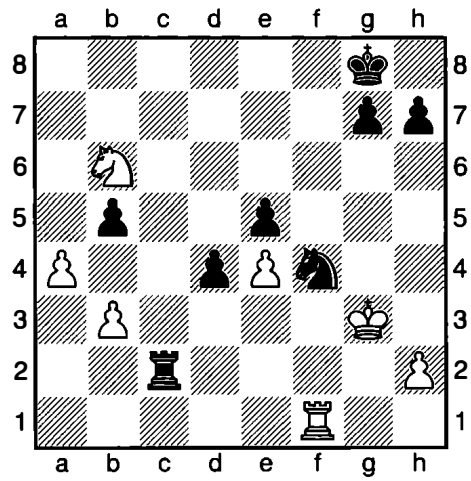
218) Black to play (3 points)



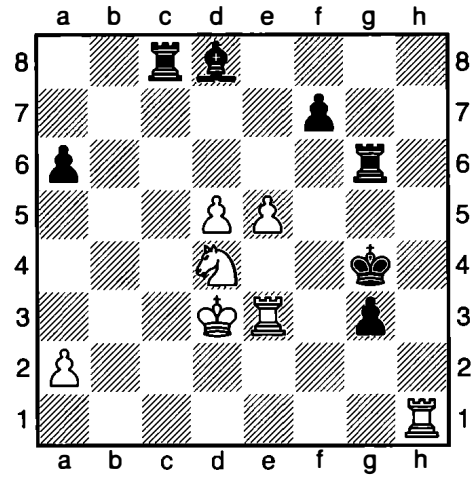
219) White to play (4 points)



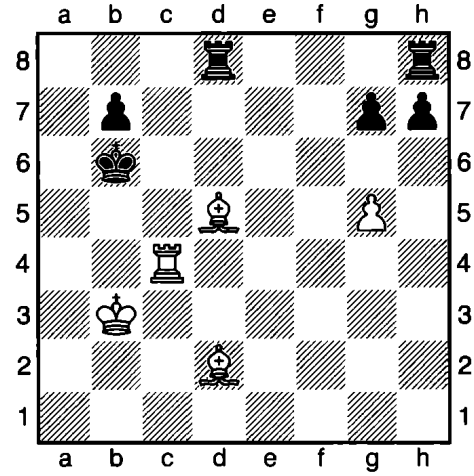
220) Black to play (4 points)



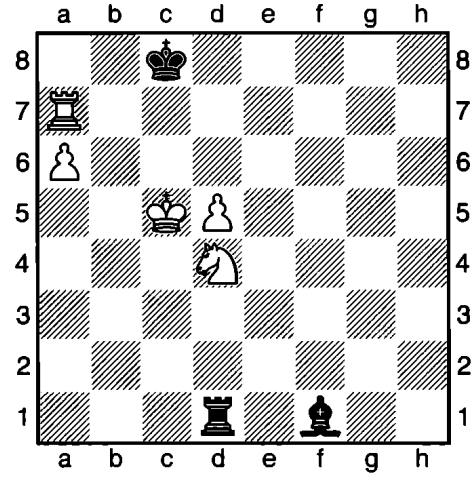
221) Black to play (4 points)



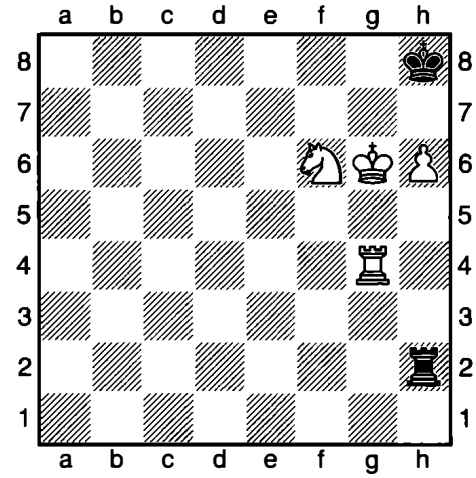
222) White to play (4 points)



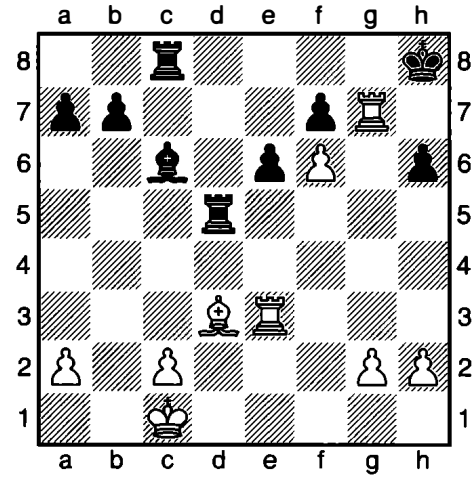
223) White to play (4 points)



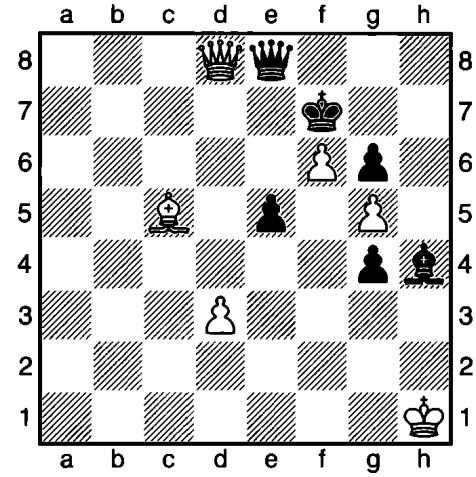
226) White to play (4 points)



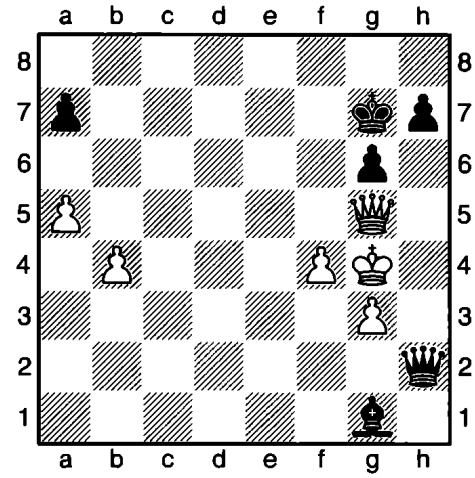
224) White to play (4 points)



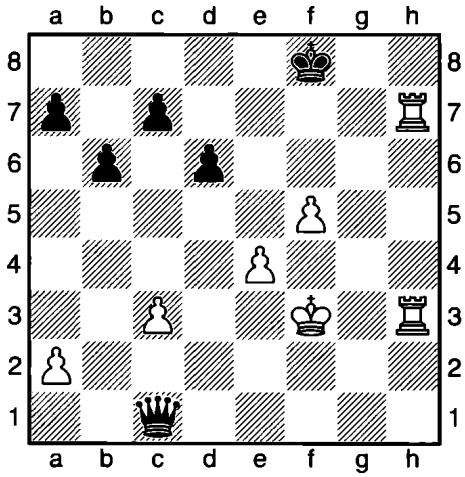
227) White to play (5 points)



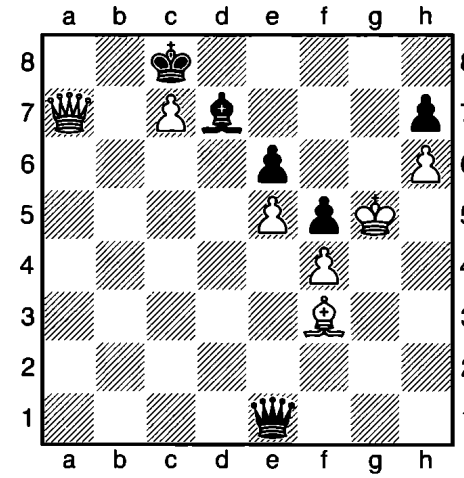
225) White to play (4 points)



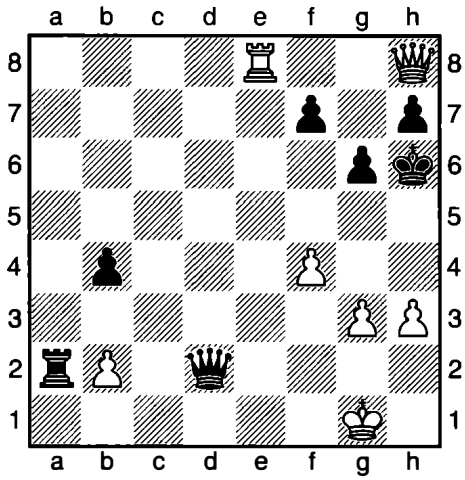
228) Black to play (5 points)



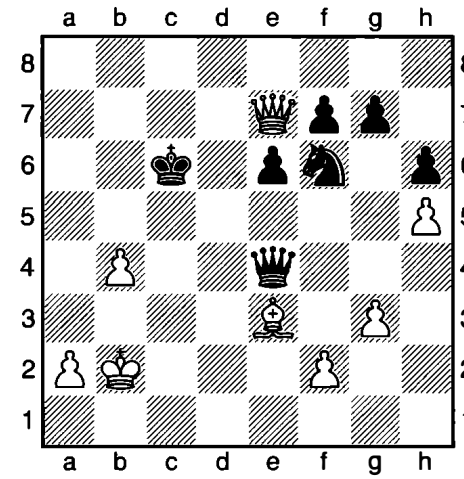
229) White to play (5 points)



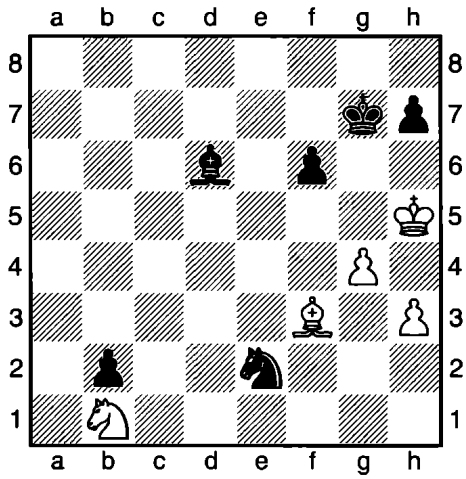
232) Black to play (5 points)



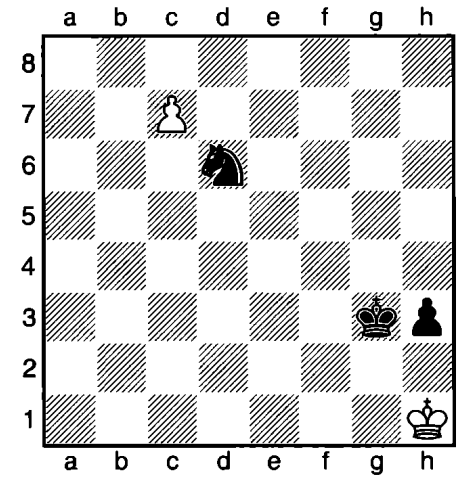
230) White to play (5 points)



233) White to play (5 points)



231) Black to play (5 points)



234) Black to play (5 points)

Solutions for Mate in the Endgame

145) M. Djurković – Tratar
Bošnjaci 2009
1 ♗g7+ 1-0
1...♔g8 2 ♗h7#.

146) Kadrić – Kolakovski
Bošnjaci 2009
1 ♔g4 1-0
Black cannot prevent 2 h5#.

147) M. Nyberg – Mar. Post
Queenstown 2009
1...♗d2+ 2 ♔d1 ♘e3#

148) Nunn – Bologan
Bundesliga 1993/4
1 ♖g8+ 1-0
1...♔h7 2 g6#.

149) Z. Andriasian – Y. Airapetian
Dos Hermanas (Internet) 2009
1...♘f2+ 2 ♔h2 ♘f1#

150) Inarkiev – Nayer
Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2009
1...h5
Threatening 2...♘f5#, which White can only delay for a move by giving up his rook.
2 ♘e6 ♘f5#

151) A. Sarić – Ax. Smith
Pula 2009
1 f3+ ♔h5 2 ♖h7#

152) S. Slugin – G. Airapetian
Lipetsk 2009
1 ♖g3+ 1-0
1...♔f6 allows 2 ♖g6#, while after 1...♔h6 2 ♖h8+ it's mate next move.

153) Dermann – Marcel Becker
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1...♕g5+ 0-1
2 ♔f3 ♗h5#.

154) Podzielny – Happel
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1 ♖c8+ ♔g7 2 ♖g8#

155) Ax. Delorme – S. Pucher
Nancy 2008
1 ♖h5+ 1-0
1...♔g6 2 f5#.

156) M. Ginsburg – Al. Ivanov
Ledyard 2008
1...♖e1+ 0-1
2 ♔h2 ♗e5#.

157) Voitsekhovsky – Gazizov
Kazan 2008
1 ♘g7+ 1-0
1...♔e7 2 ♖f7#.

158) Gioseffi – Ferri
Saint Vincent 2008
1 ♔f3 1-0
Black cannot prevent 2 g4+ hxg4 3 hxg4#.

159) Diuraev – M. Alvarez Ramirez
World Junior Ch, Gaziantep 2008
1 ♖8c6 1-0
Followed by 2 ♖3c5#.

160) Svihel – Pecha
Brno 2005
1 ♖h7+ ♔g5 2 ♘e4#

161) Tri Hoang – Ta. Szegi
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1...♖b4!
White cannot meet the threats of 2...f6# and 2...♖g4#.
2 ♖a7 ♖g4#

162) Mordue – D. Robinson
British League (4NCL) 2005/6
1 ♖d8+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♖b8 2 ♖xb8# or 1...♔b7 2 ♘c5#.

163) Movsesian – Evseev
Moscow 2006
1...♖gg1 0-1
Black will mate by 2...♖bf1#.

164) Golubičić – Iv. Filipović
Bošnjaci 2009
1 ♖c8+ ♔g7
1...♗d8 2 ♖xd8+ ♔g7 3 ♘h5# only takes one move longer.
2 ♘h5#

165) R. Ibrahimov – N. Mamedov
Azerbaijani Ch, Baku 2009
1...♖b1+ 2 ♔f2 ♗h4#

166) P. Welz – A. Gorin
Prague 2009
1...♖f2+ 2 ♔g4 ♖e4#

167) Chelushkina – E. Cosma
Belgrade (Women) 2009
1 ♖xc8+ 1-0
1...♖xc8 (1...♔b7 2 ♖c7+ ♔a8 3 e5+ also leads to mate) 2 e5+ ♖c6 3 ♗xc6#.

168) Kotronias – Vallejo Pons
European Ch, Budva 2009
1 ♖h7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♘f6+ ♔h8 3 ♖g8#.

169) D. Fridman – Y. Vovk
Dos Hermanas (Internet) 2009
Black could have forced mate in two by **1...♕f6+! 2 ♔xh5 ♕f5#**. The game actually finished **1...♕g7+?? 2 ♔xh5??** (2 ♔f5! gives White good winning chances since Black has no mate) **2...♘f6#**.

170) Jianu – Milos Roganović
Bucharest 2009
1...f6+! 0-1
2 ♔xh4 ♗f2#.

171) Liam Henry – Samsonkin
Edmonton 2009
1...♗b1 0-1
White's king is immobilized, so he is forced to commit suicide by advancing his b-pawn: 2 b4 axb3 3 a4 b2#. Not, however, 1...♗b3?, when White is stalemated.

172) W. Kastner – Spindelboeck
Austrian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖g8+ ♔h6 2 ♘f5+ 1-0
2...♔h5 3 g4#.

173) S. Farago – Lorand
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♗h6+ 1-0
1...♗g7 2 ♖f5#, a mate based on Black's pinned bishop.

174) Feltan – Bajramović
Zupanja 2008
1...♕e1+ 0-1
2 ♔h2 g3+ 3 fxg3 hxg3#.

175) Udeshi – E. Hossain
New Delhi 2008
1...♕f4+ 2 ♔h3 h4 0-1
White cannot prevent 3...♕g3#.

176) Ab. Gupta – Z. Amanov
New Delhi 2008
1 ♘f5+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔f8 2 ♖d8+ ♗e8 3 ♖xe8# or 1...♔e6/f6 2 ♖d6#.

177) Imocha – M.C. Reddy
Indian Ch, Chennai 2008
1 ♕g6+ ♔f4 2 ♕e4+ 1-0
2...♔g5 is met by 3 ♕f5# or 3 ♕xe5#.

178) Sultimov – V. Nevostruev
Sibirian Ch, Novokuznetsk 2008
1...f2+ 2 ♔f1 ♔f3 0-1
The threat is 3...♘e3# and if 3 ♖e1, then 3...♘d2#.

179) Aronian – J. Polgar
Moscow (blitz) 2009
1...♔e2! 0-1

Polgar's continuation is the only clear win for Black. Mate is forced after 2 d8♕ ♕f3+ 3 ♔g1 ♕f1#.

180) Ha. Metz – C. Schatz
Bad Wiessee 2009
1 ♖g8+ ♔h7 2 g6+ 1-0
2...♔h6 3 g5#.

181) An. Filippov – A. Eminov
Agzamov Memorial, Tashkent 2008
1 ♖h4+! 1-0
1...gxh4 2 g4#.

182) Maevsky – Korennoi
St Petersburg Club Ch 2008
1 ♕xf8+ ♔h7 2 ♕h8+! 1-0
2...♔xg6 3 ♕g8#.

183) M.A. Cabrera – E. Solis
Costa Rican Ch, Moravia 2008
1 ♕e6+ ♔e4 2 ♕g6#

184) Sikanjić – Cucančić
Croatia Cup, Šibenik 2008
1...♔f3
The only move to win.
2 h5 g5 0-1
3 h6 g4 4 h7 g3 5 h8♕ g2#.

185) Malfagia – Rotoni
Foligno 2008
1 ♔d6 1-0
White has no threat but Black must move his rook away, allowing 2 ♖g6#.

186) G. Pap – Panocki
European Under-18 Team Ch, Szeged 2008
1 ♘b5+ ♔b8 2 c6 1-0
White mates by 3 a7#.

187) A. Cotonnec – L. Bourdonnais
Avoine 2008
1 ♖d6
Threatening 2 f4#.
1...f4+ 2 gxf4+ ♔f5 3 ♖f6#

188) J. Carstensen – Kj. Strand
Politiken Cup, Elsinore 2008
1 ♖b8+ ♔g7 2 f6+ 1-0
2...♔g6 3 ♗e4#.

189) T. Struik – M. van Delft
Dieren 2008
1 ♗d5+ ♔f8 2 ♖f6#

190) D. Czarnota – Korosciel
Poraj (girls) 2003
1 ♗g5+ 1-0
1...♔f5 2 g4+ hxg4 3 fxg4#.

191) M. Rachela – Kaniansky
Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6
1 f4+! 1-0
Every line leads to mate: 1...gxf3 2 ♕h4#, 1...♔h6/h5 2 ♕h8# or finally 1...♕xf4 2 gxf4+ ♔h4/h5/h6 (2...♔f5 3 ♕e5#) 3 ♕h8#.

192) B. Savage – M. Simons
British League (4NCL) 2005/6
1...♗c2+! 0-1
Black mates after 2 ♔xa2 ♖a8# or 2 ♔b4 ♖c4+ 3 ♔b5 ♖xb2#.

193) L. Karlsson – V. Gagarin
Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2005/6
1 ♕h8+ 1-0
1...♔g5 2 ♕h4+ ♔f5 3 ♕f4#.

194) T. Fomina – P. Cramling
Tallinn (women) 2006
1...♗f7+ 2 ♔h6
2 ♔h7 is no different.
2...♖h1+ 0-1
It's mate next move.

195) Be. Jobava – Kuparadze
Georgian Ch, Tbilisi 2006
1...♗f2+ 2 ♔g5 ♗g3 0-1
White cannot prevent 3...f6#.

196) Canneva – Larrat
French Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖e6+ 1-0
1...♔f5 2 g4#.

197) Glimbrant – L. Wickström
Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2008/9

1...♖ge2+ 2 ♔f3 ♖f2+ 3 ♔e3 ♔g2! 0-1

There is no defence to Black's threat of 4...♖fe2#.

198) Sanikidze – J. Rukavina

European Ch, Budva 2009

1...♖f1+ 2 ♔e2

Or 2 ♔d2 e3+ 3 ♔e2 ♗b5+ and mate next move.

2...♗b5+ 0-1

3 ♔d2 e3#.

199) Rødgaard – Nunn

Thessaloniki Olympiad 1988

1...♔h6!

Threatening 2...g5#.

2 g3 g5+ 3 ♔h3 ♘f4#

200) Deshpande – R. Bharathi

Sort 2009

1 f3+ ♔e5 2 f4+ 1-0

2...♔e4 3 ♖c4+ (3 ♖e6+ wins Black's rook but doesn't lead to a quick mate) 3...♖d4 4 ♖xd4#.

201) L. Kovač – L. Sokol

Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♗b5+ ♔d8 2 d6! 1-0

Surprisingly, Black is unable to prevent 3 ♗f6#.

202) J. Bathke – F. Schulenburg

Germany (team event) 2007/8

1...♖g4+ 2 ♔f5 ♗e4+ 3 ♔f6 ♖f4#

203) R. Safonov – Omariev

Moscow (Under-18) 2008

1...♖e1+ 0-1

2 ♔h2 g3+ 3 ♔xh3 ♖h1#.

204) Vul – Zhu Chen

Gibraltar 2008

1...♕d1+

Surprisingly, the mating line involves abandoning the possible discovered checks.

2 ♔f4

2 ♔e3 ♗xd4+ 3 ♔f4 ♕g4# and 2 ♔g3 ♕g4# also lead to mate.

2...♕g4+ 3 ♔e3 ♕e4#

205) T. Raupp – H. Schwing

Germany (team event) 2007/8

1 ♖d5+ ♔f4

1...♔e6 2 ♖c5+ ♔d7 3 ♖c7#.

2 ♖f5+ ♔e3 3 ♖d3#

206) A.R. Salem – M. Yilmaz

World Under-18 Ch, Kemer 2009

1 ♖h4+ ♔g5 2 f4+! 1-0

This surprising rook sacrifice forces mate after 2...♔xh4 3 ♖xh7#.

207) P. Djurdjević – L. Damjanović

Belgrade 2008

1...♗d6+ 2 ♔f6 ♖xf5+! 0-1

3 ♔xf5 ♖f4#.

208) Beeke – Ge. Klein

Maastricht 2008

1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8

1...♔g6 2 e8♕+ also leads to a quick mate; for example, 2...♔g5 3 ♖xh5+ ♔xf6 4 ♖h6+ ♔g7 (or 4...♔g5 5 ♕h5#) 5 ♖g6+ ♔h7 6 ♕g8#.

2 e8♕+ ♔h7 3 ♕f7+ 1-0

White mates by 4 ♕g7#.

209) Henrichs – Prizker

Differdange 2008

1 ♘h6! 1-0

After 1...d1♘+ 2 ♔f4, White mates by 3 e7#.

210) E. Epstein – Bat. Tuvshintugs

USA Women's Ch, Tulsa 2008

1...♖ch3!

There is no real defence to the threat of 2...f5+ 3 ♗xf5 ♖5h4#.

2 ♖f8

2 f5 ♖5h4# is even quicker.

2...f5+ 0-1

Followed by 3...♖5h4#.

211) Jenni – Šimaček

Mitropa Cup, Olbia 2008

White should win in any case with his powerful passed pawns, but it's even better to force mate in three.

1 a7+! ♘xa7

Or 1...♔a8 2 ♘a6 (with the threat 3 ♘c7#) 2...♘xa7 3 b7#.

2 ♘a6+ ♔a8 3 b7#

212) Carlsen – Shirov
Foros 2008

1 ♗g6+ ♔g5 1-0

It's mate after 2 h4+ gxh3 3 f4#. White can also play his moves the other way around: 2 f4+ gxf3 3 h4#.

213) Ko. Kunz – J. Wolter
Dortmund 2008

1...e5+ 2 ♔g5 ♔g7 0-1

White cannot prevent 3...f6#.

214) E. Perelshteyn – Shankland
Philadelphia 2008

1 ♖c8+ ♔h7 2 f5

Threatening 3 fxg6#.

2...gxf5 3 g6+ ♔h6 4 ♖h8#

215) J. Mihailovs – Barsov
Barbera del Valles 2008

1...♕f2+ 0-1

2 ♔h1 is met by 2...♕h2# or 2...♕f1#, and 2 ♔h3 by 2...♕f1+! 3 ♔xg4 f5#.

216) G. Petursson – Szalanczy
Budapest 2008

1...♗e4+ 2 ♔h3

It's also mate after 2 ♔g1 ♖a1+ 3 ♔h2 ♖h1# or 2 ♔h2 ♖h5+ 3 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

2...♖h5+ 3 ♔g4 ♗f3#

217) Biolek – P. Neuman
Czech Team Ch 1999/00

1 ♘g4+ ♔e4 2 ♘f2+ 1-0

2...♔e5 3 ♗f4#.

218) Sobry – Camus de Solliers
French Team Ch 2005/6

1...♘f4+!

Although Black is winning after 1...♘f6+ 2 ♔h4, this does not lead to a quick mate.

2 ♔h6

Or 2 ♔h4 ♗f6#.

2...♗g7+ 0-1

3 ♔h7 ♖h1+ 4 ♖h2 ♖xh2#.

219) G. Guseinov – A. Savanović
European Ch, Budva 2009

1 ♖c5+

White forces mate with a series of checks.

1...♔e4 2 ♖b4+ ♔d3 3 ♖d4+ ♔e2 4 ♖c2#

220) Dobrotka – Varholakova
Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8

1...♕e1+!

Only the correct sequence of checks leads to a quick mate. 1...♕e3+ 2 ♔g2 lets White escape.

2 ♔g4

The alternatives are no better: 2 ♔f3 ♗d5+ 3 ♗e4 ♗xe4+ 4 ♔g4 ♕e2+ 5 ♔h3 ♕g2#, 2 ♔g2 ♗d5+ 3 ♗e4 ♗xe4+ 4 ♔h3 ♕f1+ 5 ♔g4 ♕f3# or 2 ♔h3 ♗f1+ 3 ♔g4 ♕e2+ 4 ♔g3 ♕g2#.

2...♗e2+ 0-1

3 ♔h3 ♕f1+ 4 ♔g3 ♕f3#.

221) Rmus – A. Mijović
Belgrade (team event) 2008

1...♖g2+ 2 ♔f3

2 ♔h4 g5#.

2...g5

Threatening 3...g4#.

3 h3 h5 0-1

White cannot prevent 4...g4+ followed by mate.

222) Vedrickas – An. Green
Scottish Ch, Glasgow 2008

1 ♖e4+ ♔g5 2 ♘f3+ ♔f5 3 ♖h5+ ♖g5

After 3...♗g5 White has a choice between 4 ♘h4# and 4 ♘d4#.

4 ♘h4#

223) Rozum – Kislinsky
Minsk 2008

1 ♗e3+ ♔a5

After 1...♔b5 2 ♖b4+ Black is mated one move quicker, while 1...♔a6 2 ♖a4+ is the same as the game.

2 ♖a4+ ♔b5 3 ♖b4+ 1-0

White mates after 3...♔a5 4 ♗b6+ ♔a6 5 ♗c4# or 3...♔a6 4 ♗xb7+ ♔a5 5 ♗b6#.

224) K. Nuber – Svetushkin
Dresden 2008

Although White can force mate in three, the solution is quite hard to spot.

1 ♔f7

Threatening 2 ♖g8#.

1...♖g2

A neat trick to stop the mate, as taking the rook stalemates Black.

2 ♖g7! 1-0

White proves victorious in any case. The threat is 3 ♖h7#, while 2...♖xg7+ is met by 3 hxg7#.

225) Drtina – Hlinka

Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♕d5+ ♕e6 2 ♕b7+ ♔e8

Or 2...♔g8 3 ♕g7#.

3 f7+! 1-0

3...♕xf7 4 ♕c8#.

226) Z. Lanka – Shengelia

Austrian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♔d6

Threatening 2 ♖a8#.

1...♗xa6

White also mates after 1...♔b8 2 ♘c6+ ♔c8 3 ♖c7# or 1...♖b1 2 ♘c6, threatening 3 ♖c7#.

2 ♖c7+ 1-0

Black is mated after 2...♔b8 3 ♘c6+ ♔a8 4 ♖a7# or 2...♔d8 3 ♘e6+ ♔e8 4 ♖e7#.

227) Khukhashvili – Melia

Georgian Women's Ch, Tbilisi 2009

1 ♖h3!

The immediate 1 ♖h7+? ♔g8 2 ♖g3+ isn't very effective because Black can reply 2...♖g5, so White first forces Black to advance her h-pawn, when ...♖g5 is no longer possible.

1...h5 2 ♖h7+ ♔g8 3 ♖g3+ 1-0

3...♔f8 4 ♖h8#.

228) Cmilyte – St. Christensen

Danish Team Ch 2008/9

1...h5+ 2 ♔f3 ♕f2+ 3 ♔e4 ♕d4+ 0-1

Forcing the king back to its doom: 4 ♔f3 ♕e3+ 5 ♔g2 ♕f2+ and 6...♕h2#.

229) Mchedlishvili – Timoshenko

Leros 2009

1 ♖h8+ ♔f7

White's reply is the same no matter where Black moves his king.

2 ♖h7+ ♔f6 3 ♖f8+ ♔g5

3...♔e5 4 ♖e7#.

4 ♖g8+ ♔f6 5 ♖g6+ 1-0

After 5...♔e5 White mates by 6 ♖e6# or 6 ♖e7#.

230) Bakre – M. Papadakis

Rethymnon 2009

1 ♕f8+

White can mate with a series of checks, but he has to take care.

1...♔h5 2 ♖e5+

2 ♕c5+? f5 leads to nothing, while 2 g4+?? ♔h4 3 ♕h6+ ♔g3 only forces Black to mate White.

2...f5

2...g5 3 ♖xg5#.

3 ♖xf5+!

Not 3 g4+? ♔h4 4 ♕e7+ g5, which slightly favours Black.

1-0

3...gxf5 4 ♕xf5+ ♔h6 5 ♕g5#.

231) Gauglitz – Frank Müller

2nd Bundesliga 2007/8

1...♘f4+ 2 ♔h4 ♘g6+ 3 ♔h5 ♗g3

Threatening 4...♘f4#.

4 g5 f5 0-1

Black is careful to keep the net closed around the white king, and now ...♘f4# can no longer be delayed.

232) D. Afanasiev – Vi. Pavlov

Kazan 2008

A king-hunt is also possible in the endgame.

1...♕g3+ 2 ♔f6

2 ♗g4 ♕xg4+ only delays the end by one move.

2...♕g6+ 3 ♔e7 ♕e8+ 4 ♔f6 ♕f8+ 5 ♔g5 ♕e7+ 0-1

6 ♔h5 ♗e8#.

233) D. Forcen Esteban – Cruz Lledo

Spanish Under-14 Ch, Padron 2008

1 b5+!

Drawing Black's king into a more exposed position.

1...♔xb5

1...♔d5 2 ♕c5#.

2 ♕c5+ ♔a4

2...♔a6 3 ♕b6#.

3 ♕a7+!

Although Black's king is in danger, White must find the correct sequence of checks to force mate.

3...♔b5

3...♔b4 4 ♕b6+ leads to the same conclusion.

4 ♕b6+ ♔a4

4...♔c4 5 ♕b3#.

5 ♕a6+ 1-0

5...♔b4 6 a3#. After a series of checks by the queen, White's humble a-pawn strikes the final blow.

234) M. Baldauf – Manitz

Dresden 2003

1...♘e4!

The only way to win is to allow White to promote.

2 c8♕ ♘f2+ 3 ♔g1 h2+ 4 ♔f1 h1♕+ 5 ♔e2 ♕d1+

Other moves win, but this is by far the quickest.

6 ♔e3 ♕d3#

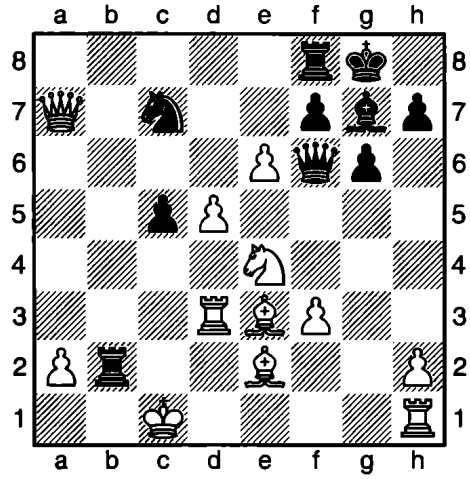
Score-Chart for Mate in the Endgame

Position number	Points	Score
145	1	
146	1	
147	1	
148	1	
149	1	
150	1	
151	1	
152	1	
153	1	
154	1	
155	1	
156	1	
157	1	
158	1	
159	1	
160	1	
161	1	
162	1	
163	1	
164	2	
165	2	
166	2	
167	2	
168	2	
169	2	
170	2	
171	2	
172	2	
173	2	
174	2	
175	2	
176	2	
177	2	
178	2	
179	2	
180	2	
181	2	
182	2	
183	2	
184	2	
185	2	
186	2	
187	2	
188	2	
189	2	
190	2	
191	2	
192	2	
193	2	
194	2	
195	2	
196	2	
197	3	
198	3	
199	3	
200	3	
201	3	

Position number	Points	Score
202	3	
203	3	
204	3	
205	3	
206	3	
207	3	
208	3	
209	3	
210	3	
211	3	
212	3	
213	3	
214	3	
215	3	
216	3	
217	3	
218	3	
219	4	
220	4	
221	4	
222	4	
223	4	
224	4	
225	4	
226	4	
227	5	
228	5	
229	5	
230	5	
231	5	
232	5	
233	5	
234	5	
Total	**223**	

4 The Lethal Long Diagonal

If, for example, Black's king is castled kingside, then one line of attack is the long diagonal stretching from a1 to h8. This poses a particular danger if there is no defensive pawn on g7, since then a white bishop or queen on the diagonal can extend its influence all the way to h8.

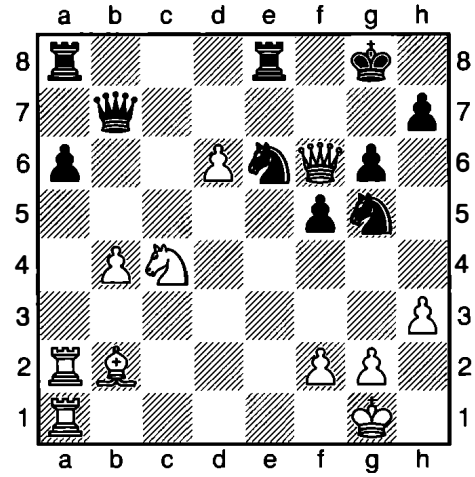


E. Lund – El Kher
Danih Team Ch 2002/3

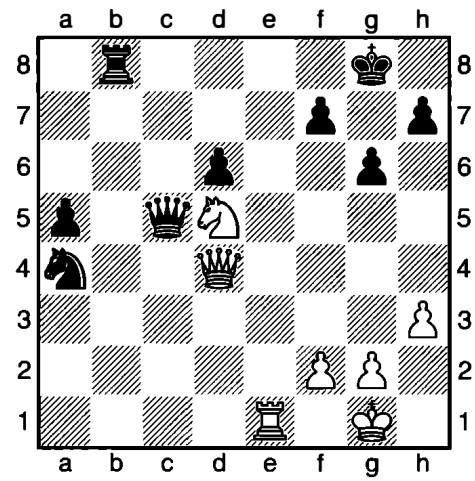
Here's an example of the analogous situation with Black attacking a white king which has castled queenside. Black's line-up of queen and bishop on the long diagonal is a typical attacking idea since the bishop defends the queen wherever it moves on the diagonal. This allows the queen to burst into White's position on b2 or a1 provided, of course, that those squares are not defended.

Black continued **1...♖b1+!**, which serves a dual purpose. First of all, it gets the rook out of the way so that Black's queen can make an entrance. Secondly, it draws the white king into a more vulnerable position. The game ended **2 ♔xb1** (2 ♔d2 and 2 ♔c2 are also met by 2...♕b2#) **2...♕b2#**.

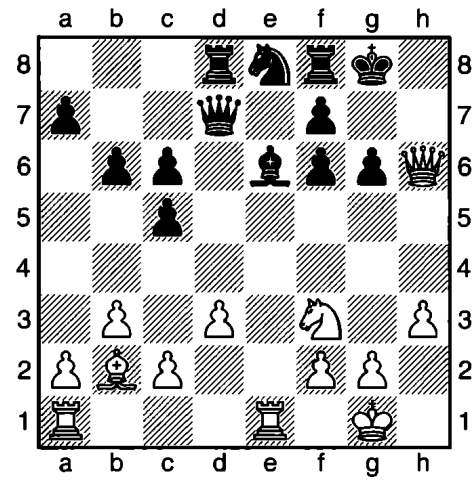
This chapter shows how the lethal long diagonal can be used in many different ways to rip into the enemy king position. It's playtime for queens and bishops!



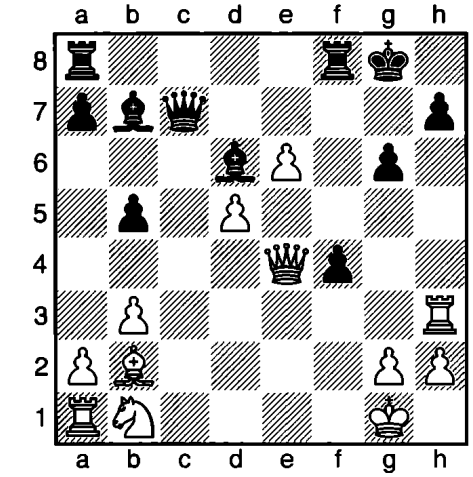
235) White to play (1 point)



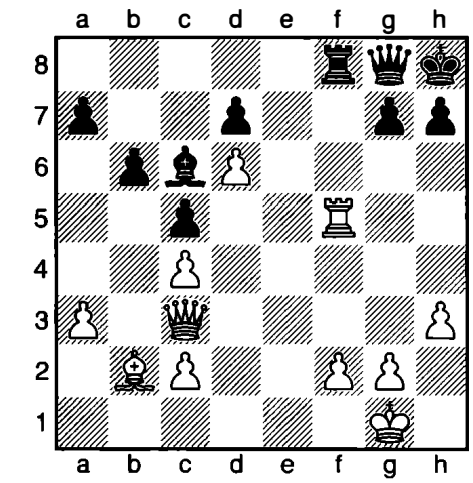
236) White to play (1 point)



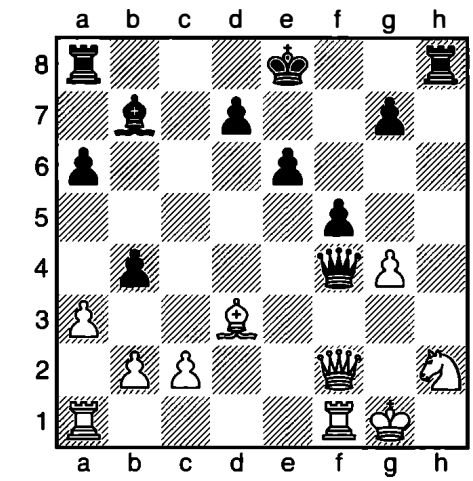
237) White to play (1 point)



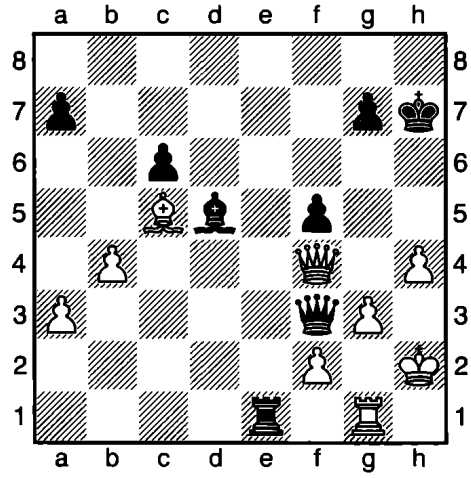
238) White to play (1 point)



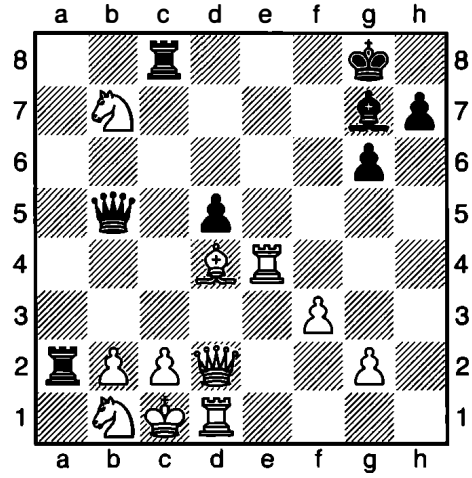
239) White to play (1 point)



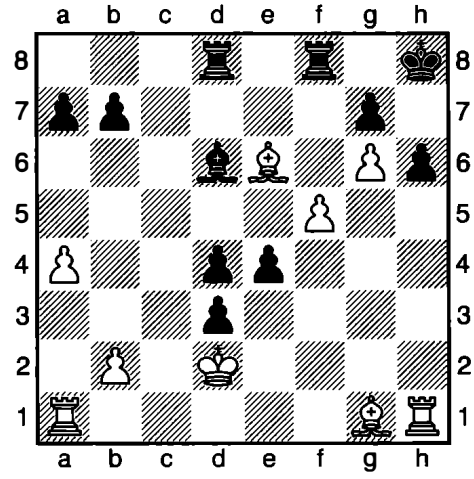
240) Black to play (1 point)



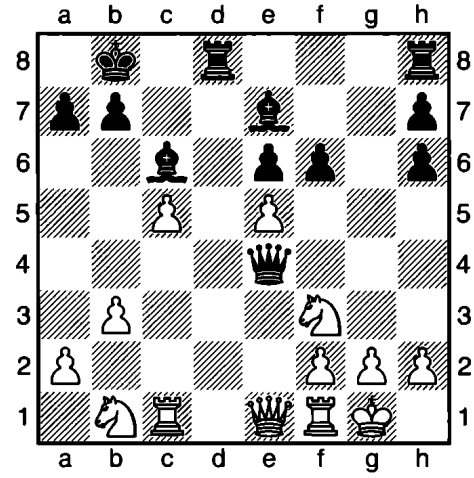
241) Black to play (1 point)



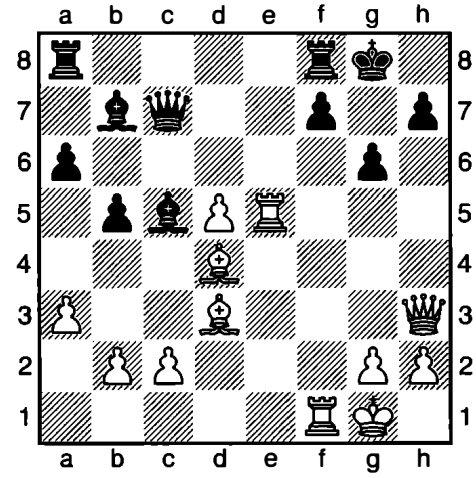
242) Black to play (1 point)



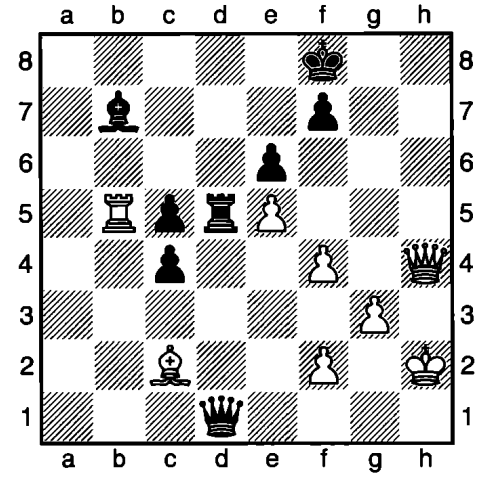
243) White to play (2 points)



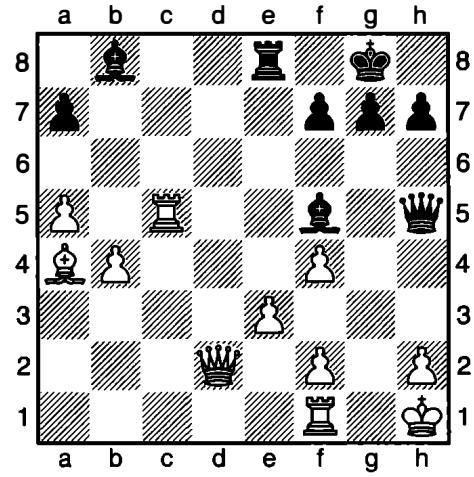
244) Black to play (2 points)



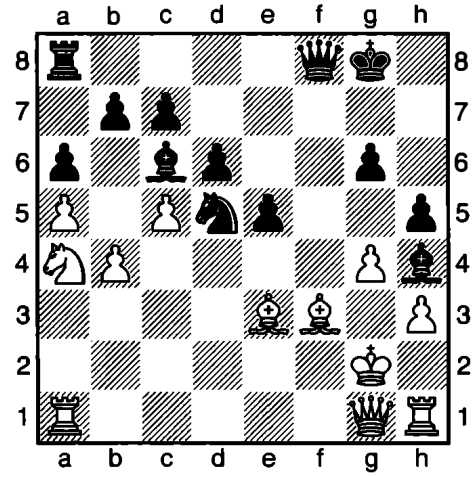
245) White to play (2 points)



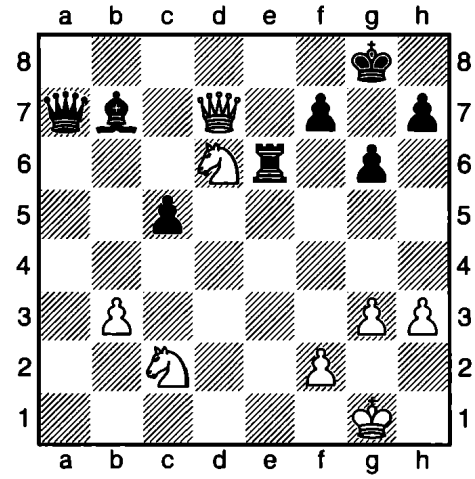
246) Black to play (2 points)



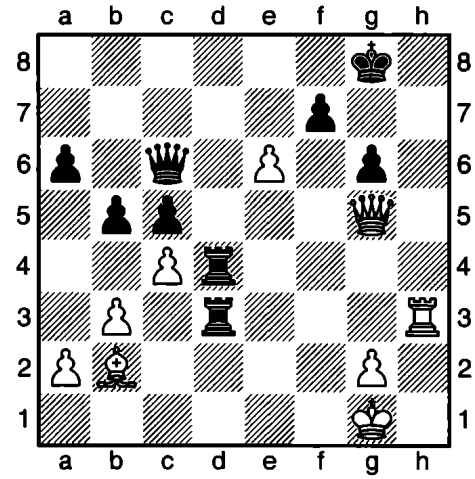
247) Black to play (2 points)



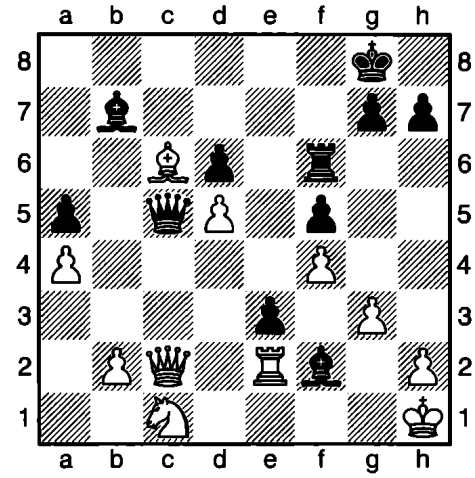
250) Black to play (2 points)



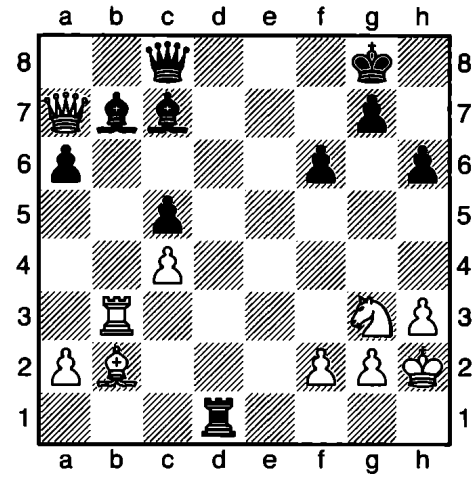
248) Black to play (2 points)



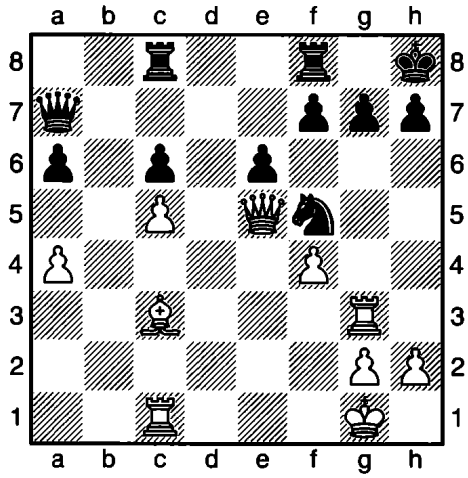
251) White to play (2 points)



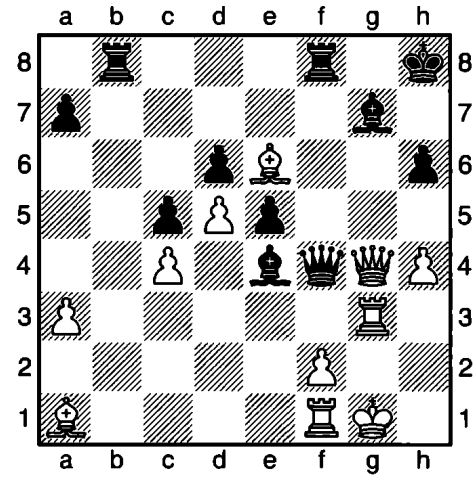
249) Black to play (2 points)



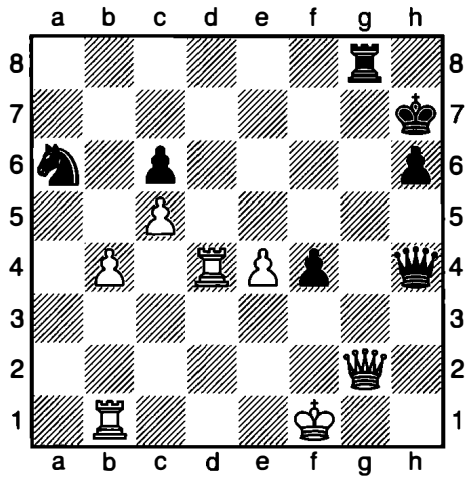
252) Black to play (2 points)



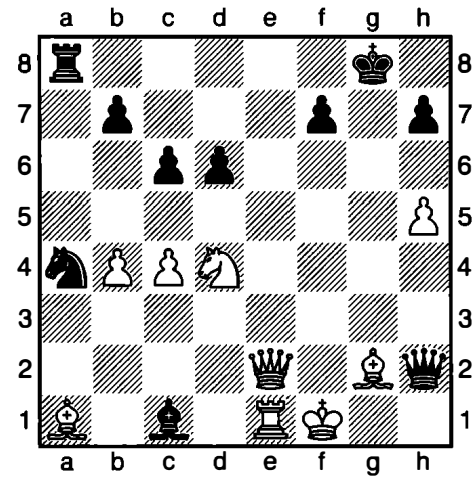
253) White to play (2 points)



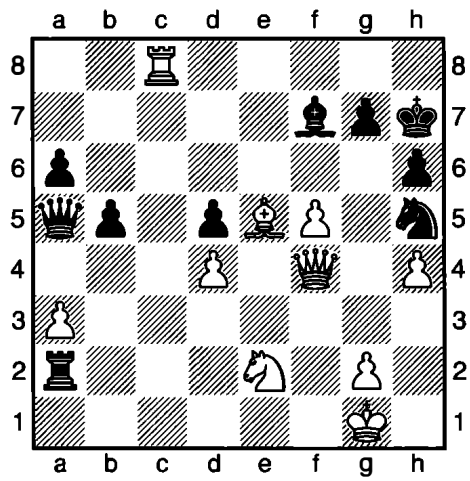
256) Black to play (2 points)



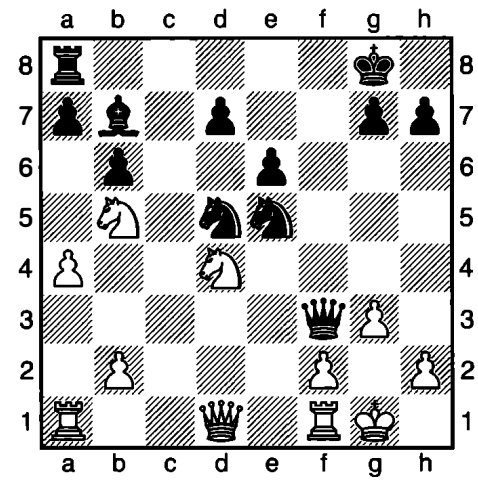
254) White to play (2 points)



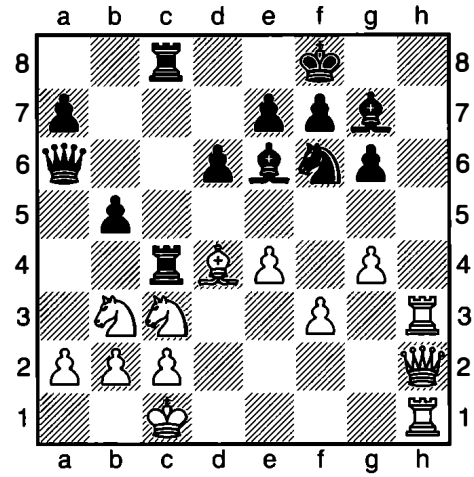
257) White to play (2 points)



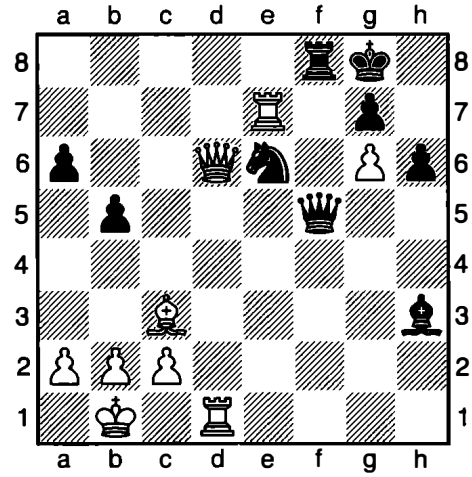
255) White to play (2 points)



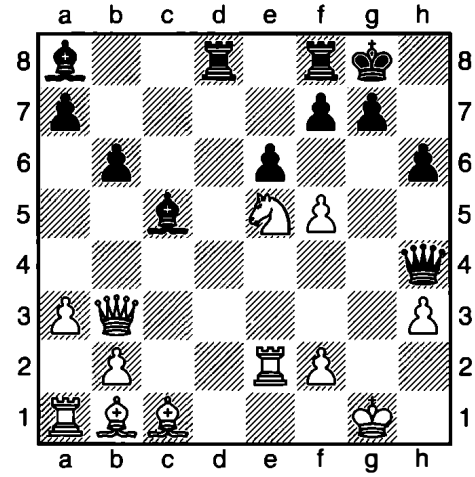
258) Black to play (3 points)



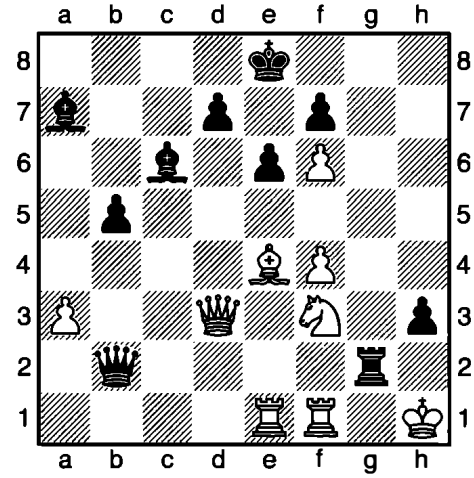
259) White to play (3 points)



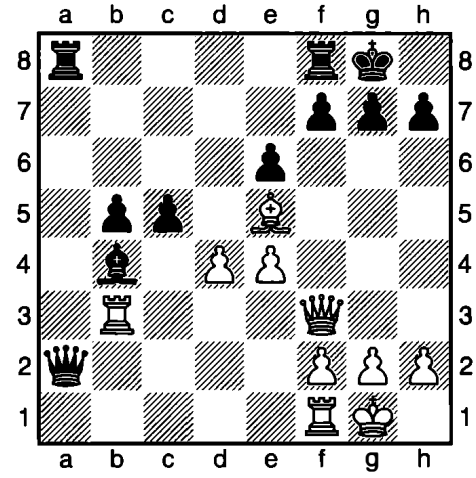
262) White to play (3 points)



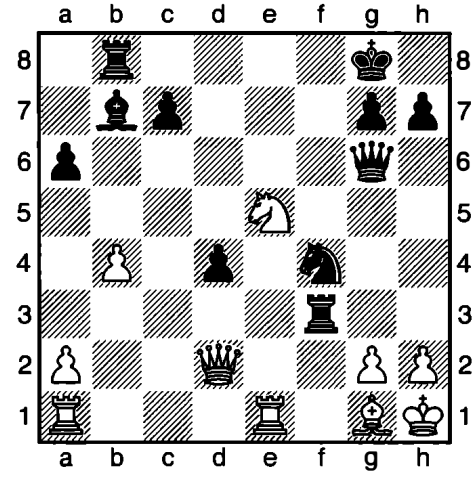
260) Black to play (3 points)



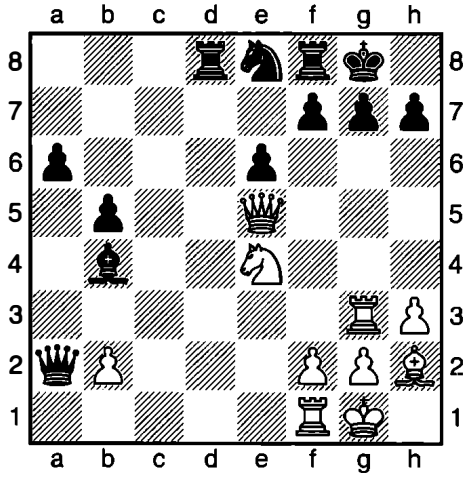
263) Black to play (3 points)



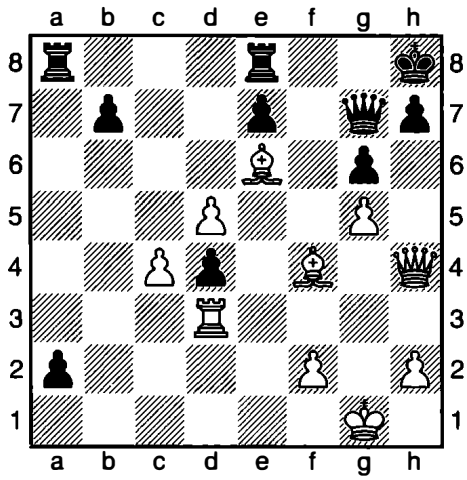
261) White to play (3 points)



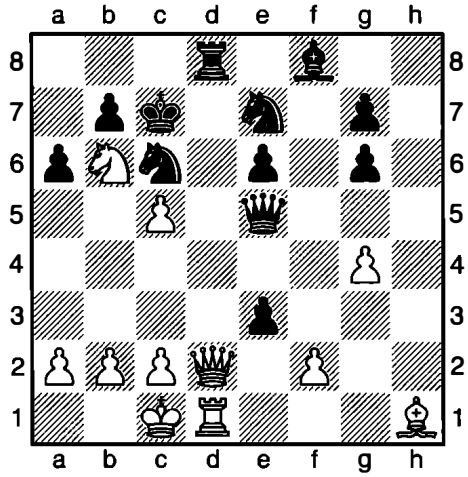
264) Black to play (3 points)



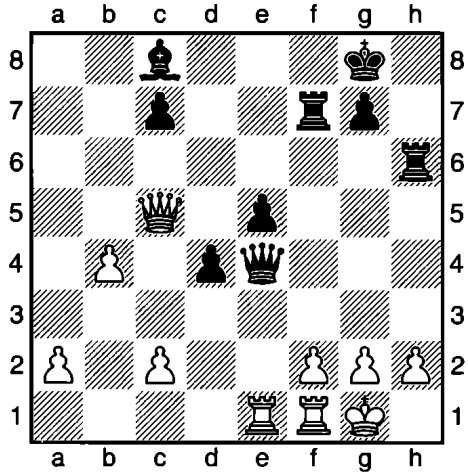
265) White to play (4 points)



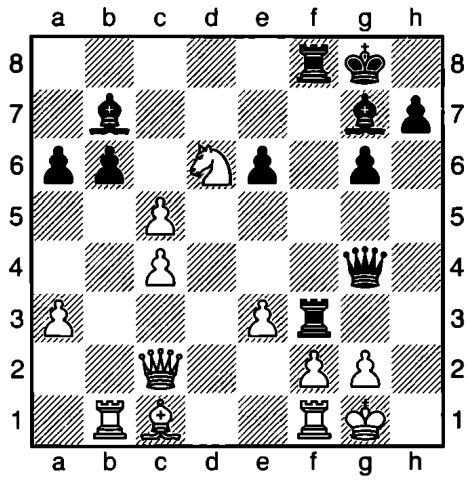
266) White to play (4 points)



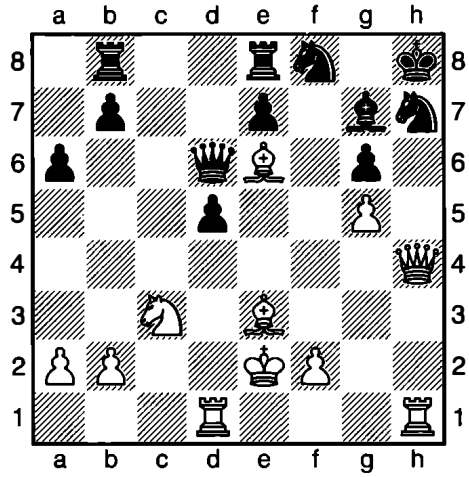
267) White to play (4 points)



268) Black to play (5 points)



269) Black to play (5 points)



270) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for the Lethal Long Diagonal

235) S. Kaplan – L. Lovik
Gjøvik 2009
1 ♕h8+ 1-0
1...♔f7 2 ♘e5#. The line-up of bishop and queen on the long diagonal often leads to mate based on the queen penetrating to g7 or h8.

236) Kochetkova – A. Hairapetian
European Women's Ch, St Petersburg 2009
1 ♘e7+ 1-0
1...♔f8 2 ♕h8#.

237) J. Dostan – Keschitz
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♘g5 1-0
Threatening 2 ♕h7#, and if 1...fxg5 then 2 ♕h8#.

238) M. Huda – Chulivska
Ukrainian Girls Ch, Odessa 2008
1 ♕xg6+! 1-0
1...hxg6 2 ♖h8#. The combination of a bishop on the long diagonal and a rook penetrating to h8 is another common mating idea.

239) A. Janković – Bogut
Stari Mikanovci 2009
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♕xg7 2 ♖xf8#.

240) Shkuro – Andreikin
Ukrainian Team Ch, Alushta 2009
1...♕xg4+! 0-1
2 ♘xg4 ♖h1#.

241) Manakova – Stepovaia Dianchenko
Russia Cup (Women), St Petersburg 2009
1...♕h1+! 0-1
2 ♖xh1 ♖xh1#.

242) Csolig – P. Biro
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4
1...♕xb2+! 0-1
2 ♗xb2 ♗xb2#.

243) Gustafsson – Tischbierek
German Ch, Bad Wörishofen 2008
1 ♖xh6+! gxh6 2 ♗xd4+ 1-0
White mates in two more moves.

244) Perodeau – Kachiwagi
St Quentin 2001
1...♕xf3! 2 gxf3 ♖hg8+ 0-1
2...♖dg8+ is equally good since both moves lead to mate after 3 ♔h1 ♗xf3#.

245) M. Cristobal – N. Sanduay
Mar del Plata 2008
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h5+ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

246) Gracin – Segović
Croatia Cup, Šibenik 2008
1...♕h1+! 2 ♔xh1 ♖d1++ 0-1
3 ♔h2 ♖h1#.

247) Zozek – Khader
Amman (team event) 2008
1...♕f3+ 2 ♔g1 ♗e4 0-1
Black mates next move, for example by 3...♕h1#. 2...♗h3? is wrong as White can defend by 3 ♖g5.

248) T. Perman – Perez Ponsa
Gibraltar 2009
1...♕a1+! 0-1
It's mate after 2 ♔h2 ♕h1# or 2 ♘xa1 ♖e1+ 3 ♔h2 ♖h1#.

249) O.A. Ivanenko – Rakhmangulova
Ukrainian Under-16 Girls Ch, Odessa 2009
1...♕xd5+ 0-1
Black breaks open the long diagonal and mates after 2 ♗xd5+ ♗xd5+ 3 ♕e4 ♗xe4#.

250) E. de Groote – Arutinian
Vienna 2009

1...♕xf3+! 2 ♔xf3
2 ♔h2 ♘xe3 leads to a quick mate.
2...♘f4#
2...♘c3# is equally good.

251) Udo Hoffmann – F. Armbrust
German Under-18 Ch, Willingen 2005

1 ♕d8+! ♖xd8
Or 1...♔g7 2 ♕h8#.
2 ♖h8#

252) Oleksienko – Hovhannisyan
European Ch, Rijeka 2010

1...♖h1+! 2 ♔xh1
White's knight is pinned, so this capture is forced.
2...♕xh3+ 0-1
The queen is invulnerable as the g-pawn is pinned, so Black mates by 3...♕xg2#.

253) Guerra Bastida – F. Ruiz Jimenez
Spanish Team Ch, Mondariz 2002

1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♘xg7 2 ♗xg7+ ♔g8 3 ♗f6# (or any other square on the long diagonal except for h8!).

254) N. Pais – J. Figler
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4

1 ♖d7+ ♔h8 2 ♕b2+ 1-0
It's mate in two more moves.

255) Korchnoi – Nickel
Berlin (simultaneous) 2001

1 ♕xh6+!
1 ♖h8+? ♔xh8 2 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 doesn't work as g7 is defended.
1-0
Both 1...gxh6 and 1...♔xh6 are met by 2 ♖h8#.

256) Re. Meier – O. Kurmann
Zurich 2001

1...♕xf2+! 2 ♖xf2 ♖b1+ 3 ♔h2 ♖h1#

257) N. Krieg – Apkhaidze
Germany (team event) 2005/6

1 ♕e8+! ♖xe8
1...♔g7 2 ♘f5#.
2 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 3 ♘f5#

258) R. Grünberg – Döry
Stockholm 1984

1...♕g2+!
Black's queen was under attack, so no other move would do.
2 ♔xg2 ♘f4++
This is a double check, so White must move his king.
3 ♔g1 ♘h3#

259) I. Akst – Mikleeva
Cheliabinsk Region Ch 2008

1 ♖h8+! ♗xh8
Or 1...♘g8 2 ♖xg8+ ♔xg8 3 ♕h8+ ♗xh8 4 ♖xh8#.
2 ♕xh8+ ♘g8 and now **3 ♕xg8+! ♔xg8 4 ♖h8#** finishes Black at once.
The FIDE game archive and Mega Database both give the finish of the game as **3 ♕g7+ 1-0**, but White isn't even better after the check on g7, so it seems likely that this is a data error and White did actually take on g8.

260) I. Frolov – D. Zatsurdaev
Russian Under-16 Ch, Dagomys 2004

1...♕g3+! 0-1
Black delivers mate after 2 ♔f1 ♕g2+ 3 ♔e1 ♕g1# (or 3...♕h1#) or 2 ♕xg3 ♖d1+ 3 ♔h2 ♖h1#.

261) Gleizerov – Alavkin
Kaluga 2003

1 ♕f6! 1-0
A tricky idea to spot if you haven't seen it before. After 1...gxf6 (Black can delay mate by giving away queen and rook but it makes no real difference) White mates by 2 ♖g3+ ♔h8 3 ♗xf6#.

262) Holmsten – Avrukh
Linares 2001

1 ♕xe6+! ♕xe6
Black is also mated after 1...♔h8 2 ♗xg7#.
2 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 3 ♖h7++ 1-0
3...♔g8 4 ♖h8#.

263) Saastamoinen – Nyysti
Tampere 2000

1...♖h2+! 2 ♘xh2 ♕g2+! 0-1

After 3 ♗xg2 Black can mate by 3...hxg2# or 3...♗xg2#.

264) Namyslo – I. Sokolov
Mainz 2003

1...♖f2! 0-1

Unleashing a deadly attack on g2, which leads to mate after 2 ♘xg6 ♗xg2# or 2 ♕xf2 ♗xg2+ (2...♕xg2+ is equally good) 3 ♕xg2 ♕xg2#. f2 is the only good square for the rook because after other rook moves White can simply take Black's queen.

265) Gutacker – Ju. Voss
Frankfurt 2008

1 ♘f6+ ♘xf6

After 1...♔h8 2 ♘xe8 Black has to give up his queen to avoid mate, but even this doesn't delay the end for long.

2 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 3 ♕g5+ ♔h8 4 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 5 ♗e5 1-0

It's mate next move by 6 ♕g7# or 6 ♕h8#.

266) I. Vincze – Nogrady
Kobanya 1996

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7

Or 1...♕xh7 2 ♗e5+ ♕g7 3 ♖h3#.

2 ♖h3+ ♕h6 3 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 4 ♗e5+ 1-0

4...♔f8 5 ♖h8#.

267) Apicella – Giffard
French Team Ch 2003

1 ♕xd8+! ♘xd8 2 ♖d7+ ♔b8 3 ♖xd8+ ♔c7

3...♔a7 4 ♖a8#.

4 ♖d7+ ♔b8 5 ♖xb7#

268) J.W. Diaz – Castro Rojas
Merida 1992

1...♕xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♖g6+ 0-1

After 3 ♔h1 ♗b7+ 4 f3 ♖xf3 there is no defence to the threats on the long diagonal; for example, 5 ♖g1 ♖f1+ and mate in two more moves.

269) Baumgartner – A. Herzog
Austrian Ch, Wolfsberg 1985

1...♕xg2+!

The quickest mate.

2 ♔xg2 ♖xf2++ 3 ♔g3

Or 3 ♔g1 ♖xf1+ 4 ♔h2 ♖h1+ 5 ♔g3 ♗e5+ 6 ♔g4 ♗f3+ 7 ♔g5 ♖h5#.

3...♖8f3+ 4 ♔g4

4 ♔h4 ♗f6+ 5 ♔g4 h5#.

4...h5+ 5 ♔g5 ♖g3+ 6 ♔h4 ♖g4+ 7 ♔h3 ♗g2+ 8 ♔h2 ♗e5+ 0-1

9 ♔g1 ♖xf1#.

270) K. Beaton – M. Fraser
Scottish Ch, Stirling 2002

A queen sacrifice decides the game.

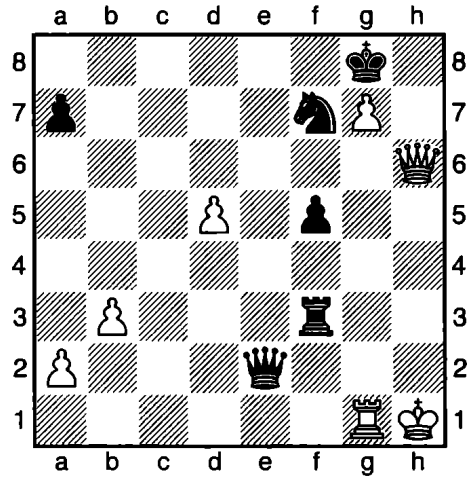
1 ♕xh7+!! ♘xh7 2 ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 3 ♖h1+ ♗h6 4 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 5 ♗d4+ ♔f8 6 ♖h8#

Score-Chart for the Lethal Long Diagonal

Position number	Points	Score
235	1	
236	1	
237	1	
238	1	
239	1	
240	1	
241	1	
242	1	
243	2	
244	2	
245	2	
246	2	
247	2	
248	2	
249	2	
250	2	
251	2	
252	2	
253	2	
254	2	
255	2	
256	2	
257	2	
258	3	
259	3	
260	3	
261	3	
262	3	
263	3	
264	3	
265	4	
266	4	
267	4	
268	5	
269	5	
270	5	
Total	**86**	

5 Pawn-Promotion Mates

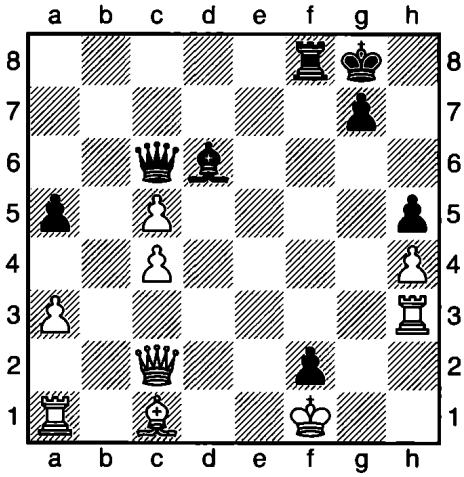
Having a pawn near the enemy king can be the foundation for a possible mate; for example, a pawn on f6 can support a mate by the queen on g7. In this case the pawn plays a supporting role in helping another piece to deliver mate, but sometimes a pawn can be the star of the show itself.



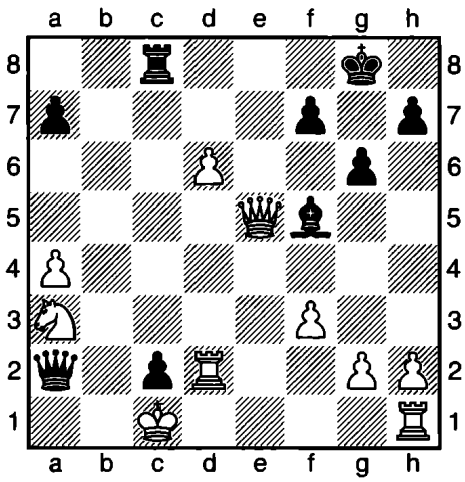
Krasenkow – Bobras
Polish Team Ch, Glogow 2001

Here White won prettily with the queen sacrifice **1 ♕h7+!** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**). The clever point is that after **1...♔xh7** the white pawn on g7 is able to promote, and its resurrection to a new queen makes a quick checkmate possible: **2 g8♕+ ♔h6 3 ♕g6#**.

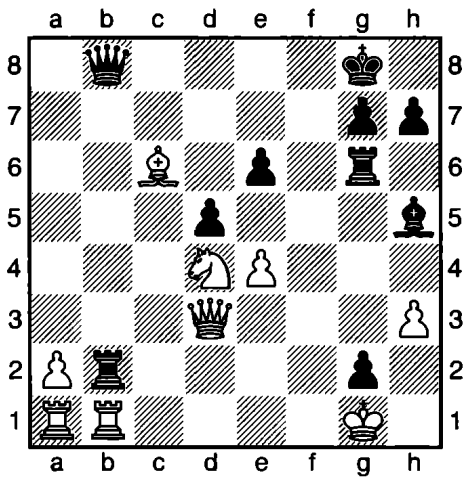
You will soon learn to spot this classic sacrificial theme – and other pawn-promotion opportunities – as you work your way through the puzzles in this chapter. The power of a far-advanced pawn can be truly remarkable and if you have one near the enemy king, then sacrifices to force checkmate are often in the air.



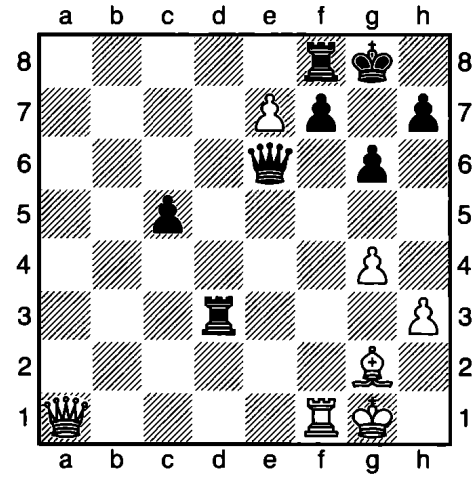
271) Black to play (1 point)



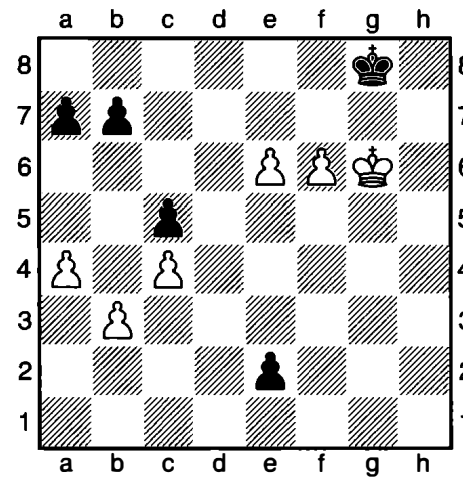
272) Black to play (1 point)



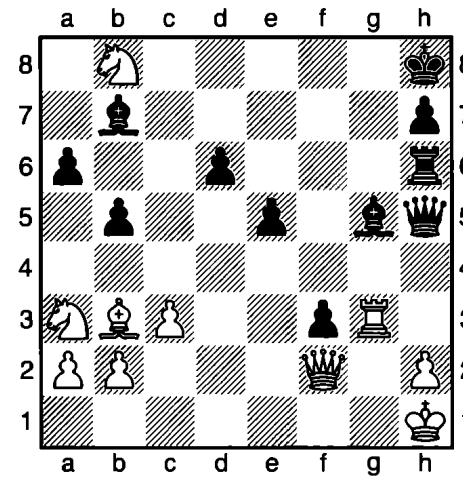
273) Black to play (1 point)



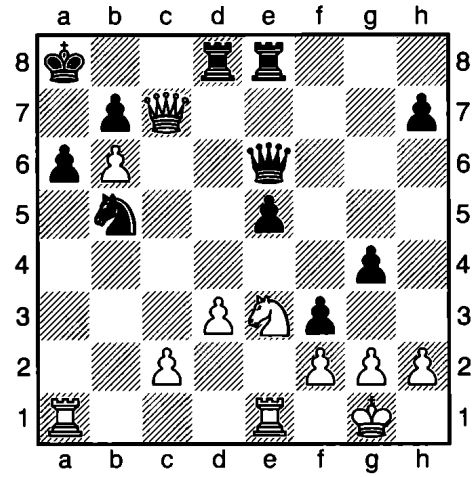
274) White to play (1 point)



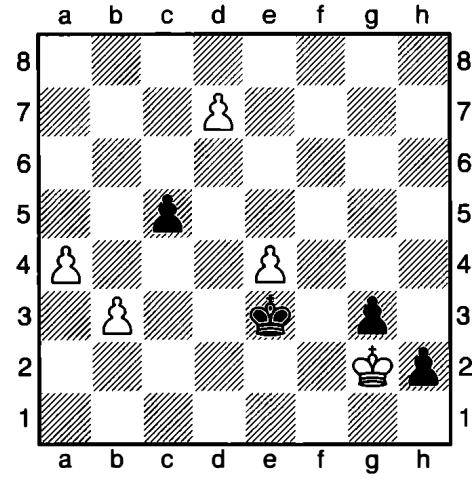
275) White to play (2 points)



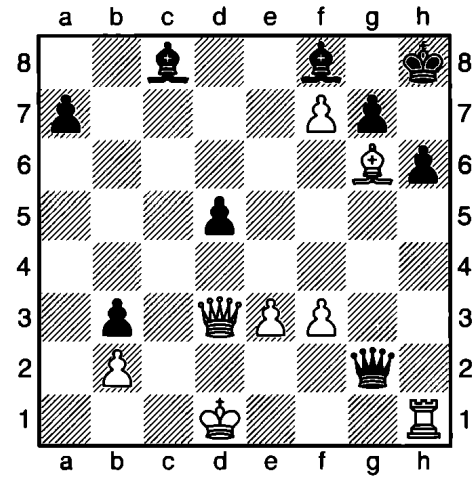
276) Black to play (2 points)



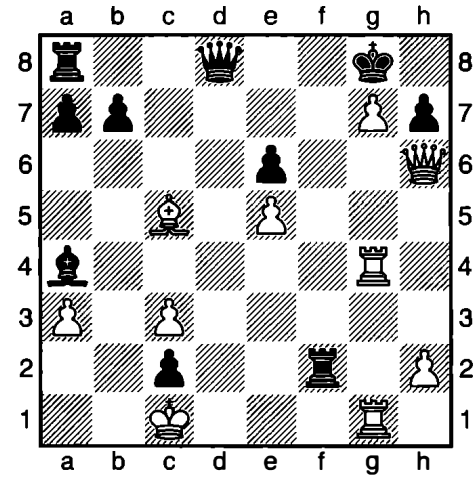
277) White to play (2 points)



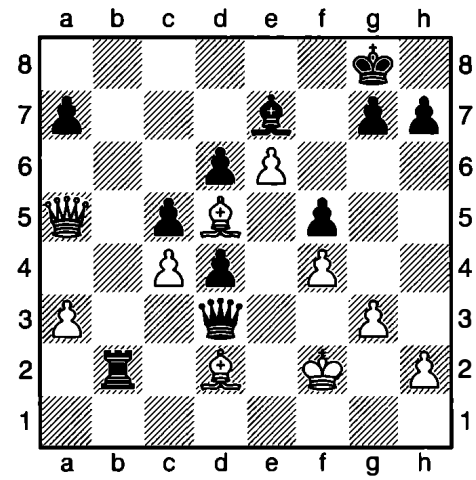
280) Black to play (3 points)



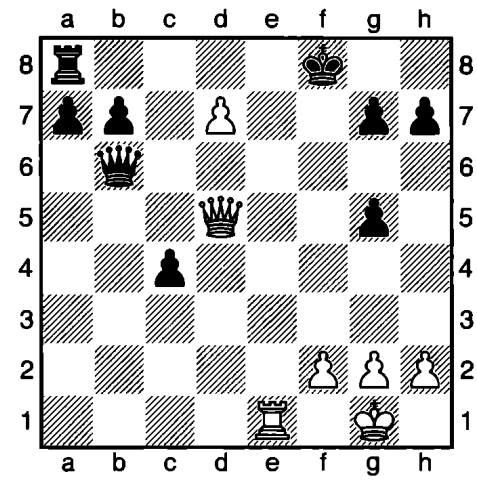
278) White to play (2 points)



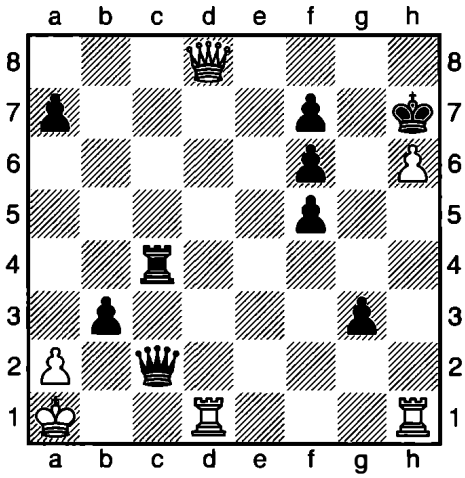
281) White to play (3 points)



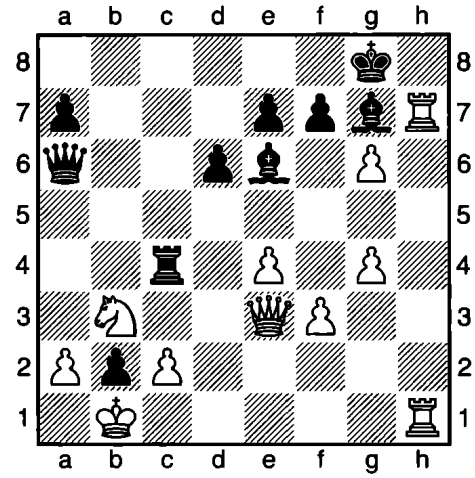
279) White to play (2 points)



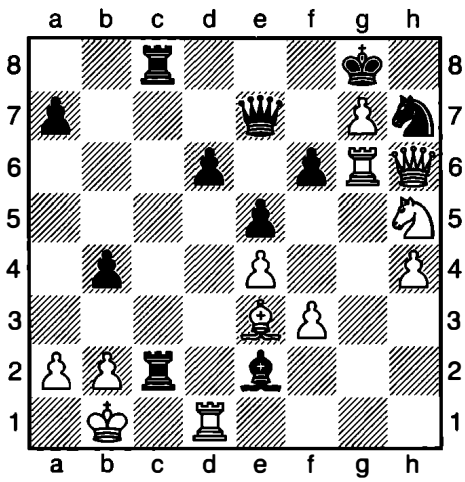
282) White to play (3 points)



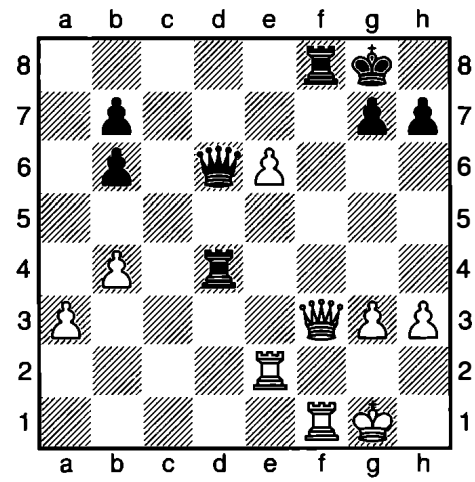
283) White to play (3 points)



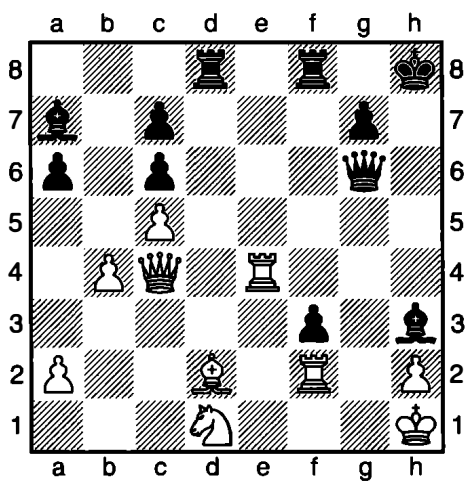
286) Black to play (3 points)



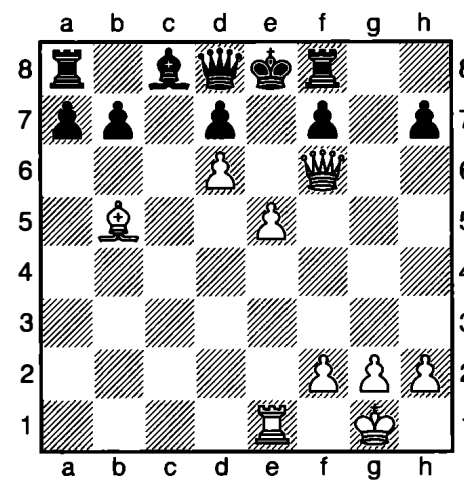
284) White to play (3 points)



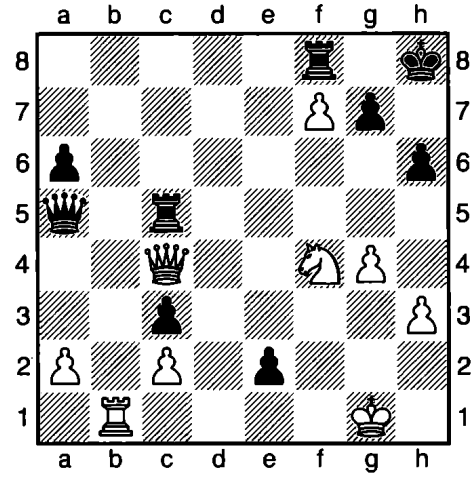
287) White to play (3 points)



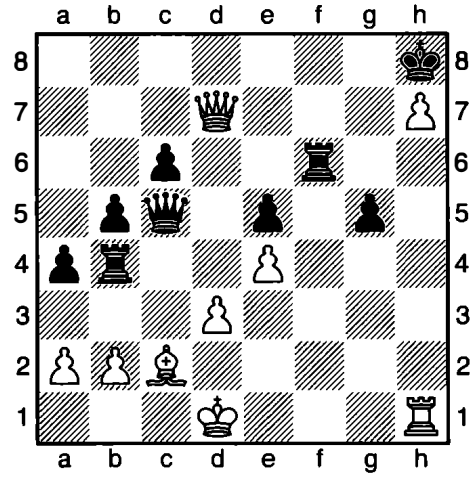
285) Black to play (3 points)



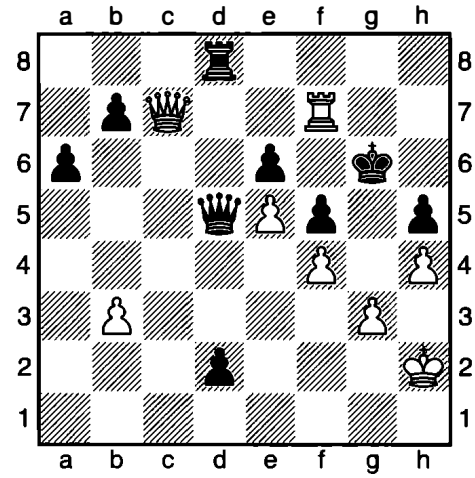
288) White to play (3 points)



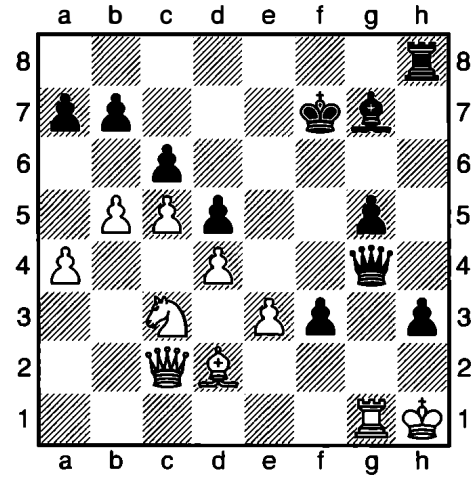
289) White to play (3 points)



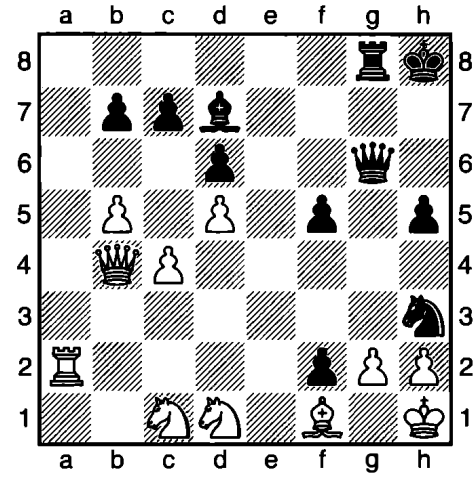
292) White to play (4 points)



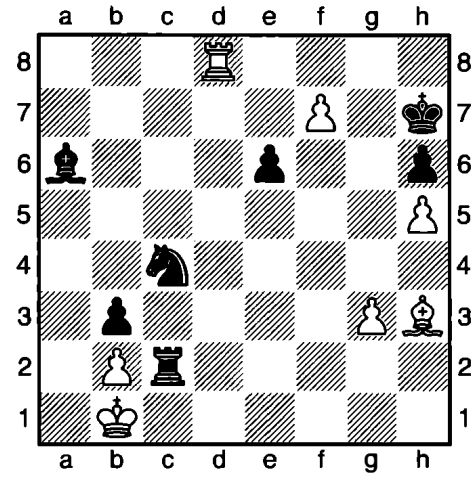
290) Black to play (3 points)



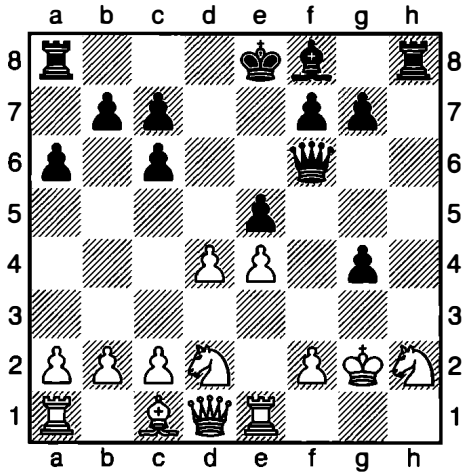
293) Black to play (4 points)



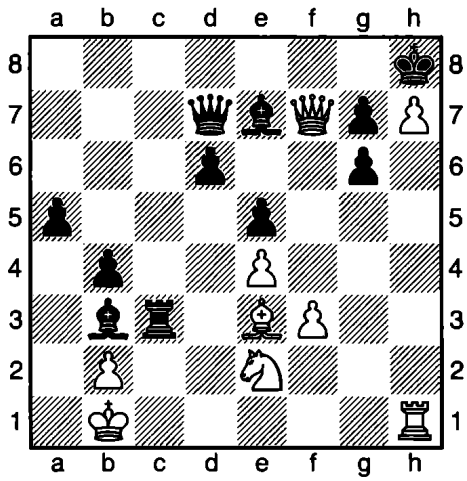
291) Black to play (3 points)



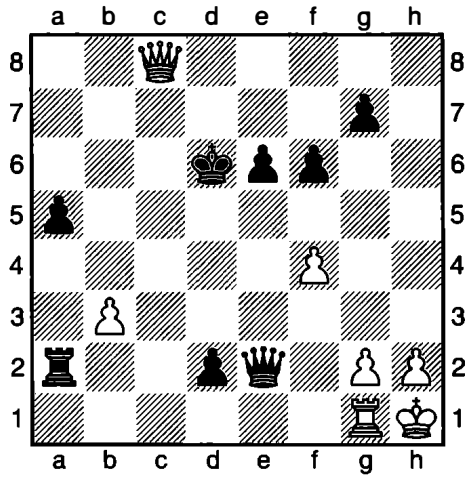
294) White to play (5 points)



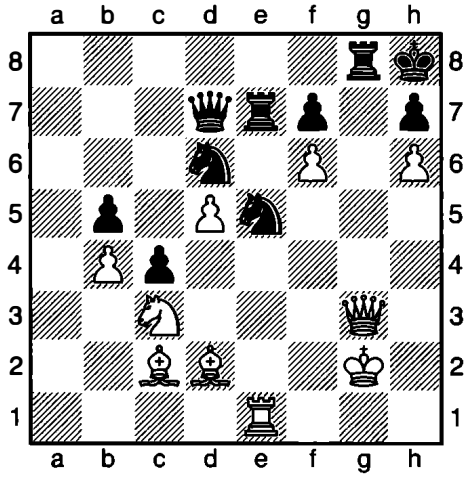
295) Black to play (5 points)



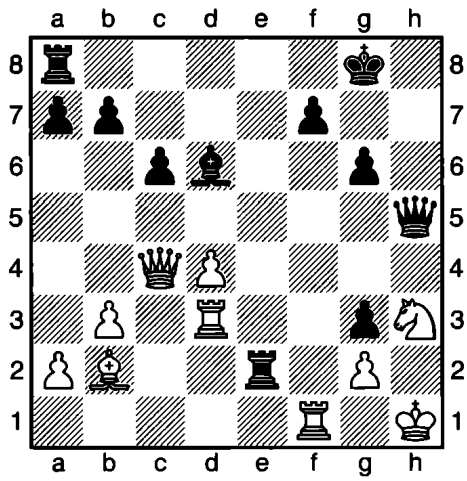
296) White to play (5 points)



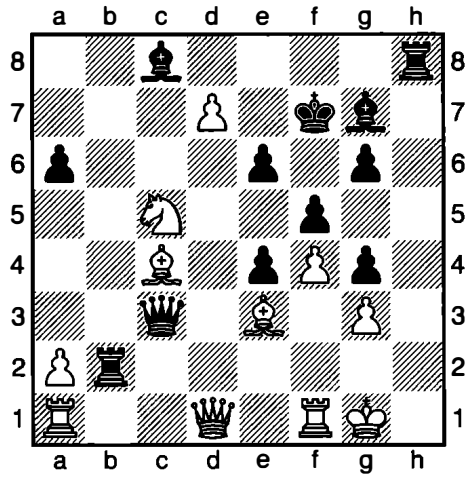
297) Black to play (5 points)



298) White to play (5 points)



299) Black to play (5 points)



300) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Pawn-Promotion Mates

271) I. Solonar – V. Ianocichin
Kishinev 2001

1...♕g2+! 2 ♔xg2
Or 2 ♔e2 f1♕++ 3 ♔e3 ♗xc5#.
2...f1♕#
This is a typical combination involving the removal of a blockading king by means of a sacrifice.

272) A. Glukhov – Vladis. Vasiliev
Kazan 2009

1...♕b1+! 0-1
2 ♘xb1 cxb1♕#.

273) Moreto Quintana – Koziak
La Roda 2007

1...♕h2+! 0-1
2 ♔xh2 g1♕#.

274) A. Tudor – Ta. Balla
Romanian Under-16 Ch, Calimanesti 2000

1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 exf8♕#.

275) Nguyen Chi Minh – P. Forthoffer
Prague 2009

1 e7!
1 f7+? ♔f8 2 ♔f6? doesn't work because 2...e1♕ stops the mate on e7.
1-0
1...e1♕ 2 f7+ ♔h8 3 f8♕#.

276) Estevez Jacome – Bernal Tinajero
Asturias 1992

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♕xh2 f2+ 0-1
After 3 ♖g2 f1♕# neither rook nor queen can interpose as both are pinned.

277) J. Antal – Gal
Hungarian Team Ch 2006/7

1 ♖xa6+! bxa6 2 b7+ 1-0
2...♔a7 3 b8♕#.

278) Vigorito – E. Lund
Budapest 2003

1 ♖xh6+! gxh6 2 ♕d4+
2 ♕c3+ also mates but takes one move longer.
2...♗g7 3 f8♖#
Promoting to a queen is equally effective.

279) R. Taborsky – T. Vesely
Tatranske Zruby 2002

1 ♕d8+! 1-0
1...♗xd8 (after 1...♗f8 2 e7+ White mates next move) 2 e7+ ♔h8 3 e8♕# (or 3 exd8♕#).

280) S. Foisor – Li Shilong
Cappelle la Grande 2008

1...h1♕+! 2 ♔xh1 ♔f2 0-1
3 d8♕ g2+ 4 ♔h2 g1♕+ 5 ♔h3 ♕g3#.

281) Bobras – Szelag
Polish Ch, Poznan 2005

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 g8♕+!
White cannot play 2 ♖h4+ at once as Black can reply 2...♕xh4.
2...♕xg8
2...♔h6 3 ♕g6#.
3 ♖h4#

282) Marcelin – Gschnitzer
2nd Bundesliga 2002/3

1 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 2 ♕g8+! ♔xg8
2...♔e7 3 dxe8♕+ leads to mate in a few moves.
3 dxe8♕#

283) Zaragatski – So. Kartsev
Dortmund 1999

1 ♕g8+! ♔xg8 2 h7+ ♔f8
It's also mate after 2...♔h8 3 ♖d8+ ♔g7 4 ♖g8# or 2...♔g7 3 h8♕+ ♔g6 4 ♕h6#.
3 h8♕+ ♔e7 4 ♕d8+ 1-0
4...♔e6 5 ♕d6#.

284) Anja Wagener – Ortartchiev
Luxembourg Ch, Differdange 2007
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 g8♕+! 1-0
2...♖xg8 3 ♖h6#.

285) Bernadsky – Shkuro
Alushta 2008
1...♕g2+! 0-1
This sacrifice unleashes the power of the pawn and mates after 2 ♖xg2 fxg2+ 3 ♔g1 ♖f1+ 4 ♕xf1 gxf1♕#.

286) D. Salvador Lopez – Mengual Bolo
Cullera 2005
1...♕xa2+! 0-1
2 ♔xa2 ♖a4+ 3 ♔b1 ♖a1+ 4 ♘xa1 bxa1♕#.

287) Indjić – Jovančić
Pančevo (team event) 2005
1 ♕f7+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔h8 2 ♕xf8+ ♕xf8 3 ♖xf8# or 1...♖xf7 2 exf7+ ♔f8 (2...♔h8 is met by 3 ♖e8+ or 3 f8♕+, with mate next move in either case) 3 ♖e8#.

288) Menkinoski – K.N. Krastev
Blagoevgrad 2010
1 e6! ♕xf6
Forced, as White was threatening 2 exd7# or 2 exf7# and 1...fxe6 also leads to mate after 2 ♖xe6+ or 2 ♕xe6+.
2 exd7++ ♔d8 3 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 4 dxe8♖#
Of course, promoting to a queen was just as good.

289) Zukin – P. Gusakov
Kimry 2003
White is winning in any case, but he has a surprising way to force a quick mate.
1 ♘g6+ ♔h7 2 ♘xf8+ ♔h8 3 ♘g6+ ♔h7 4 f8♘#

290) Amil Meilan – H. Fiori
Buenos Aires 2002
White is threatening mate by ♖f6#, so Black must operate entirely with checks.
1...♕h1+! 0-1
2 ♔xh1 d1♕+ 3 ♔g2 ♖d2+ 4 ♔h3 ♕h1# (Black can also mate by 4...♕f1# or 4...♕g4#).

291) Agamaliev – Maciejewski
Polanica Zdroj 2000
Black must clear the way to the g1-square.
1...♕xg2+! 0-1
2 ♗xg2 f1♕+ 3 ♗xf1 ♖g1#.

292) M. Csorba – Pinczes
Hungarian Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♕g7+! ♔xg7 2 h8♕+ 1-0
2...♔f7 (2...♔g6 3 ♕h7#) 3 ♖h7+ ♔e6 4 ♕c8+ (4 ♕e8+ is also good) 4...♔d6 5 ♕d7#.

293) Rittie – J. Marchal
Vandoeuvre 2004
1...♕g2+! 2 ♖xg2 hxg2++ 0-1
3 ♔g1 ♖h1+ 4 ♔f2 ♖f1+ (4...g1♕+ 5 ♔xf3 ♕f1+ 6 ♔g3 ♖g1+ 7 ♔h2 ♕g2# is also good) 5 ♔g3 g1♕+ 6 ♔h3 ♕g2#.

294) Georgiadis – D. Berczes
European Ch, Budva 2009
Black is threatening to draw by perpetual check starting with ...♖xb2+, so White must operate with checks.
1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 2 f8♕+ ♔h7 3 ♕f7+
White has to bring his bishop into the attack with check. 3 ♕e7+ is equally good.
3...♔h8 4 ♕f6+ ♔h7
Or 4...♔g8 5 ♗xe6+ ♔h7 6 ♕g6+ ♔h8 7 ♕xh6#.
5 ♕g6+ ♔h8 6 ♕xh6+ 1-0
6...♔g8 7 ♗xe6#.

295) J. Nybäck – Sisatto
Finnish Team Ch 2009
Black has already given up two pieces and now finishes White off with a further sacrifice.
1...♖xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♕xf2+ 3 ♔h1 g3 0-1
Black has two threats. White can meet the first threat of 4...♕h2# by, for example, 4 ♘f3, but then he falls victim to the second: 4...g2+ 5 ♔h2 g1♕++ 6 ♔h3 ♕gg3#.

296) Diez Viera – H. Garro Beraza
San Sebastian 2007
1 ♕xg7+!
Note that 1 ♕g8+? is not possible due to 1...♗xg8.
1...♔xg7 2 h8♕+ 1-0

2...♔f7 3 ♖h7+ ♔e6 4 ♕g8+ ♔f6 5 ♕g7+ ♔e6 6 ♕f7#.

297) I. Perez de Villar Framil – Morcillo Ferran

Barcelona 2002

1...♕xg2+! 2 ♔xg2

Or 2 ♖xg2 d1♕+ 3 ♖g1 ♕f3+ (3...♕d5+ is equally good) 4 ♖g2 ♕xg2#.

2...d1♕+ 3 ♔g3

3 ♔h3 ♕f3+ 4 ♖g3 (4 ♔h4 ♖xh2#) 4...♕h5#.

3...♕xg1+ 0-1

After 4 ♔f3 Black can mate in various ways, such as 4...♕g2+ 5 ♔e3 ♕e2+ 6 ♔d4 ♖d2+ 7 ♔c3 ♕d3#.

298) S. Anderson – M. Langer

Texan Ch, Dallas 2003

1 ♕g7+! ♖xg7+ 2 hxg7+ ♔g8 3 ♗xh7+! 1-0

3...♔xh7 4 ♖h1+ ♔g6 (4...♔g8 5 ♖h8#) 5 g8♕+ followed by 6 ♕g5#.

299) Joerdens – M. Lazić

Seefeld 2000

1...♕xh3+! 2 gxh3 g2+ 0-1

3 ♔g1 ♗h2+! 4 ♔xh2 gxf1♕+ 5 ♔g3 ♖g2+ (or 5...♕g2+ 6 ♔h4 ♕e4+ and mate next move) 6 ♔h4 and now Black can mate by 6...♕f4# or 6...♕f6#.

300) J. Tomka – Julenyi

Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♗xe6+ ♔e7

1...♔f6 is answered by 2 d8♕+ ♖xd8 3 ♕xd8#.

1-0

Black resigned without waiting for the finish 2 dxc8♘+! ♖xc8 (2...♔e8 3 ♕d7+ and White mates next move, or 2...♔f6 3 ♗d4+ ♕xd4+ 4 ♕xd4#) 3 ♕d7+ and 4 ♕f7#.

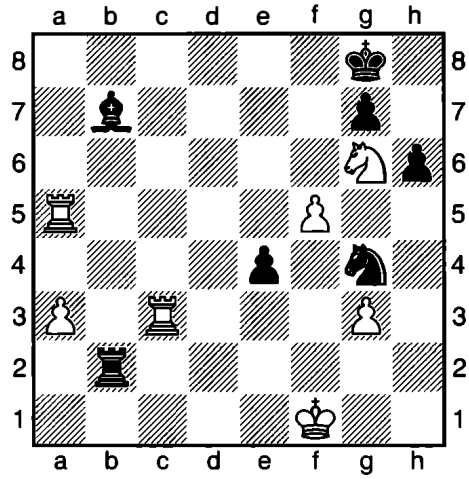
A remarkable combination in which White promotes to a queen in one line and a knight in another.

Score-Chart for Pawn-Promotion Mates

Position number	Points	Score
271	1	
272	1	
273	1	
274	1	
275	2	
276	2	
277	2	
278	2	
279	2	
280	3	
281	3	
282	3	
283	3	
284	3	
285	3	
286	3	
287	3	
288	3	
289	3	
290	3	
291	3	
292	4	
293	4	
294	5	
295	5	
296	5	
297	5	
298	5	
299	5	
300	5	
Total	**93**	

6 Mates with Rook and Minor Piece

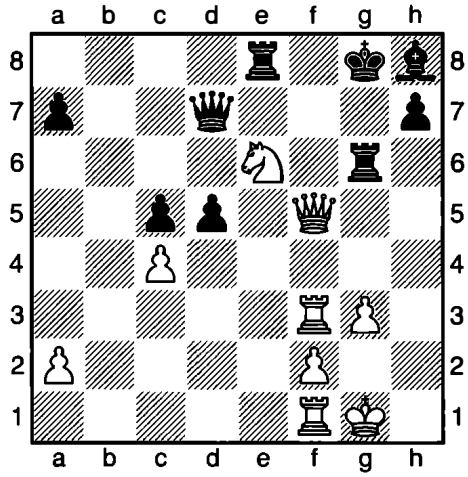
A rook plus bishop or knight is a powerful attacking force, and many common mating patterns are based on this combination of material. Although one might expect the two minor pieces to be present with roughly equal frequency, the combination involving a knight seems to occur more often than that with a bishop. Here's an example, in which the rook and knight are helped by a pawn.



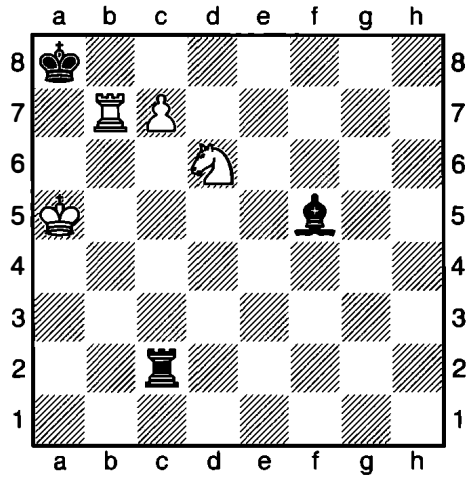
K. Berg – J. Kristiansen
Århus 2009

White would like to get a rook to Black's first rank, but both a8 and c8 are covered by Black's bishop. The solution to this problem is to sacrifice one rook to draw the bishop out of position, allowing the other rook to reach its goal. White played **1 ♖a8+!** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**) since after 1...♗xa8 2 ♖c8+ the rook and knight combination forces mate: 2...♔f7 3 ♖f8# or 2...♔h7 3 ♖h8#.

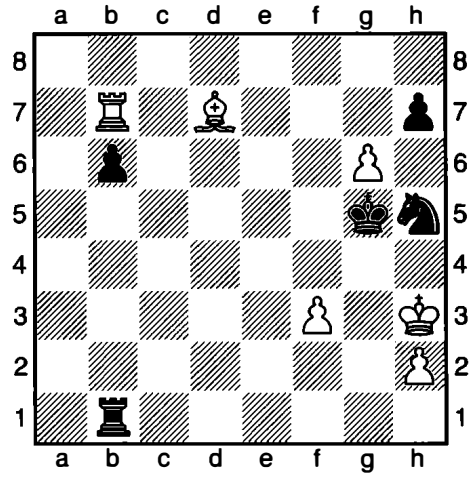
The positions in this chapter will show you how a rook and a minor piece can operate as a team to deliver checkmate. Learning how the pieces work together is important in all areas of chess, and never more so than when playing for mate!



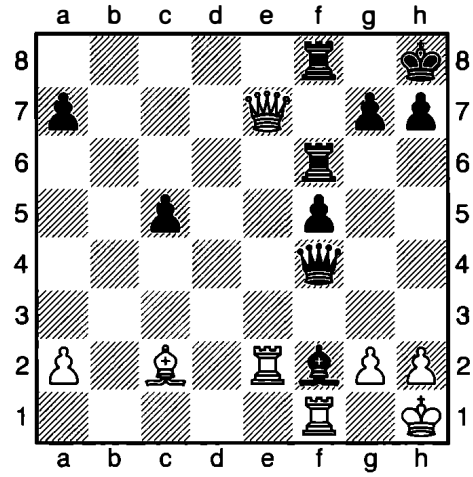
301) White to play (1 point)



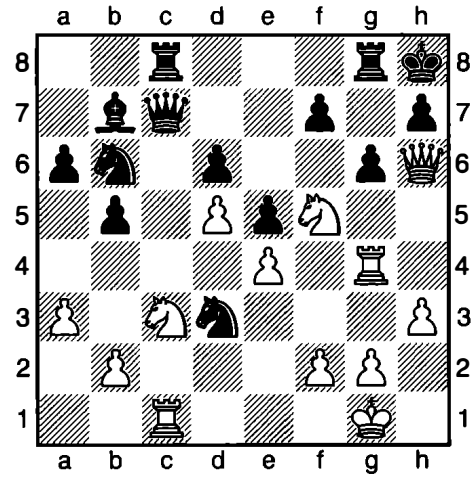
302) White to play (1 point)



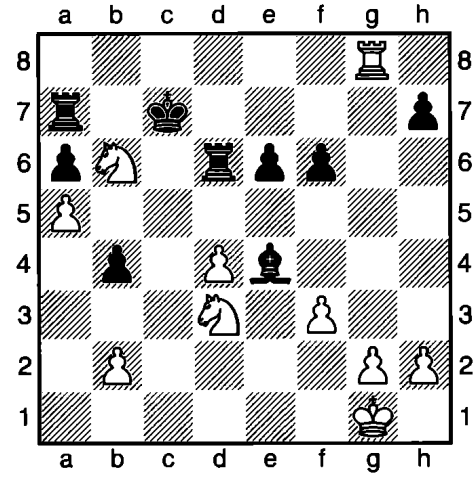
303) Black to play (1 point)



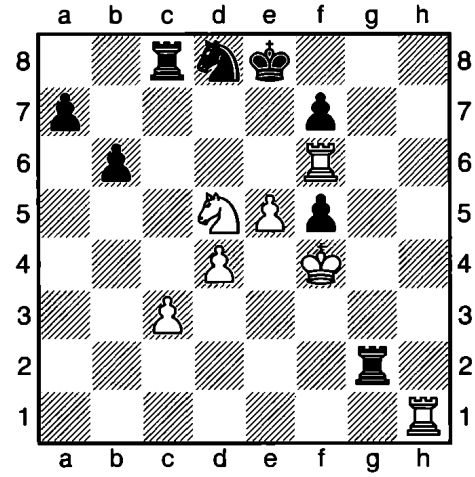
304) Black to play (1 point)



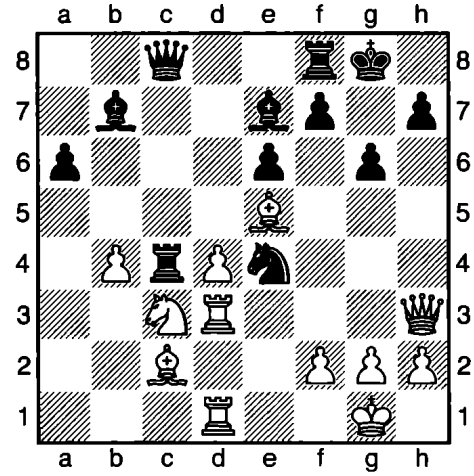
305) White to play (1 point)



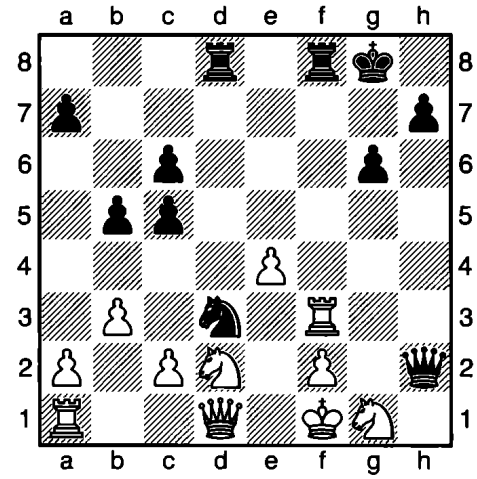
306) White to play (1 point)



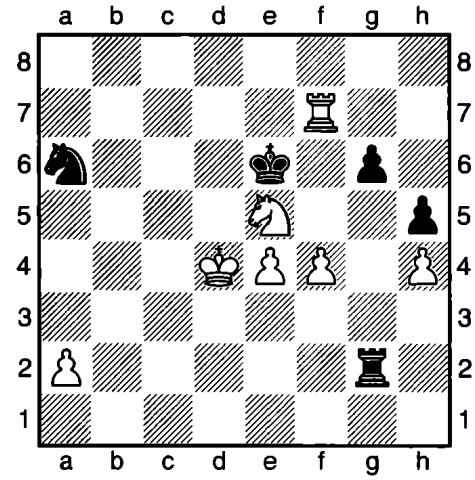
307) White to play (1 point)



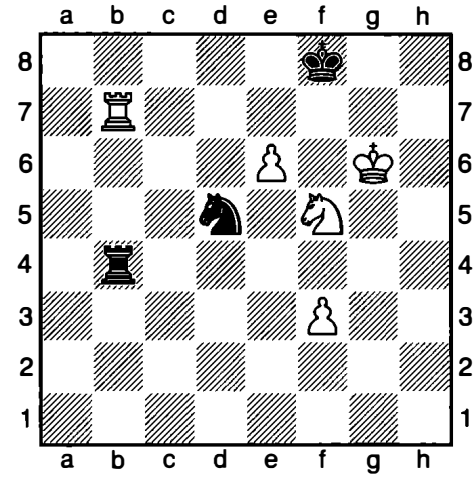
310) White to play (2 points)



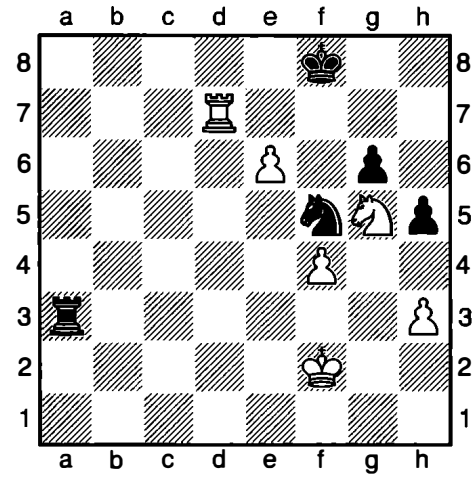
308) Black to play (1 point)



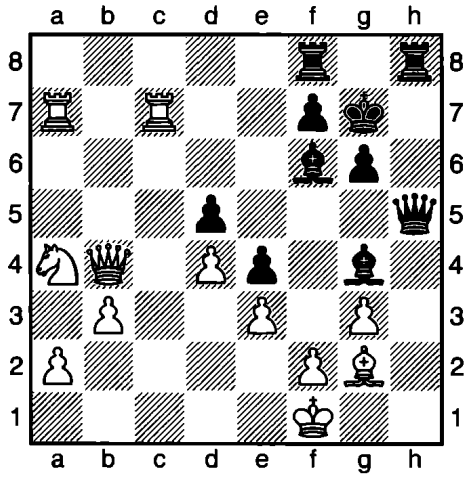
311) White to play (2 points)



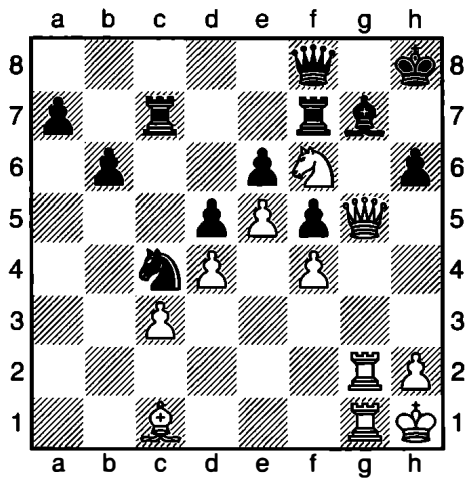
309) White to play (2 points)



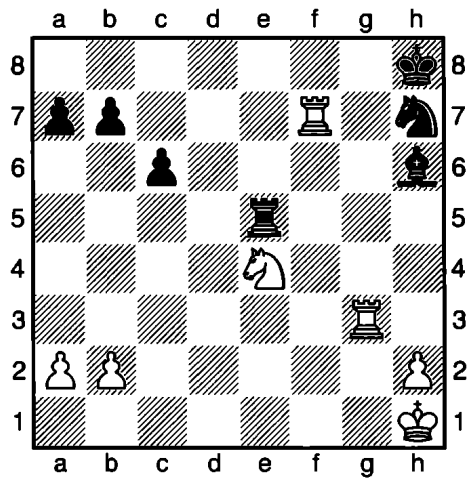
312) White to play (2 points)



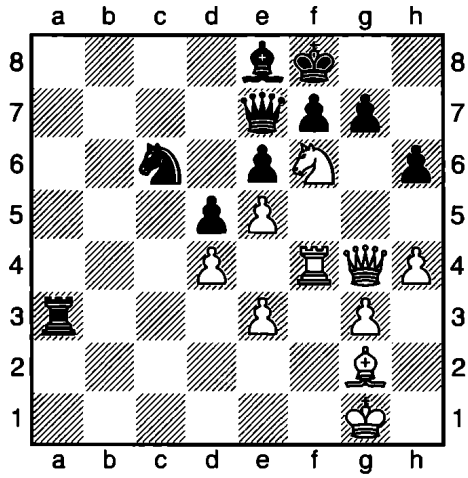
313) Black to play (2 points)



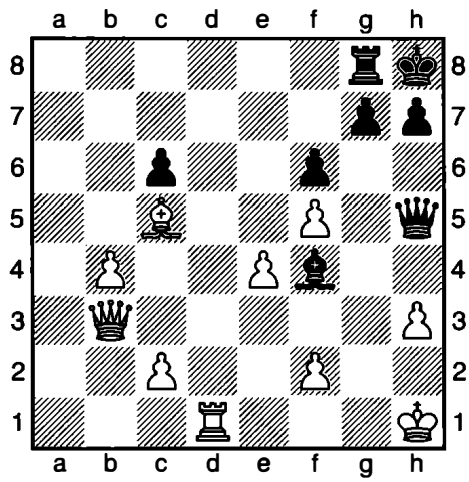
314) White to play (2 points)



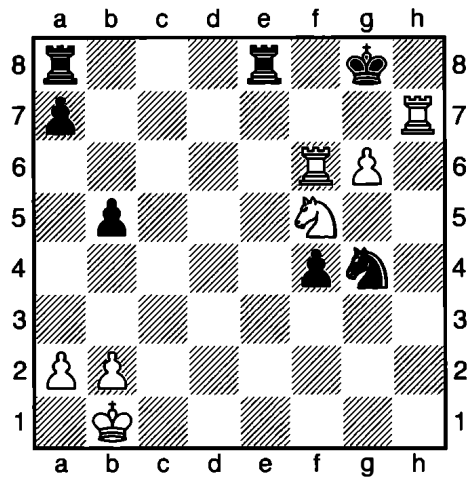
315) White to play (2 points)



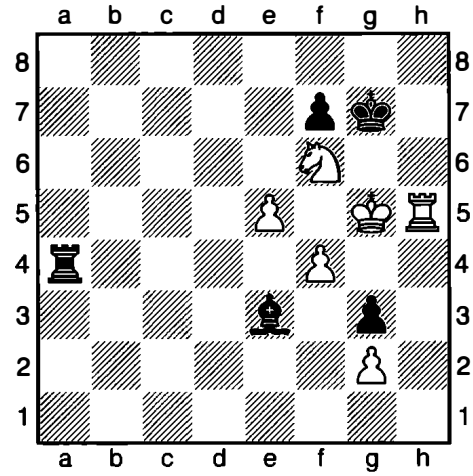
316) White to play (2 points)



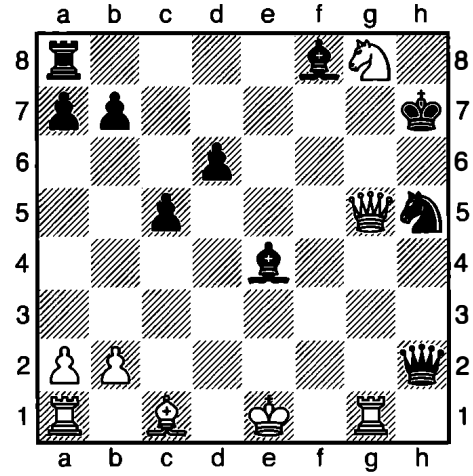
317) White to play (2 points)



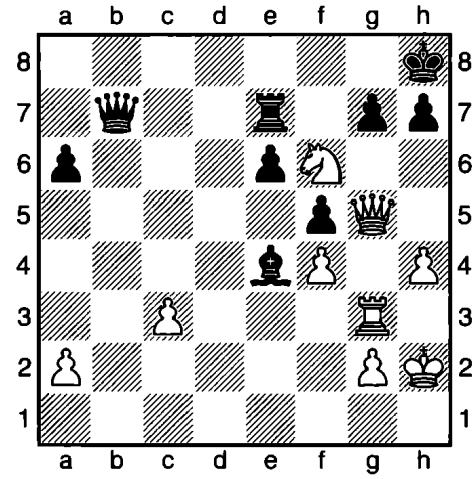
318) White to play (2 points)



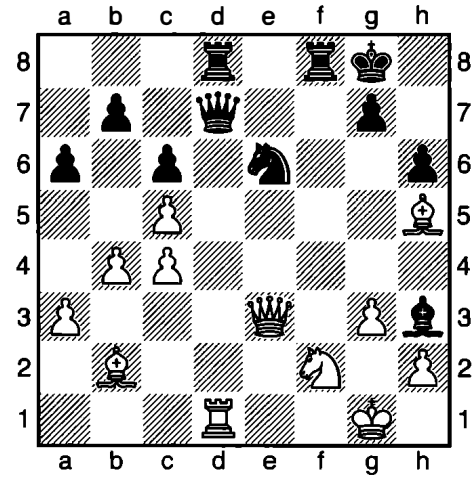
319) White to play (2 points)



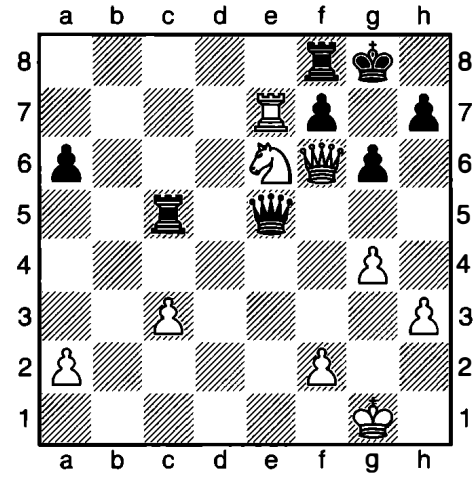
322) White to play (2 points)



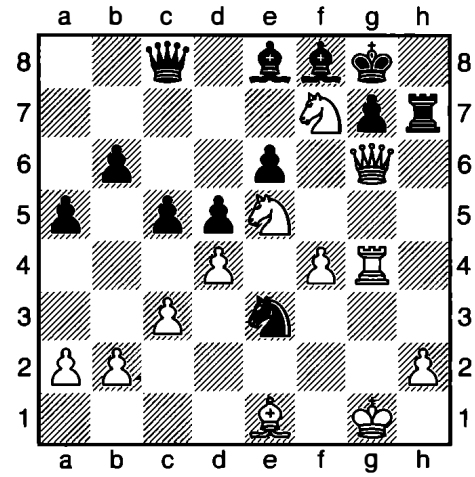
320) White to play (2 points)



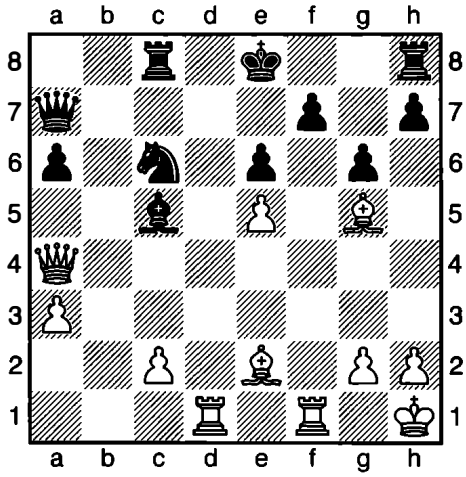
323) Black to play (2 points)



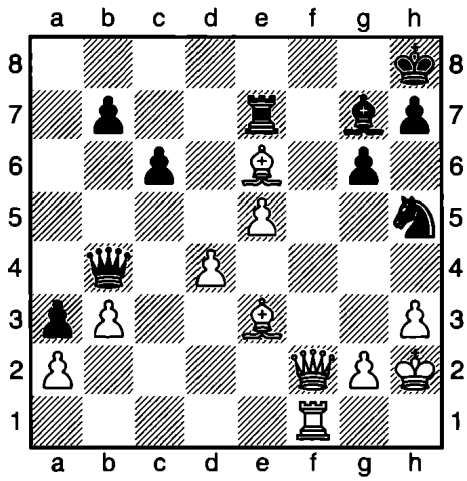
321) White to play (2 points)



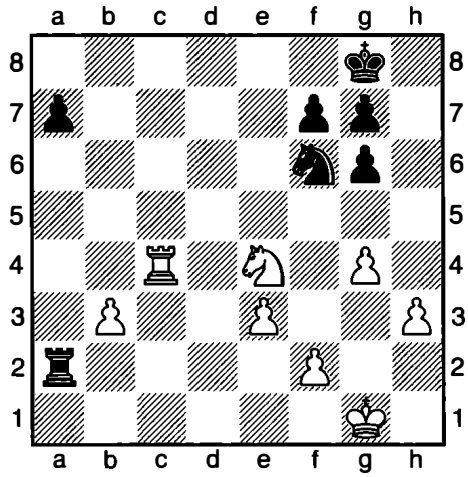
324) White to play (2 points)



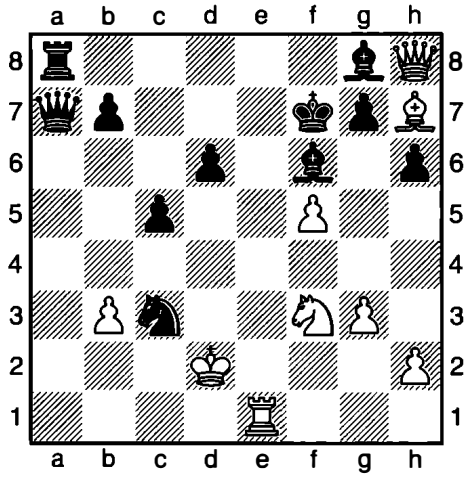
325) White to play (2 points)



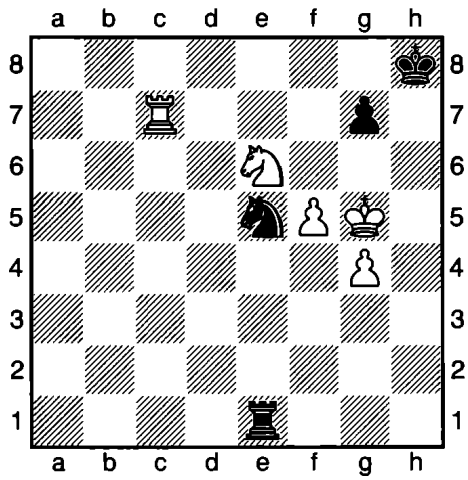
326) White to play (2 points)



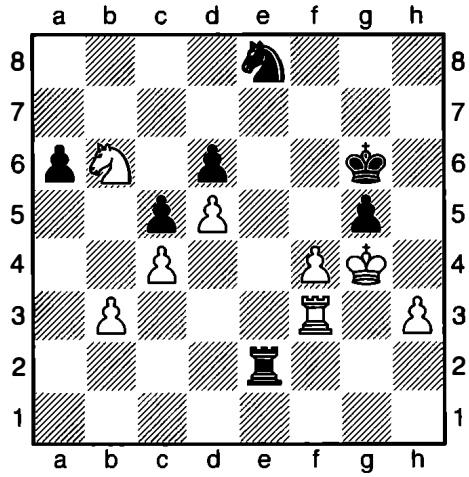
327) White to play (3 points)



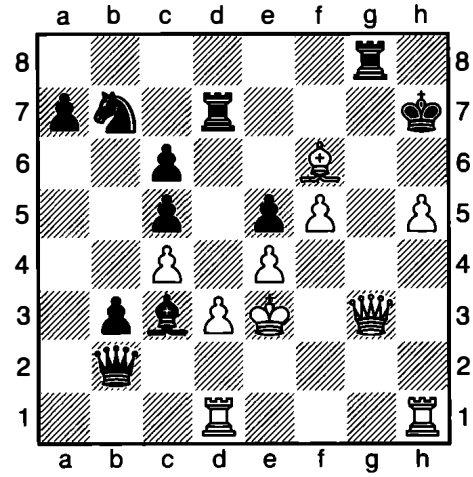
328) White to play (3 points)



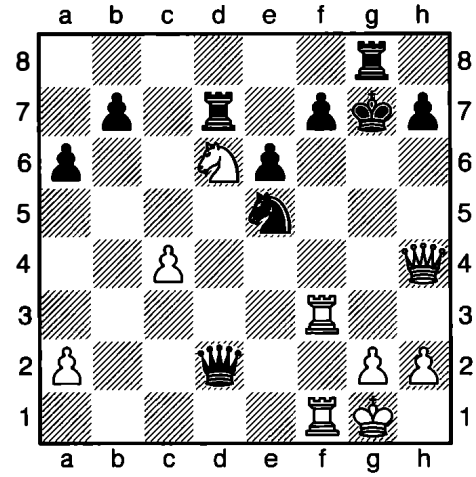
329) White to play (3 points)



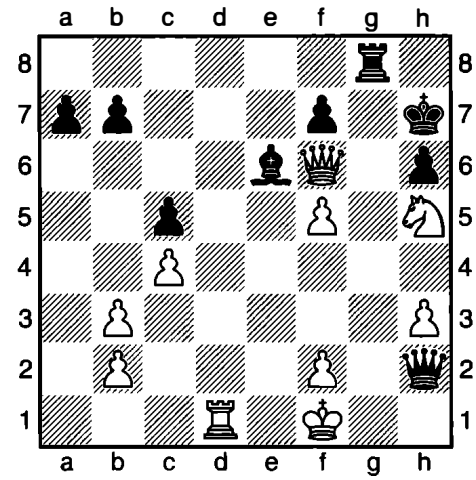
330) Black to play (3 points)



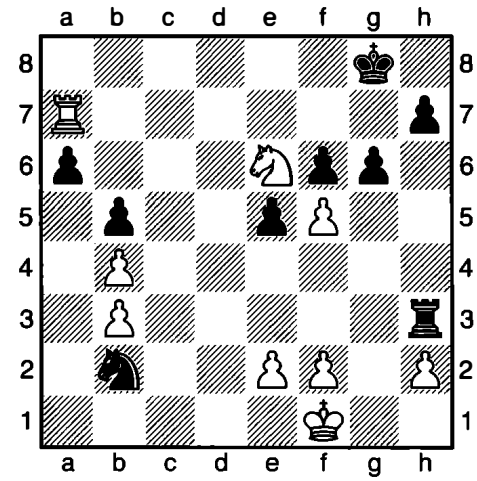
331) White to play (3 points)



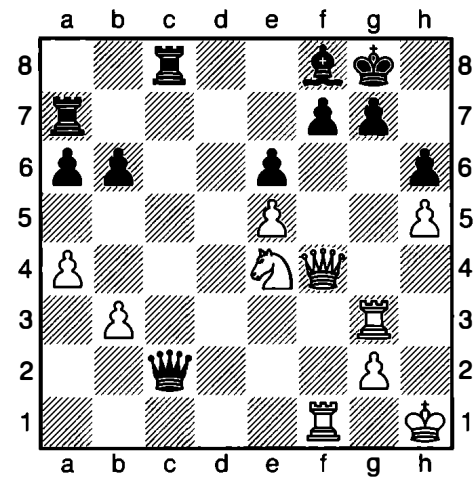
334) White to play (3 points)



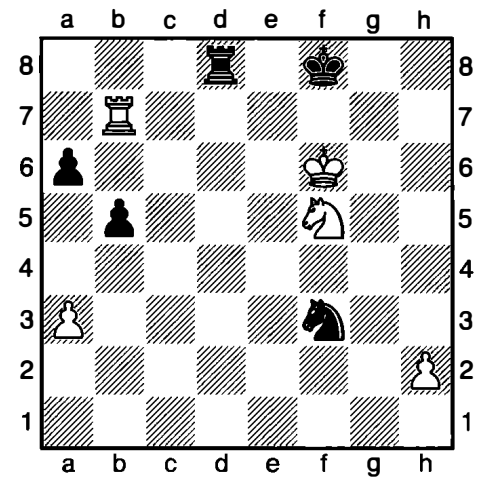
332) White to play (3 points)



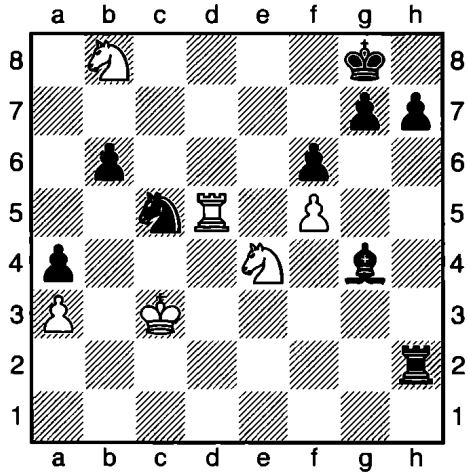
335) White to play (3 points)



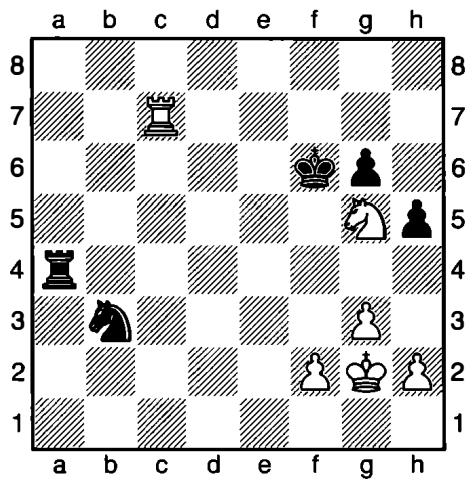
333) White to play (3 points)



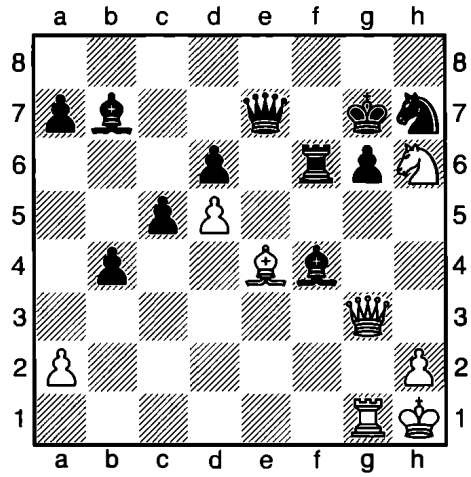
336) White to play (3 points)



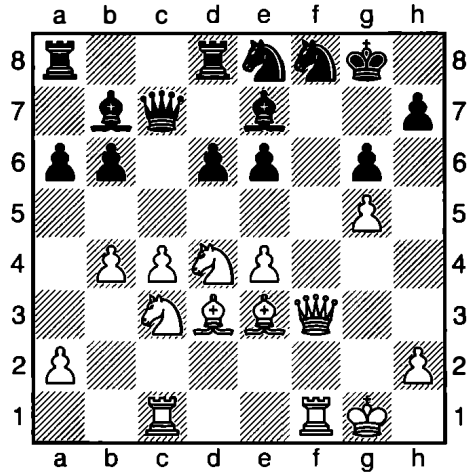
337) White to play (3 points)



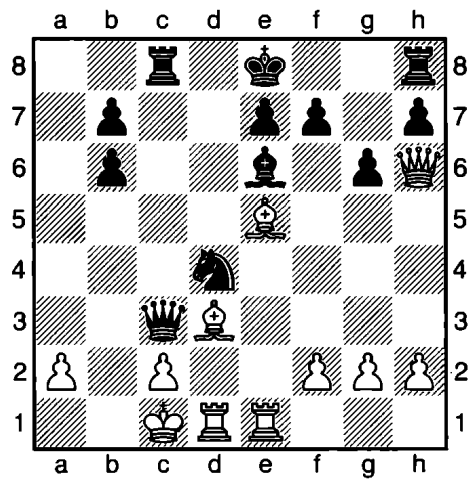
338) White to play (3 points)



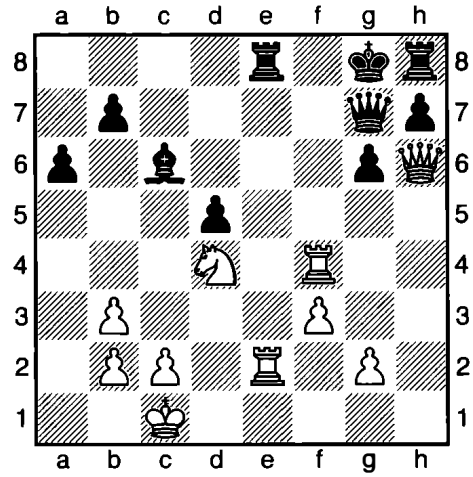
339) White to play (3 points)



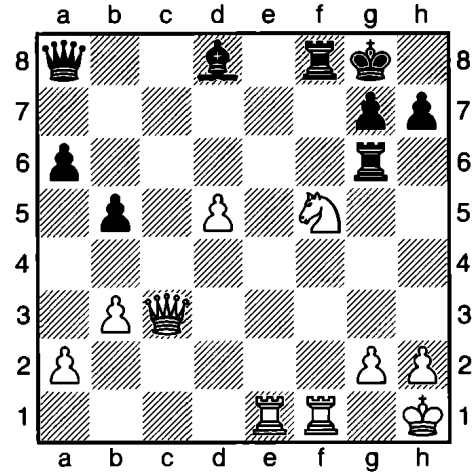
340) White to play (3 points)



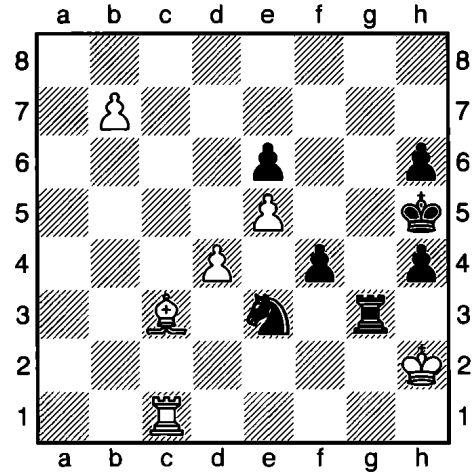
341) Black to play (3 points)



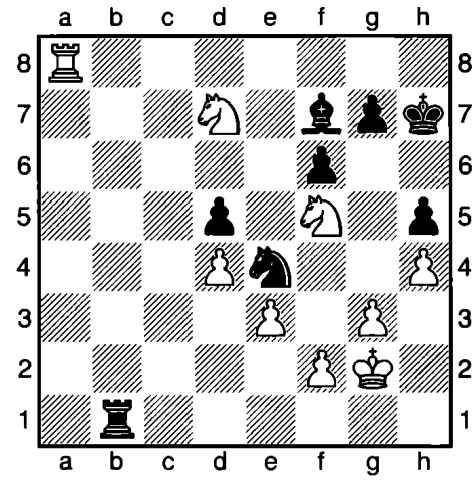
342) White to play (3 points)



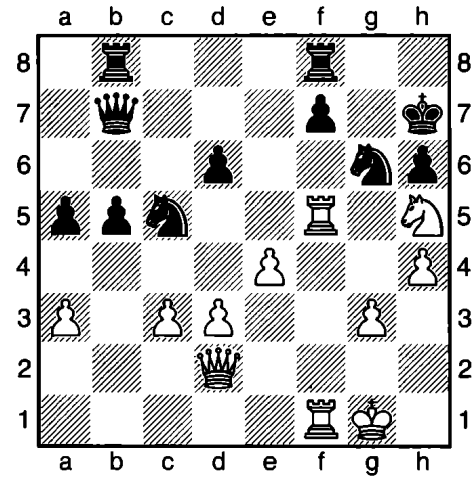
343) White to play (3 points)



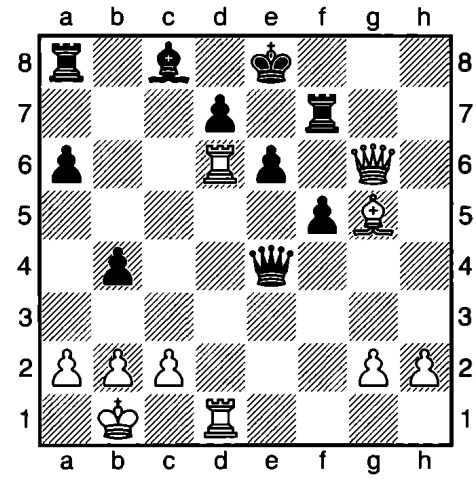
346) Black to play (4 points)



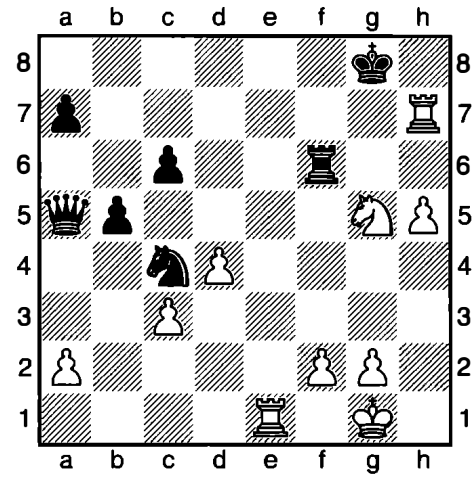
344) White to play (3 points)



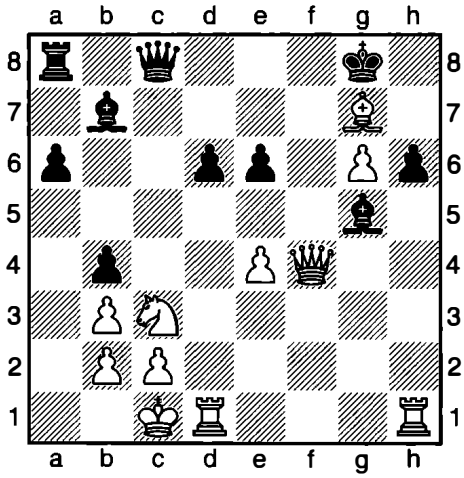
347) White to play (4 points)



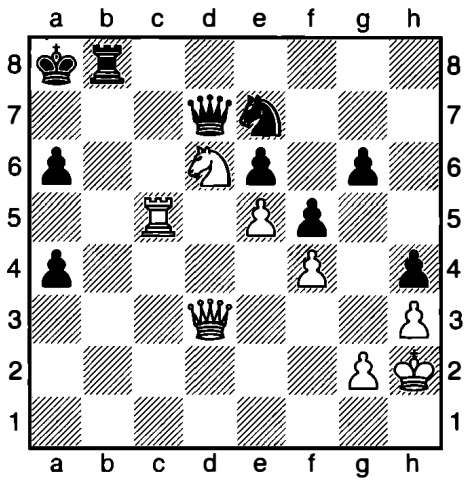
345) White to play (3 points)



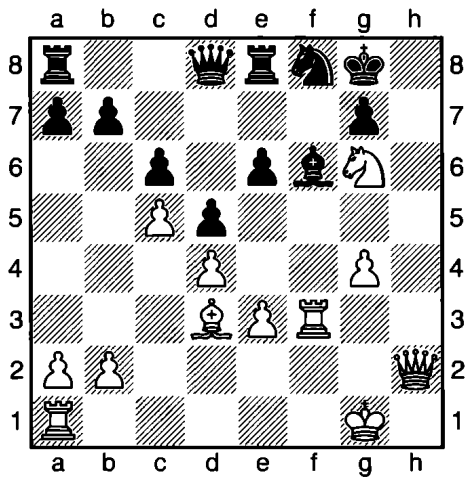
348) White to play (4 points)



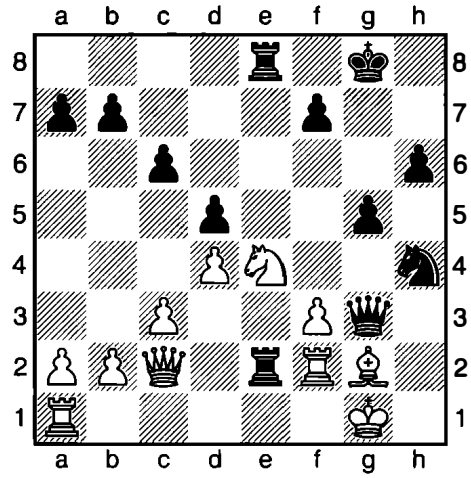
349) White to play (4 points)



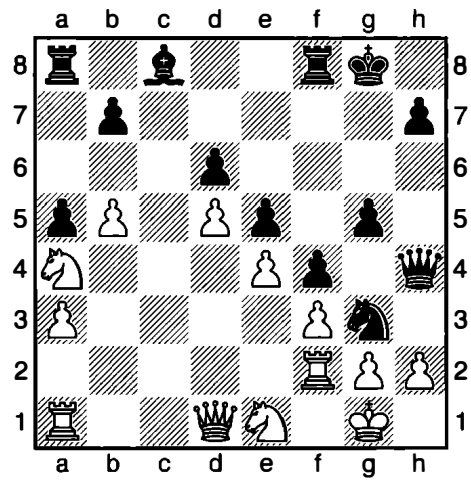
350) White to play (4 points)



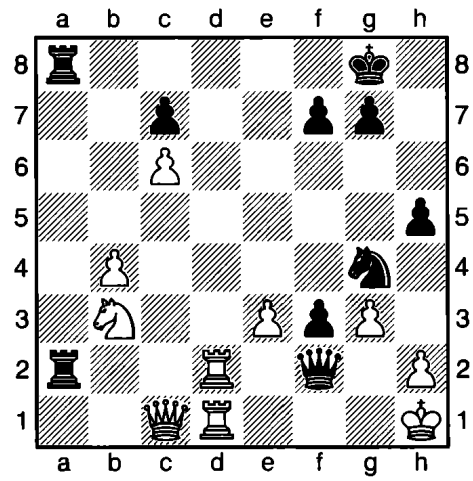
351) White to play (4 points)



352) Black to play (4 points)



353) Black to play (5 points)



354) Black to play (5 points)

Solutions for Mates with Rook and Minor Piece

301) C. Thomson – M. Mitchell
Scottish Ch, Edinburgh 2009
1 ♕f8+! 1-0
1...♖xf8 2 ♖xf8#. This is a typical mate with rook and knight.

302) J. Polgar – Nayer
Natanya (blitz) 2009
1 ♖b8+ ♔a7 2 ♘b5#

303) M. Muse – F. Schwarz
2nd Bundesliga 2007/8
1...♖g1! 0-1
White cannot prevent 2...♘f4#.

304) Kindinova – Tsepeleva
Russian Women's Ch, Smolensk 2008
White resigned (**0-1**) without waiting for the conclusion **1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 3 ♕h4 ♖xh4#**.

305) Piecka – Vojar
Slovakian Team Ch 1998/9
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4#

306) Nigalidze – F. Zeinalov
Baku 2008
1 ♖c8+ ♔b7 2 ♘c5# is an attractive mating pattern.

307) R. Swinkels – M. Wolter
Balatonlelle 2008
1 ♖h8+ ♔d7 2 ♖d6#

308) A. Epstein – Sudakova
St Petersburg Women's Ch 2002
1...♕xf2+! 0-1
Black forces mate next move after 2 ♖xf2 ♖xf2#.

309) Brynell – Sagit
Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2008/9
1 ♖f7+ ♔g8
1...♔e8 2 ♘d6+ ♔d8 3 ♖d7#.
2 ♘h6+ ♔h8 3 ♖h7#
3 ♖f8# is just as good.

310) T. Weiss – Mario Bartel
Germany (team event) 2004/5
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#. This mate often arises in attacks against the castled king and there are further examples in other chapters.

311) Mareco – F. Semprevivo
Villa Ballester 2009
1 f5+ 1-0
1...gxf5 2 exf5+ ♔d6 3 ♖d7#.

312) F. Cruz – Fe. Klein
La Roda 2009
1 ♘h7+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔e8 2 ♘f6+ ♔f8 3 ♖f7# or 1...♔g8 2 ♘f6+ ♔h8 (2...♔f8 3 ♖f7#) 3 ♖h7#.

313) M. Marszalek – A. Kovaliov
Augustow 2008
1...♕h1+! 2 ♗xh1 ♖xh1+ 3 ♔g2 ♗f3#

314) John Fritz – M. Lundström
Swedish Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♕xh6+! 1-0
1...♗xh6 2 ♖g8+ ♕xg8 3 ♖xg8#.

315) Z. Djukić – Milu. Lukić
Bošnjaci 2008
1 ♖xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♘f6+ ♔h8 3 ♖g8#.

316) D. Skibbe – K. Hildebrand
Germany (women's team event) 2007
1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖g4+ 1-0
2...♔f8 and 2...♔h8 are both answered by 3 ♖g8#.

317) E. Danielian – Kosteniuk
European Women's Ch (rapid), Minsk 2001
1 ♕xg8+! 1-0
1...♔xg8 2 ♖d8+ ♔f7 3 ♖f8#.

318) A. Mastrovasilis – Lazaridis Patsalias
Kalamaria 2008
1 ♖f8+!! 1-0
White forces mate after 1...♖xf8 2 ♘e7# or 1...♔xf8 2 ♖h8#.

319) A. Diamant – P. Roggeveen
Vlissingen 2008
1 ♖h7+ ♔f8 2 ♖h8+ ♔g7
2...♔e7 3 ♖e8#.
3 ♖g8#

320) G. Albarran – Zukerfeld
Buenos Aires 2004
1 ♕h6! 1-0
The threat is 2 ♕xh7#, and if 1...gxh6 (1...g6 and 1...gxf6 are met by 2 ♕f8#) then 2 ♖g8#.

321) P. Houdek – S. Kuba
Czech Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 2 ♖e8+ ♖f8 3 ♖xf8#.

322) D. Housieaux – S. Peray
French Junior Team Ch, Pau 2000
1 ♕xh5+! 1-0
1...♕xh5 2 ♘f6+ ♔h8 3 ♖g8#.

323) Occhipinti – Campomori
Rome 2007
1...♕xd1+! 2 ♗xd1
2 ♘xd1 ♖f1# is even quicker.
2...♖xd1+ 0-1
3 ♘xd1 ♖f1#.

324) Frasineanu – Bondoc
Bucharest 2002
1 ♕xh7+ 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

325) Z. Lanka – M. Kröncke
Kiel 2005
1 ♕xc6+! 1-0
1...♖xc6 is met by 2 ♖d8#, while White mates quickly after 1...♔f8 2 ♕xc8+ ♔g7 3 ♗f6+.

326) Solleveld – Fabregas Fontanet
Andorra la Vella 2004
1 ♕f8+! 1-0
1...♗xf8 2 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 3 ♖g8#.

327) Z. Martić – Kitarović
Bošnjaci 2009
1 ♖c8+ ♔h7 2 ♘g5+ 1-0
White's rook and knight combine to launch a deadly attack on the enemy king. The finish would be 2...♔h6 3 ♘xf7+ ♔h7 4 ♖h8#.

328) Sa. Martinović – S. Nikolov
Omis 2004
1 ♕xg8+! 1-0
1...♖xg8 2 ♗g6+ ♔f8 3 ♖e8#.

329) Hillarp Persson – Romanishin
Wijk aan Zee 2009
1 ♖c8+ ♔h7 2 ♘f8+ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♘g6+ ♔f7 (3...♔h7 4 ♖h8#) 4 ♖f8#.

330) Wutzlhofer – Mart. Steinert
Austrian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♘f6+ 2 ♔g3 ♘h5+
2...♘e4+ is equally good.
3 ♔g4 ♖g2+ 0-1
4 ♖g3 ♖xg3#.

331) A. Murillo – G. Juarez Flores
Guatemala City 2001
1 ♕g6+! 1-0
1...♖xg6 2 hxg6++ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

332) Casper – Brener
Bundesliga 2007/8
1 ♕g7+! 1-0
1...♖xg7 2 ♘f6+ ♔h8 3 ♖d8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xg8#.

333) Yang Shen – R. Rodriguez Lopez
Gibraltar 2008
1 ♘f6+ ♔h8 2 ♕xh6+! 1-0
2...gxh6 3 ♖g8#.

334) B. Lalith – P. Vishnu
Indian Ch, Chennai 2008
1 ♕f6+ ♔f8 2 ♕xf7+! ♘xf7 3 ♖xf7+ 1-0
3...♖xf7 4 ♖xf7#.

335) Roghani – Golizadeh
Iranian Ch, Teheran 2008
1 ♖g7+ ♔h8 2 ♖f7! 1-0
The threat is 3 ♖f8# and after 2...h5 3 fxg6 the mate cannot be prevented.

336) Tristan – Vazquez Reyes
Pan American Junior Ch, Montevideo 2009
1 ♖f7+ ♔g8
1...♔e8 2 ♘g7#.
2 ♘e7+ ♔h8 3 ♘g6+ ♔g8 4 ♖g7#

337) Doncea – Delort
Rhône 2008
1 ♖d8+ ♔f7 2 ♘d6+ ♔e7 3 ♘c6#
An attractive and unusual mate.

338) V. Shushpanov – Dzhangobegov
Peterhof 2008
1 f4!
With the deadly threat of 2 ♖f7#.
1...♘d4
Other moves also lead to mate:
1) 1...♔f5 2 ♖f7+ ♔g4 3 h3#.
2) 1...♖xf4 2 gxf4 ♔f5 3 ♖f7+ ♔g4 4 h3+ ♔h4 5 ♘f3#.
3) 1...♖a2+ 2 ♔h3 ♖xh2+ 3 ♔xh2 ♔f5 4 ♔h3 followed by 5 ♖f7#.
2 ♖f7#

339) Payen – Fedorchuk
Cappelle la Grande 2005
1 ♕xg6+! ♖xg6
A king move allows 2 ♕g8#.
2 ♖xg6+ 1-0
Both 2...♔f8 and 2...♔h8 are met by 3 ♖g8#.

340) Panarin – Bachmann Schiavo
Internet (playchess.com) 2005
1 ♕f7+ ♔h8 2 ♕xf8+! 1-0
2...♗xf8 3 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 4 ♘xe6#.

341) Wu Wenjin – Bu Xiangzhi
Beijing Zonal 2005
1...♕xc2+! 0-1
2 ♗xc2 ♖xc2+ 3 ♔b1 ♗xa2+ 4 ♔a1 ♘b3#.

342) S. Stojić – S. Myers
Australian Open, Manly 2009
1 ♖xe8+
Move-order is important. Not 1 ♕xg7+? ♔xg7 2 ♖xe8 ♖xe8, when Black escapes.
1...♗xe8 2 ♕xg7+ ♔xg7 3 ♘e6+ 1-0
3...♔g8 (3...♔h6 4 ♖h4#) 4 ♖f8#.

343) Chernomordik – Gershkowich
Tel-Aviv 2002
1 ♕xg7+! ♖xg7 2 ♘h6+ 1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♖xf8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xg8#.

344) Zaja – Z. Matić
Zagreb 2006
1 ♘f8+ ♔h8 2 ♘g6++ 1-0
2...♔h7 3 ♖h8+ ♔xg6 4 ♘e7#.

345) Topalov – Ljubojević
Amber Rapid, Monte Carlo 2003
1 ♖xe6+! ♕xe6
Black is also mated after 1...dxe6 2 ♖d8# or 1...♔f8 2 ♗h6+ ♖g7 3 ♕xg7# (or 3 ♕e8#).
2 ♕xe6+ dxe6
2...♔f8 3 ♗h6+ leads to mate in a few moves.
3 ♖d8#

346) Banusz – S. Zhigalko
European Ch, Budva 2009
1...♘g4+ 2 ♔h1 ♘f2+ 3 ♔h2 f3
3...h3? doesn't work due to 4 ♖g1.
0-1
Black threatens 4...♖g2# and if 4 ♖g1, then 4...♖h3#.

347) Kosten – D'Costa
British League (4NCL) 2007/8
1 ♘f6+ ♔g7
1...♔h8 2 ♕xh6#.
2 ♕xh6+! 1-0
2...♔xh6 3 ♖h5+ ♔g7 4 ♖h7#.

348) Sakaev – Vokarev

St Petersburg 2009

1 ♖e8+ ♖f8 2 h6! 1-0

The threat is 3 ♖g7+ ♔h8 and now 4 ♖xf8# or 4 ♘f7#. Black has no real defence; for example, 2...♖xe8 3 ♖g7+ ♔f8 (3...♔h8 4 ♘f7#) 4 ♘h7#.

349) A. Meszaros – Dombai

Aggtelek 2004

1 ♕xg5!

Note that White cannot play 1 ♕f7# because his queen is pinned.

1...hxg5

If Black declines the queen, then he will be mated soon in any case; for example, 1...♕c7 2 ♗f6 ♔f8 3 ♕xh6+ ♔e8 4 ♕f8+!, etc.

2 ♗f6

Not 2 ♗d4? e5, when the bishop is cut off from the h8-square.

1-0

3 ♖h8# cannot be prevented.

350) Shanava – Bukavshin

Pardubice 2008

1 ♕xa6+ ♕a7 2 ♖a5!

The key move, which is quite hard to see.

2...♖b7

2...♕xa6 3 ♖xa6# and 2...♘c8 3 ♕c6+ ♖b7 4 ♕xb7# are also terminal.

3 ♕xb7#

351) I. Alonso – Martinez Pelaez

Basque Ch 2004

1 ♕h8+ ♔f7 2 ♘e5+ ♔e7 3 ♕xg7+! 1-0

3...♗xg7 4 ♖f7#.

352) C. Primavera – J. Leone

Argentine Team Ch 2000

1...♘xf3+ 2 ♔f1

White is also mated after 2 ♖xf3 ♕xg2# or 2 ♔h1 ♕h2#.

2...♕xf2+! 3 ♘xf2 ♖e1+ 0-1

4 ♖xe1 ♖xe1#.

353) M. Beil – Salai

Olomouc 2005

1...♕xh2+!!

This wins even though Black cannot immediately play a rook to the h-file.

2 ♔xh2 ♖f6

The threat of 3...♖h6+ followed by 4...♖h1# proves decisive.

3 ♔g1 ♖h6 0-1

4 ♖c2 (or any other move by this rook) is met by 4...♖h1+ 5 ♔f2 ♖f1#.

354) Fontaine – A. Sokolov

French Ch, Aix-les-Bains 2007

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♖xh2 ♖xh2+ 3 ♔g1 ♖g2+ 4 ♔f1

4 ♔h1 ♘f2#.

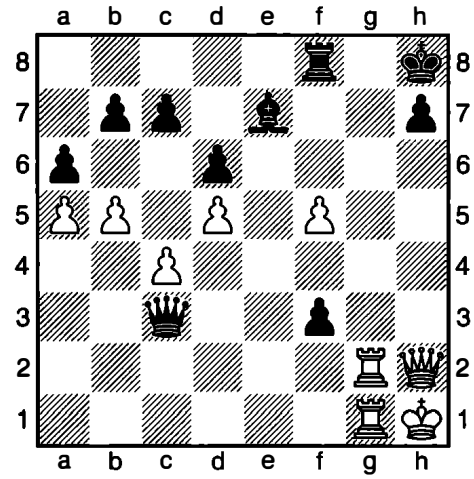
4...♘h2+ 5 ♔e1 ♖e2#

Score-Chart for Mates with Rook and Minor Piece

Position number	Points	Score
301	1	
302	1	
303	1	
304	1	
305	1	
306	1	
307	1	
308	1	
309	2	
310	2	
311	2	
312	2	
313	2	
314	2	
315	2	
316	2	
317	2	
318	2	
319	2	
320	2	
321	2	
322	2	
323	2	
324	2	
325	2	
326	2	
327	3	
328	3	
329	3	
330	3	
331	3	
332	3	
333	3	
334	3	
335	3	
336	3	
337	3	
338	3	
339	3	
340	3	
341	3	
342	3	
343	3	
344	3	
345	3	
346	4	
347	4	
348	4	
349	4	
350	4	
351	4	
352	4	
353	5	
354	5	
Total	**139**	

7 Deadly Doubled Rooks

A pair of rooks operating in concert can mate the enemy king in two main ways. Here's an example of the first.

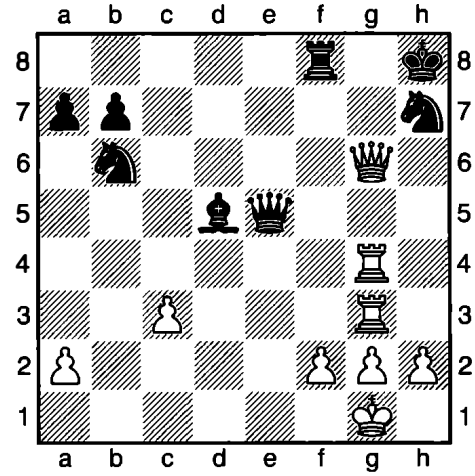


S. Williams – Hebden
Hastings Masters 2006

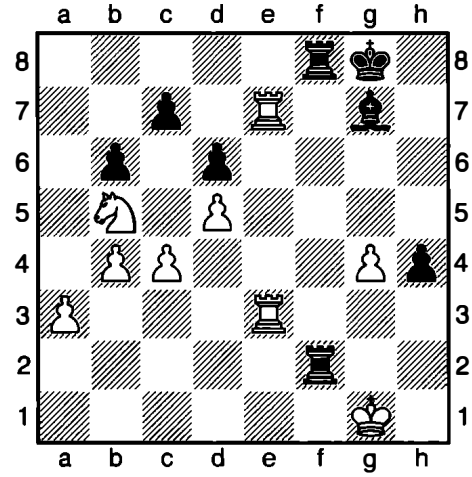
White played **1 ♕xh7+!** and **Black resigned (1-0)** in view of the finish 1...♔xh7 2 ♖h2+ ♗h4 3 ♖xh4#. In this method, the rooks operate on parallel lines and it is especially effective when the enemy king is on the edge of the board, because then the rooks require no assistance to mate.

In the second pattern, the two rooks are on the same line, often the seventh rank. In this case the rooks generally require some assistance, either from a friendly unit or a blocking enemy unit. See Position 357 for one example of this theme.

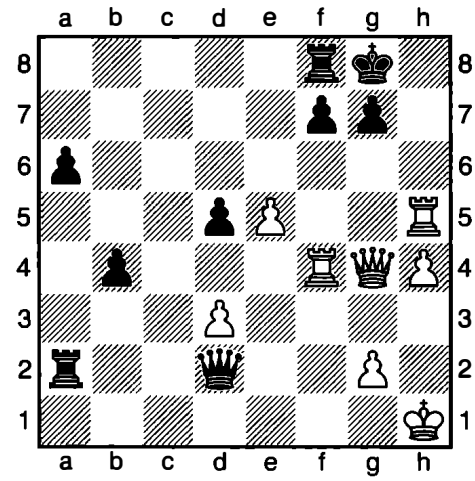
A pair of rooks is a force that deserves respect. In this chapter you'll find plenty of ideas for making use of the deadly doubled rooks.



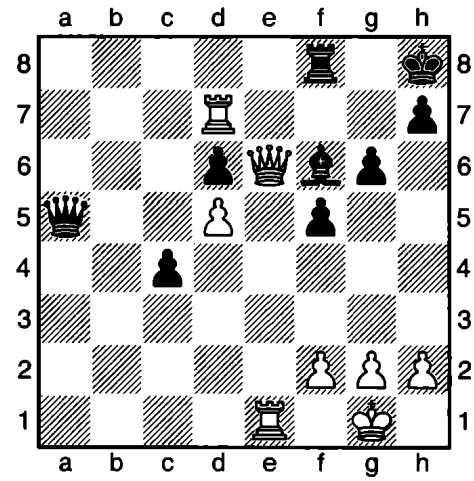
355) White to play (1 point)



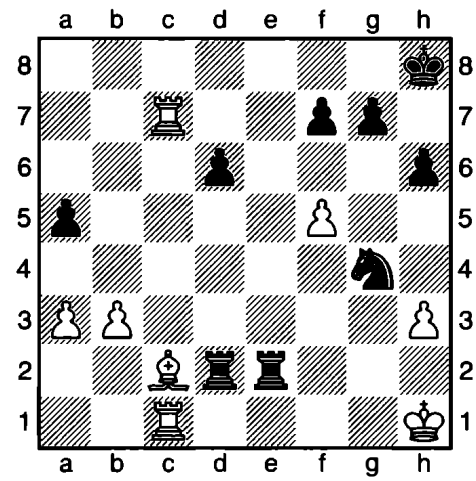
358) Black to play (2 points)



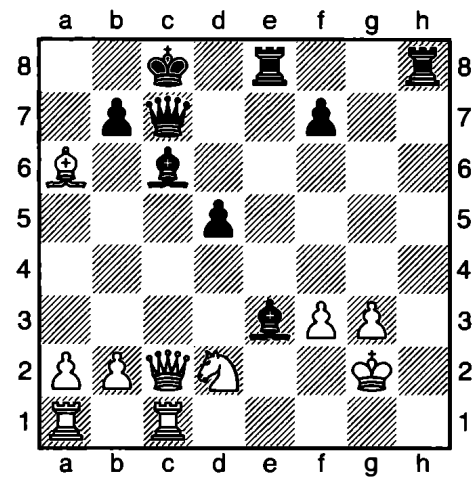
356) White to play (1 point)



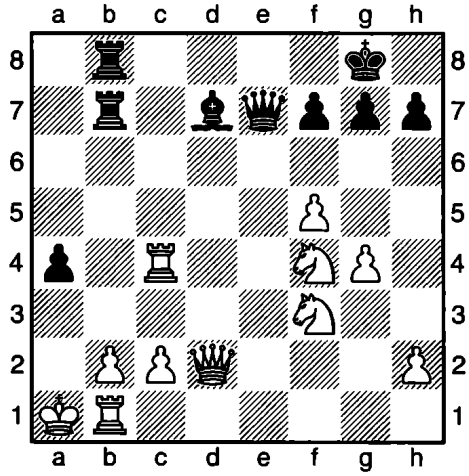
359) White to play (2 points)



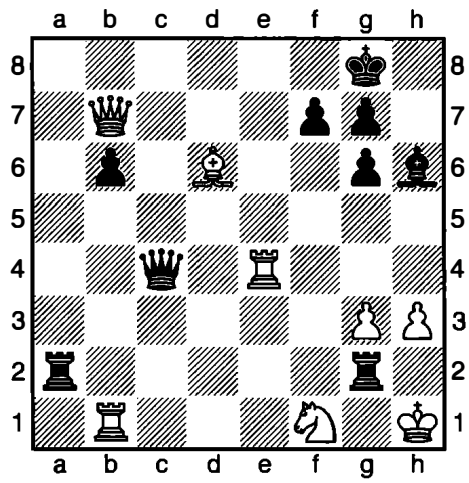
357) Black to play (2 points)



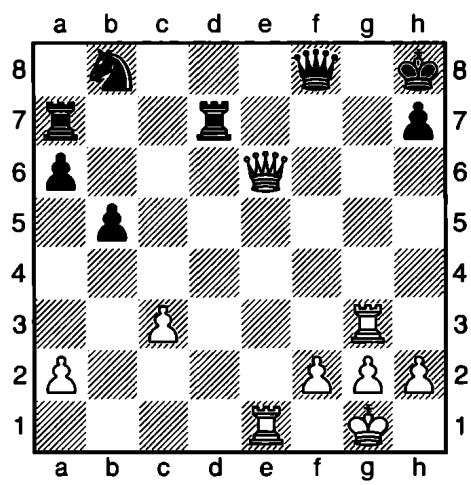
360) Black to play (2 points)



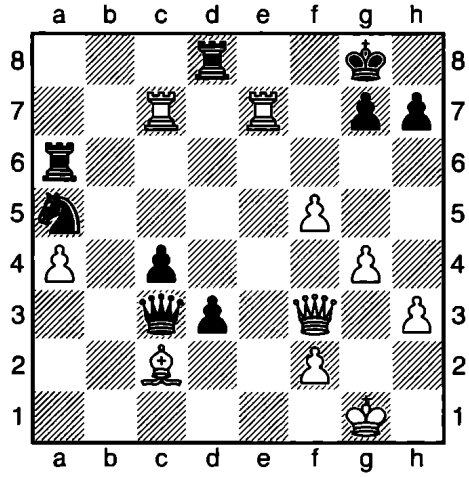
361) Black to play (2 points)



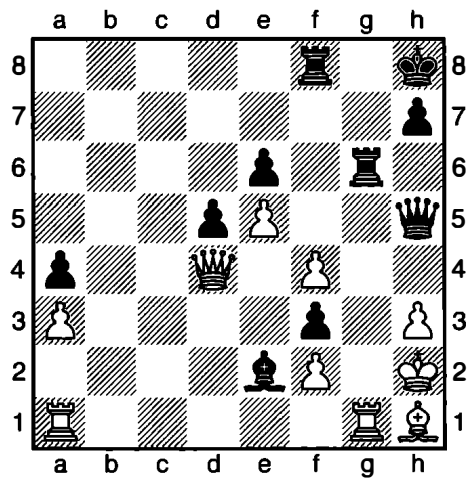
362) Black to play (2 points)



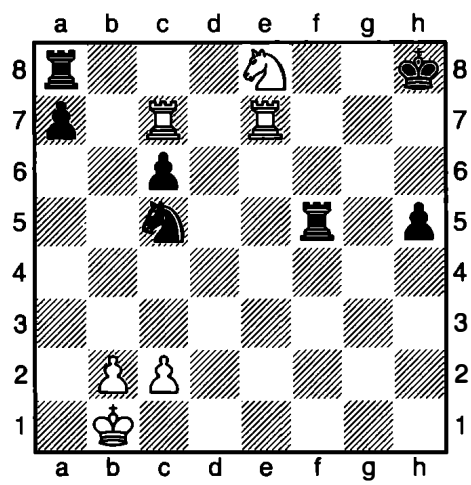
363) White to play (2 points)



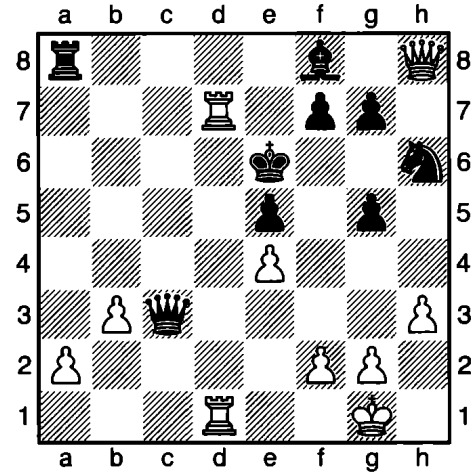
364) White to play (2 points)



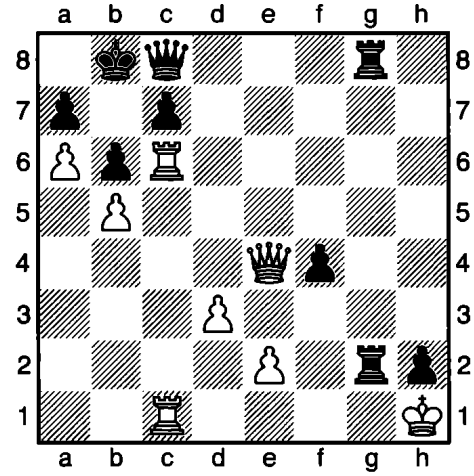
365) Black to play (2 points)



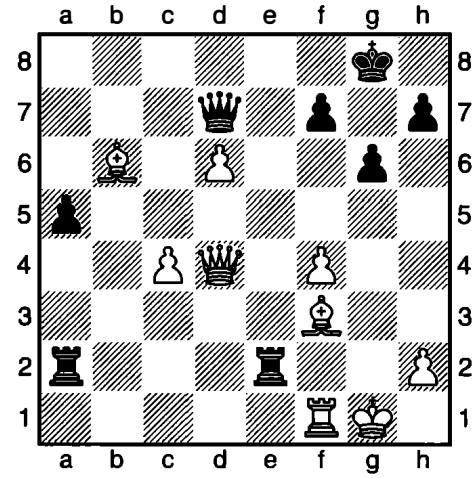
366) White to play (2 points)



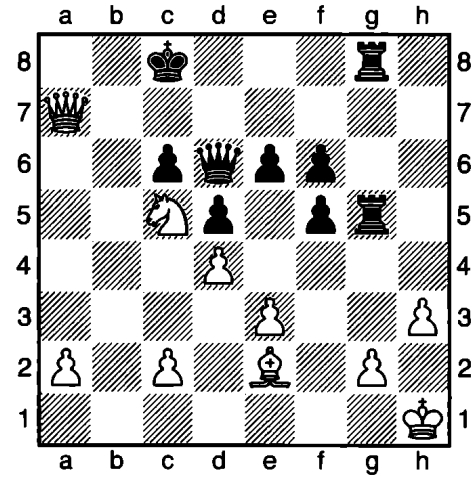
367) White to play (3 points)



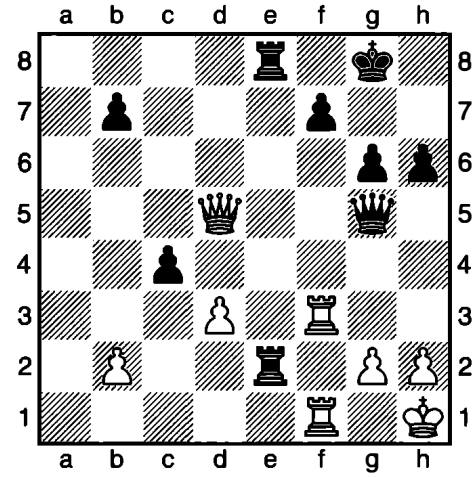
370) Black to play (3 points)



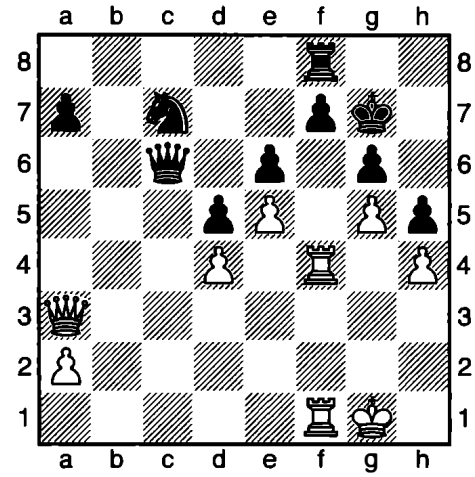
368) Black to play (3 points)



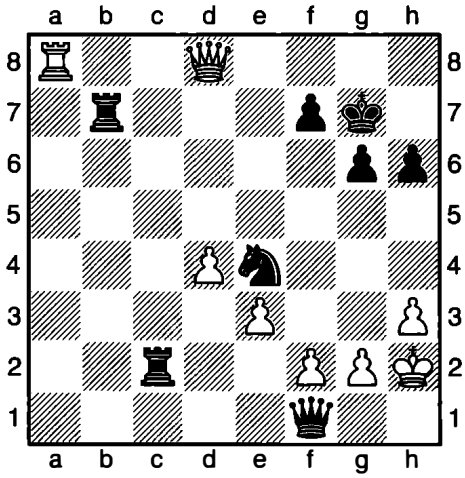
371) Black to play (3 points)



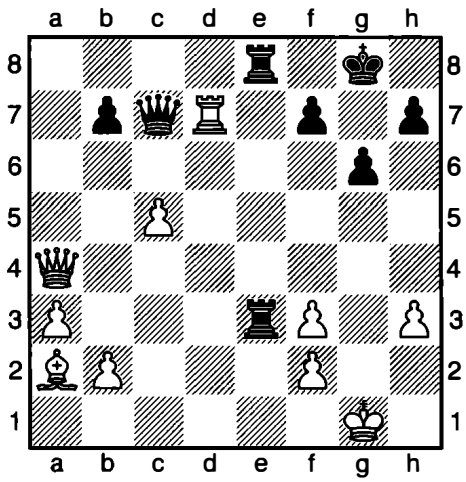
369) White to play (3 points)



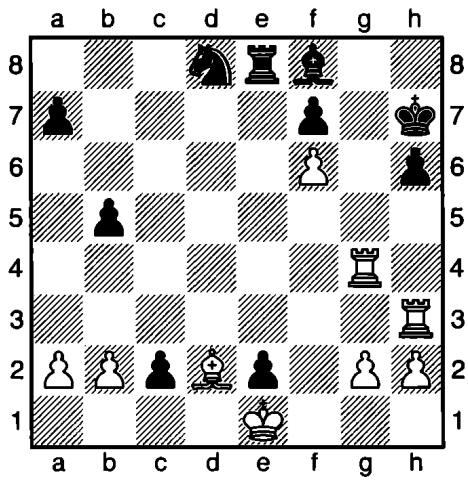
372) White to play (3 points)



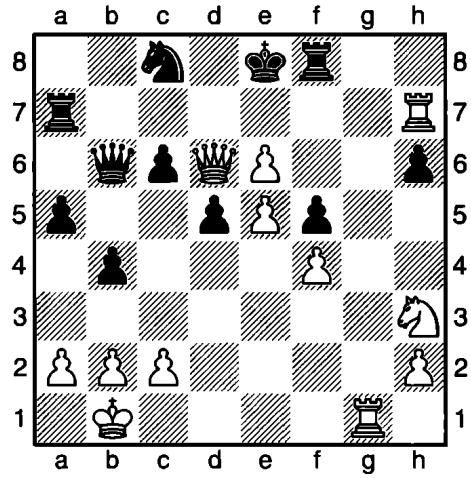
373) Black to play (3 points)



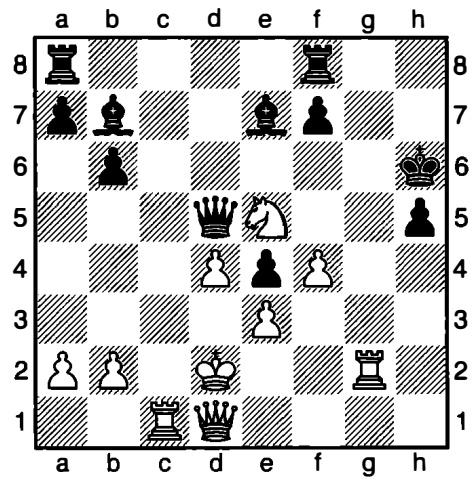
374) Black to play (3 points)



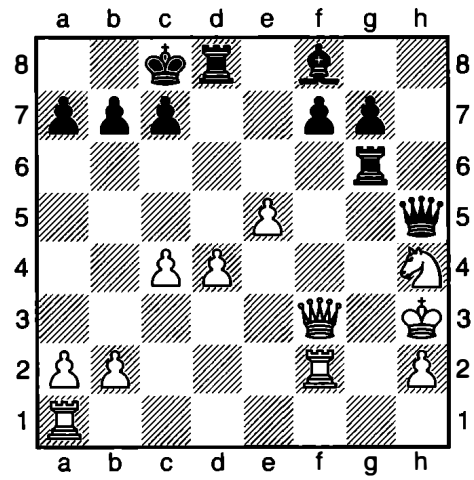
375) White to play (3 points)



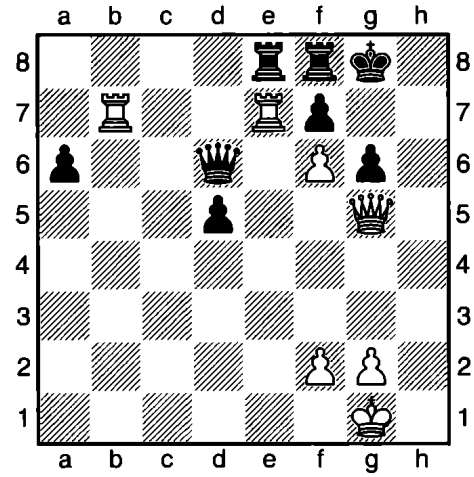
376) White to play (3 points)



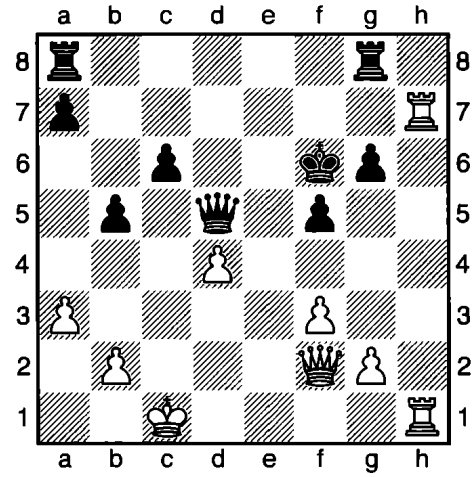
377) White to play (3 points)



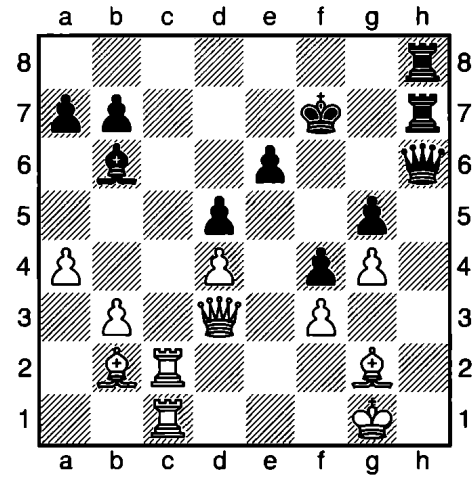
378) Black to play (3 points)



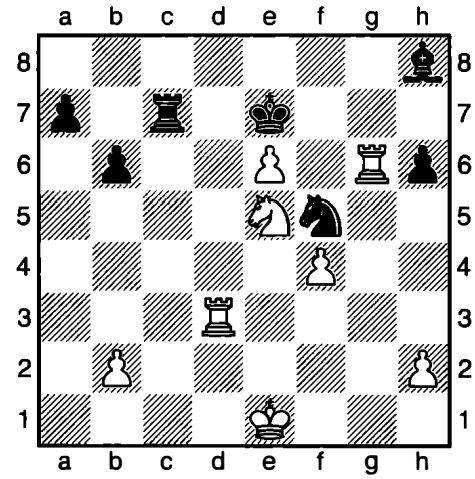
379) White to play (3 points)



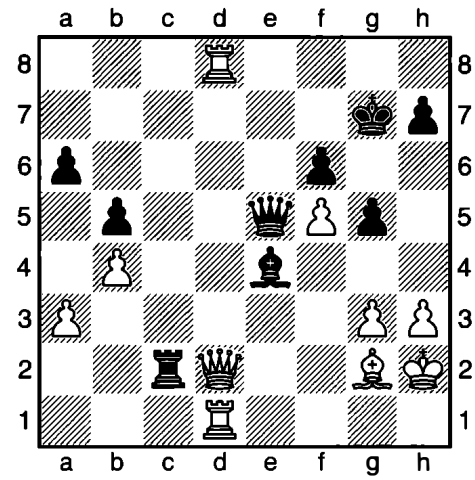
382) White to play (4 points)



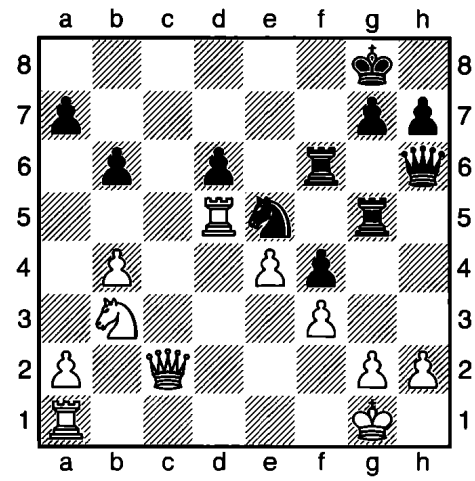
380) Black to play (4 points)



383) White to play (4 points)



381) White to play (4 points)



384) Black to play (4 points)

Solutions for Deadly Doubled Rooks

355) S. Klimov – Solozhenkin
St Petersburg Ch 2003
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ (2 ♖h4+ is equally good) 2...♕h5 3 ♖xh5#. This is the most common mate involving two rooks: the enemy king is trapped on the edge of the board by the rooks operating on adjacent ranks or files.

356) T. Henrich – J. Feller
Trier 2002
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♖g4+ ♕g5 3 ♖gxg5#. The same type of mate can occur on other files if there are blocking pieces.

357) D. Tratatovici – Ris
Reykjavik 2009
1...♖h2+ 2 ♔g1 ♖dg2+ 3 ♔f1 ♘e3+ 0-1
4 ♔e1 ♖e2# (4...♖g1# and 4...♖h1# are just as good). Two rooks on the seventh rank can also deliver mate if there is a blocking piece or they have the assistance of a friendly unit.

358) I. Golichenko – Kruppa
Ukrainian Ch, Kiev 2008
1...♖f1+ 0-1
2 ♔g2 ♖8f2+ 3 ♔h3 ♖h1#.

359) N. Høiberg – Jensby
Esbjerg 2008
1 ♕xf6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔g8 2 ♕g7# or 1...♖xf6 2 ♖e8+ ♖f8 3 ♖xf8#.

360) C. Brookes – Exposito Amaro
Barbera del Valles 2009
1...♕xg3+! 0-1
2 ♔xg3 ♖eg8+ and mate next move.

361) Ir. Semionova – Vasilkova
Moscow 2007
1...♕a3+! 0-1
2 bxa3 ♖xb1+ 3 ♔a2 ♖8b2#.

362) Giffard – Fressinet
French Team Ch 2007
1...♕xf1+! 0-1
2 ♖xf1 ♖h2+ 3 ♔g1 ♖ag2#.

363) Topalov – Naiditsch
Dortmund 2005
1 ♕f6+! 1-0
1...♕xf6 (1...♕g7 2 ♖e8# and 1...♖g7 2 ♕xf8+ also lead to mate) 2 ♖e8+ ♕f8 3 ♖xf8#.

364) Aveskulov – Shapar
Krasnodar 2001
1 ♕d5+! 1-0
1...♖xd5 (or else White mates by 2 ♕xd8#) 2 ♖e8#.

365) I. Csala – Z.J. Szabo
Hungarian Team Ch 1999/00
1...♕xh3+! 0-1
2 ♔xh3 ♖h6+ 3 ♔g4 ♖g8#.

366) Pechnikov – L. Malov
Moscow 2008
1 ♖h7+ ♔g8 2 ♖cg7+ ♔f8 3 ♖h8#

367) S. Berezjuk – Markos
Slovakian Team Ch 2008/9
1 ♕xf8! 1-0
Black has the tricky defence 1...♕e1+ (if 1...♖xf8, then 2 ♖1d6# is immediate mate), but White forces mate by 2 ♔h2! ♕xe4 (2...♘g4+ 3 hxg4 doesn't help Black) 3 ♖1d6+ ♔f5 4 ♖xf7+ (4 ♕xf7+ is just as good) 4...♘xf7 5 ♕xf7#.

368) G. Fahnenschmidt – Ma. Tseitlin
European Seniors Ch, Bad Homburg 2005
1...♕g4+! 0-1

This deflects the bishop away from control of g2 and mates after 2 ♗xg4 (2 ♔h1 ♖xh2#) 2...♖g2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖xh2+ 4 ♔g1 ♖ag2#.

369) Tirard – Bijaoui
Avoine 2005
1 ♕xf7+ ♔h8 2 ♕f8+! 1-0
2...♖xf8 3 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 4 ♖1f7#.

370) M. Arsenault – Gelblum
Ottawa Ch 2004
1...♖g1+ 2 ♔xh2 ♕h3+! 0-1
After 3 ♔xh3 ♖h8+ it's mate in two more moves.

371) Nechepurenko – Vitalsky
Russian Under-16 Ch, Dagomys 2004
1...♕h2+! 0-1
Black draws the king into a position which allows the rooks to enter the attack with check: 2 ♔xh2 ♖xg2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖g1+ 4 ♔h2 ♖8g2#.

372) Khagurov – Vl. Simonian
Krasnodar 2004
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♔xf8 2 ♖xf7+ ♔e8 (2...♔g8 3 ♖f8+ ♔g7 4 ♖1f7#) 3 ♖f8+ ♔d7 4 ♖1f7#.

373) Bosboom-Lanchava – A. Sorokina
Calvia Olympiad (Women) 2004
Despite Black's material advantage, she is threatened with mate on h8. The only way to avoid defeat is to force a quick mate of her own:
1...♕xg2+! 0-1
2 ♔xg2 ♖xf2+ 3 ♔g1 ♖b1#.

374) F. Guido – S. Lacour
Lyons 2003
1...♕g3+! 0-1
2 fxg3 (a king move is met by 2...♖e1#) 2...♖e1+ 3 ♔f2 ♖8e2#.

375) Tompa – A. Fekete
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♗xh6!
Threatening to force mate by discovered check.
1...♗xh6 2 ♖g7+ 1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♖xh6#.

376) Medina Menendez – Bouzo
Malaga Ch 2002
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♖h8+ ♔e7 3 ♖g7+ 1-0
3...♔xe6 4 ♖xh6#.

377) J. Přibyl – Hardarson
Pardubice 2001
1 ♕xh5+! ♔xh5 2 ♖h1+ ♗h4 3 ♖g5+ ♔h6 4 ♖xh4#

378) Gutov – A. Shukan
Russian Schools Ch, Novokuznetsk 2001
1...♕xh4+! 0-1
2 ♔xh4 ♗e7+ 3 ♔h3 ♖h8+ 4 ♕h5 ♖xh5#.

379) Van den Doel – S. Ansell
Hilversum 2008
1 ♕xg6+! 1-0
White mates after 1...fxg6 2 ♖g7+ ♔h8 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8 4 ♖bg7#.

380) I. Gyenes – Agh
Budapest 2002
1...♕h1+!
1...♕h2+ 2 ♔f1 ♕h1+! 3 ♔f2 ♕xg2+! also mates, but is one move slower.
2 ♔f2
Or 2 ♗xh1 ♖xh1+ 3 ♔f2 ♖8h2#.
2...♕xg2+! 3 ♔xg2 ♖h2+ 4 ♔f1 ♖h1+ 5 ♔e2 ♖8h2#

381) D. Bogdan – B. Seres
Hungarian Team Ch 2001/2
1 ♕d7+ ♔h6 2 ♕xh7+! 1-0
This attractive queen sacrifice forces mate after 2...♔xh7 3 ♖1d7+ ♔h6 4 ♖h8#.

382) Elschner – C. Eckhardt
Women's Bundesliga 1999/00
1 ♕h4+ g5
1...♔e6 2 ♕e7#.
2 ♕h6+ ♖g6 3 ♕xg6+! 1-0
3...♔xg6 4 ♖1h6#.

383) Movldiev – G. Baranov
Maikop 2008
1 ♘c6+!
This neat move forces the black rook away from its control of d7.

1...♖xc6

1...♔e8 2 ♖d8#.

2 ♖d7+ ♔f8

2...♔e8 3 ♖g8#.

1-0

Black resigned without waiting for 3 ♖f7+ ♔e8 4 ♖g8#.

384) Rudovskaya – Kliun

Kiev 2005

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2

Black also mates after 2 ♔f1 ♕h1+ 3 ♔e2 ♖xg2# or 2 ♔f2 ♖xg2+ 3 ♔e1 ♕h1#.

2...♘xf3+! 0-1

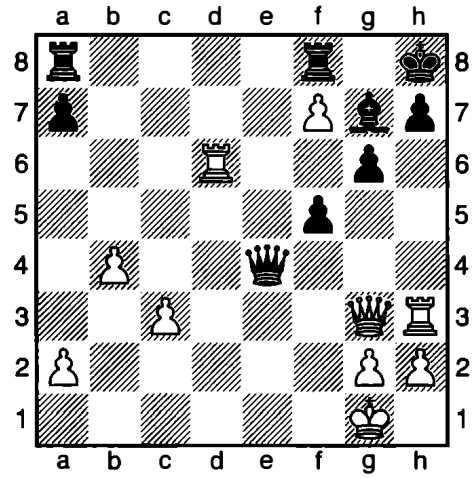
It's mate by 3...♖h6# whatever White plays.

Score-Chart for Deadly Doubled Rooks

Position number	Points	Score
355	1	
356	1	
357	2	
358	2	
359	2	
360	2	
361	2	
362	2	
363	2	
364	2	
365	2	
366	2	
367	3	
368	3	
369	3	
370	3	
371	3	
372	3	
373	3	
374	3	
375	3	
376	3	
377	3	
378	3	
379	3	
380	4	
381	4	
382	4	
383	4	
384	4	
Total	**81**	

8 Destroying the Defences

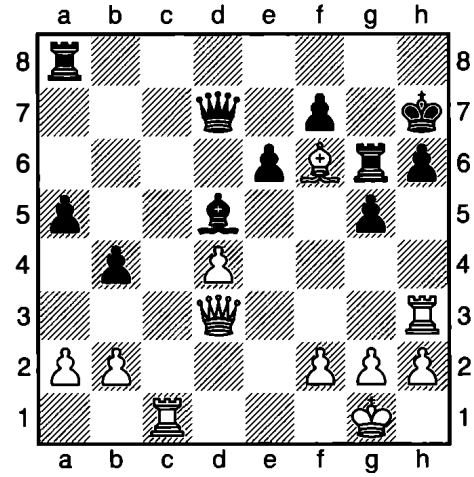
When attacking the enemy king, there is often a barrier of pawns separating your forces from their target. Then it may be necessary to use a sacrifice to break through this barrier.



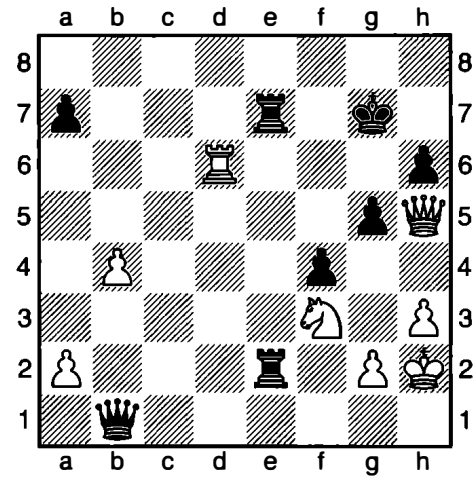
Jakirlić – C. Lip
Australian Open, Penrith 2003

White continued **1 ♖xh7+!** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**) because after 1...♔xh7 White can force mate by 2 ♕xg6+ ♔h8 3 ♕h5+ ♗h6 4 ♕xh6#. Here the rook sacrifice eliminated the g- and h-pawns and allowed the queen to finish off the attack with a little help from the other rook.

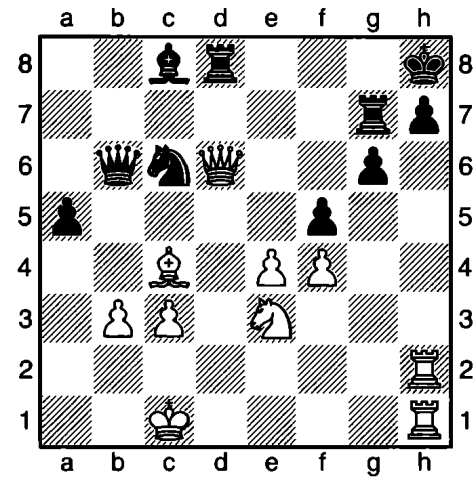
The positions in this chapter show the king's defences being blown up, smashed down and generally wrecked in an amazing variety of ways.



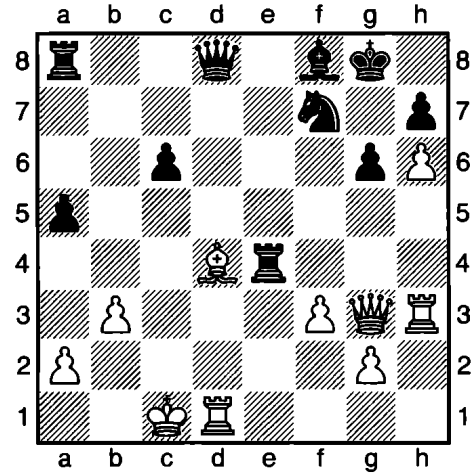
385) White to play (1 point)



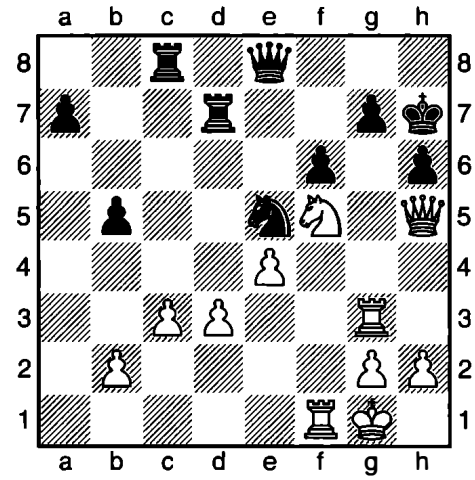
386) Black to play (1 point)



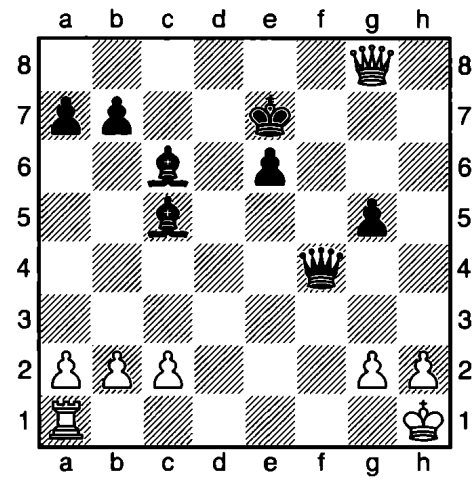
387) White to play (1 point)



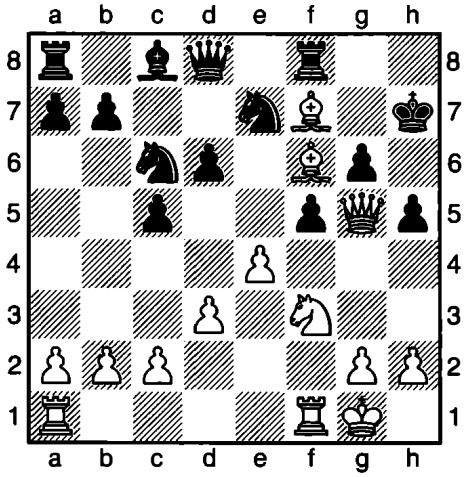
388) White to play (1 point)



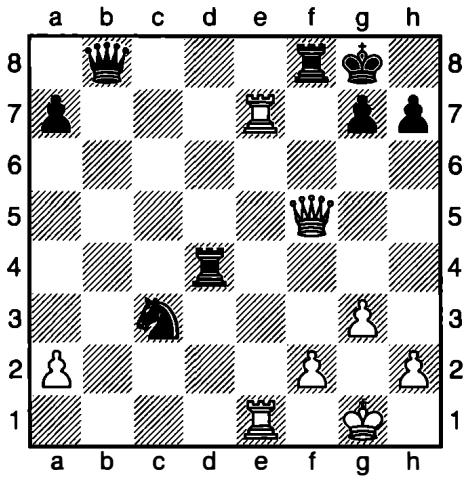
389) White to play (2 points)



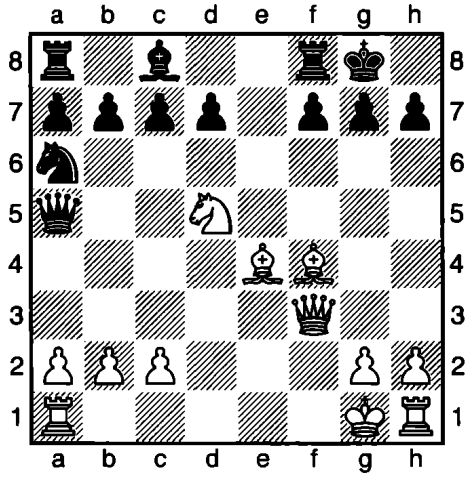
390) Black to play (2 points)



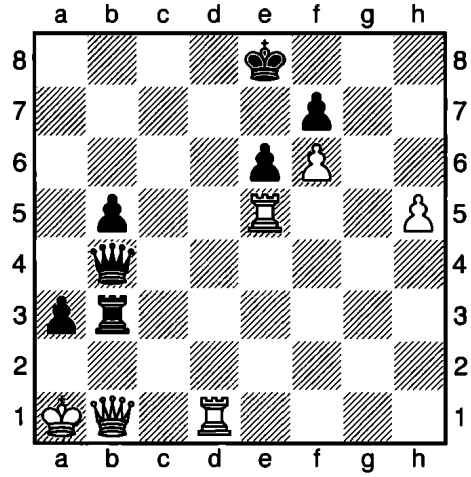
391) White to play (2 points)



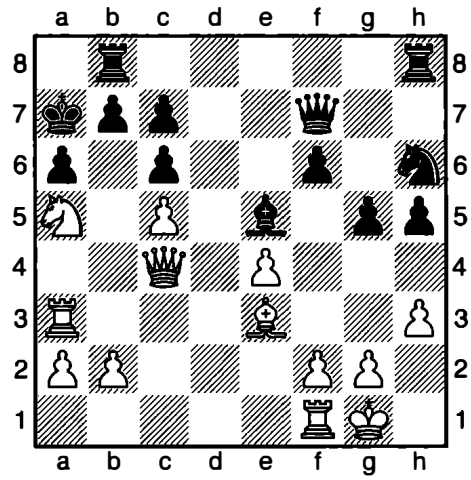
392) White to play (2 points)



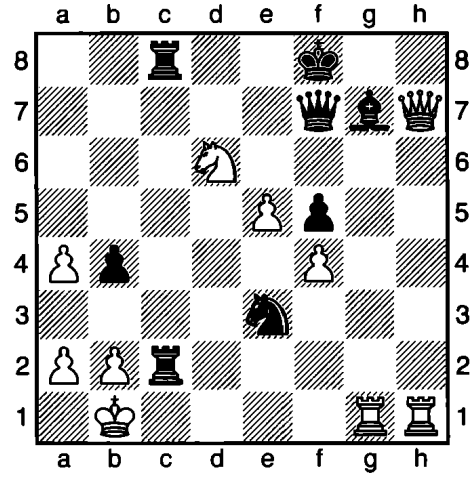
393) White to play (2 points)



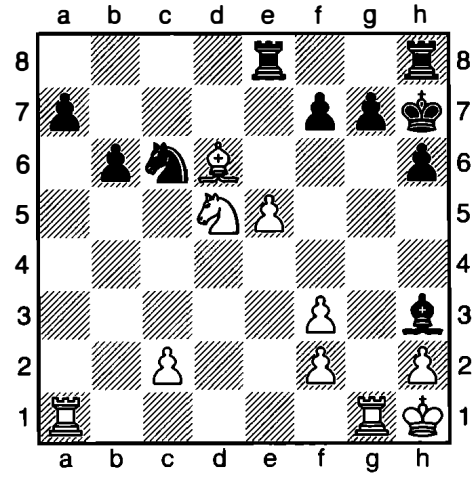
394) White to play (2 points)



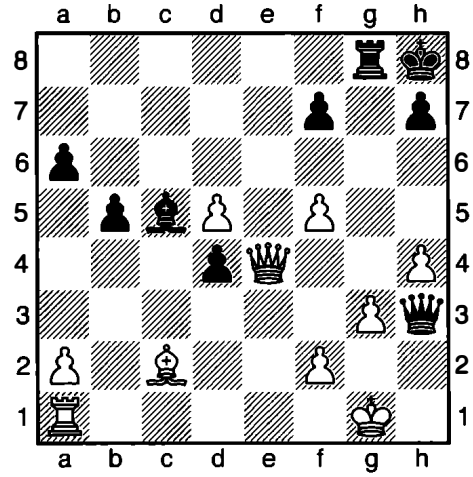
395) White to play (2 points)



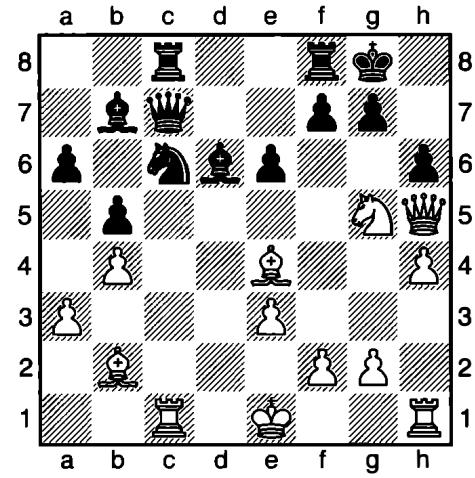
396) Black to play (2 points)



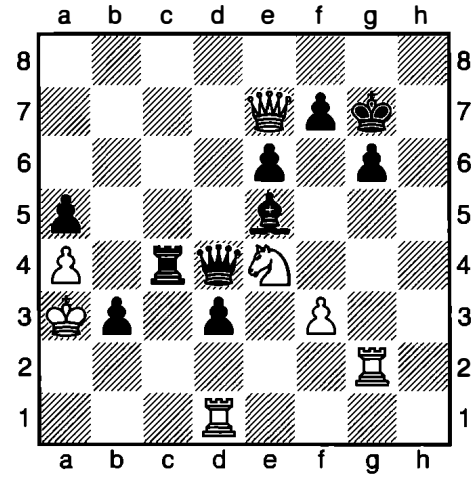
397) White to play (2 points)



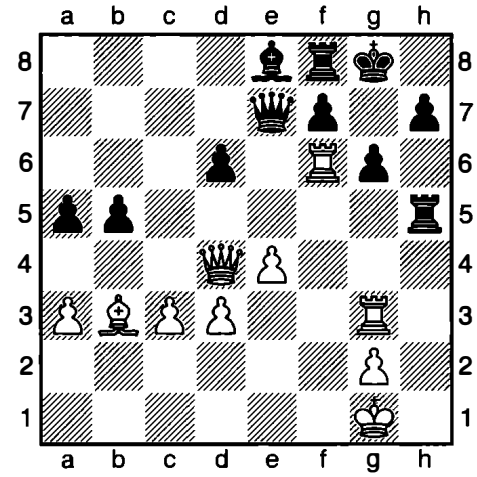
400) Black to play (2 points)



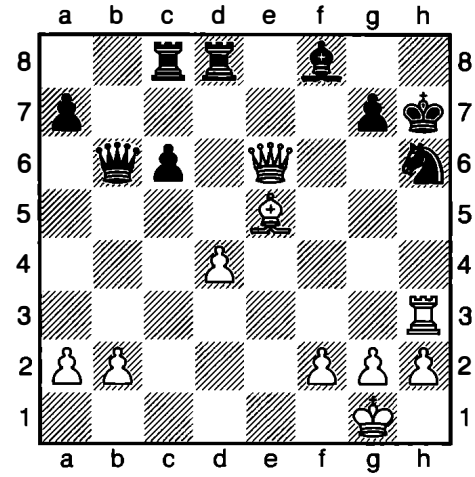
398) White to play (2 points)



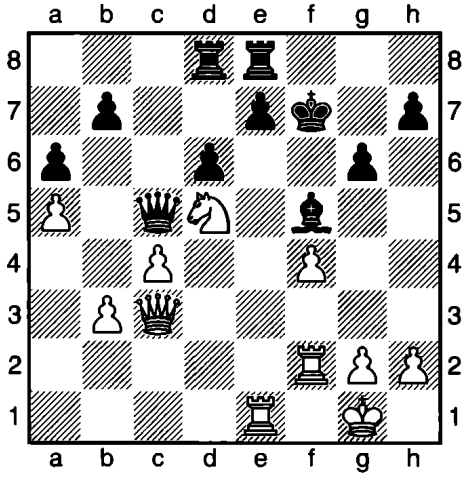
401) White to play (2 points)



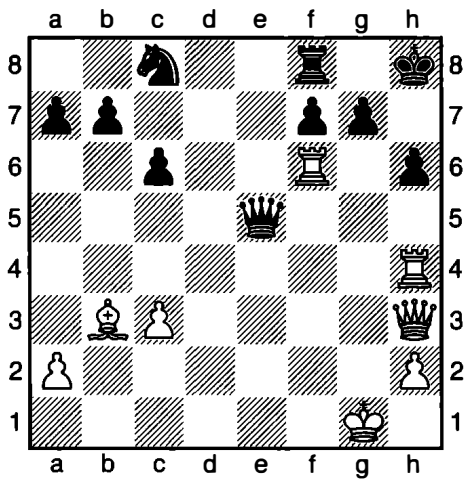
399) White to play (2 points)



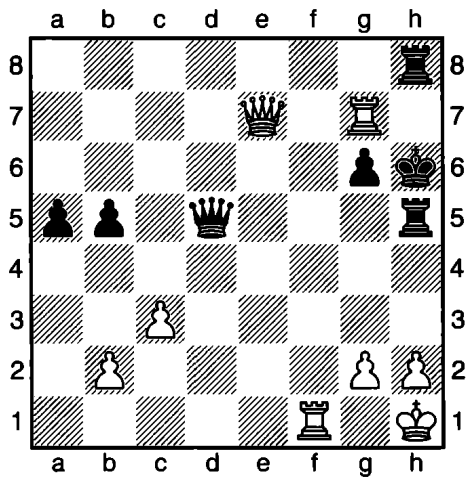
402) White to play (2 points)



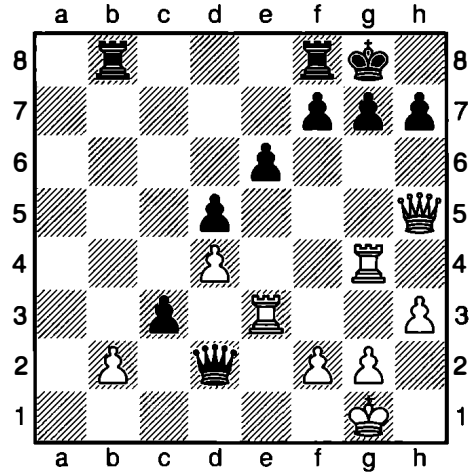
403) White to play (2 points)



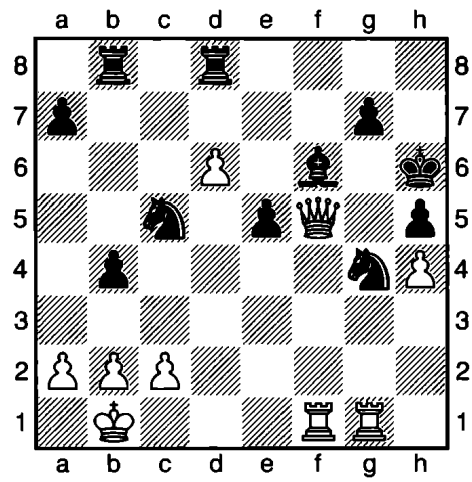
404) White to play (3 points)



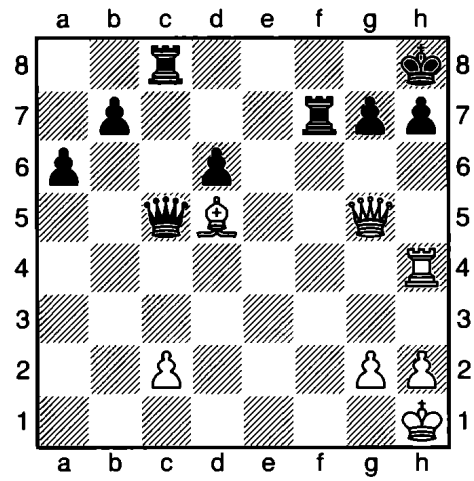
405) White to play (3 points)



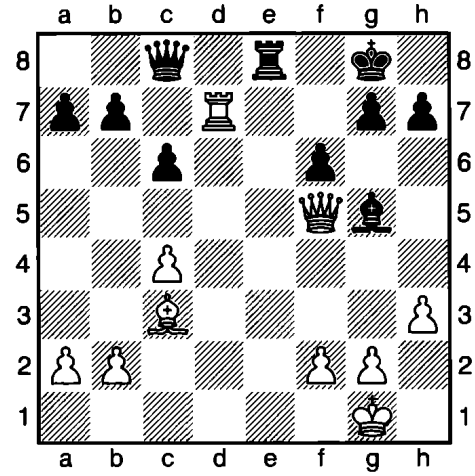
406) White to play (3 points)



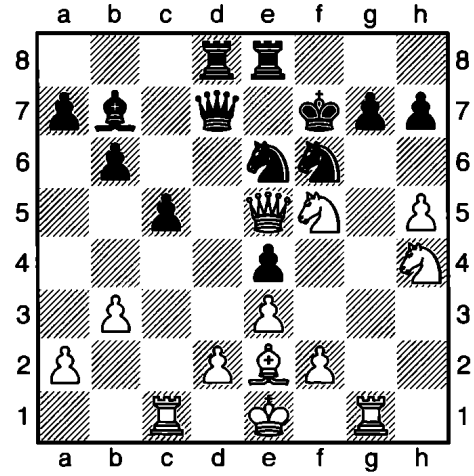
407) White to play (3 points)



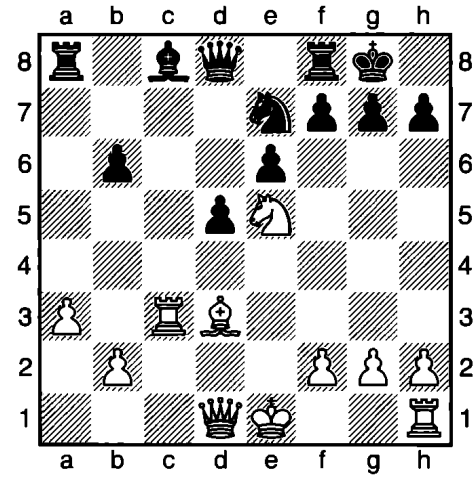
408) White to play (3 points)



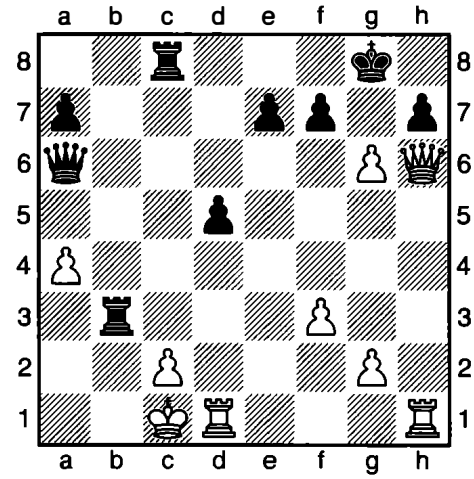
409) White to play (3 points)



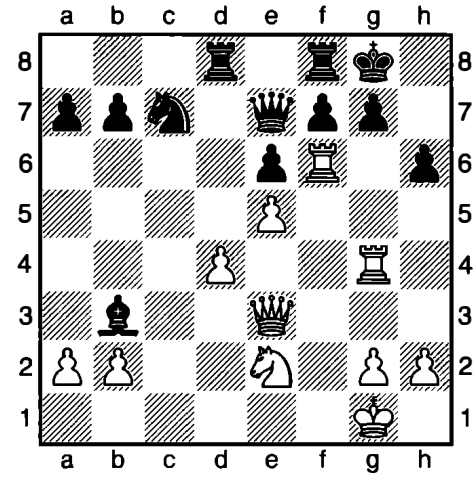
412) White to play (3 points)



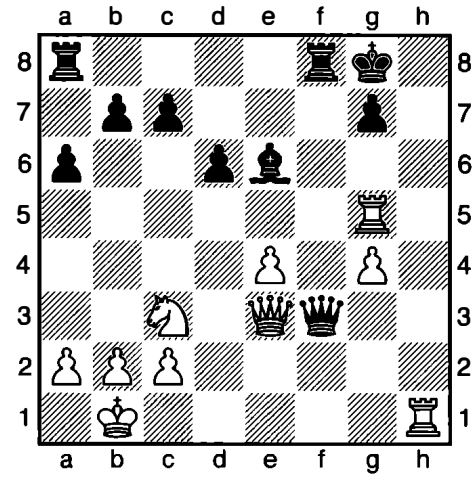
410) White to play (3 points)



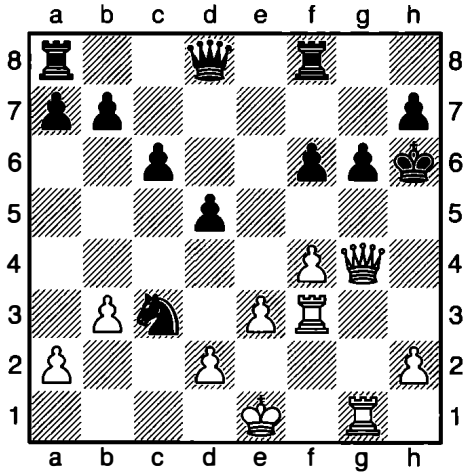
413) Black to play (3 points)



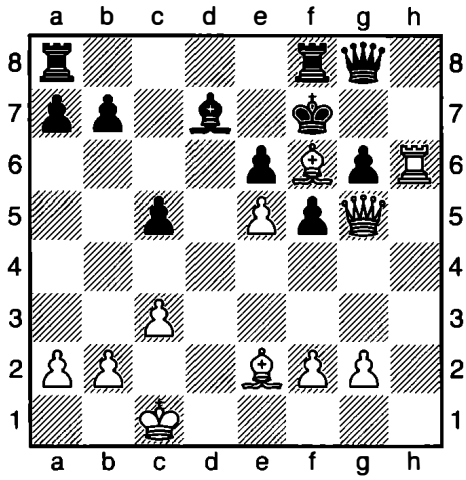
411) White to play (3 points)



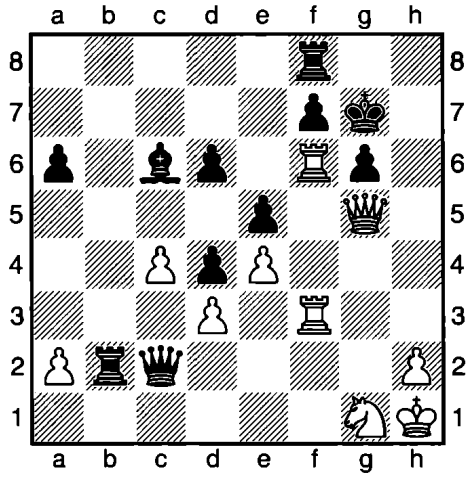
414) White to play (3 points)



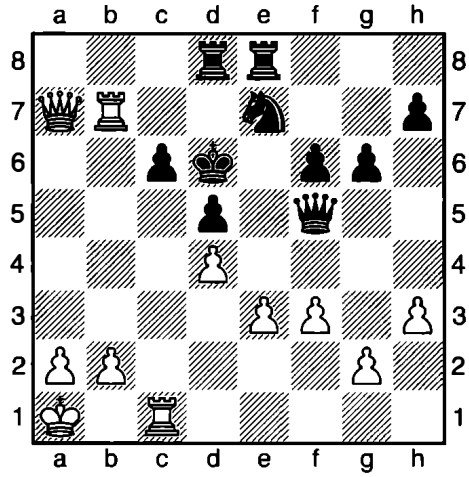
415) White to play (3 points)



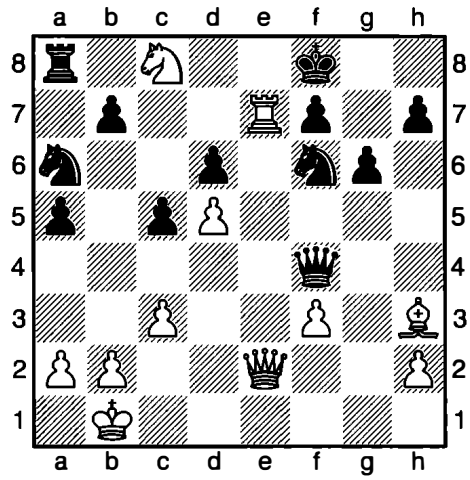
416) White to play (3 points)



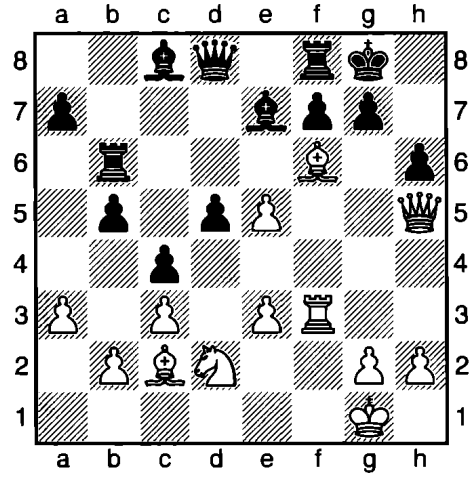
417) White to play (3 points)



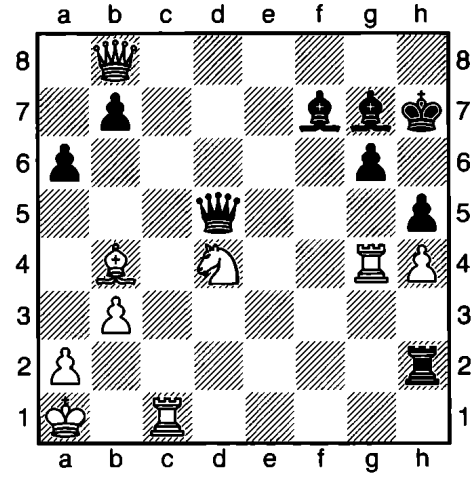
418) White to play (3 points)



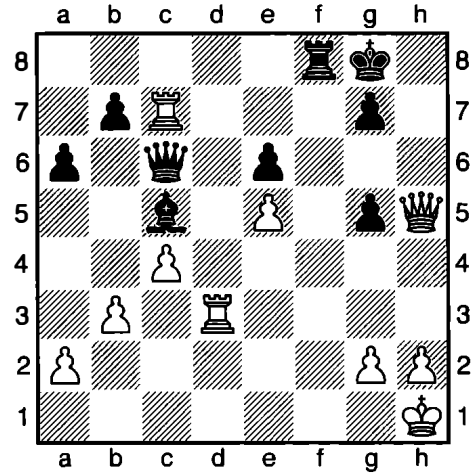
419) White to play (3 points)



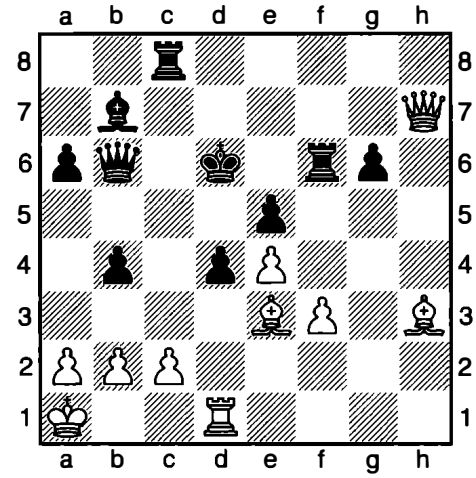
420) White to play (3 points)



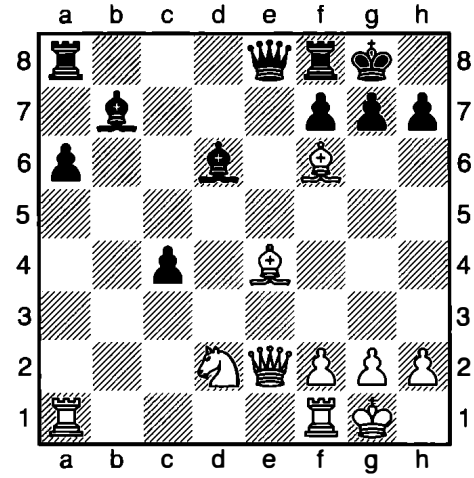
421) Black to play (3 points)



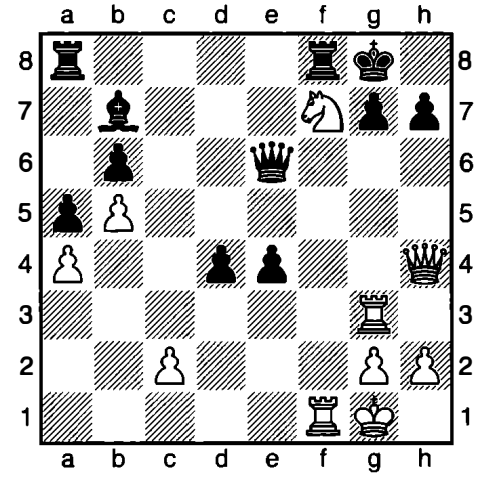
424) White to play (4 points)



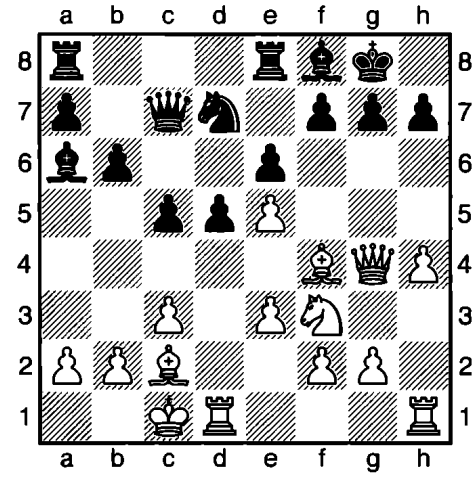
422) White to play (4 points)



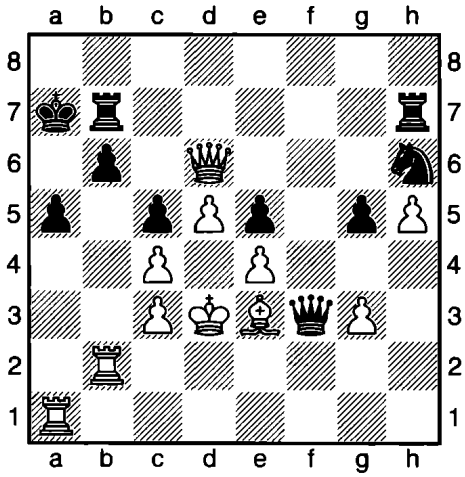
425) White to play (4 points)



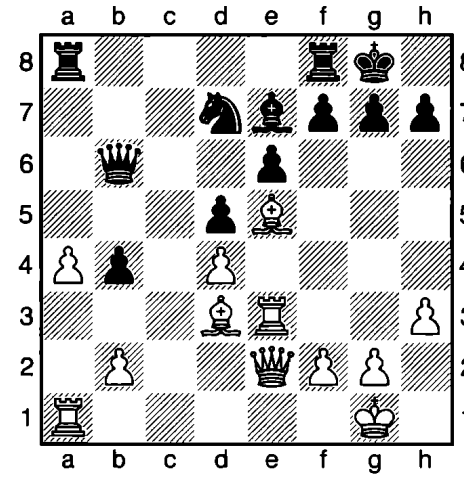
423) White to play (4 points)



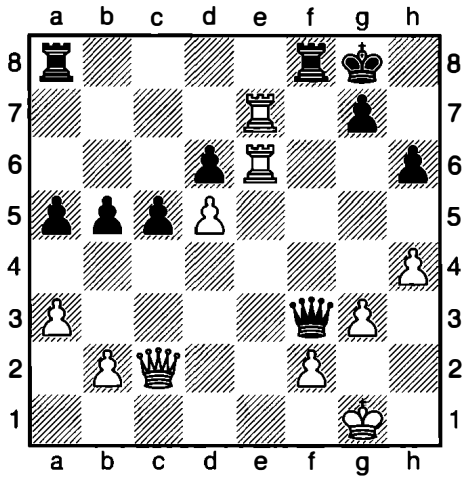
426) White to play (4 points)



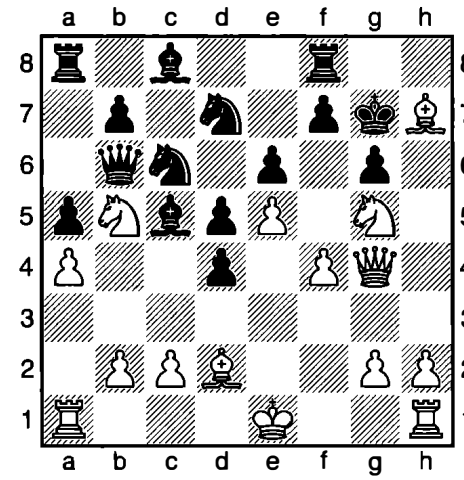
427) White to play (5 points)



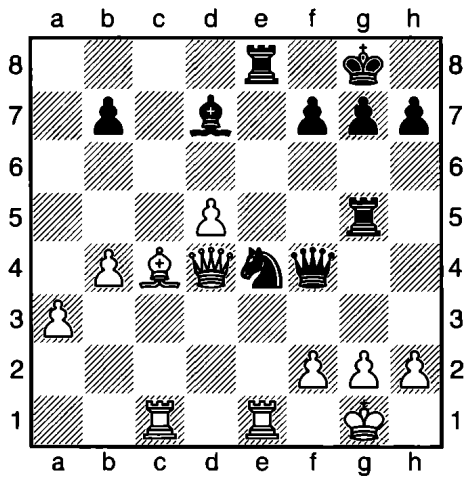
430) White to play (5 points)



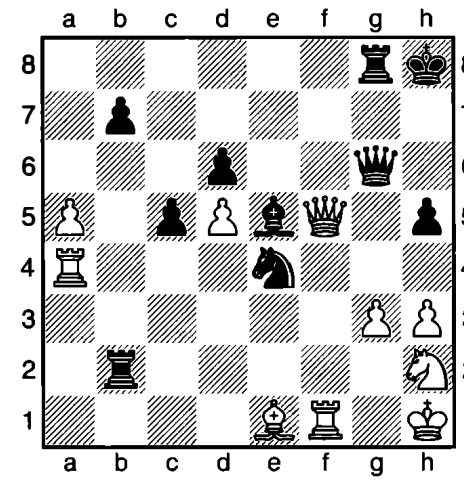
428) White to play (5 points)



431) White to play (5 points)



429) Black to play (5 points)



432) Black to play (5 points)

Solutions for Destroying the Defences

385) A. Muir – Pe. Taylor
British League (4NCL) 2007/8
1 ♖xh6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔g8 2 ♖h8# or 1...♔xh6 2 ♕h3#.

386) J. Vamosi – A. Horvath
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♖xg2+ 2 ♔xg2 ♖e2#

387) Be. Lindberg – Hellborg
Swedish Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 2 ♕f6#

388) Jadoul – G. Plomp
Belgian Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♕xg6+! 1-0
Black is mated after both 1...♗g7 2 ♕xg7# and 1...hxg6 2 h7#.

389) L. Deak – Jo. Horvath
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖xg7+! 1-0
Black resigned because of 1...♖xg7 (1...♔h8 2 ♕xh6#) 2 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 3 ♕xg7#.

390) Kotan – Madar
Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♗xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♕f2+ 0-1
3 ♔h1 and 3 ♔h3 are both met by 3...♕f3#.

391) Sopio Gvetadze – Na. Kharmunova
Moscow (Women) 2008
1 ♗xg6+ ♘xg6 2 ♕xh5+ ♔g8 3 ♕xg6#

392) W. Hug – Buss
Swiss Team Ch 2008
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖e7+ ♔h8
After 2...♖f7 3 ♖xf7+ White mates next move.
3 ♕xh7#

393) Abadia Pascual – V. Blazquez Lopez
Palma de Mallorca 2008
1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7
1...♔h8 2 ♕h5 is also dead lost for Black; he can delay mate for a few moves by giving up his queen, but it doesn't change the result.
2 ♕h5+ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♘e7#.

394) Ismagambetov – N. Ibraev
Alushta 2008
1 ♖xe6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔f8 2 ♖d8# or 1...fxe6 2 ♕g6+ ♔f8 3 ♖d8#.

395) H. Porth – Mario Bartel
Dortmund 2008
1 ♘xc6+! 1-0
Black will be mated: 1...bxc6 2 ♕xa6# or 1...♔a8 2 ♖xa6+! bxa6 3 ♕xa6#.

396) A. Fernandez Diez – Yu. Gonzalez
Oviedo 2008
1...♖xb2+! 0-1
2 ♔xb2 (or 2 ♔a1 ♕xa2#) 2...♖c2+ followed by 3...♕xa2#.

397) Hamdouchi – Mirzoev
Illes Medes 2007
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖g1+ ♔h7 3 ♘f6#

398) Ingbrandt – T. Ernst
Swedish Team Ch 2000/1
1 ♕xh6! 1-0
1...gxh6 2 ♗h7#.

399) Mandarin – Gi. François
French Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♖fxg6+!
Even more forcing than 1 ♖gxg6+, when Black can limp on for a few moves by 1...♔h8.

1...hxg6 2 ♖xg6+ 1-0
2...♔h7 3 ♕g7#.

400) Crosa Coll – M. Neubauer
Santos 2003
1...♖xg3+! 0-1
2 fxg3 d3+ and mate next move.

401) Gallagher – Eliet
French Team Ch 2003
1 ♖xg6+! ♔xg6
1...♔h7 2 ♕xf7+ ♗g7 3 ♖h1#.
2 ♕g5+ 1-0
2...♔h7 3 ♖h1+ ♗h2 4 ♖xh2#.

402) S.B. Hansen – Wintzer
Bundesliga 2005/6
1 ♖xh6+! 1-0
1...gxh6 2 ♕f7+ ♗g7 3 ♕xg7#.

403) Gruskovnjak – D. Domonkos
Hungarian Team Ch 2008/9
1 ♖xe7+! ♖xe7 2 ♕f6+ ♔g8
2...♔e8 3 ♕xe7#.
3 ♘xe7#

404) Jakirlić – F. van der Wal
Australian Open, Manly 2009
1 ♖hxh6+!
1 ♖fxh6+? is wrong because after 1...gxh6 2 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 White has no winning continuation.
1...gxh6
1...♔g8 2 ♖h8#.
2 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 3 ♖g6+ 1-0
White mates next move.

405) Politov – L. Sakharov
Kazan 2009
1 ♖xg6+! ♔xg6 2 ♖f6+ ♔g5 3 ♕g7+ 1-0
3...♔h4 4 ♕g3# (or 4 ♖f4#).

406) Khashimov – Kopytin
Voronezh Region Seniors Ch 2008
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕g5+ 1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♕f6+ ♔g8 4 ♖g3+ and mate next move.

407) Atako – S. Fruteau
Hastings 2007/8
1 ♖xg4! hxg4
After 1...g5 2 ♕xf6+ White mates quickly.
2 h5 1-0
Black cannot prevent 3 ♕g6#.

408) Kislik – Ferrer
Malaga 2008
1 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♕xf7+ ♔h7 1-0
Black resigned in anticipation of 4 ♕h5#.

409) Fiorido – Autino
Italian Team Ch, Arvier 2008
1 ♖xg7+!
A sacrifice to make use of White's pressure on the long diagonal.
1...♔xg7 2 ♕xg5+ 1-0
2...♔f8 3 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 4 ♕g7#.

410) M. Pejović – N. Šćekić
Montenegro Team Ch, Podgorica 2008
1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7
1...♔h8 is hopeless; for example, 2 ♕h5 g6 3 ♗xg6+ ♔g7 4 ♕h7+ ♔f6 5 ♘g4+ ♔g5 6 ♕h5+ ♔f4 7 ♖f3#.
2 ♕h5+
2 ♖h3+ and then 3 ♕h5 is just as good.
1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♖h3 mates on h7 or h8 next move.

411) H. Kraft – Ha. Petermann
Bavarian Seniors Ch, Schney 2003
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 3 ♕g5+ 1-0
3...♔h7 4 ♖h6#.

412) Majdan – Goncalves Coimbra
European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008
1 ♖xg7+! 1-0
It's mate by 1...♔f8 2 ♕xf6+ ♕f7 3 ♕xf7# or 1...♘xg7 2 ♘h6+ ♔f8 3 ♕xf6+ ♕f7 4 ♕xf7#.

413) Dusthageer – Konguvel
Mumbai 2008
1...♖xc2+! 0-1
2 ♔xc2 ♕c4+ 3 ♔d2 ♖b2+ 4 ♔e1 (4 ♔e3 ♖e2#) 4...♕e2#.

414) Walkewitz – Oldach
German Seniors Team Ch, Finsterbergen 2003

1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕g5+ ♔f7 3 ♖h7+ ♔e8 4 ♕e7#

415) Ueti – L. Abdalla
Santos 2008

1 ♖h3+ ♔g7 2 ♖xh7+! 1-0

2...♔xh7 (2...♔g8 3 ♕xg6#) 3 ♕xg6+ and White mates next move.

416) S. Williams – Ynojosa
British Ch, Liverpool 2008

1 ♗h5!

Putting intolerable pressure on g6 and threatening to mate by 2 ♗xg6+. 1 ♖xg6 ♕xg6 2 ♗h5 also wins, but 2...♖g8 denies White a quick mate.

1...gxh5

Or 1...♔e8 2 ♕xg6+ ♕xg6 (2...♕f7 3 ♕xf7+ ♖xf7 4 ♖h8#) 3 ♗xg6+ ♖f7 4 ♖h8#.

2 ♕xh5+ 1-0

2...♕g6 3 ♕xg6#.

417) M. Boos – Kotter
Germany (team event) 2006/7

1 ♖xg6+! 1-0

1...fxg6 (after 1...♔h7 White has various mates in one, such as 2 ♖h6#) 2 ♕e7+ ♖f7 (it's also mate after 2...♔h6 3 ♖h3# or 2...♔g8 3 ♖xf8#) 3 ♖xf7+ ♔h6 (3...♔g8 4 ♖f8#) 4 ♖h7# (or 4 ♕h4#).

418) Pilaj – Kreindl
Austrian Team Ch 2006/7

1 ♖xc6+! 1-0

1...♘xc6 (1...♔xc6 allows mate in one, for example by 2 ♖b6#) 2 ♕c5+ ♔e6 3 ♕xc6+ ♖d6 4 ♕xe8#.

419) L. Kopec – Lepik
Czech Republic (team event) 2002/3

1 ♖xf7+! ♔xf7

1...♔g8 2 ♕e7 leads to a quick mate; for example, 2...♖xc8 3 ♖f8+ ♖xf8 4 ♗e6+ ♖f7 5 ♕xf7+ ♔h8 6 ♕f8+ ♘g8 7 ♕xg8#.

2 ♕e7+ 1-0

2...♔g8 3 ♗e6+ ♔h8 4 ♕f8+ ♘g8 5 ♕xg8#.

420) Gorbatov – Polushkina
Castellaneta 2000

1 ♕xh6! 1-0

White threatens mate on g7 or h7, and if Black takes the queen he is mated by 1...gxh6 2 ♖g3+ ♗g4 3 ♖xg4#.

421) Nepomniashchy – Khismatullin
Moscow 2006

1...♗xd4+

This preliminary exchange destroys the knight's guard of b3.

2 ♖xd4

2 ♔b1 ♕f5+ also leads to mate.

2...♖xa2+! 0-1

White is mated after 3 ♔b1 ♕xb3# or 3 ♔xa2 ♕xb3+ 4 ♔a1 ♕a2#.

422) Fenil – K. Abhishek
Sort 2009

1 ♕d7+ ♔c5 2 ♖xd4! 1-0

This breakthrough allows the bishop on e3 to join the attack. There are many threats, such as 3 ♖d1+ ♔c4 4 ♕d3#, and 2...♖xf3 allows 3 ♖c4++ ♔xc4 4 ♕d3#, so Black has nothing better than to take the rook, but this also leads to mate after 2...exd4 3 ♗xd4+ ♔c4 4 b3# (or 4 ♗f1#).

423) T. Tkachev – Kabachenko
Kiev 2008

White could have forced mate by **1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕g5+** (the alternative 2 ♕g3+ is equally good) **2...♕g6 3 ♕e5+ ♔g8 4 ♕h8#**.

The game actually continued **1 ♖f6? ♕d7?** (1...♕xf7! 2 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 gives Black the advantage, since he has rook, bishop and pawn for the queen, plus a very dangerous passed e-pawn) **2 ♖xg7+!** (now the sacrifice on g7 is even simpler) **2...♔xg7 3 ♕g5#**.

424) Rublevsky – Al. Kalinin
Moscow 2002

1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕xg5+ ♔f7

2...♔h7 3 ♖h3#.

3 ♕f6+ 1-0

Black is mated after 3...♔e8 4 ♖d8# or 3...♔g8 4 ♖g3+ ♔h7 5 ♕g7# (or 5 ♕h4#).

425) M. Aronow – Barlage
Dresden 2009

1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7

1...♔h8 2 ♕h5 gives White a decisive attack; for example, 2...♗f4 3 ♗f5+ ♗h6 4 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 5 ♕xg7#.

2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♕g5 1-0

3...g6 is answered with 4 ♕h6 followed by mate on g7. Black can delay the end for a time by 3...♗xh2+ 4 ♔xh2 ♕e5+ 5 ♕xe5 gxf6 but White mates regardless after 6 ♕g3+ ♔h7 7 ♖h1 followed by 8 ♔g1#.

426) Drill – Hei. Schneider

Dörnigheim 1994

1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7

After 1...♔h8 2 ♕h5 White mates quickly.

2 ♘g5+

2 ♕h5+ would have given Black less choice, but it doesn't really matter.

2...♔g8

2...♔g6 leads to mate after 3 h5+ ♔h6 4 ♘xf7++ ♔h7 5 ♕g6+ ♔g8 6 h6 ♘f6 7 hxg7 ♗xg7 8 ♖h8#, while 2...♔h6 3 ♘e4+ ♔h7 4 ♕h5+ ♔g8 5 ♘g5 transposes to the game.

3 ♕h5 1-0

3...♗d6 4 ♕h7+ ♔f8 5 exd6 ♘f6 6 ♕h8+ ♘g8 7 ♘h7#.

427) Alv. Guerrero – Contin

Buenos Aires (Juniors) 2009

1 ♖xa5+! bxa5 2 ♕xc5+ ♔b8

It's also mate after 2...♔a6 3 ♕c6+ ♖b6 4 ♕xb6# or 2...♔a8 3 ♕c8+ ♖b8 4 ♕xb8#.

3 ♕a7+! ♔c8

3...♔c7 4 ♖xb7+ mates next move.

4 ♕a8+ 1-0

It's mate after 4...♔d7 5 ♖xb7+ ♔d6 6 c5# or 4...♖b8 5 ♕xb8+ ♔d7 6 ♖b7#.

428) H. Kongevold – H. Mühle

European Ch, Dresden 2007

1 ♖xg7+ ♔xg7 2 ♕g6+ ♔h8 3 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 4 ♕g5+!

This is a difficult move to see, clearing the way for the rook to move to h6.

4...♔f7

4...♔h7 5 ♖h6#.

5 ♕g6#

429) O. Gutt – Wieferig

Bergisch Gladbach Ch 2005

1...♖xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♗h3+!

The second sacrifice draws White's king into the open.

3 ♔xh3

3 ♔g1 ♕g4+ (or 3...♕g5+) 4 ♔h1 ♕g2# and 3 ♔h1 ♕f3+ 4 ♔g1 ♕g2# are no better.

3...♕f3+ 4 ♔h4 g5#

430) Hortillosa – Studen

US Open, Indianapolis 2009

1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7

1...♔h8 2 ♕h5 is also hopeless for Black; for example, 2...♘f6 3 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 4 ♗g6+ ♔g8 5 ♕h7#.

2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♗xg7

Threatening mate on h8.

3...f5

3..f6 4 ♗h6 ♖f7 5 ♖g3+ ♖g7 (5...♔h8 6 ♗g7++ ♔g8 7 ♕h8#) 6 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 7 ♕g6 mates on h7, or 3...♔xg7 4 ♖g3+ ♗g5 5 ♕xg5+ ♔h8 6 ♕h6#.

4 ♖g3 ♗h4

4...♗g5 5 ♖xg5 only delays the end.

5 ♗f6+

5 ♗e5+ is equally good.

1-0

5...♗xg3 6 ♕g6#.

431) Kons. Braun – Li. Ludwig

Niederkirchen (Under-18) 2006

1 ♘xe6+! fxe6

After 1...♔xh7 2 ♕h4+ ♔g8 3 ♘g5 ♖e8 4 ♕h7+ ♔f8 5 ♕xf7# or 1...♔h8 2 ♕h3 Black is also mated quickly.

2 ♕xg6+ ♔h8 3 ♗g8! 1-0

3...♖xg8 allows mate by 4 ♕h6#, while after 3...♖f7 4 ♗xf7 Black only lasts a little longer.

432) Eskelinen – Porrasmaa

Finnish Team Ch 2002/3

1...♘xg3+!

1...♖xh2+? 2 ♔xh2 ♗xg3+? is tempting, but fails after 3 ♔h1!.

2 ♗xg3

Or 2 ♔g1 ♘e2++ 3 ♔f2 (3 ♔h1 ♕g2#) 3...♕g3#.

2...♖xh2+! 0-1

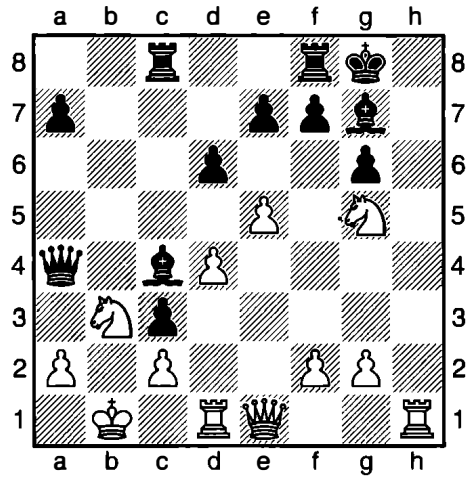
3 ♔xh2 (3 ♗xh2 ♕g2#) 3...♕xg3+ 4 ♔h1 ♕g2# (or 4...♕h2#).

Score-Chart for Destroying the Defences

Position number	Points	Score
385	1	
386	1	
387	1	
388	1	
389	2	
390	2	
391	2	
392	2	
393	2	
394	2	
395	2	
396	2	
397	2	
398	2	
399	2	
400	2	
401	2	
402	2	
403	2	
404	3	
405	3	
406	3	
407	3	
408	3	
409	3	
410	3	
411	3	
412	3	
413	3	
414	3	
415	3	
416	3	
417	3	
418	3	
419	3	
420	3	
421	3	
422	4	
423	4	
424	4	
425	4	
426	4	
427	5	
428	5	
429	5	
430	5	
431	5	
432	5	
Total	**138**	

9 Death on the Rook's File

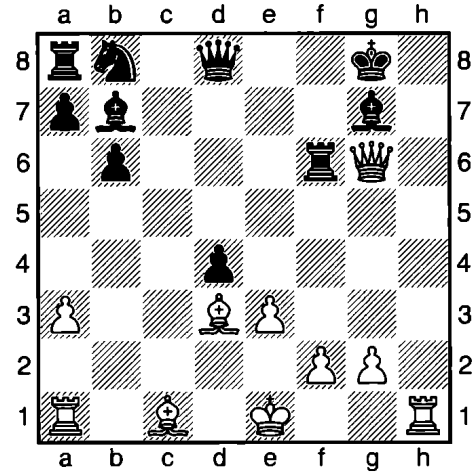
Attacking down the rook's file is one of the oldest chess ideas, and countless games have been won by the simple strategy of opening the file with a pawn advance, doubling or even tripling the rooks and queen and then punching down the file to force mate. This chapter contains quite a few examples of precisely this type of attack, but also many positions which show other ways of exploiting an open rook's file. Here's an example.



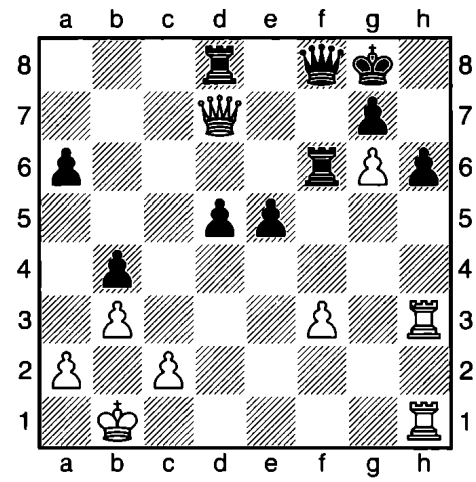
Z. Straka – Hejberg
Plzen 2000

White hasn't even doubled on the h-file, but he still managed to force mate by **1 ♖h8+! ♗xh8** (1...♔xh8 2 ♕h1+ ♗h6 3 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 4 ♕h7#) **2 ♕h1** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**) because 3 ♕h7# is threatened, and if Black moves his rook from f8 then White mates in any case by 3 ♕h7+ and 4 ♕xh8#. This is a sophisticated mating idea which it would be easy to miss if you hadn't seen it before. Building up a knowledge of such standard recipes is crucial to successful attacking play.

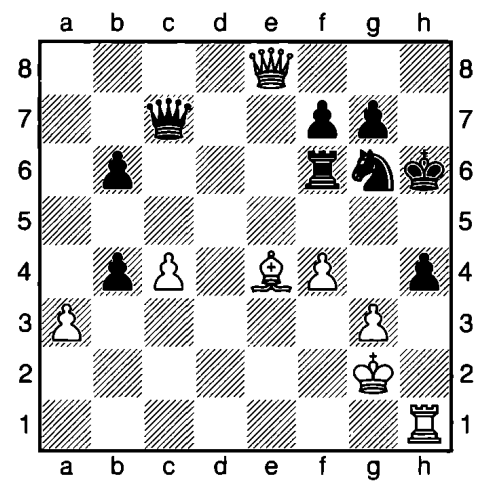
After solving the 48 positions in this chapter, you'll know exactly how to finish off an enemy king that stands near the end of an open rook's file.



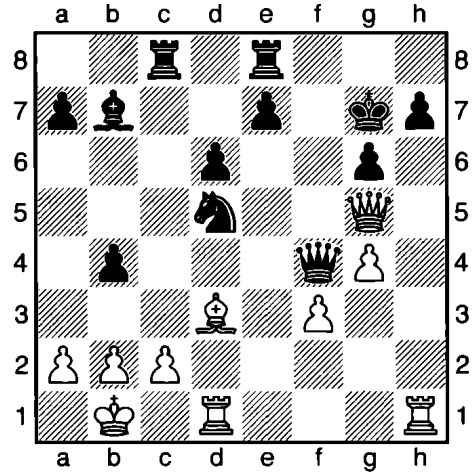
433) White to play (1 point)



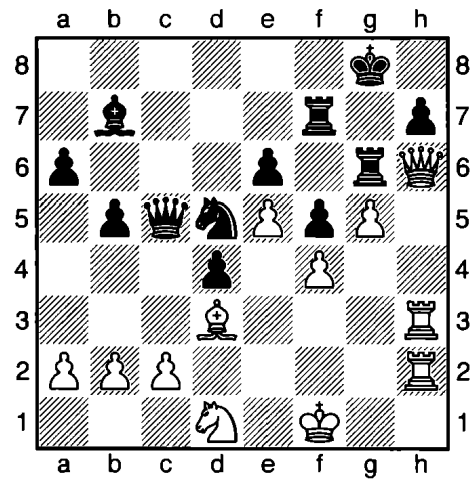
434) White to play (1 point)



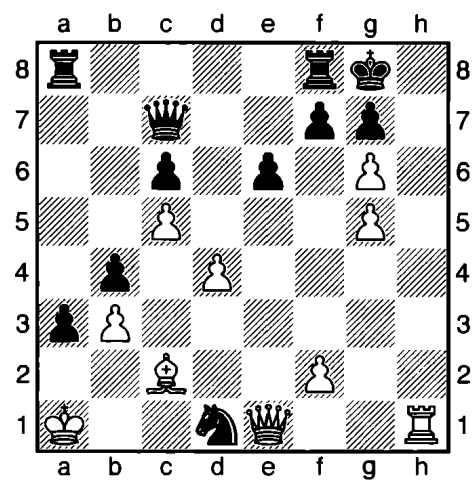
435) White to play (1 point)



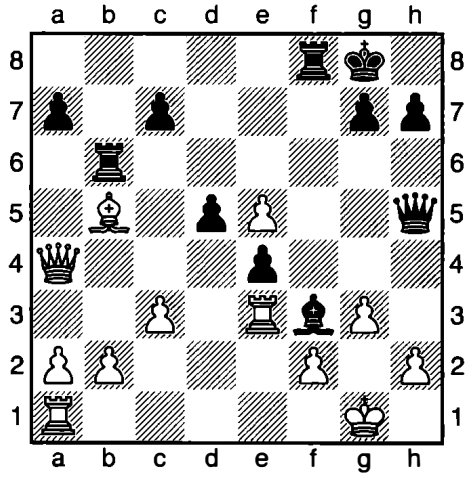
436) White to play (2 points)



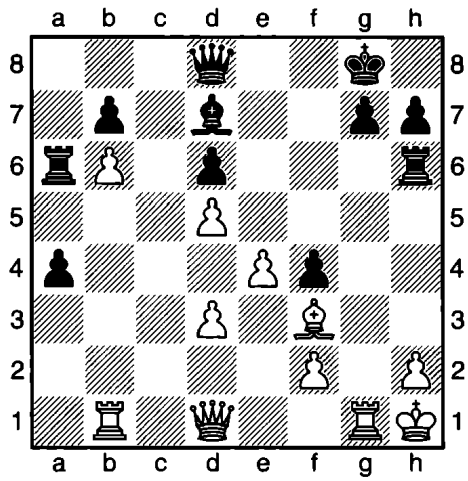
437) White to play (2 points)



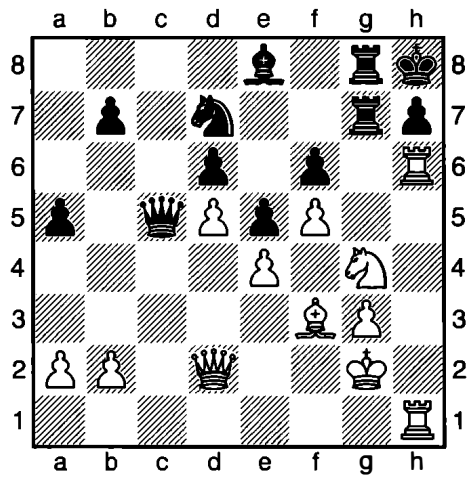
438) White to play (2 points)



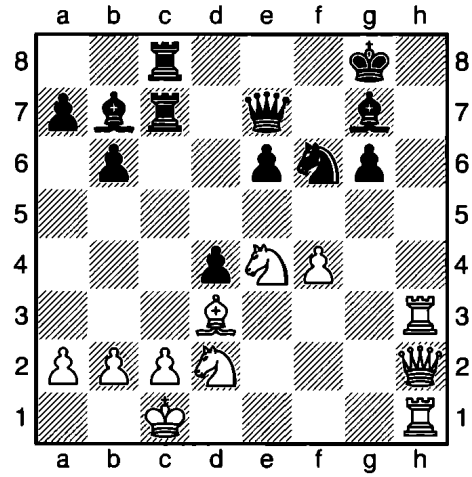
439) Black to play (2 points)



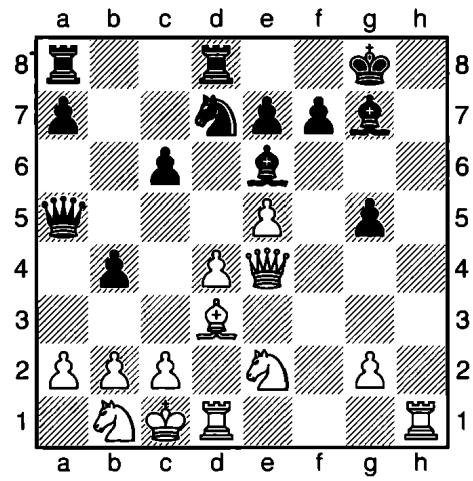
440) Black to play (2 points)



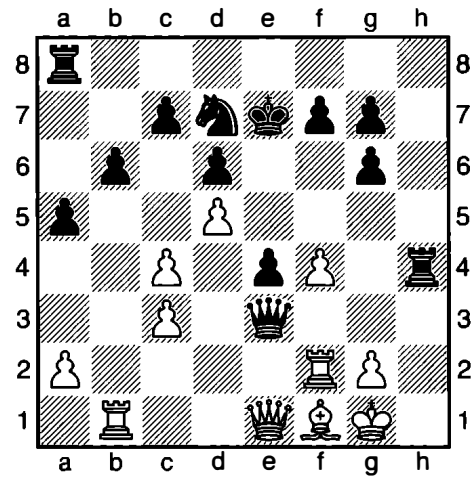
441) White to play (2 points)



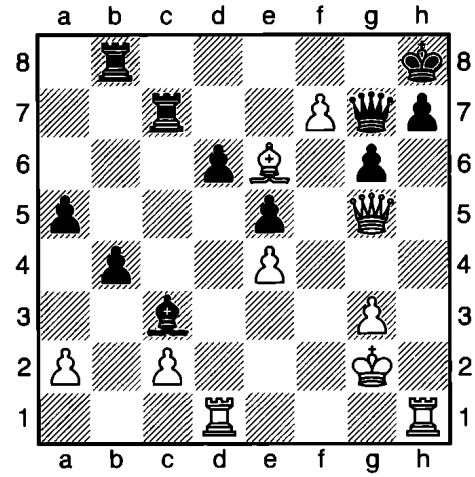
442) White to play (2 points)



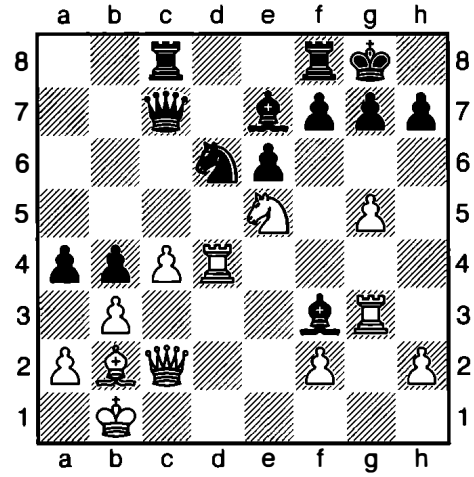
443) White to play (2 points)



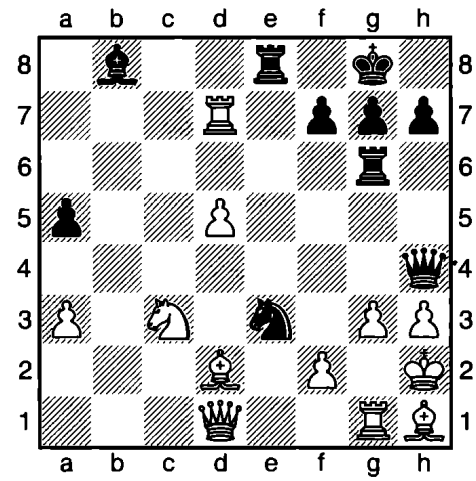
444) Black to play (2 points)



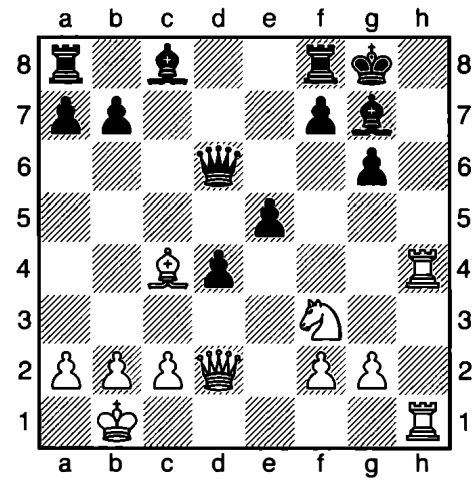
445) White to play (2 points)



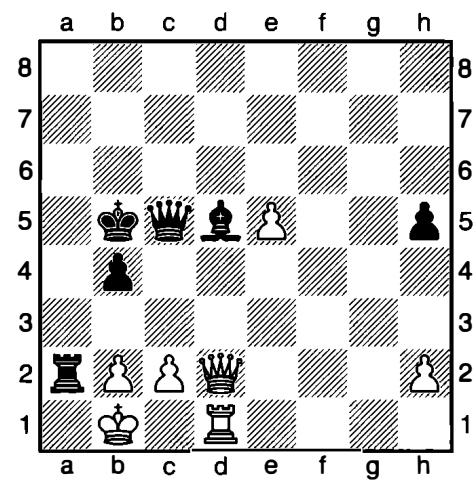
448) White to play (3 points)



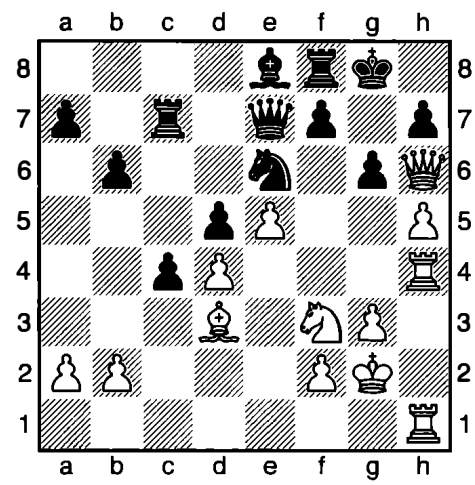
446) Black to play (2 points)



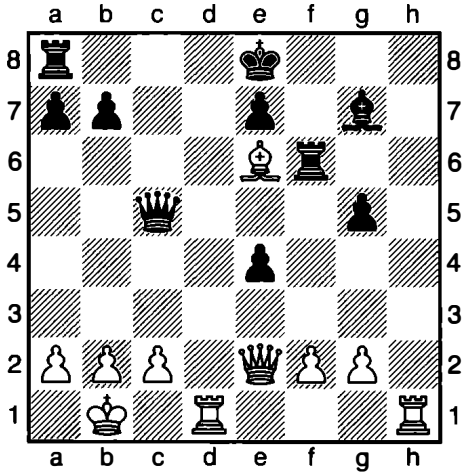
449) White to play (3 points)



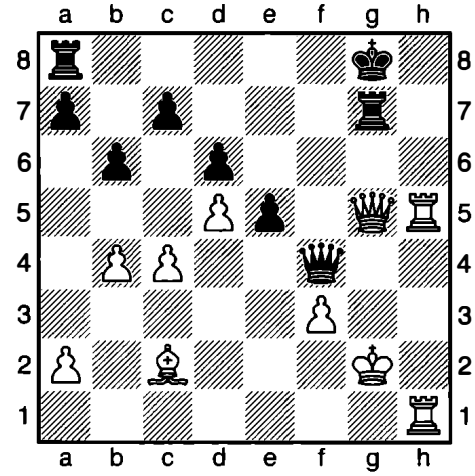
447) Black to play (3 points)



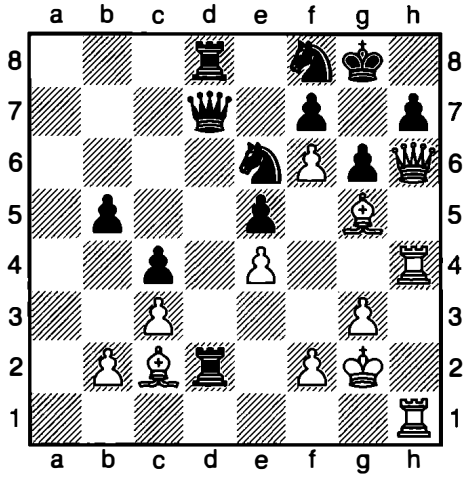
450) White to play (3 points)



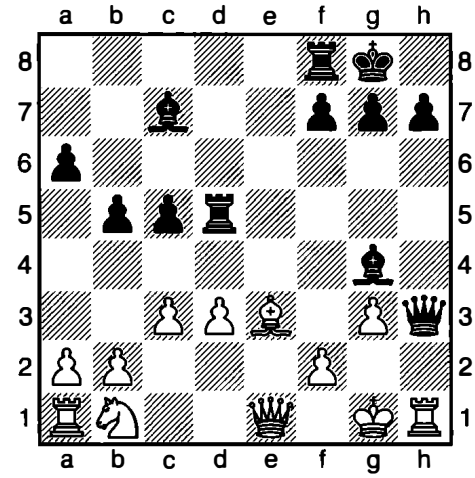
451) White to play (3 points)



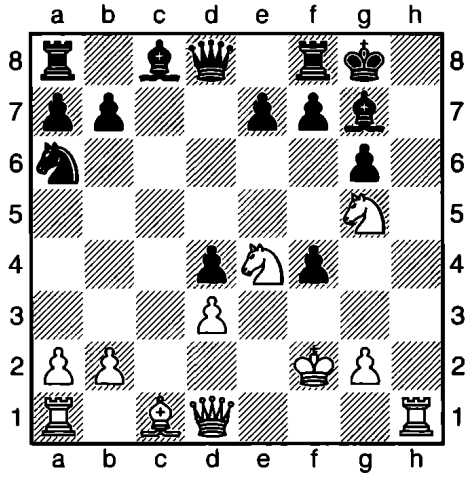
454) White to play (3 points)



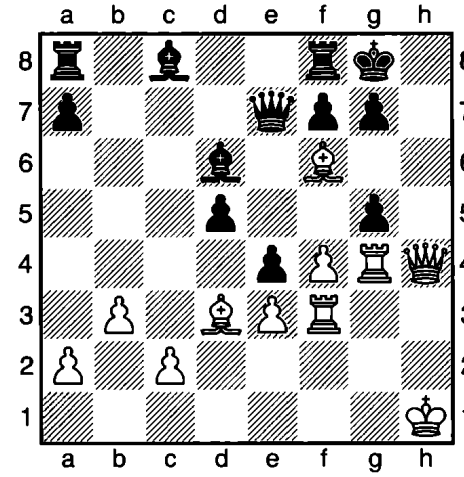
452) White to play (3 points)



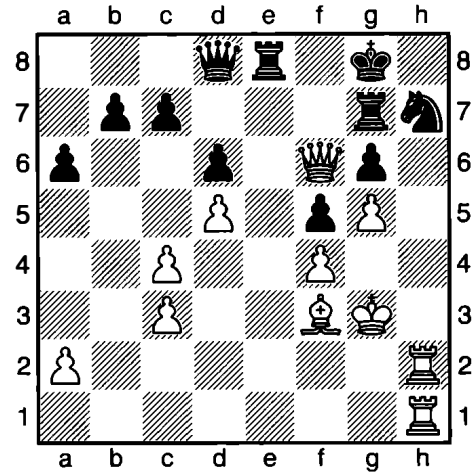
455) Black to play (3 points)



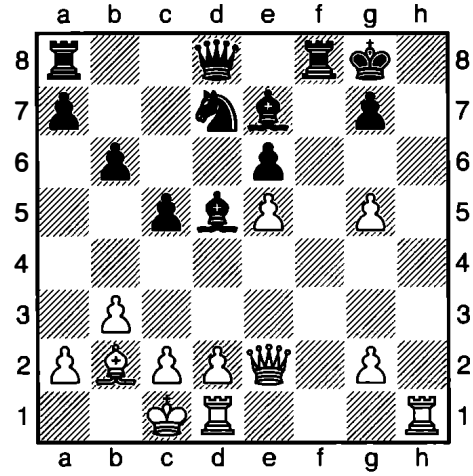
453) White to play (3 points)



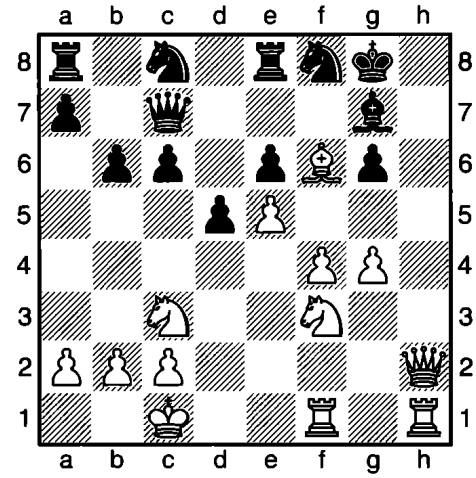
456) White to play (3 points)



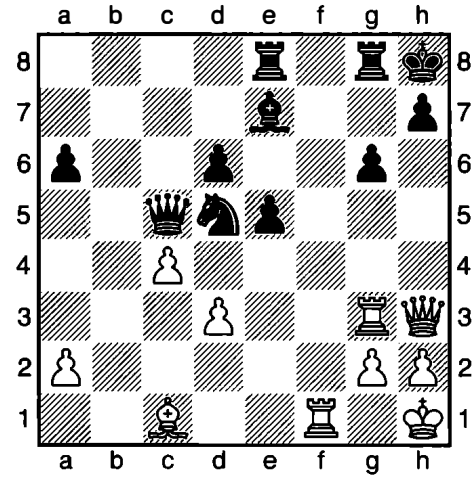
457) White to play (3 points)



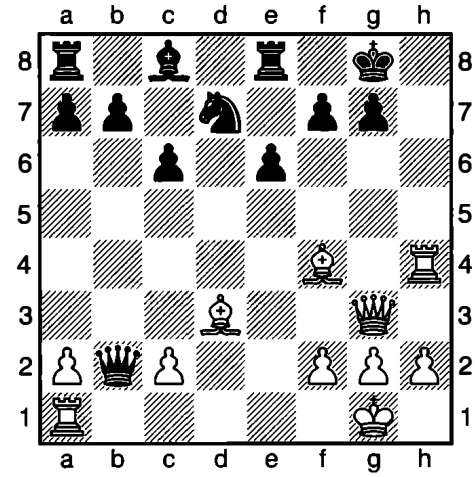
460) White to play (3 points)



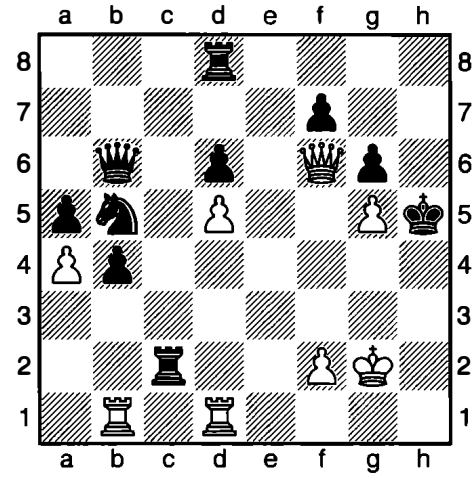
458) White to play (3 points)



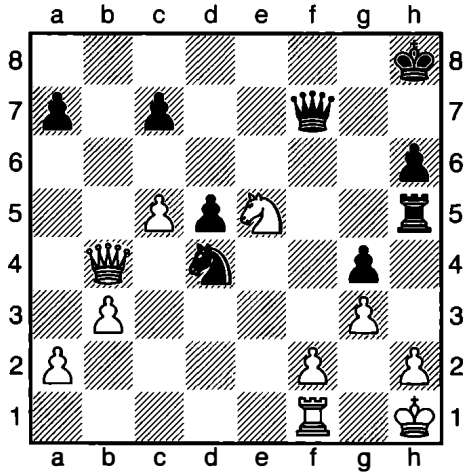
461) White to play (3 points)



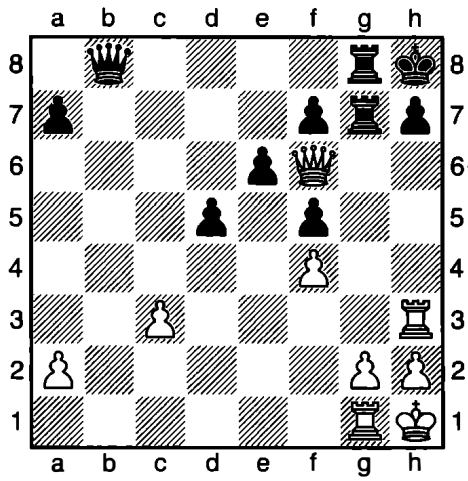
459) White to play (3 points)



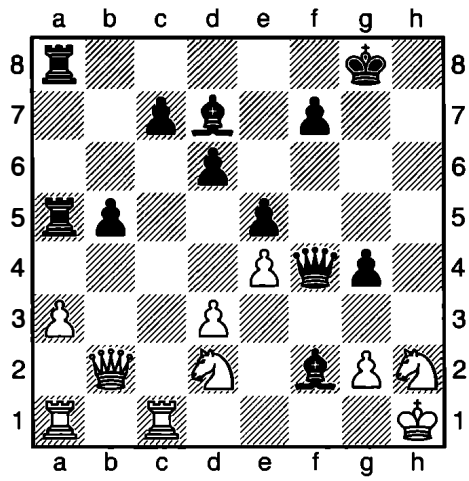
462) White to play (3 points)



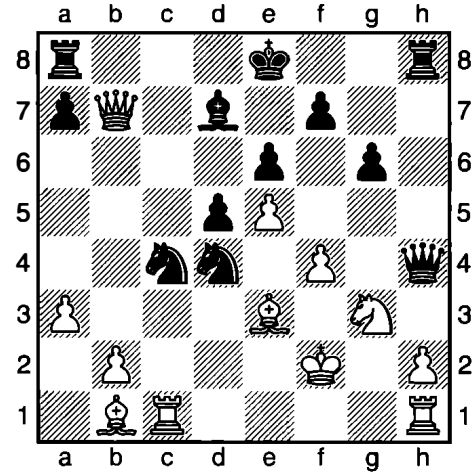
463) Black to play (3 points)



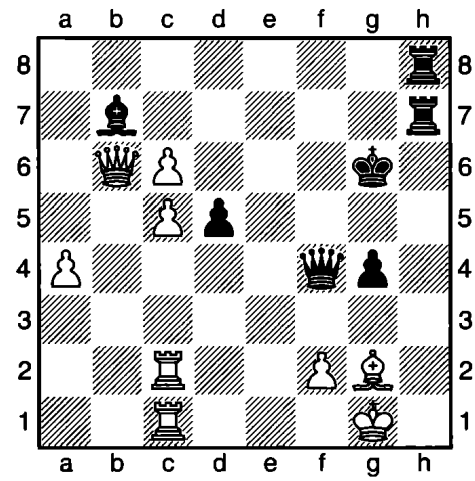
464) White to play (3 points)



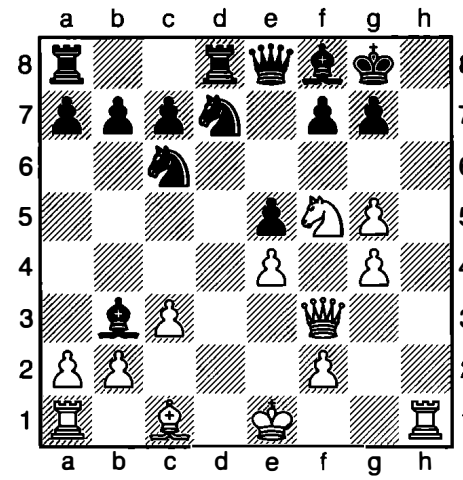
465) Black to play (4 points)



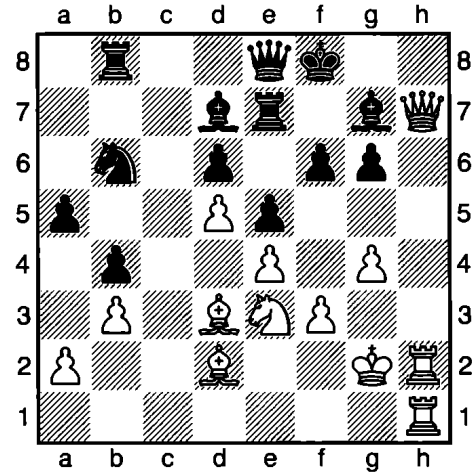
466) Black to play (4 points)



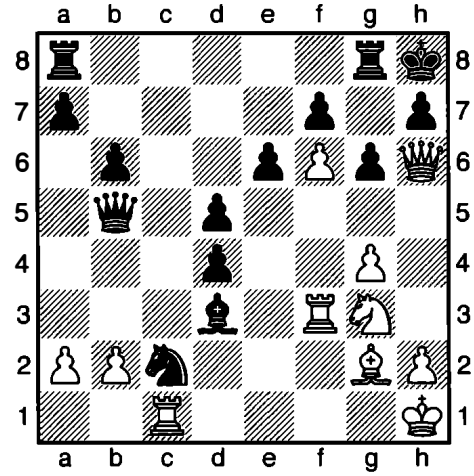
467) Black to play (4 points)



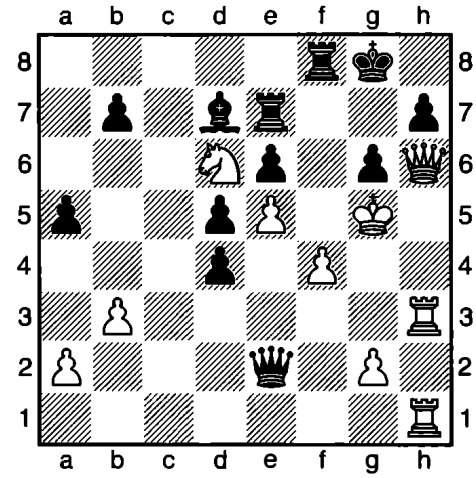
468) White to play (4 points)



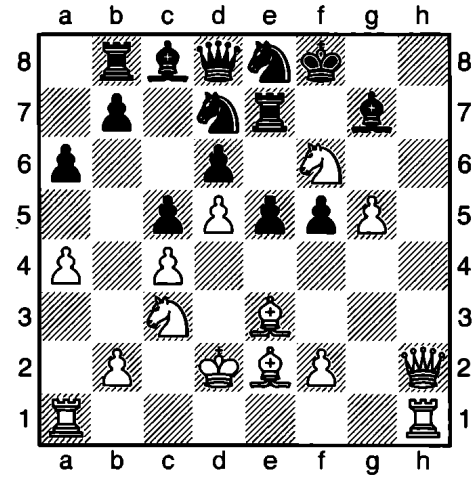
469) White to play (4 points)



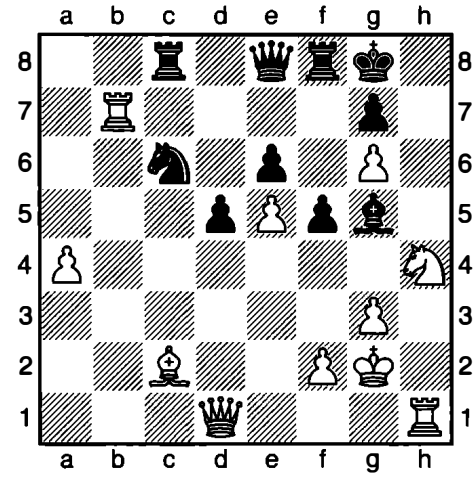
472) White to play (4 points)



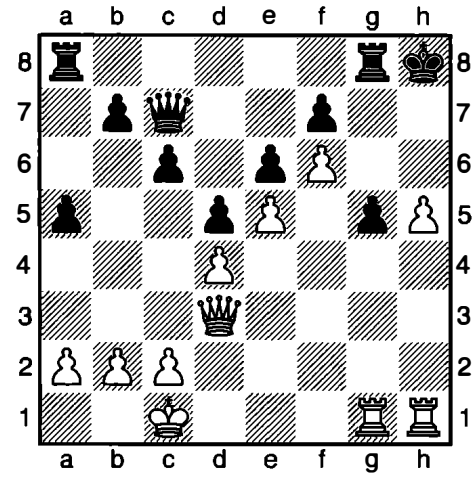
470) White to play (4 points)



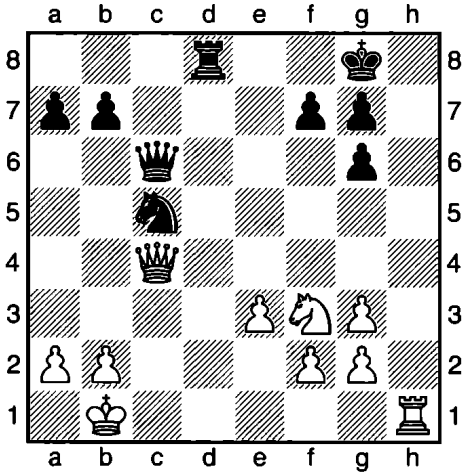
473) White to play (4 points)



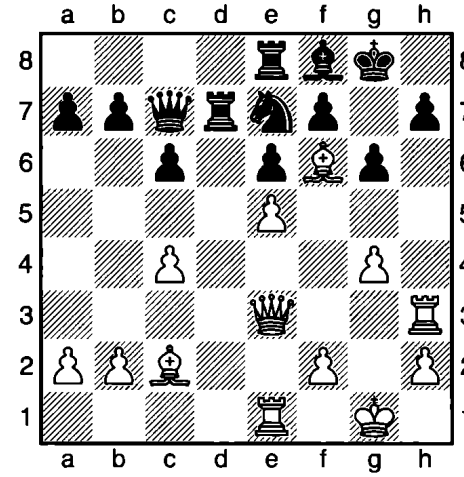
471) White to play (4 points)



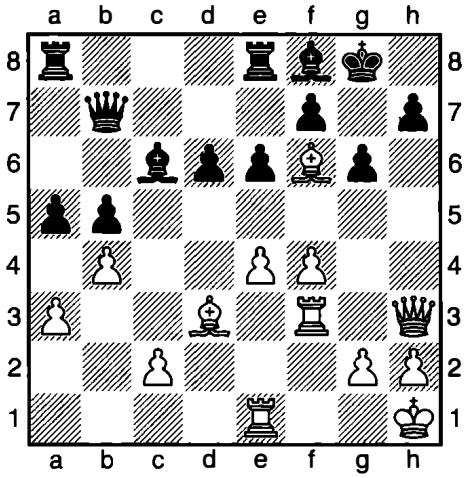
474) White to play (4 points)



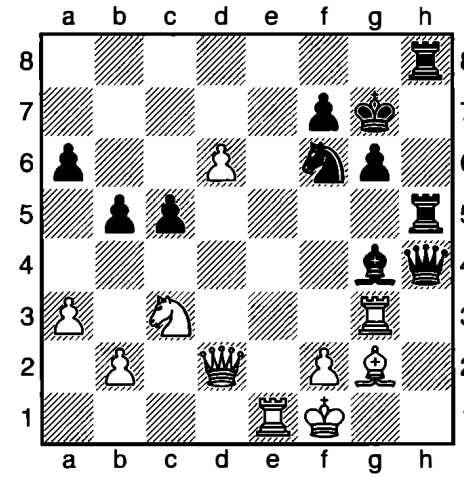
475) White to play (5 points)



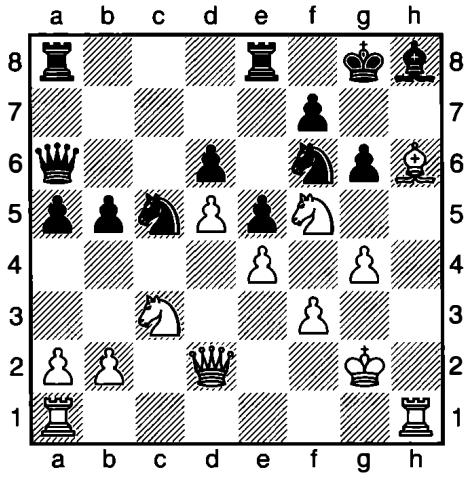
478) White to play (5 points)



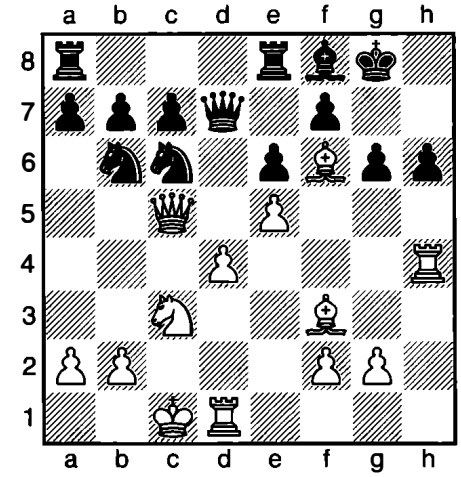
476) White to play (5 points)



479) Black to play (5 points)



477) White to play (5 points)



480) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Death on the Rook's File

433) N. Dobrev – M. Nikolov
Sofia 2008

1 ♖h8+! 1-0

1...♔xh8 2 ♕h7#.

434) C. Orriols Miro – Mitjavila
La Pobla de Lillet 2003

1 ♖xh6! 1-0

Threatening 2 ♖h8#, and if 1...gxh6, then 2 ♕h7#.

435) Seleljo – Jar. Mojzis
Czech Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♕h8+!

Not 1 ♖xh4+? as Black can take the rook with check.

1-0

1...♘xh8 2 ♖xh4#.

436) Panchanathan – Ramnathan
Gurgon 2009

1 ♖xh7+! ♔f8

It's also mate after 1...♔xh7 2 ♕xg6+ ♔h8 3 ♕h7# or 1...♔g8 2 ♕xg6+ ♔f8 3 ♕g7# (or 3 ♖h8#).

2 ♖h8+ 1-0

2...♔g7 (2...♔f7 3 ♕xg6#) 3 ♕xg6+ ♔xh8 4 ♕h7#.

437) K. Cao – J. Schuller
Stillwater 2009

1 ♕xg6+! hxg6

1...♔f8 2 ♖xh7 and 1...♖g7 2 ♕xe6+ ♔f8 3 ♖xh7 lead to a quick mate.

2 ♖h8+ ♔g7 3 ♖2h7#

438) Je. Thybo – Ve. Hansen
Copenhagen 2010

1 ♖h8+! 1-0

The rook sacrifice enables White's queen to reach the h-file with gain of tempo, forcing mate after 1...♔xh8 2 ♕h1+ ♔g8 3 ♕h7#.

439) Karabalis – Haubt
Germany (team event) 2007/8

1...♕xh2+! 0-1

White is mated after 2 ♔f1 ♕h1# or 2 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 3 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

440) M. Abed – Darini
Urmia 2008

1...♖xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♕h4+ 0-1

After 3 ♔g2, 3...♕h3# is quickest although 3...♗h3+ 4 ♔h2 ♗f1# also mates.

441) Bonafont – Hanreck
Brentwood 2008

1 ♖xh7+! 1-0

1...♖xh7 2 ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 3 ♕h6#.

442) A. Amarasinghe – Amarasena
Asian Junior Ch, Colombo 2009

1 ♖h8+! 1-0

1...♗xh8 (1...♔f7 2 ♘g5#) 2 ♕xh8+ ♔f7 3 ♘g5#.

443) J. Cejas – L. Mavrich
Mar del Plata 2009

1 ♖h8+! 1-0

It's mate after 1...♔xh8 2 ♕h7# or 1...♗xh8 2 ♕h7+ ♔f8 3 ♕xh8#.

444) M.K. Poulsen – Peschardt
Horsholm 2008

Ignoring the attack on his queen, Black plays for mate.

1...♖ah8! 0-1

Threatening 2...♖h1# and if 2 g3 or 2 g4 then 2...♖h1+ 3 ♔g2 ♖8h2#.

445) Nimmy – Anuprita
Indian Women's Ch, Calicut 2008

1 ♖xh7+! ♕xh7

1...♔xh7 2 ♖h1+ ♕h6 3 ♕xh6#.

2 ♕f6+ ♕g7 3 ♖h1#

446) Balster – Hellsten
Bundesliga 2000/1
1...♕xh3+! 0-1
2 ♔xh3 ♖h6+ and mate next move.

447) I. Vovk – Kanep
Estonian Ch, Rakvere 2009
1...♖a1+! 0-1
Mate is forced after 2 ♔xa1 ♕a7+ 3 ♔b1 ♕a2+ 4 ♔c1 ♕a1#.

448) Dauth – M. Demidowicz
Guben 2008
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+
2 ♖h3+ is just as good.
1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♖gh3 ♗e4+ 4 ♔a1 g6 (4...♗h7 5 ♖xh7 only delays mate by one move) 5 ♖h8+ ♔g7 6 ♖3h7#.

449) J. Englert – A. Andrzejewska
Krakow 2009
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
After 1...♗xh8 2 ♕h6 Black cannot prevent mate by 3 ♕h7# or 3 ♕xh8#.

450) Weeramantry – Ma. Kumar
Calvia Olympiad 2004
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 hxg6++ 1-0
2...♔g7 (after 2...♔g8 3 ♖h8+ White mates one move more quickly) 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8+ ♔g7 5 ♖1h7#.

451) P. Sadilek – F. Haider
Vienna 2009
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
1...♗xh8 (after 1...♖f8 2 ♕h5# Black is mated at once, while 1...♗f8 2 ♕h5+ leads to mate next move) 2 ♕h5+ ♖g6 (2...♔f8 3 ♕xh8# or 2...♖f7 3 ♕xf7#) 3 ♕xg6+ (3 ♕xh8+ is equally good) 3...♔f8 4 ♕f7#.

452) Kengis – Blatny
Tilburg 1994
1 ♕xh7+! ♘xh7 2 ♖xh7
Black can only delay mate on h8 by giving away his pieces.
2...♘f4+ 3 ♗xf4 1-0
Black can no longer prevent ♖h8#.

453) Va. Guerra – J. Leonardo
Almada 2003
1 ♖h8+! ♗xh8
1...♔xh8 2 ♕h1+ leads to mate on h7.
1-0
In view of 2 ♕h1 ♖e8 3 ♕h7+ ♔f8 4 ♕xf7# (or 4 ♕xh8#).

454) Reinderman – D. Brandenburg
Dutch Ch, Hilversum 2008
White can force mate even though his queen is pinned.
1 ♖h8+ ♔f7 2 ♗g6+! 1-0
Black's only move is 2...♖xg6, but then White can mate by 3 ♖1h7+ ♖g7 4 ♖xg7# (or 4 ♕xg7#).

455) K. Rian – A.M.A. Hj
ASEAN Under-18 Ch, Da Nang 2008
1...♕xh1+! 2 ♔xh1 ♗f3+ 3 ♔g1
3 ♔h2 ♖h5+ 4 ♔g1 ♖h1#.
3...♖h5 0-1
It's mate next move by 4...♖h1#.

456) S. Barrett – Dilleigh
British Ch, Liverpool 2008
1 ♖h3!
Threatening mate on h7 or h8, so Black must take the queen.
1...gxh4 2 ♖xg7+ 1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♖xh4#.

457) Dautov – Bosman
Bundesliga 2008/9
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♖xh7+ ♔f8 3 ♖h8+ followed by 4 ♖1h7#.

458) C. van Oosterom – Hulshof
Hoogeveen 2009
1 ♕h8+! ♗xh8
1...♔f7 2 ♕xg7# (or 2 ♘g5#).
2 ♖xh8+ ♔f7 3 ♘g5#

459) Flierl – Jö. Becker
Germany (team event) 2006/7
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 ♕h4+ (or 2 ♕h3+) 2...♔g8 3 ♕h7+ ♔f8 4 ♗d6+ ♖e7 5 ♕h8#.

460) E. Kahn – Szeberenyi
Hungarian Team Ch 2006/7

1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8
1...♔f7 2 ♕h5+ g6 3 ♕h7+ ♔e8 4 ♕xg6#.
2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 g6 1-0
It's mate after 3...♖e8 4 ♕h7+ ♔f8 5 ♕h8# or 3...♘f6 4 exf6 ♖xf6 5 ♕h7+ ♔f8 6 ♕h8#.

461) Short – Ye Jiangchuan
Taiyuan 2004

1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♔g7 3 ♗h6+ ♔h7 4 ♗f8+ and mate next move.

462) Shaposhnikov – Zakharevich
Kaluga 2003

1 ♖h1+ ♔g4 2 ♖h4+! 1-0
2...♔xh4 3 ♕f4+ ♔h5 4 ♖h1#.

463) Ø. Pedersen – O. Simonsen
Gausdal 2003

1...♖xh2+! 2 ♔g1
2 ♔xh2 ♕h5+ 3 ♔g1 (3 ♔g2 ♕h3+ 4 ♔g1 ♘e2#) 3...♘e2+ 4 ♔g2 ♕h3#.
2...♘e2+! 3 ♔xh2 ♕h5+ 4 ♔g2 ♕h3#

464) Kokkinakis – I. Bensenousi
Greek Team Ch, Kallithea 2003

1 ♖xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♕h4+ ♔g6 3 ♕g5+ ♔h7 4 ♕h5#.

465) Ka. Morales – In. Sanchez
Pan American Women's Ch, San Salvador 2008

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 g3+
2...♔g7? at once allows 3 g3, freeing g2 for the king.
3 ♔h1 ♔g7
There's no way to prevent the rook from moving to h8.
4 ♘f3 ♖h8+ 0-1
It's mate next move.

466) J.J. Kristensen – Kroll
Århus 1990

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♖xh2
Black's pair of knights also proves deadly after 2 ♔f1 ♘xe3+ 3 ♔e1 ♘f3# or 2 ♔e1 ♘f3+ followed by 3...♘xe3#.
2...♖xh2+ 3 ♔e1
As before, White is mated after 3 ♔g1 ♘f3+ 4 ♔f1 ♘xe3# and 3 ♔f1 ♘xe3+ followed by 4...♘f3#.
3...♘f3+ 4 ♔f1
4 ♔d1 ♘xe3#.
4...♘xe3#

467) Kramnik – Anand
Amber Rapid, Nice 2008

1...♕f3!!
Threatening 2...♖h1+ and mate next move.
2 cxb7+
2 ♗xf3 gxf3 will also lead to mate on h1 after White has exhausted his spite checks.
2...♔f5 0-1
After 3 ♗xf3 gxf3 White can delay mate for several moves by giving away all his pieces, but it doesn't make any difference since sooner or later he will be mated by ...♖h1#.

468) J. Reeve – Hughey
Edmonton 2008

1 ♕h3 f6
Or else mate on h7 or h8.
2 ♕h8+
2 ♕h7+ is just as good.
2...♔f7 3 g6+! ♔e6
3...♔xg6 4 ♕h5#.
4 ♕g8+ 1-0
4...♕f7 5 ♕xf7#.

469) Krush – Ruxton
Gibraltar 2007

1 ♕h8+! ♔f7
1...♗xh8 2 ♖xh8+ followed by 3 ♖1h7#.
2 ♕xg7+!
Now Black has to take the queen.
2...♔xg7 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8
3...♔f8 is the same.
4 ♖h8+ ♔g7 5 ♖1h7#

470) Almagro Llanas – A. Sanchez Garcia
Madrid Ch 2007

1 ♕xg6+! ♖g7
It's also mate after 1...hxg6 2 ♖h8+ ♔g7 3 ♖1h7# or 1...♔h8 2 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 3 ♕xh7# (or 3 ♖xh7#).
2 ♕xg7+! 1-0

White mates after 2...♔xg7 3 ♖xh7+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8+ ♔g7 5 ♖1h7#.

471) M. Krupa – Giuriati

Litomysl 2007

1 ♕h5 ♗h6

After 1...♕xg6 White can of course simply take the queen, but there is a quick mate by 2 ♕h8+! ♔xh8 3 ♘xg6++ ♔g8 4 ♖h8#.

2 ♖xg7+! 1-0

2...♔xg7 (other moves lead to immediate mate: 2...♗xg7 3 ♕h7# or 2...♔h8 3 ♕xh6#) 3 ♘xf5+ (the queen sacrifice 3 ♕xh6+ also forces mate, but is slower) 3...♔g8 (3...♖xf5 4 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 5 ♕h8#) 4 ♕xh6 and mate next move.

472) I. Starostits – Alford

Dos Hermanas (Internet blitz) 2004

1 ♘e4!!

White clears the third rank so his rook can go to h3, but he must choose the correct square. 1 ♘f5? gxf5 frees g6, so that 2 ♕xh7+ followed by 3 ♖h3+ is no longer mate, while 1 ♘e2? g5 defends h7 and stops any sacrifice there.

1...♗xe4

After 1...dxe4 2 ♖h3 ♕h5 3 gxh5 White wins the queen, while retaining an attack which will force mate shortly. Here 1...g5 doesn't defend, since 2 ♖h3 ♗xe4 3 ♗xe4 leads to mate on h7.

2 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 3 ♖h3#

473) Z. Izoria – Kalagashvili

Georgian Ch, Tbilisi 2001

1 ♕h8+! ♗xh8

1...♔f7 2 ♗h5#.

2 ♖xh8+ ♔f7

2...♔g7 3 ♖g8+ ♔f7 4 ♗h5#.

3 ♗h5+ ♔g7 4 ♖g8#

474) Tedy – Lantang

Djakarta 2000

1 ♕g6! 1-0

Threatening 2 ♕h6# and forcing mate after 1...fxg6 2 hxg6+ ♕h7 3 ♖xh7# or 1...♖xg6 2 hxg6+ ♔g8 3 g7 followed by 4 ♖h8#.

475) D. Muse – Mart. Fischer

2nd Bundesliga 2007/8

1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♕h4+ ♔g8 3 ♕xd8+ ♔h7 4 ♘g5+ ♔h6 5 ♘xf7+ 1-0

5...♔h7 is met with 6 ♕h8#, while 5...♔h5 allows mate by 6 ♕h4# or 6 ♕g5#.

476) A. Pomaro – Codenotti

Verona 2009

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♗h6

2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

3 ♖ee3!

The threat is 4 ♖xh6+ ♔xh6 5 ♖h3#. Not, however, 3 ♖xh6+? ♔xh6 4 ♖e3 g5, when Black escapes.

3...g5 4 fxg5 1-0

Black cannot prevent 5 ♖xh6+ followed by 6 ♖h8#.

477) Uksini – M. Brcar

European Union Under-10 Ch, Mureck 2009

1 ♗f8!!

The threat is 2 ♖xh8+ ♔xh8 3 ♕h6+ followed by 4 ♕g7#. There are other winning moves, such as 1 ♗g5 and 1 ♕g5, but these do not lead to a quick mate.

1...♘d3

Ignoring the threat, but other moves would not have held out for long:

1) 1...♖xf8 2 ♘e7+ ♔g7 3 ♕h6#.

2) 1...♘e6 2 ♖xh8+ ♔xh8 3 ♕h6+ ♔g8 4 dxe6 and White mates quickly.

3) 1...♘h5 2 ♖xh5 gxh5 3 ♕g5+ ♔xf8 (3...♔h7 4 ♕xh5+ ♔g8 5 ♘h6+ ♔xf8 6 ♕xf7#) 4 ♕h6+ ♔g8 5 ♕xh5 mates in a few moves; for example, 5...♖e7 6 ♖h1 ♗f6 7 ♕h7+ ♔f8 8 ♕h8+! ♗xh8 9 ♖xh8#.

2 ♖xh8+ 1-0

2...♔xh8 3 ♕h6+ and 4 ♕g7#.

478) Ax. Rombaldoni – Barillaro

Bologna 2008

1 ♖xh7!! ♔xh7 2 ♕h3+ ♗h6

2...♔g8 3 ♕h8#.

3 ♕xh6+!

Not 3 ♖e3? ♘g8, when Black defends for the moment.

3...♔xh6 4 ♖e3 ♕xe5

4...♖d1+ 5 ♔g2 doesn't change the situation.

5 ♖h3+!

Correctly declining the queen, since White can force mate.

5...♕h5 6 ♖xh5+ gxh5 7 g5#

A beautiful finish.

479) Longa Yauca – Chueca Forcen

Almansa 2009

1...♕h1+! 0-1

2 ♗xh1 ♖xh1+ 3 ♖g1 (or 3 ♔g2 ♖8h2#) 3...♖xg1+ 4 ♔xg1 ♗f3 leads to an unavoidable mate on h1.

480) Epishin – T. Ernst

Cutro 2004

1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8

1...♖xf8 2 ♖xh6 leads to mate on h8.

2 ♖xh6 ♘e7

The only way to stop immediate mate, but it doesn't save Black.

3 ♖h8+ ♘g8 1-0

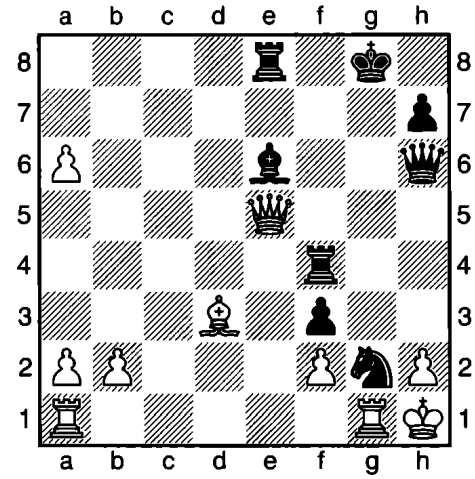
Black resigned in view of 4 ♖xg8+ (4 ♖dh1 first is also good) 4...♔xg8 5 ♖h1 and mate on h8 next move.

Score-Chart for Death on the Rook's File

Position number	Points	Score
433	1	
434	1	
435	1	
436	2	
437	2	
438	2	
439	2	
440	2	
441	2	
442	2	
443	2	
444	2	
445	2	
446	2	
447	3	
448	3	
449	3	
450	3	
451	3	
452	3	
453	3	
454	3	
455	3	
456	3	
457	3	
458	3	
459	3	
460	3	
461	3	
462	3	
463	3	
464	3	
465	4	
466	4	
467	4	
468	4	
469	4	
470	4	
471	4	
472	4	
473	4	
474	4	
475	5	
476	5	
477	5	
478	5	
479	5	
480	5	
Total	**149**	

10 Queen Sacrifices

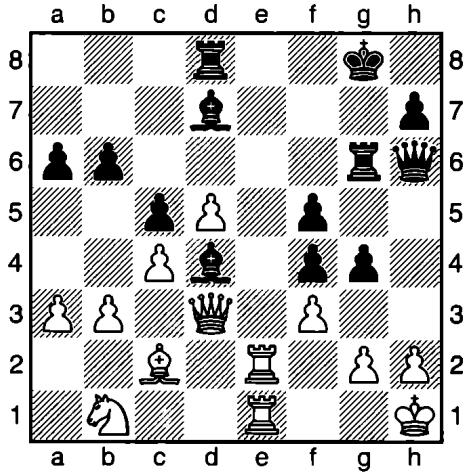
Everybody loves to sacrifice their queen and there's nothing more satisfying than the warm feeling you get when you give up your most powerful piece to force mate.



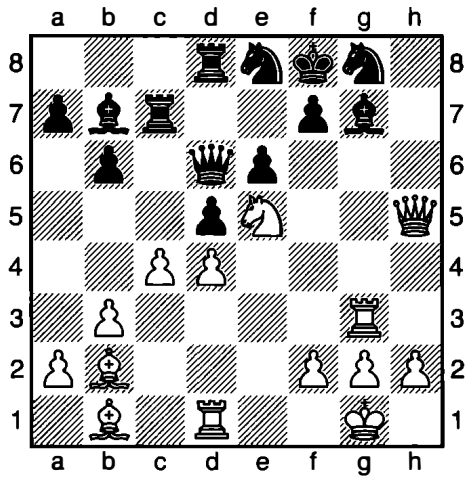
I. Schmidt – Delvos
Germany (team event) 2003/4

Black finished the game in spectacular style by **1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 3 ♔g3 ♖h3#**. This is an unusual mate in which the knight operates backwards to prevent the white king from escaping.

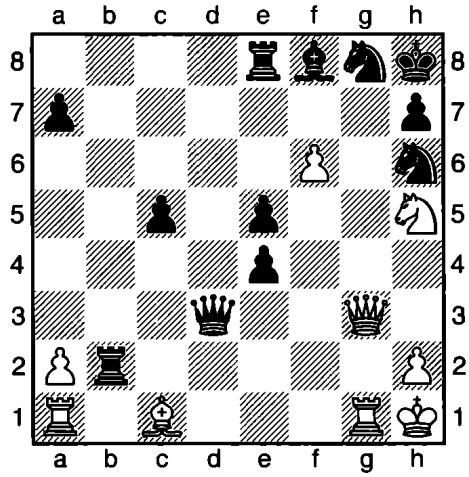
The 90 queen sacrifices that follow include plenty of examples of spectacular play and surprising mates. By the end, you will be familiar with all the typical queen-sacrifice patterns that arise in practical play. Enjoy!



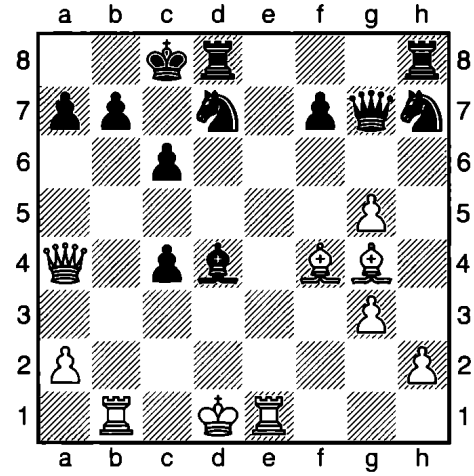
481) Black to play (1 point)



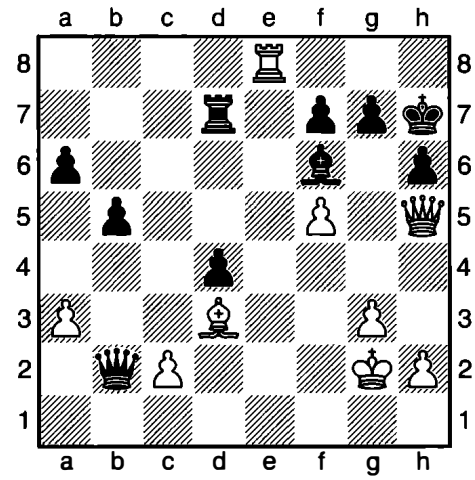
482) White to play (1 point)



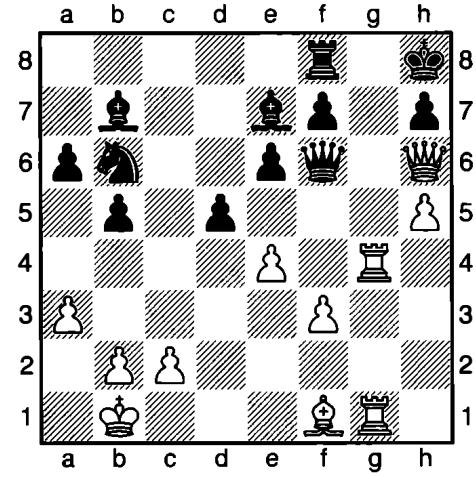
483) White to play (1 point)



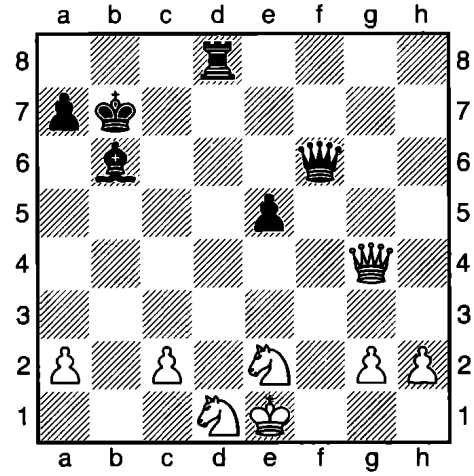
484) White to play (1 point)



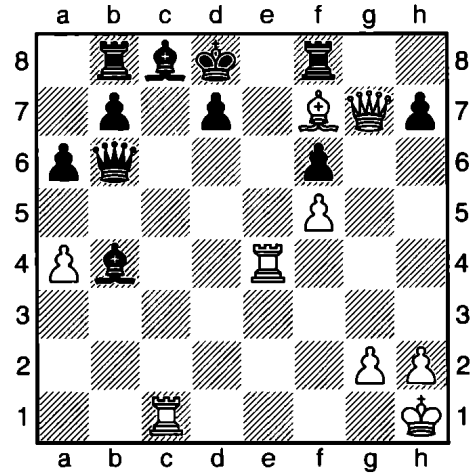
485) White to play (1 point)



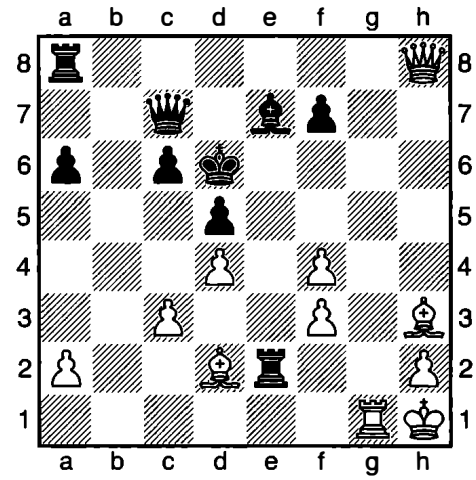
486) White to play (1 point)



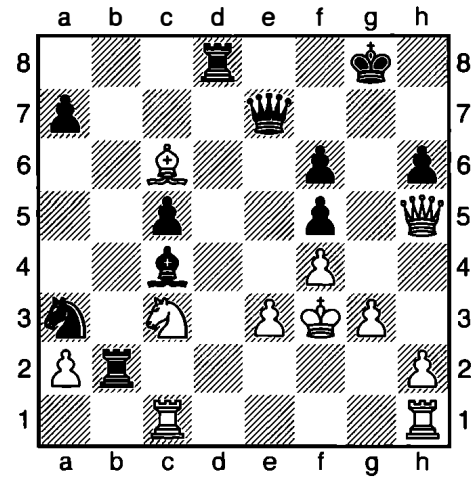
487) Black to play (1 point)



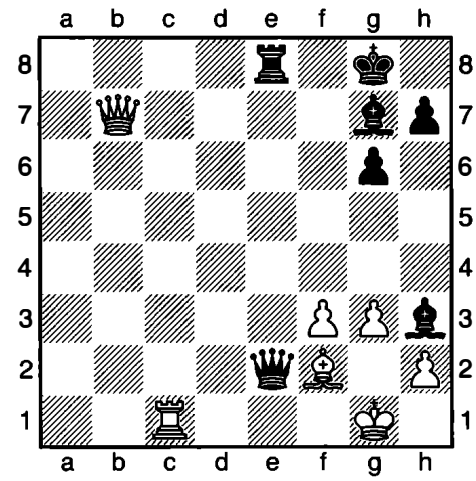
490) White to play (1 point)



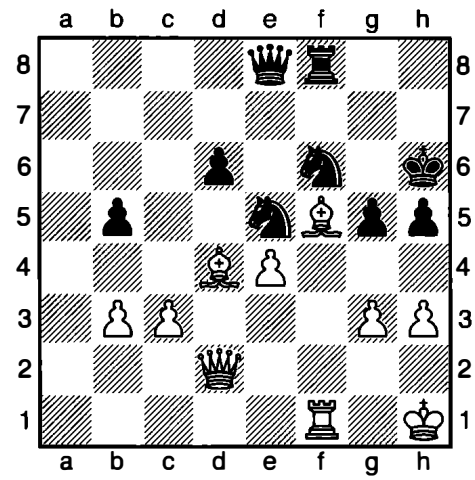
488) White to play (1 point)



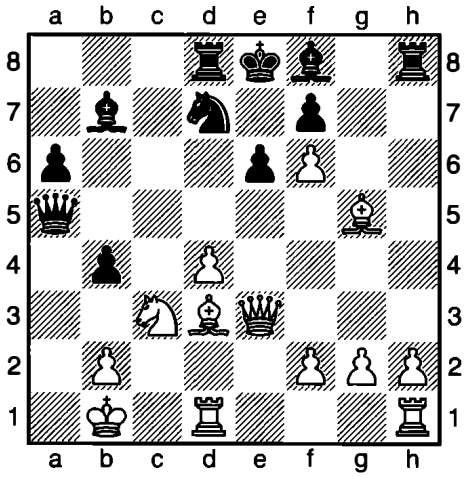
491) Black to play (1 point)



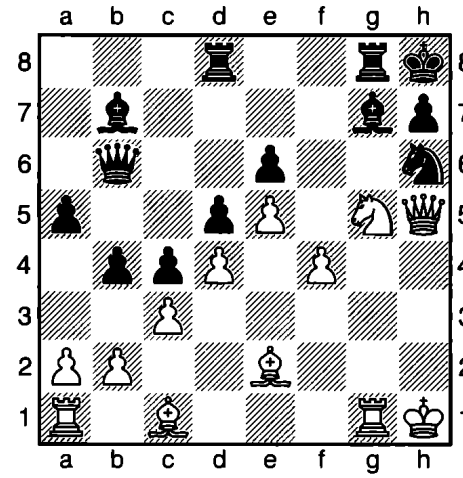
489) Black to play (1 point)



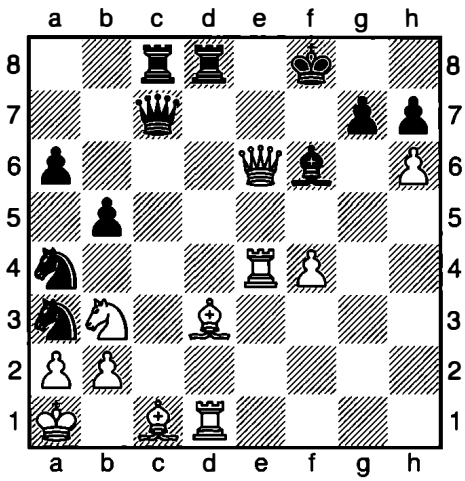
492) White to play (1 point)



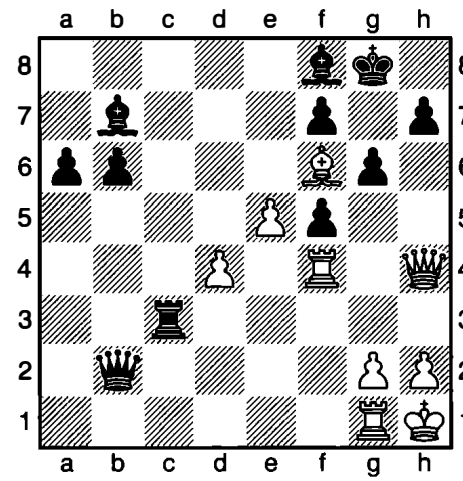
493) White to play (1 point)



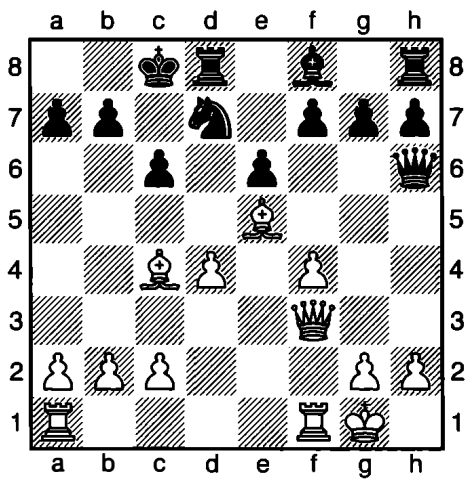
496) White to play (1 point)



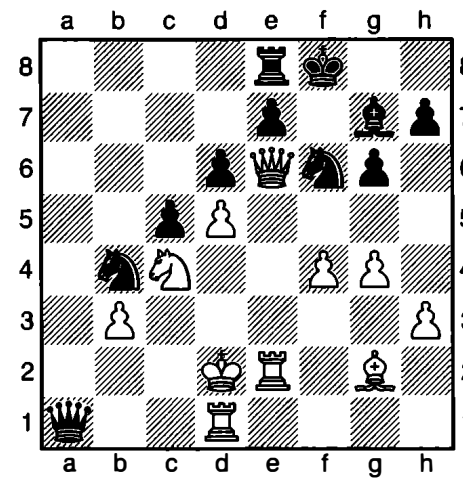
494) Black to play (1 point)



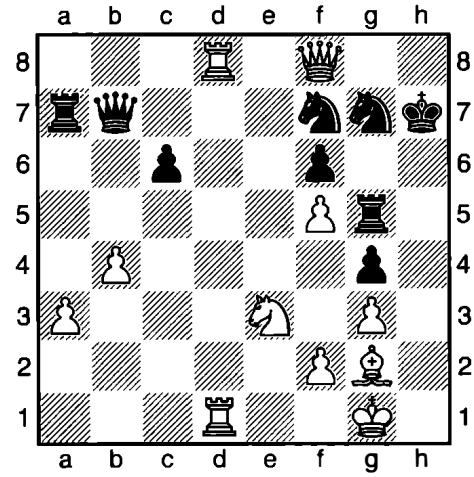
497) Black to play (2 points)



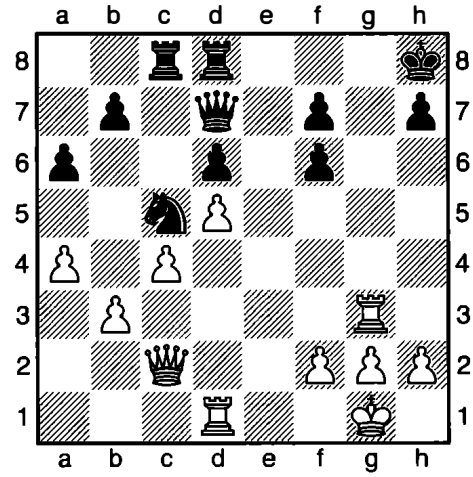
495) White to play (1 point)



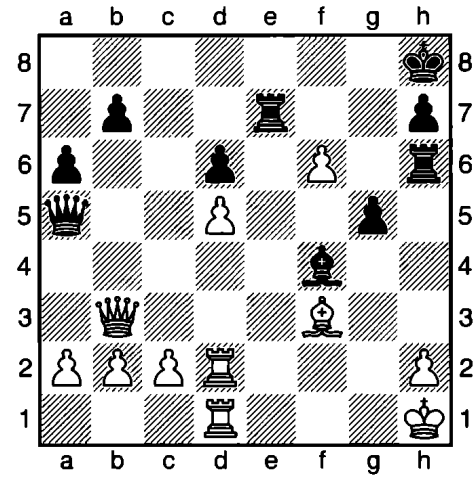
498) Black to play (2 points)



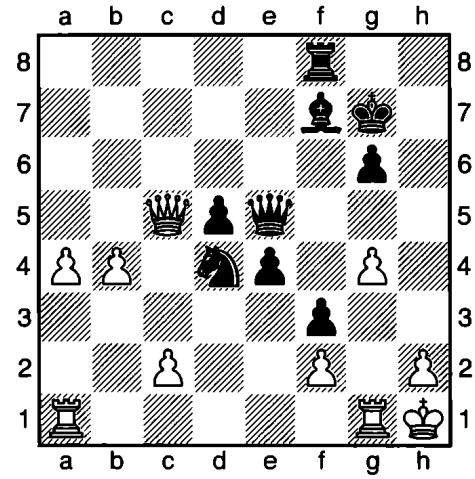
499) White to play (2 points)



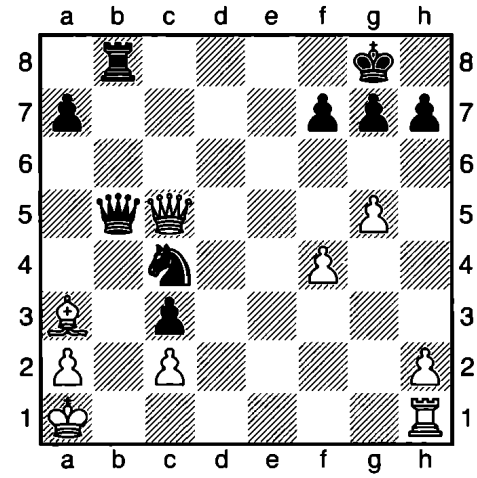
502) White to play (2 points)



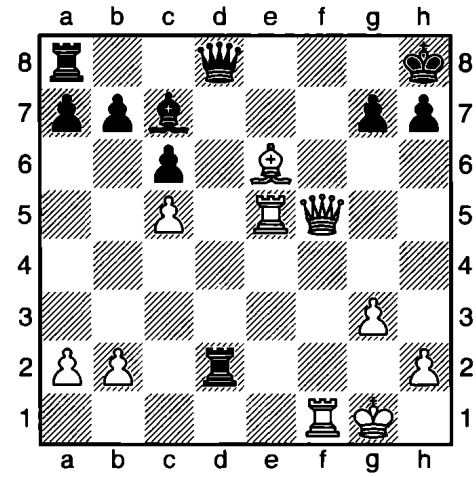
500) Black to play (2 points)



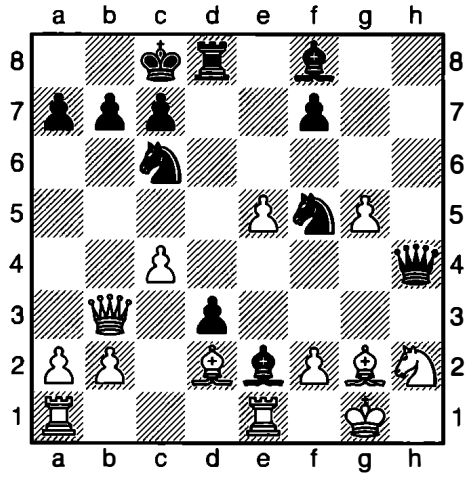
503) Black to play (2 points)



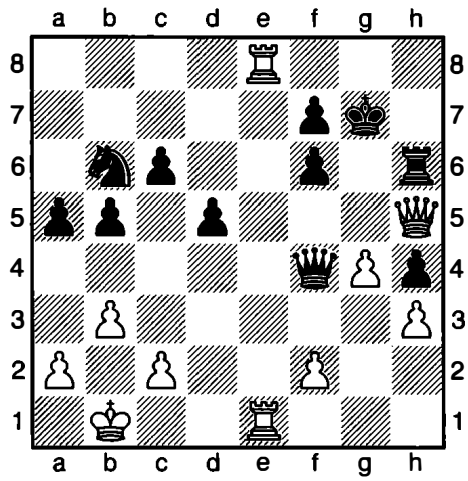
501) Black to play (2 points)



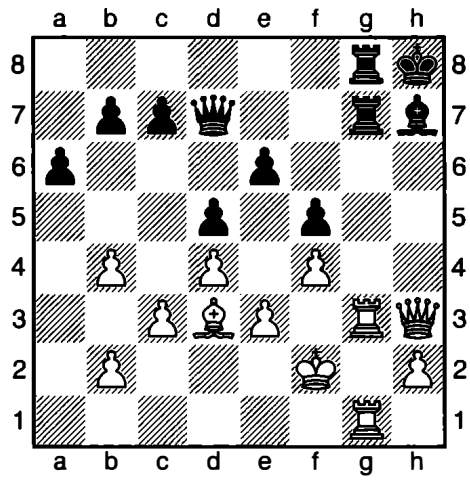
504) White to play (2 points)



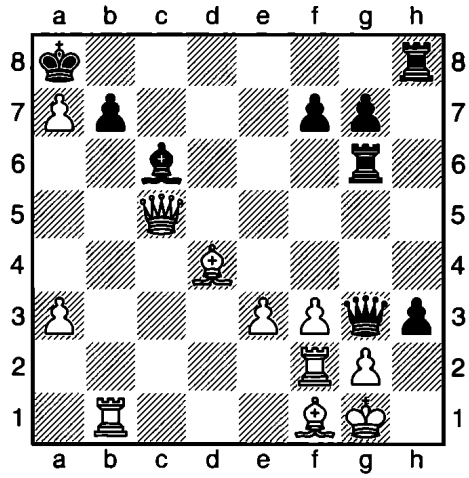
505) Black to play (2 points)



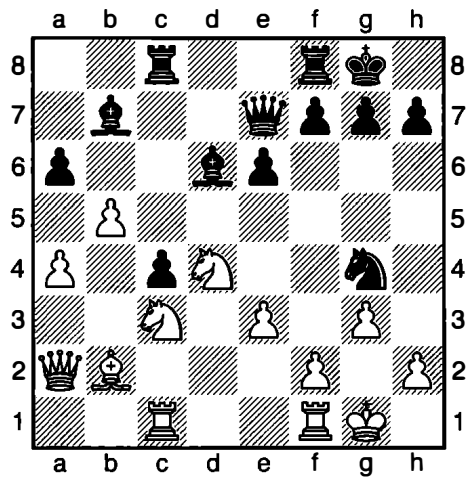
506) White to play (2 points)



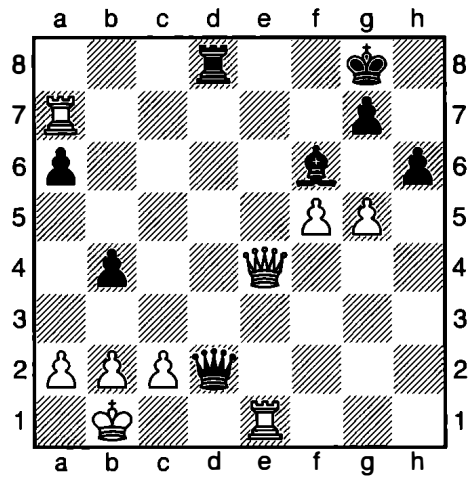
507) White to play (2 points)



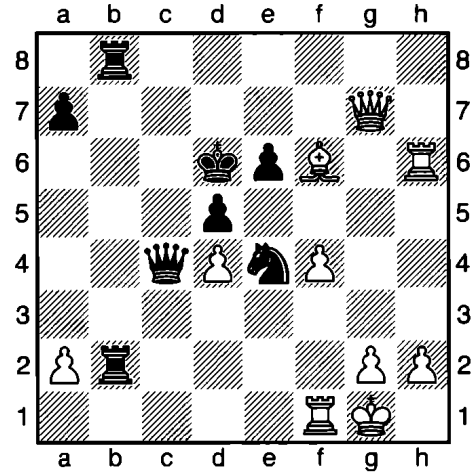
508) Black to play (2 points)



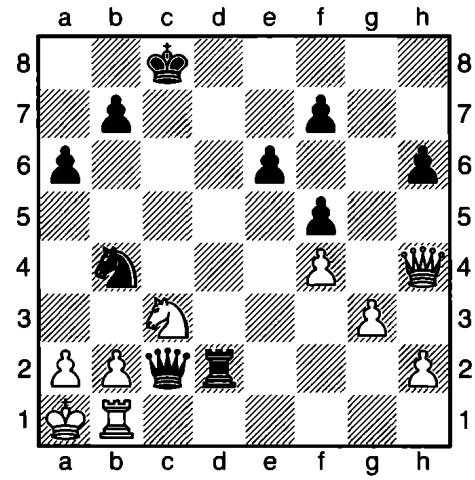
509) Black to play (2 points)



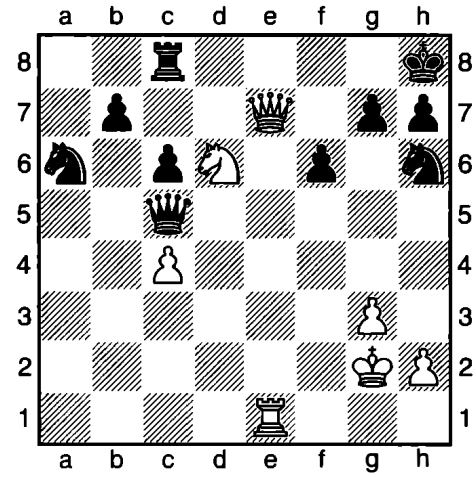
510) White to play (2 points)



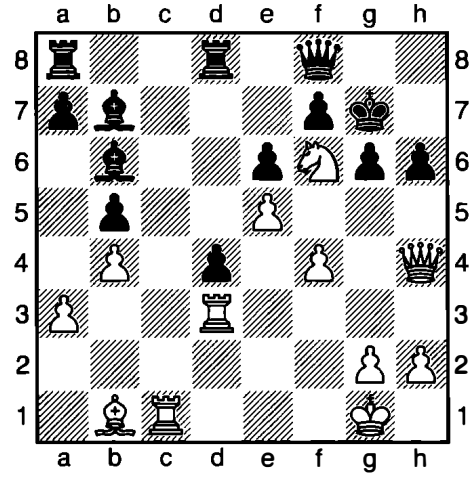
511) Black to play (2 points)



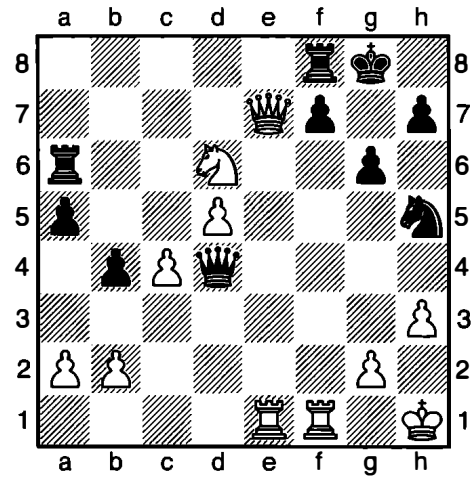
512) Black to play (2 points)



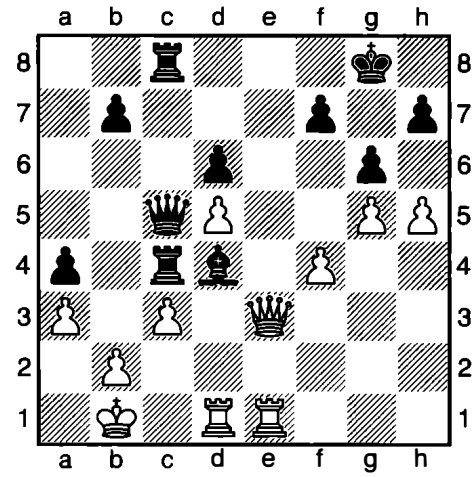
513) White to play (2 points)



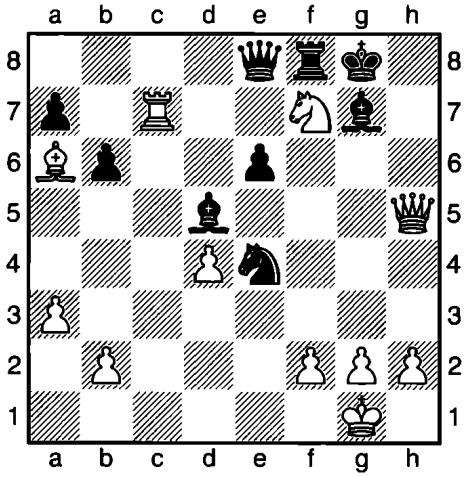
514) White to play (2 points)



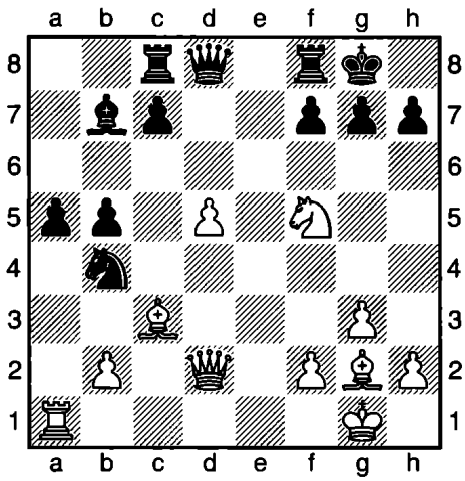
515) White to play (2 points)



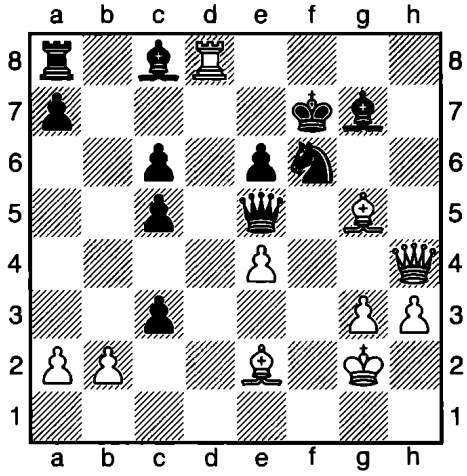
516) White to play (2 points)



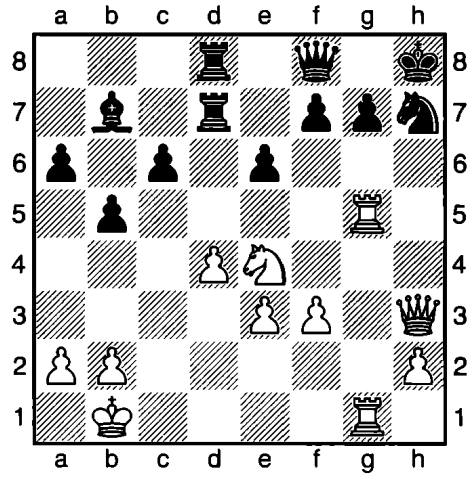
517) White to play (2 points)



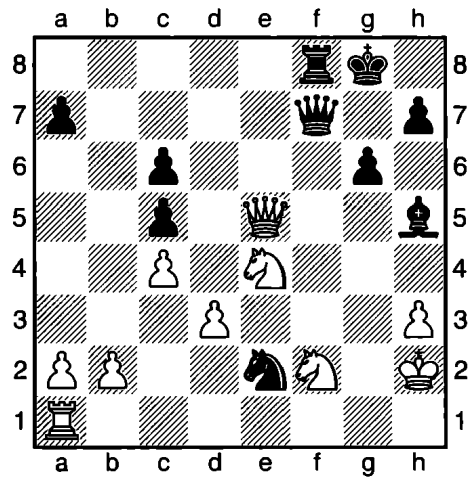
518) White to play (2 points)



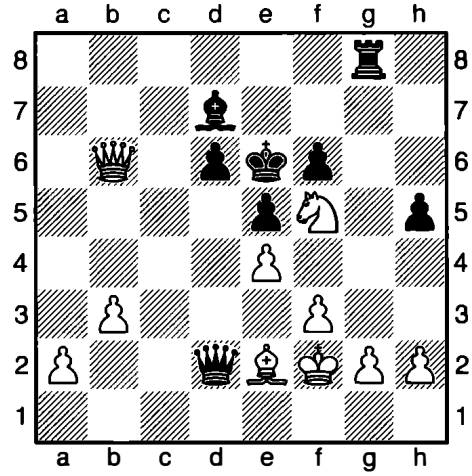
519) White to play (2 points)



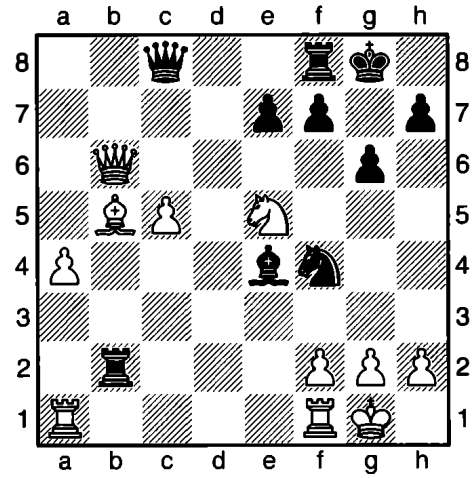
520) White to play (2 points)



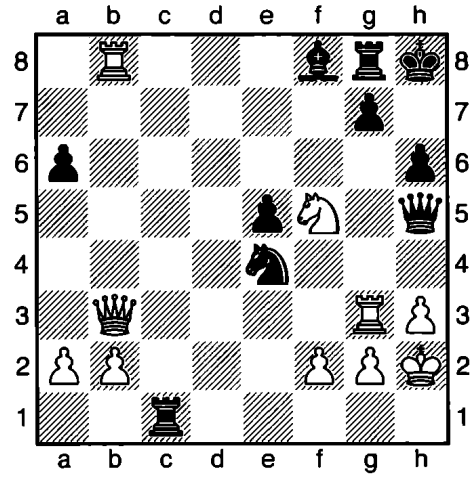
521) Black to play (2 points)



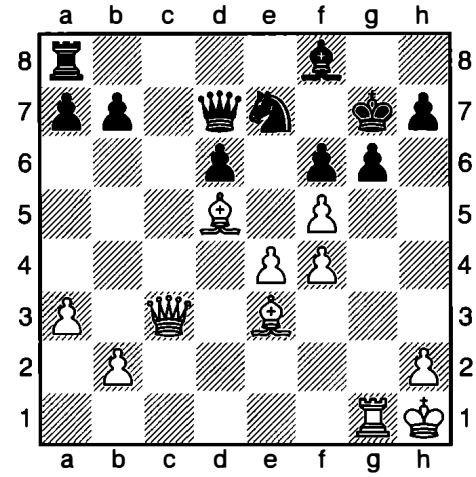
522) White to play (2 points)



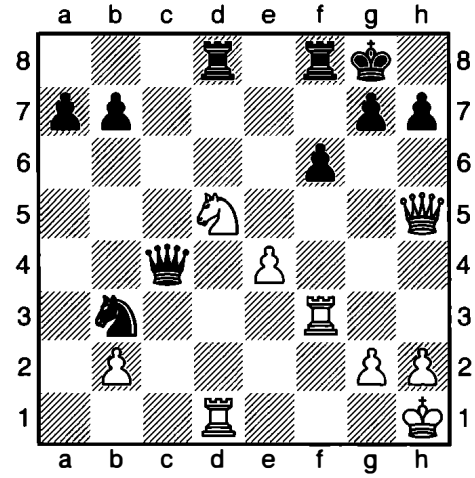
523) Black to play (2 points)



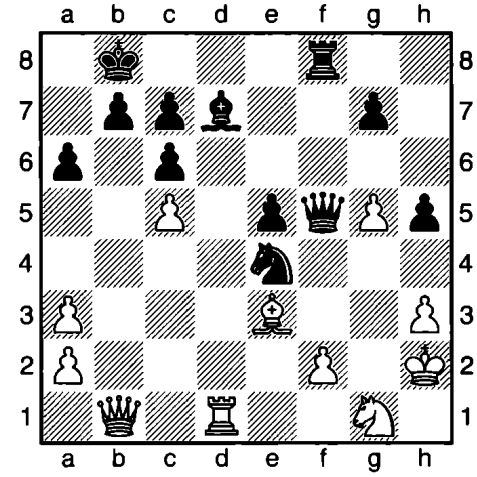
526) White to play (2 points)



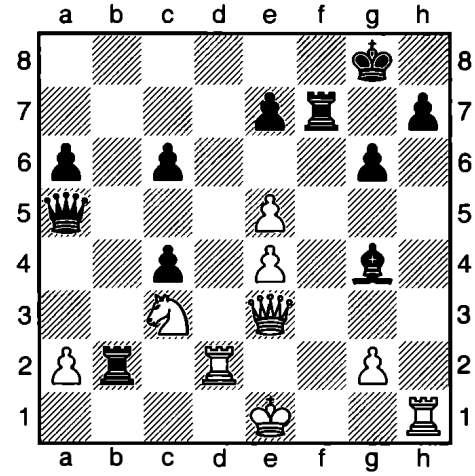
524) White to play (2 points)



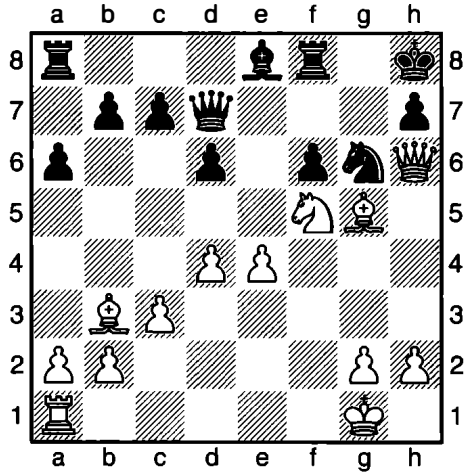
527) White to play (2 points)



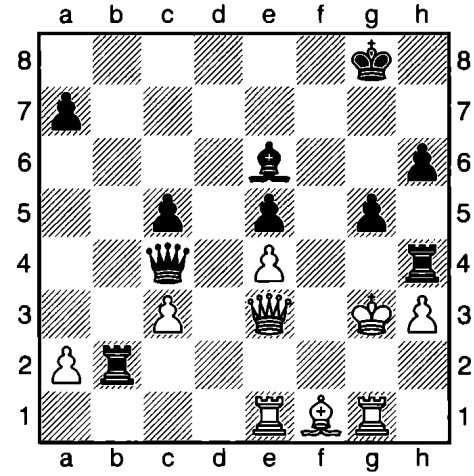
525) Black to play (2 points)



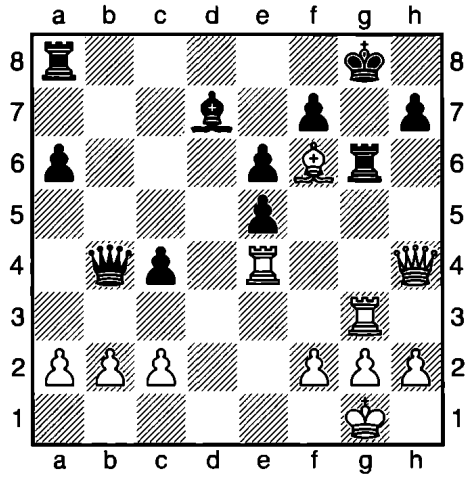
528) Black to play (2 points)



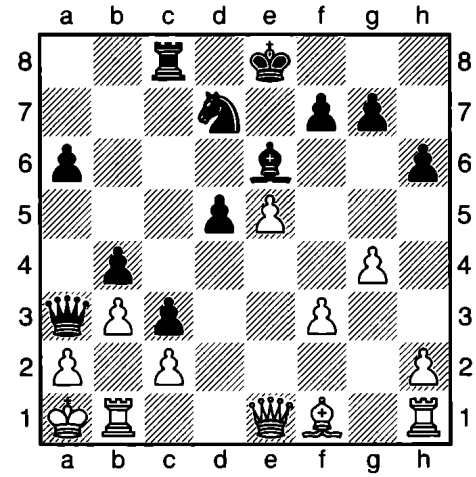
529) White to play (2 points)



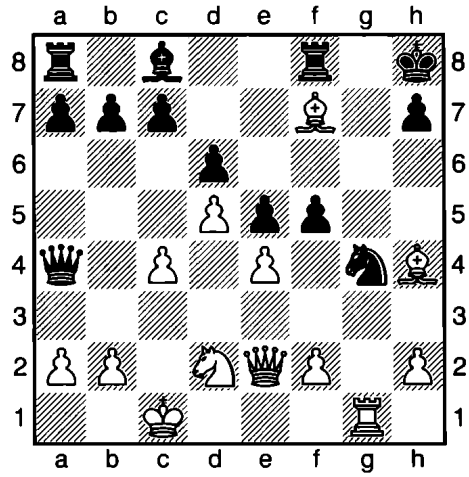
532) Black to play (2 points)



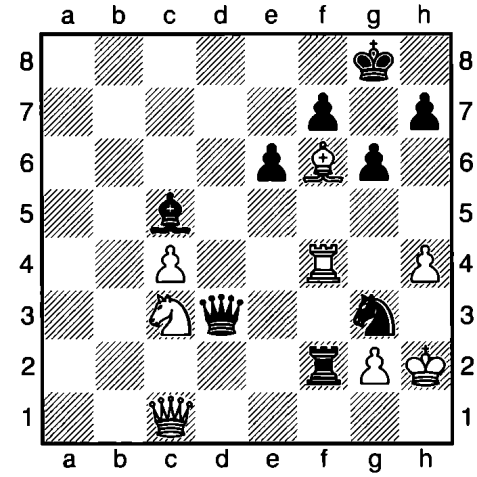
530) White to play (2 points)



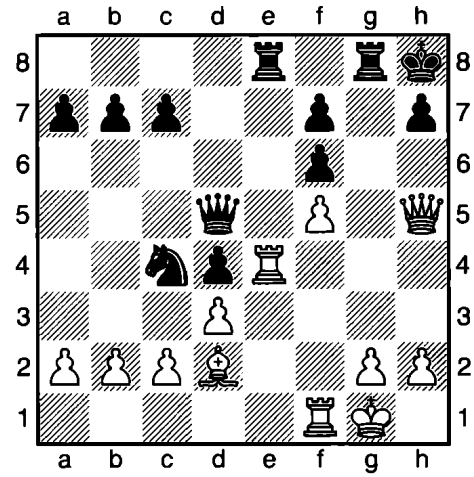
533) Black to play (3 points)



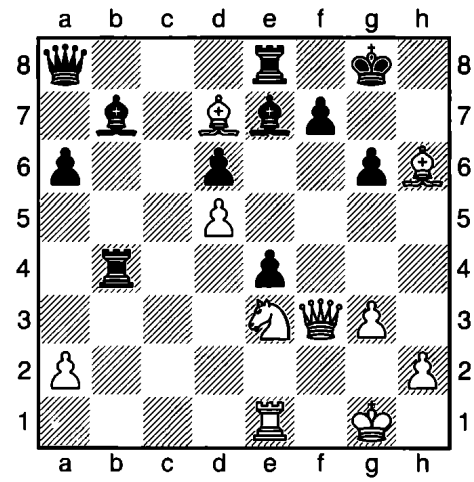
531) White to play (2 points)



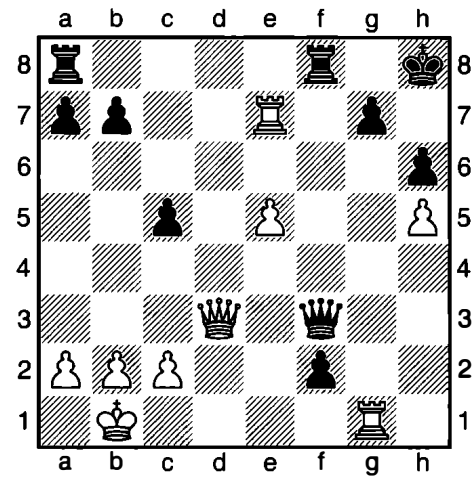
534) Black to play (3 points)



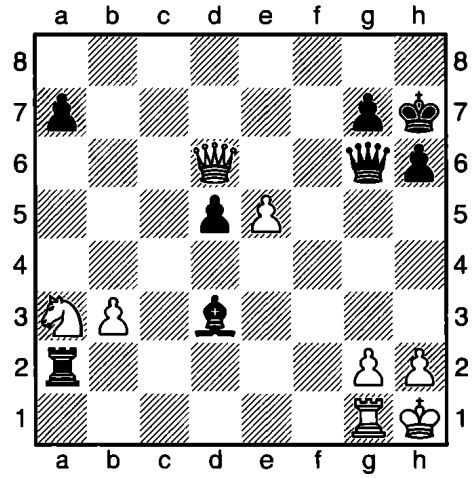
535) White to play (3 points)



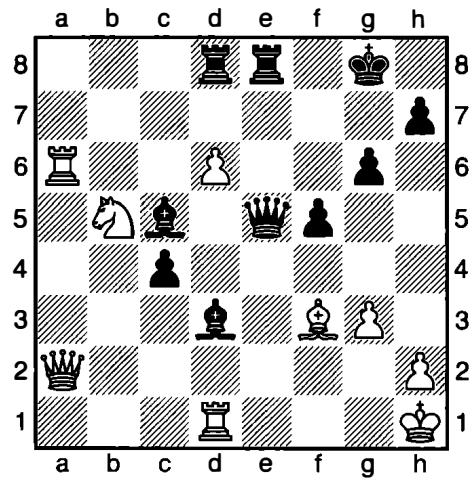
536) White to play (3 points)



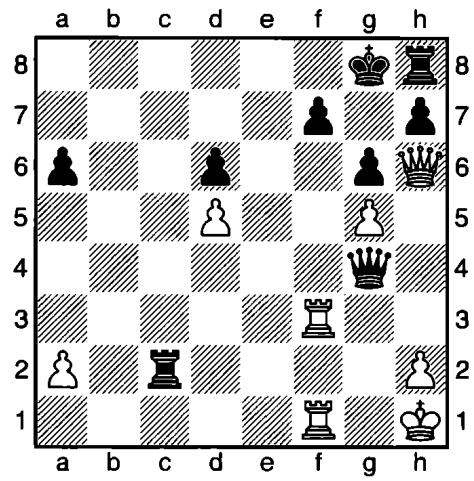
537) White to play (3 points)



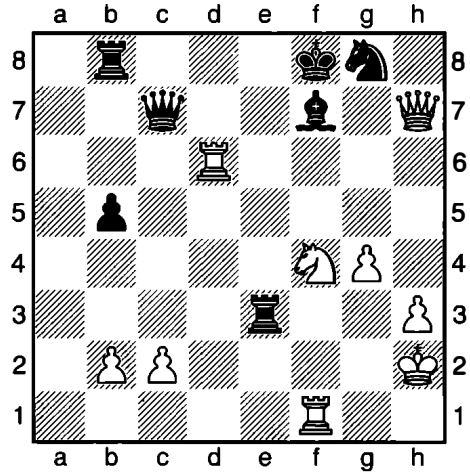
538) Black to play (3 points)



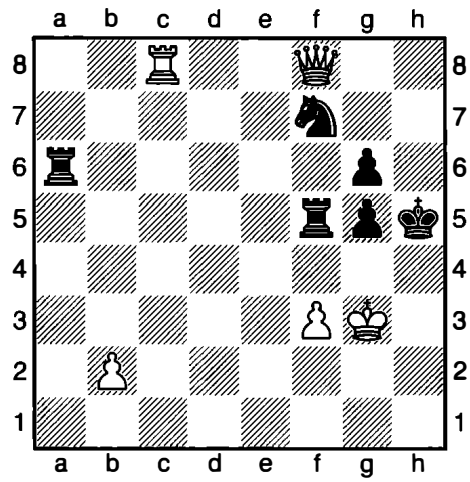
539) Black to play (3 points)



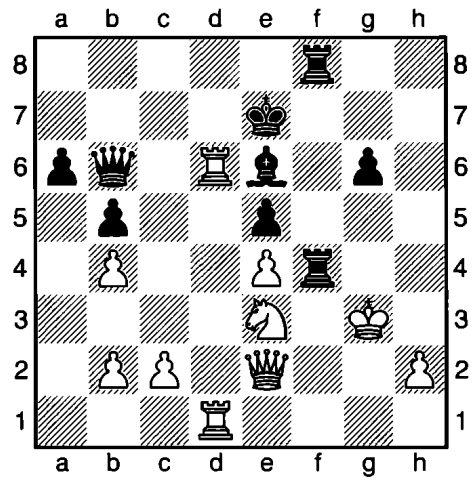
540) White to play (3 points)



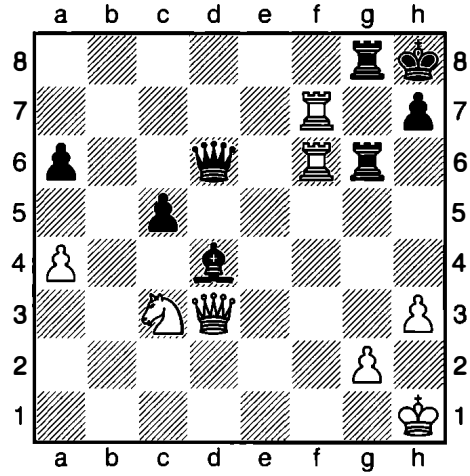
541) White to play (3 points)



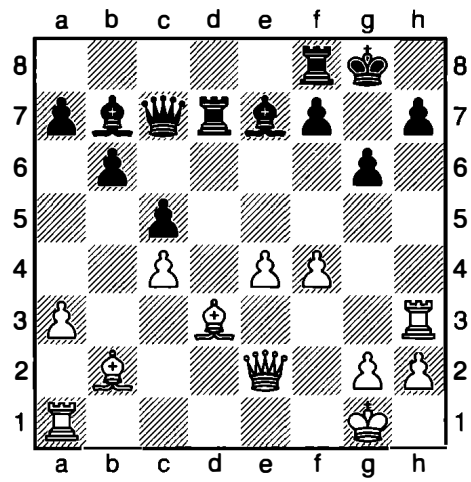
542) White to play (3 points)



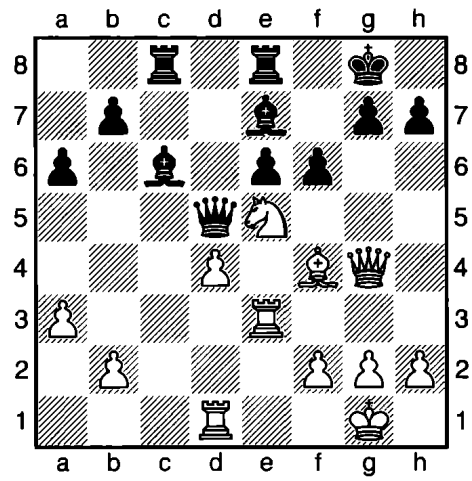
543) Black to play (3 points)



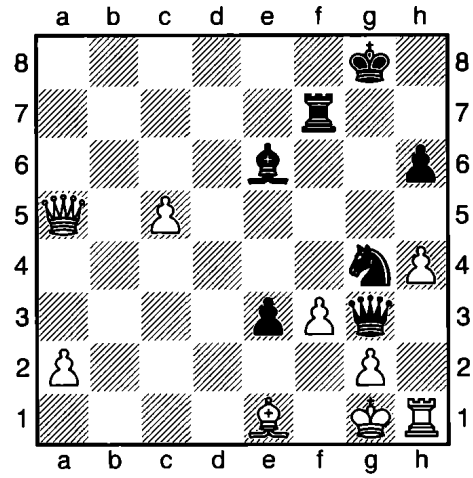
544) Black to play (3 points)



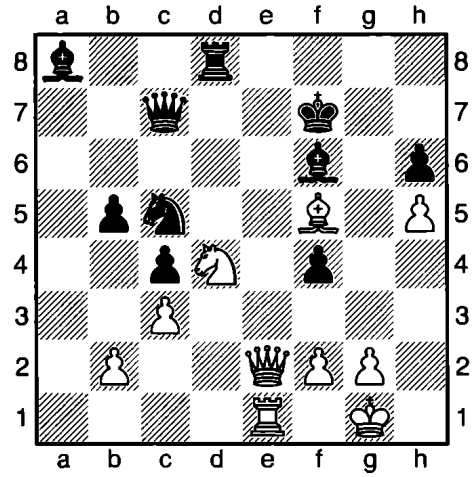
545) White to play (3 points)



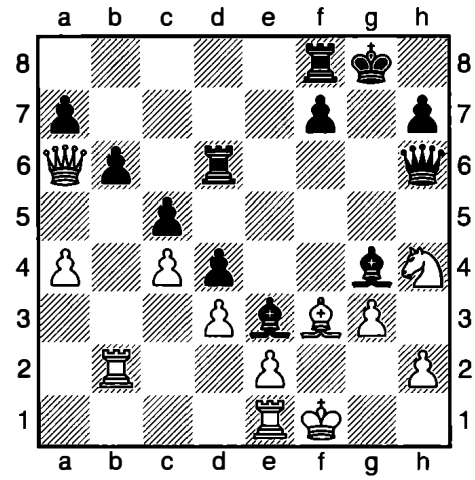
546) White to play (3 points)



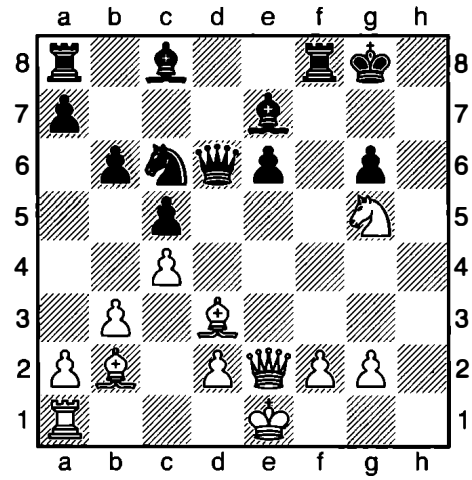
547) Black to play (3 points)



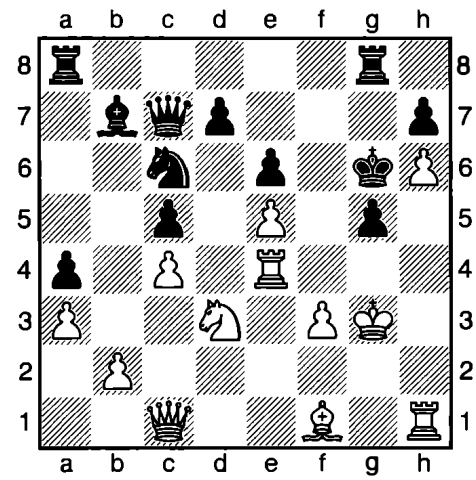
550) White to play (3 points)



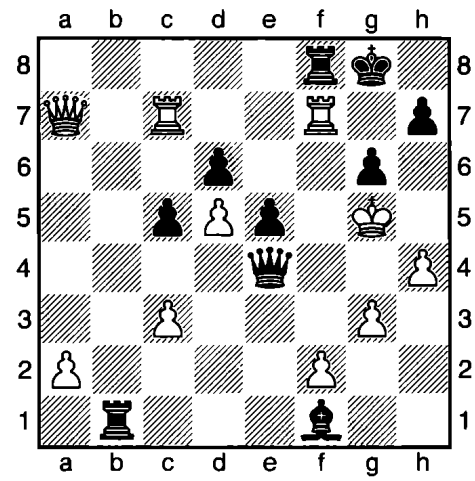
548) Black to play (3 points)



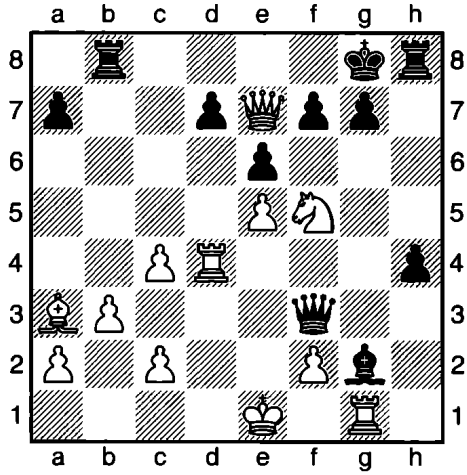
551) White to play (3 points)



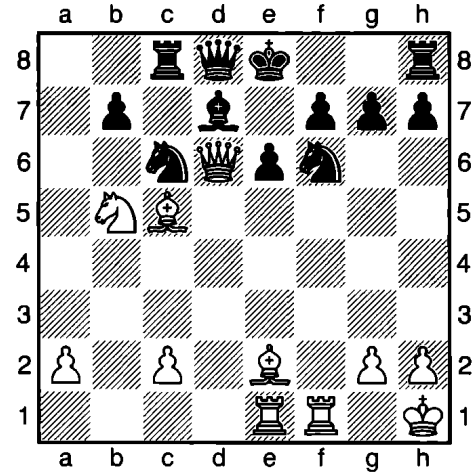
549) White to play (3 points)



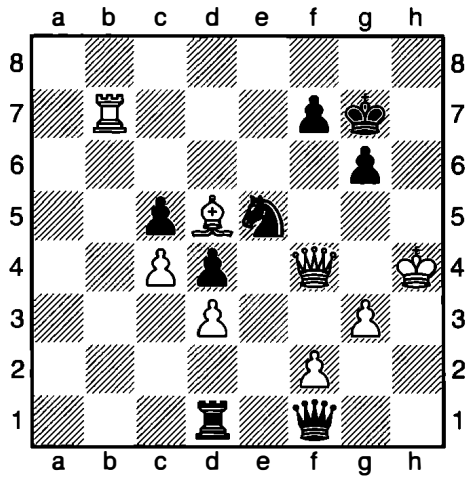
552) Black to play (3 points)



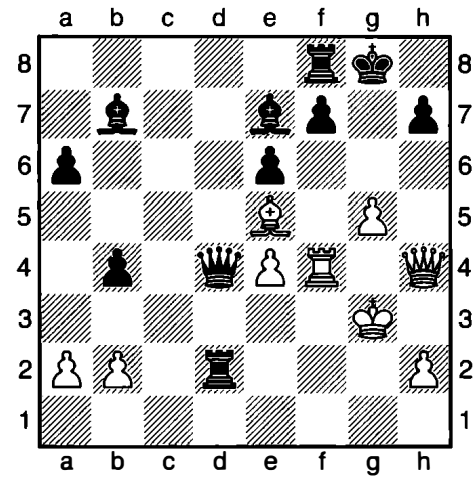
553) White to play (3 points)



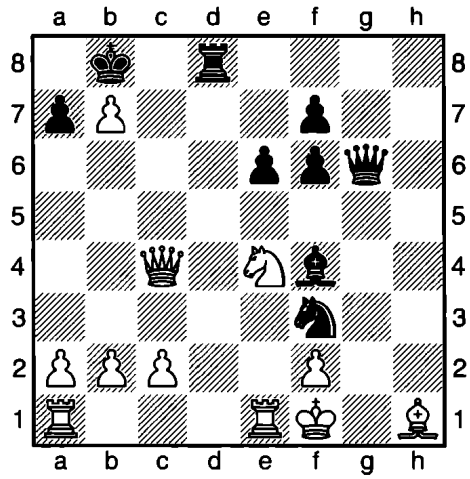
556) White to play (4 points)



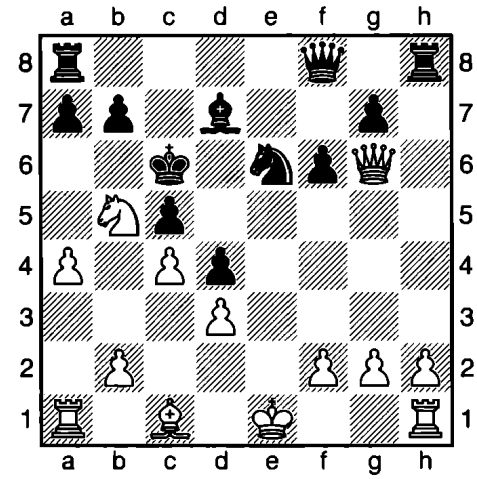
554) Black to play (3 points)



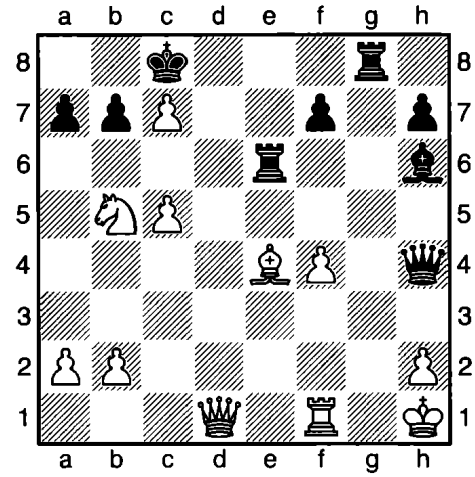
557) White to play (4 points)



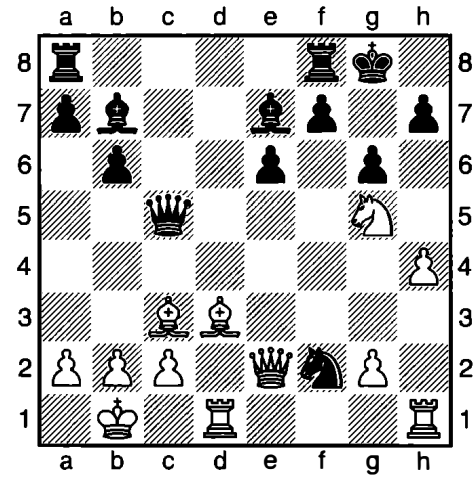
555) Black to play (3 points)



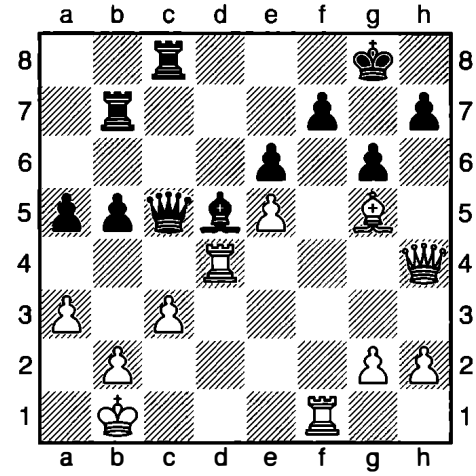
558) White to play (4 points)



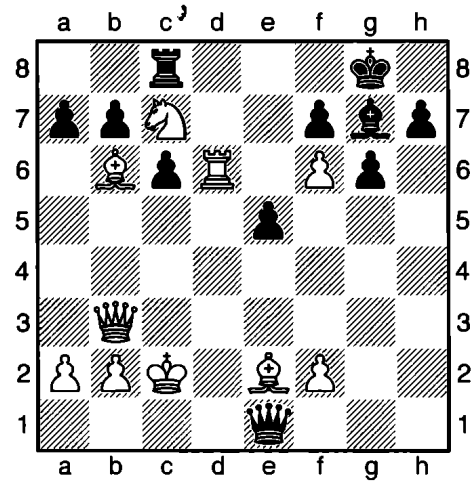
559) Black to play (4 points)



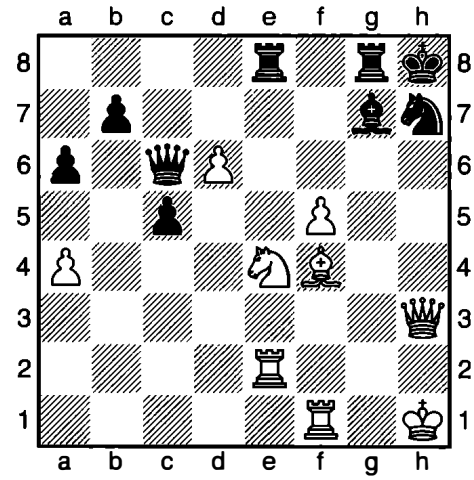
560) White to play (4 points)



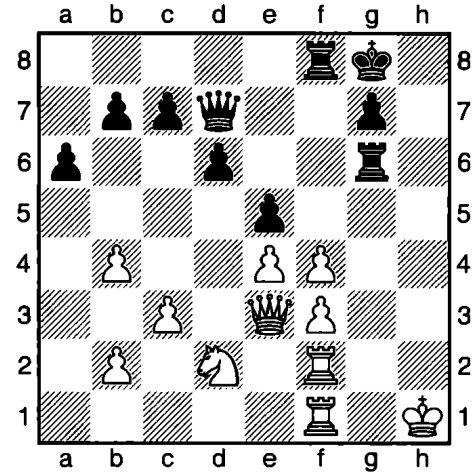
561) White to play (4 points)



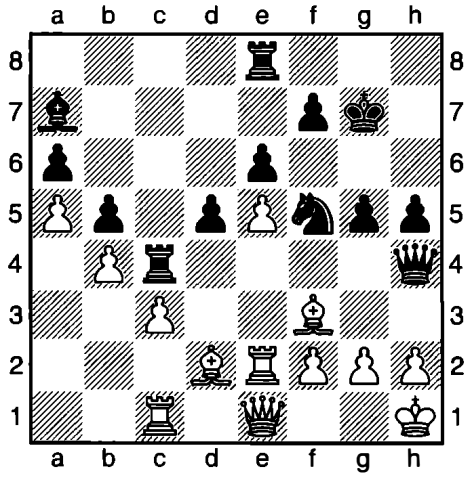
562) White to play (4 points)



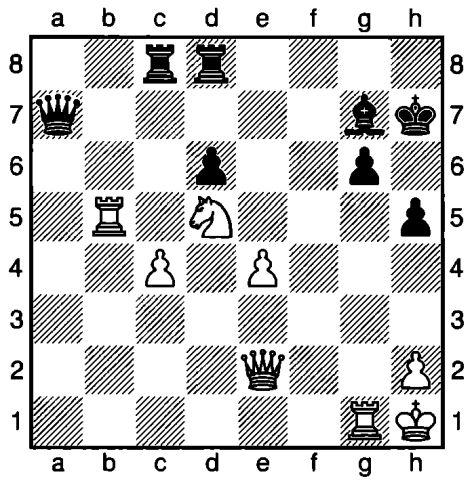
563) White to play (4 points)



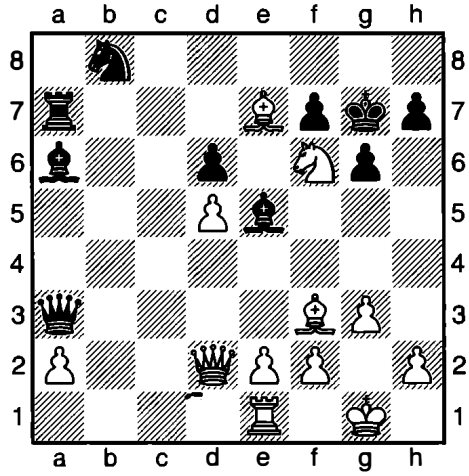
564) Black to play (4 points)



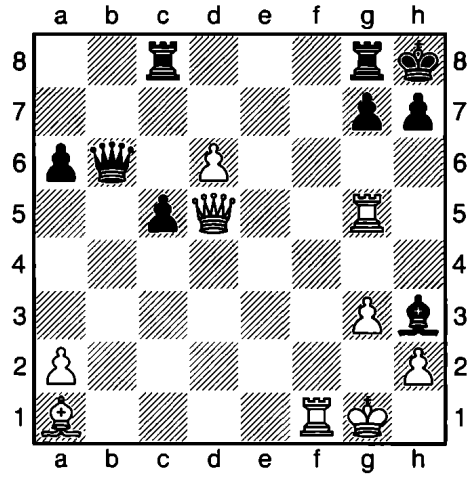
565) Black to play (4 points)



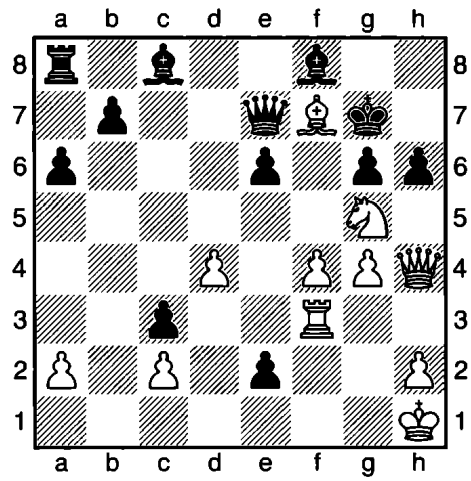
566) White to play (4 points)



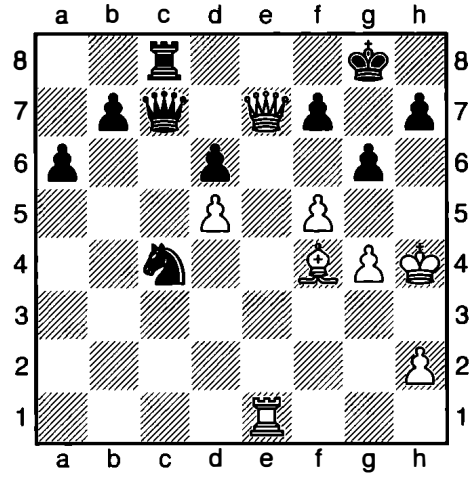
567) White to play (4 points)



568) White to play (4 points)



569) White to play (4 points)



570) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Queen Sacrifices

481) J. Temple – W. Orton
Stillwater 2009
1...♕xh2+! 0-1
2 ♔xh2 ♖h6#.

482) Mario Horvath – P. Michalik
Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 2 ♘g6#.

483) Chapygin – Shendrik
Nizhny Novgorod 2008
1 ♕g7+! 1-0
1...♗xg7 2 fxg7#.

484) D. Milin – M. Gagić
Belgrade 2008
1 ♕xc6+! 1-0
1...bxc6 2 ♖b8#.

485) Z. Corrales – Diaz Ordonez
Havana 2008
1 ♕g6+! 1-0
1...fxg6 2 fxg6#.

486) Tikholov – Kr. Georgiev
Plovdiv 2009
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♗xf8 2 ♖g8#.

487) Zinani – A. Bove
Pavia 2009
1...♕f1+! 0-1
2 ♔xf1 ♖xd1#.

488) M. Bach – H. Molvig
Politiken Cup, Elsinore 2009
1 ♕e5+! 1-0
1...♖xe5 2 fxe5#.

489) R. Dobias – Mi. Nemeth
European Clubs Cup, Ohrid 2009
1...♕xf2+! 0-1
2 ♔h1 is met by 2...♕g2# or 2...♗g2#, and 2 ♔xf2 by 2...♗d4#.

490) D. Le Goff – M. Cotonnec
French Junior Ch, Le Grand Bornand 2007
1 ♕xf8+! ♗xf8 2 ♖e8#

491) Van Hoolandt – I. Efimov
Monaco 2003
1...♕xe3+! 0-1
2 ♔xe3 ♖d3#.

492) Abaturov – Geiko
Korolev Ch 2002
1 ♕xg5+! 1-0
1...♔xg5 2 ♗e3#.

493) Szatmary – P. Dudas
Hungarian Team Ch 2000/1
1 ♕xe6+! 1-0
1...fxe6 2 ♗g6#.

494) M. Senff – Bischoff
Bundesliga 2004/5
1...♕xc1+! 0-1
Black mates by 2...♗xb2# whatever White plays.

495) H. Degenhardt – R. Berkemer
Schwäbisch Gmünd 2005
1 ♕xc6+! 1-0
1...bxc6 2 ♗a6#.
This mating pattern is often called *Boden's Mate.*

496) Bagyanszky – M. Bodrogi
Hungarian Team Ch 2000/1
1 ♕xh6! 1-0
1...♗xh6 (or else White mates on h7) 2 ♘f7#.

497) A. Moen – E. Berg
Oslo 2009
1...♕xg2+! 2 ♖xg2 ♖c1+ 0-1
Black mates in two more moves.

498) W. van Rijn – Noetzel
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1...♕c3+!! 2 ♔xc3 ♘e4#
A surprising and beautiful mate.

499) Buchal – B. Margolin
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1 ♕g8+ ♔h6 2 ♕h8+! 1-0
2...♘xh8 3 ♖xh8#.

500) N. Medvegy – Duong The Anh
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♕xd2!
Threatening mate on h2, so White must accept the sacrifice.
2 ♖xd2 ♖e1+ 3 ♔g2 ♖xh2#

501) Florentiades – Klerides
Cyprus Ch, Limassol 2008
1...♕b2+! 0-1
2 ♗xb2 cxb2+ 3 ♔b1 ♘d2#.

502) Tkachev – W. Watson
London (Lloyds Bank) 1993
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖d4 1-0
Black can only delay ♖h4# by giving up his knight and queen.

503) Maa. Post – Bugel
Utrecht 2009
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h8+ 3 ♔g3 ♘e2#

504) Zhu Chen – S. Castillo Gallego
Ubeda 1998
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h5+ 1-0
2...♔g6 3 ♗f7#.

505) E. Formanek – D. Oshana
Chicago 1970
1...♕xf2+! 2 ♔xf2 ♗c5+ 3 ♗e3 ♗xe3#

506) N. Coenen – J. Retera
Germany (team event) 2001/2
1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7 2 ♖1e7+ ♔g6 3 ♖g8#

507) Seb. Klinger – Al. Stutz
German Under-13 Ch, Friedrichroda 1997
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7
1...♖xh7 2 ♖xg8#.
2 ♖h3#

508) Le. Müller – A. Flitney
Canberra 1996
1...♕h2+! 2 ♔xh2 hxg2+ 0-1
3 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

509) G. Dubrović – I. Elez
Croatian Junior Team Ch, Sv Filip i Jakov 2009
1...♕h4! 0-1
There is no real defence to the threat of mate on h2; for example, 2 gxh4 ♗xh2#, 2 h3 ♕xh3 or 2 ♖fd1 ♕xh2+ 3 ♔f1 ♕xf2#.

510) Melia – T. Fomina
Stockholm (Women) 2008
1 ♕e8+! 1-0
1...♖xe8 2 ♖xe8+ ♔h7 3 g6#.

511) M. Roemhild – J. Grant
Bad Wiessee 2009
1...♕xf1+! 0-1
After 2 ♔xf1 Black mates by 2...♖f2+ followed by 3...♖b1#.

512) L. Loewe – Bogenschütze
Internet (playchess.com Under-18) 2009
1...♕xc3!
Threatening 2...♘c2#.
2 bxc3
2 a3 ♕xa3+! 3 bxa3 ♖a2#.
2...♖xa2#

513) Varchenko – Gorbenko
Odessa 2009
1 ♕e8+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♘g8 2 ♘f7# or 1...♖xe8 2 ♖xe8+ ♘g8 3 ♘f7#.

514) Arm. Müller – P. Haller
Baden Ch, Oberwinden 2007
1 ♕xh6+! 1-0
1...♔xh6 2 ♖h3+ ♔g7 3 ♖h7#.

515) Rabineau – J. Warkentin
French Team Ch 2004/5
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♖xf7+ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♖e8#.

516) Repkova – Bernasek
Mitropa Cup, Steinbrunn 2005
1 ♕e8+! 1-0
1...♖xe8 (1...♔g7 2 h6#) 2 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 3 h6#.

517) Bontempi – M. Astengo
Genoa 2005
1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♗xh8 2 ♘h6#.

518) F. Braga – B. Bruned
Collado Villalba 2004
1 ♕h6! gxh6
Black can only delay mate by giving up his queen.
2 ♘xh6#

519) Gerh. Richter – Kartmann
Germany (team event) 2002/3
1 ♕h5+!
1 ♗h5+? may be met by 1...♔e7, when there is no mate.
1-0
Both 1...♔e7 2 ♕e8# and 1...♘xh5 2 ♗xh5# leave Black checkmated.

520) Tibensky – Phanikanth
Olomouc 2002
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h5+ ♔g8 3 ♘f6#

521) Scacco – Sbarra
Genoa 2002
1...♕xf2+! 0-1
In view of 2 ♔h1 ♗f3# or 2 ♘xf2 ♖xf2+ 3 ♔h1 ♗f3#.

522) Tsomis – D. Kondopoulos
Athens 2001
1 ♕xd6+! ♕xd6
After 1...♔f7 2 ♕xd2 White picks up a whole queen and mates in short order.
2 ♗c4+ 1-0
2...♕d5 3 ♗xd5#.

523) Pasztor – Sa. Szekeres
Hungarian Team Ch 1999/00
1...♕h3! 0-1
Threatening mate on g2, and if 2 gxh3 then 2...♘xh3#.

524) Mi. Jaworski – J. Sobek
Karvina 2000
1 ♕xf6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔h6 2 ♕g5+ (or 2 ♕h4+) 2...♔g7 3 ♗d4# or 1...♔xf6 2 ♗d4#.

525) J. Leonardo – Van den Doel
Lisbon 2000
1...♕xf2+! 0-1
2 ♗xf2 (2 ♔h1 ♘g3#) 2...♖xf2+ 3 ♔h1 ♘g3#.

526) I. Mohacsi – Salanki
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♕xg8+! 1-0
1...♔xg8 2 ♖xg7+ (the rook cannot be taken since the bishop is pinned by White's other rook) 2...♔h8 3 ♖xf8#.

527) E. Dudas – Gvilava
World Under-18 Girls Ch, Kemer 2009
1 ♘e7+ ♔h8 2 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 3 ♖h3#
This mating pattern is often called *Anastasia's Mate.*

528) K. Wallach – Browne
Las Vegas 2002
1...♕xc3! 0-1
2 ♕xc3 (there's nothing better as Black has too many threats) 2...♖b1+ and mate in two more moves.

529) A. Valle – Korobkin
Dos Hermanas (Internet blitz) 2004
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♘xf8 2 ♗xf6+ ♕g7 3 ♗xg7#.

530) Palos – J. McLaughlin
Chicago 2002
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♖h6
2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.
3 ♖g7+ 1-0
3...♔h8 4 ♖xh6#.

531) Valens – E. Hummel
Groningen 2001/2

1 ♕xg4!

1 ♖xg4? is wrong as Black can reply 1...♖xf7.

1-0

It's mate after 1...♖xf7 2 ♕g8# or 1...fxg4 2 ♗f6#.

532) A. Wisniewski – Faibisovich
Swidnica 2000

1...♕xf1! 0-1

Whichever way White takes the queen, Black mates by 2...♖xh3#.

533) C. van Oosterom – Broekmeulen
Dutch Team Ch 2008/9

1...♖c5!

Threatening simply 2...♖a5 in addition to 2...♕xa2+ 3 ♔xa2 ♖a5#.

2 ♕c1

White can delay mate for a few moves by giving away pieces, but it would make no difference in the end.

2...♕xa2+ 3 ♔xa2 ♖a5+ 4 ♕a3 ♖xa3#

534) Vl. Fedoseev – I. Kosov
Peterhof 2008

1...♘f1+ 2 ♔h1

Other moves do not delay mate for long; for example, 2 ♔g1 ♕g3 3 ♖xf2 ♕xf2+ 4 ♔h1 ♕g1# or 2 ♕xf1 ♕xf1 3 ♖xf2 ♗d6+ 4 ♔h3 ♕xf2 5 ♘e4 ♕f5+ 6 g4 ♕f1#.

2...♕h3+! 3 gxh3 ♖h2#

535) Zabariansky – Sukharukova
Moscow 2008

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g7 3 ♗h6+ 1-0

3...♔h7 4 ♗f8#.

536) Fogarasi – Bunzmann
Budapest 1998

1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7 2 ♗e6+ 1-0

After 2...♔f6, the quickest finish is 3 ♘g4#, but 3 ♖f1+ also mates in a few moves.

537) McShane – Jon. Gustavsson
Kuppenheim (blitz) 2003

1 ♕h7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖gxg7+ ♔h8 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8 4 ♖eg7#

538) C. Csiszar – Naiditsch
European Clubs Cup, Ohrid 2009

1...♕xg2+ 0-1

2 ♖xg2 ♖a1+ 3 ♖g1 ♗e4#.

539) Kuzevanova – Sterliagova
Russian Women's Ch, Kolontaevo 2005

1...♕e1+! 2 ♖xe1

2 ♔g2 ♗f1+ 3 ♔h1 ♗h3+ 4 ♖xe1 ♖xe1#.

2...♖xe1+ 3 ♔g2 ♗f1+ 4 ♔h1 ♗h3#

540) T. Bigalke – H. Leisner
German Under-25 Ch, Willingen 2005

1 ♕g7+! 1-0

This sacrifice enables the rooks to enter the attack with gain of tempo: 1...♔xg7 2 ♖xf7+ ♔g8 3 ♖f8+ ♔g7 4 ♖1f7#.

541) Vik. Savchenko – Choisy
World Under-18 Girls Ch, Belfort 2005

1 ♘g6+ ♔e8 2 ♕xg8+! 1-0

White's queen sacrifice opens the f-file and mates after 2...♗xg8 3 ♖f8#.

542) J. Mladenović – G. Savić
Niš 2004

1 ♕xf7!

1 ♕h8+? is met by 1...♘h6.

1-0

1...g4 allows 2 ♕h7+ ♔g5 3 ♕h4#, while after 1...♖xf7 2 ♖h8+ it's mate next move.

543) E. Kowalska – E. Jakubiec
Polish Team Ch, Polanica Zdroj 2004

1...♕xe3+! 2 ♕xe3 ♖g4+ 0-1

3 ♔h3 ♖h8+ and Black mates next move.

544) Brontz – I. Schutz
Swedish Team Ch 1999/00

1...♕h2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖xg2+ 0-1

3 ♔h1 ♖g1+ 4 ♔h2 ♖8g2#.

545) Handke – A. Ramaswamy
Port Erin 2004

1 ♕h5! 1-0

The threat is 2 ♕xh7# and mate follows after 1...gxh5 2 ♖g3+ ♗g5 3 ♖xg5# or 1...♗h4 2 ♕xh7+ (2 ♕xh4 also wins, but more slowly) 2...♔xh7 3 ♖xh4+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8#.

546) Fandino Reyes– Fr. Fernandez
Los Inmortales 2004
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♖g3+ ♔f8 (2...♔h8 3 ♘f7#) 3 ♗h6#.

547) Gazić – T. Hagemann
Stuttgart Ch 2003
1...♕f2+! 0-1
2 ♗xf2 exf2+ 3 ♔f1 ♗c4#.

548) V. Pous – Cesbron
French Team Ch 2003
1...♕xh4! 2 gxh4
There's nothing better, as Black had several threats, including 2...♕h3+ 3 ♗g2 ♖f6# and 2...♗h3+ 3 ♗g2 ♖f6#.
2...♗h3+ 0-1
3 ♗g2 ♖f6#.

549) Inarkiev – E. Mirzoeva
Linares 2003
1 ♕xg5+! 1-0
1...♔xg5 2 ♖g4+ ♔f5 3 ♖h5+ ♖g5 4 ♖gxg5# (or 4 ♖hxg5#).

550) P. Kupper – Patuzzo
Swiss Team Ch 2003
1 ♗g6+!
Inverting the move-order by 1 ♕e8+ also wins, but doesn't force mate as quickly after 1...♔g7. Give yourself one point if you chose this.
1...♔g8
1...♔g7 2 ♘f5+ followed by 3 ♕e8+ also mates, while 1...♔f8 is met by 2 ♕e8+!, as in the game.
2 ♕e8+! 1-0
2...♖xe8 3 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 4 ♘f5#.

551) Fogarasi – N. Medvegy
Budapest 2003
1 ♕h5! ♖f6
1...gxh5 2 ♗h7#.
2 ♕h7+ 1-0
2...♔f8 3 ♕h8#.

552) W. Schwaninger – Vitouch
Austrian Team Ch 2000/1
1...♕f5+! 0-1
White is mated after 2 ♔h6 ♕h5# or 2 ♖xf5 ♖xf5+ 3 ♔h6 ♖h5#.

553) Breder – Moroz
Pardubice 2000
1 ♕f8+! 1-0
1...♖xf8 (1...♔h7 2 ♕xg7#) 2 ♘e7+ ♔h7 3 ♖xh4+ ♕h5 4 ♖xh5#.

554) Krak – Vavrak
Presov 2000
1...♕h1+! 2 ♗xh1
2 ♔g5 is met by 2...♕h5# (or 2...♕h6#).
2...♖xh1+ 0-1
3 ♔g5 ♖h5#.

555) A. Paal – Z. Eberth
Heves 2001
1...♘h2+ 2 ♔e2 ♕xe4+! 3 ♕xe4
3 ♗xe4 is also met by 3...♖d2#.
3...♖d2#

556) Joh. Dorst – E. Rüger
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1 ♕f8+!
Clearing d6 for the knight and forcing Black to block f8 with his rook.
1...♖xf8 2 ♘d6+ ♔e7 3 ♘f5++ 1-0
3...♔e8 4 ♘xg7#.

557) Doggers – Henrichs
Hoogeveen 2005
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g6
2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.
3 ♖h6+ 1-0
3...♔xg5 4 ♗f4# is an attractive mate.

558) K. Nieminen – Jy. Salonen
Finnish Team Ch 2002
1 ♕e4+ ♔b6 2 a5+ ♔a6 3 ♕xe6+! ♗xe6
3...b6 4 axb6+ ♔b7 5 ♕xd7+ followed by 6 ♕c7#.
4 ♘c7#

559) D. Howell – J. Turner
Kidlington 2001
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♗xf4+ 3 ♖xf4
Other moves are also met by 3...♖h6+.

3...♖h6+ 4 ♕h5 ♖xh5+ 0-1

It's mate next move.

560) J.D. Sousa – Af. Rodrigues

Portuguese Team Ch 1997

1 ♕h5!

It's a standard pattern, but in this case there is an additional finesse as Black can take the knight.

1...♘xd3

If 1...gxh5 then 2 ♗xh7#, while the key line is 1...♗xg5 2 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 3 hxg5+ ♘xh1 4 ♖xh1+ ♔g8 5 ♖h8#.

2 ♕xh7#

561) Yakovenko – Pataki

European Under-18 Ch, Kallithea 2001

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g8

2...♔g7 3 ♗f6+ followed by ♖h8#.

3 ♗f6 ♗e4+ 4 ♔a1 1-0

Black can delay but not prevent mate by ♖h8#.

562) Neffe – R. Altenburger

Biel (open) 1993

1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7 2 ♗c4+ ♔f8 3 ♖d8+!

This second sacrifice is the only way to mate quickly.

3...♖xd8 4 ♗c5+ 1-0

4...♖d6 5 ♗xd6#.

563) Parker – Quillan

British League (4NCL) 1996/7

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h2+ ♗h6 3 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 4 ♖g1+ ♔f8

4...♔f7 is met the same way.

5 ♖f6#

564) Neiksans – Stefansson

Liepaja 2004

1...♕h3+ 2 ♖h2 ♕xh2+! 3 ♔xh2 ♔f7! 0-1

White has no good reply to the threat of 4...♖h8#.

565) Reshevsky – B. Ivanović

Skopje 1976

1...♕xh2+!! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 3 ♔g1 ♘g3 0-1

A tricky move to see, but instantly decisive as 4...♖h1# cannot be prevented.

566) Bologan – Van Haastert

European Clubs Cup, Saint Vincent 2005

1 ♕xh5+! gxh5

If 1...♔g8, then 2 ♕xg6 gives White a decisive attack that will lead to a rapid mate; for example, 2...♖c5 3 ♘f6+ ♔f8 4 ♖f1! ♖xb5 5 cxb5 ♕d4 6 ♘h7++ ♔g8 7 ♘g5 and Black is defenceless.

2 ♘f6+! ♗xf6

The alternatives 2...♔h8 3 ♖xh5+ ♗h6 4 ♖xh6+ ♕h7 5 ♖xh7# and 2...♔h6 3 ♖xh5# also lead to mate.

3 ♖xh5#

567) Rakitskaya – A. Eliseev

St Petersburg 2004

1 ♕h6+! ♔xh6 2 ♗f8+ ♔g5 3 ♘xh7+

3 ♘e4+ also mates, but more slowly.

3...♔f5 4 e4#

568) Kosten – Vera Pons

Castelldefels 2004

1 ♕xg8+! 1-0

After 1...♔xg8 2 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 White mates in two by moving his rook along the g-file, while 1...♖xg8 is met by 2 ♗xg7+ ♖xg7 3 ♖f8+ and mate next move.

569) Zermiche – K. Stokke

Oslo (Junior) 2003

1 ♕xh6+! ♔f6

The main line runs 1...♔xh6 2 ♖h3+ ♔g7 3 ♖h7+ ♔f6 4 ♘e4#.

2 ♕xg6#

570) Escuer Sanchez – Da. Ananos Palacios

Aragon Team Ch 2007

1 ♕e8+!!

Although 1 ♕xc7 isn't an absolutely forced mate, it also wins since if Black recaptures then White has the same mate as in the game. Give yourself three points if you chose this, but only if you saw the continuation 1...♖xc7 2 ♖e8+ ♔g7 3 ♗h6+!.

1...♖xe8 2 ♖xe8+ ♔g7 3 ♗h6+! 1-0

A surprise second sacrifice. It's mate after 3...♔f6 4 ♗g5+ ♔g7 5 f6# or 3...♔xh6 4 g5+ ♔g7 5 f6#.

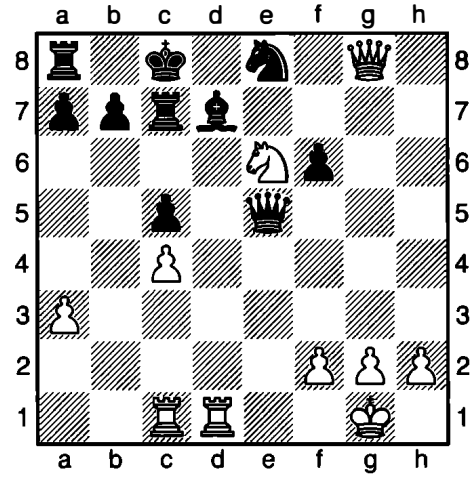
Score-Chart for Queen Sacrifices

Position number	Points	Score
481	1	
482	1	
483	1	
484	1	
485	1	
486	1	
487	1	
488	1	
489	1	
490	1	
491	1	
492	1	
493	1	
494	1	
495	1	
496	1	
497	2	
498	2	
499	2	
500	2	
501	2	
502	2	
503	2	
504	2	
505	2	
506	2	
507	2	
508	2	
509	2	
510	2	
511	2	
512	2	
513	2	
514	2	
515	2	
516	2	
517	2	
518	2	
519	2	
520	2	
521	2	
522	2	
523	2	
524	2	
525	2	
526	2	
527	2	
528	2	
529	2	
530	2	
531	2	
532	2	
533	3	
534	3	
535	3	
536	3	
537	3	

Position number	Points	Score
538	3	
539	3	
540	3	
541	3	
542	3	
543	3	
544	3	
545	3	
546	3	
547	3	
548	3	
549	3	
550	3	
551	3	
552	3	
553	3	
554	3	
555	3	
556	4	
557	4	
558	4	
559	4	
560	4	
561	4	
562	4	
563	4	
564	4	
565	4	
566	4	
567	4	
568	4	
569	4	
570	5	
Total	**219**	

11 Mate by Line-Opening

Many mates depend on line-opening. This might sound a little obscure and technical, but it's really a simple concept. Here's an example to help explain how line-opening works.

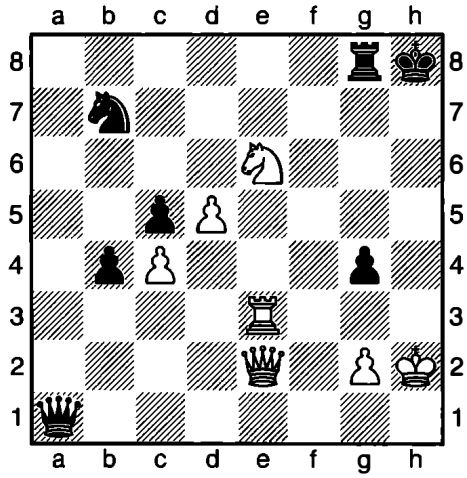


R. Sebesta – Bukovsky
Slovakian Team Ch 2006/7

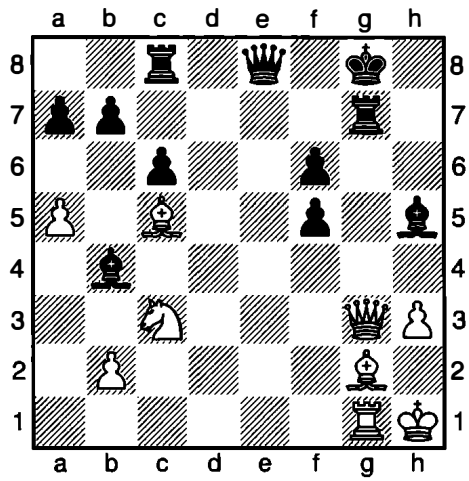
White would like to mate by ♖d8#, the only problem being that Black's bishop is in the way. In order to mate, White has to open the line d1-d8 so as to clear the rook's path to the eighth rank. He therefore played **1 ♕xe8+!** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**) since after the forced reply 1...♗xe8 White has achieved his objective and mates by 2 ♖d8#.

In most cases of line-opening, it is an enemy piece which stands in the way and has to be removed from the line, but occasionally a friendly piece is causing an obstruction and must be sacrificed in order to clear the line.

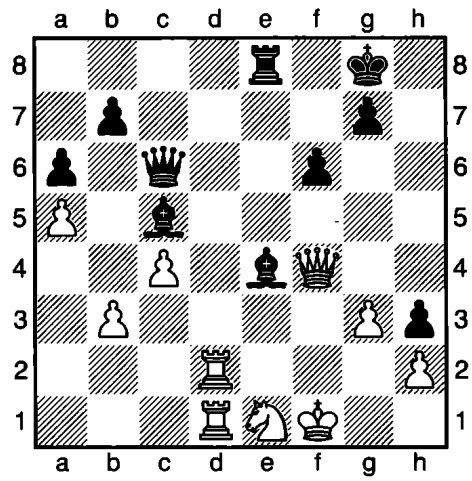
Working through the positions in this chapter will reveal how line-opening can be made to work for you and help you to mate unsuspecting opponents.



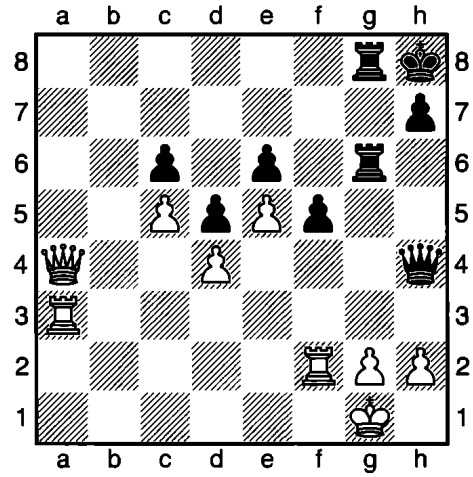
571) White to play (1 point)



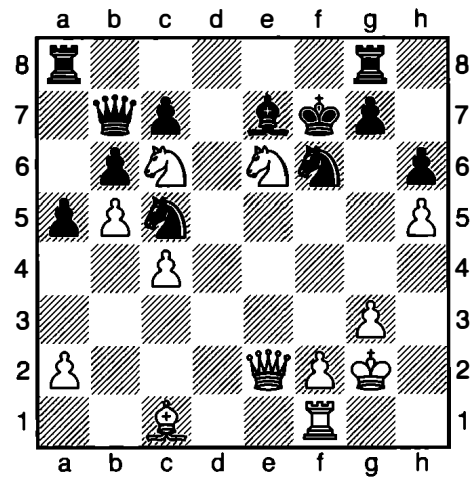
572) White to play (1 point)



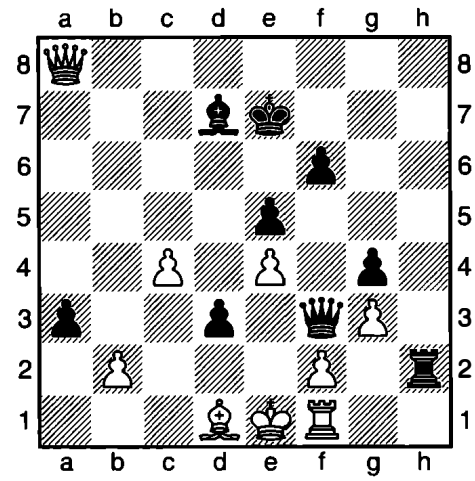
573) Black to play (1 point)



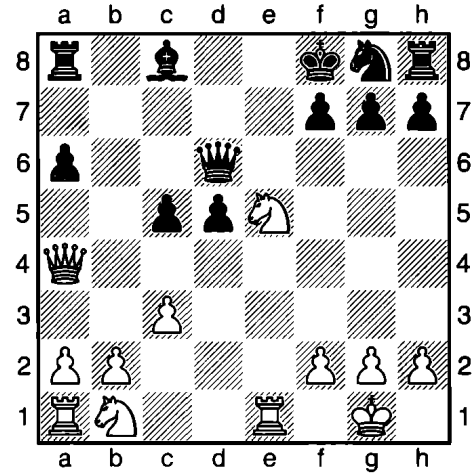
574) Black to play (1 point)



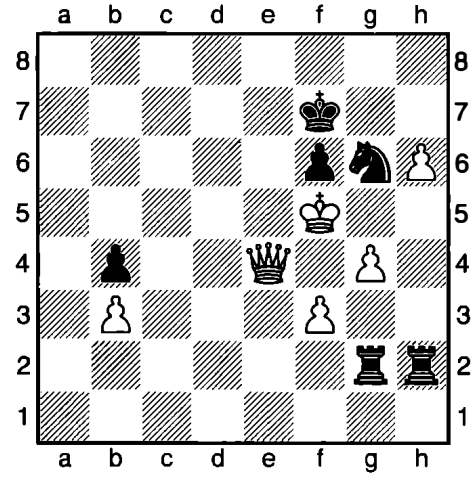
575) White to play (1 point)



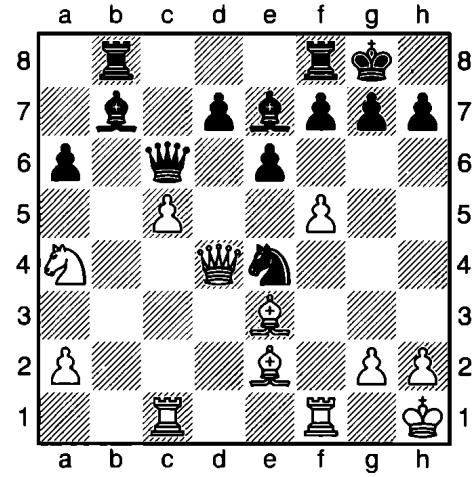
576) Black to play (1 point)



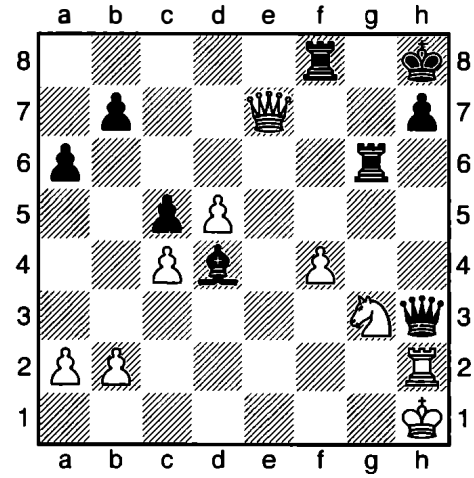
577) White to play (1 point)



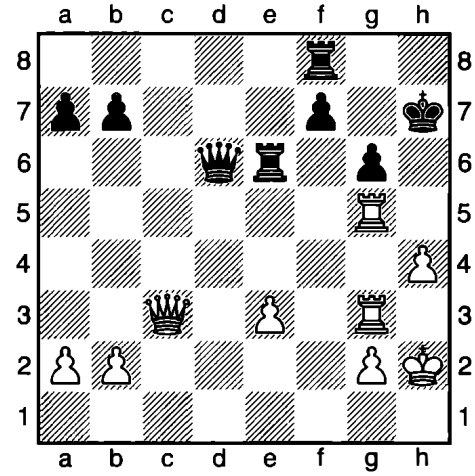
580) Black to play (1 point)



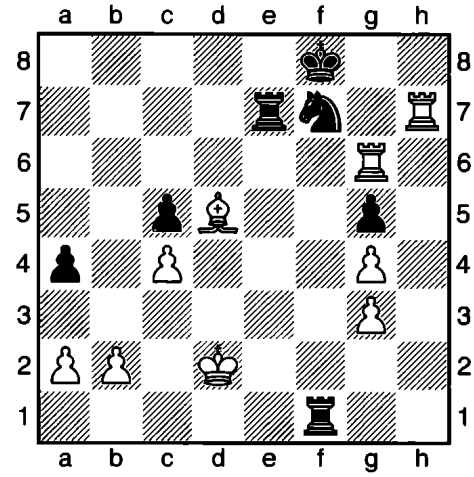
578) Black to play (1 point)



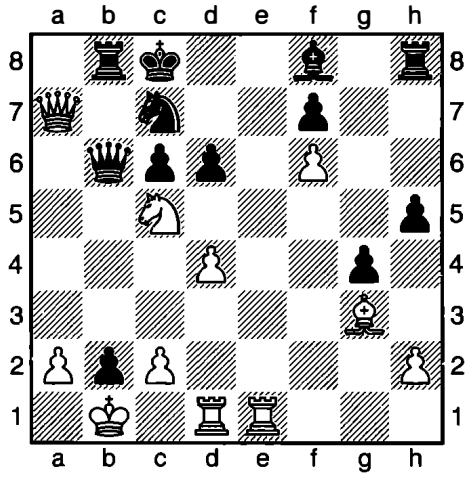
581) Black to play (1 point)



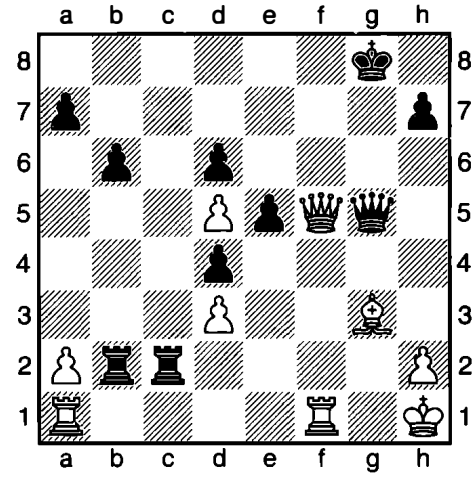
579) White to play (1 point)



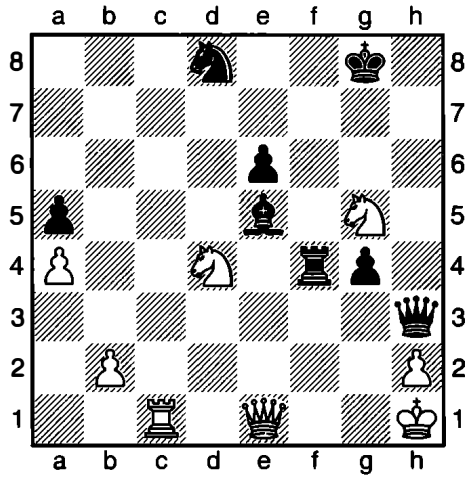
582) White to play (1 point)



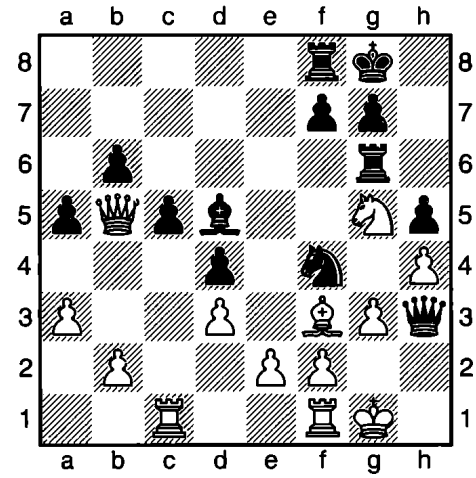
583) White to play (1 point)



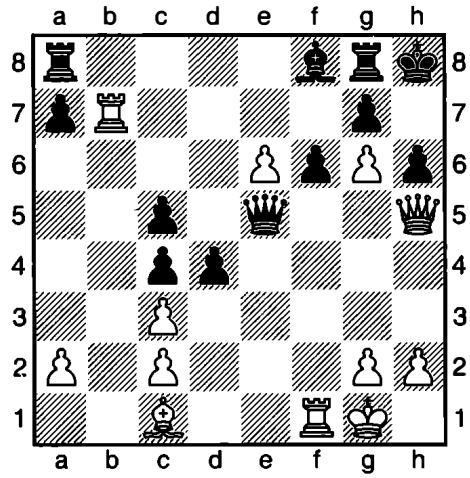
586) Black to play (1 point)



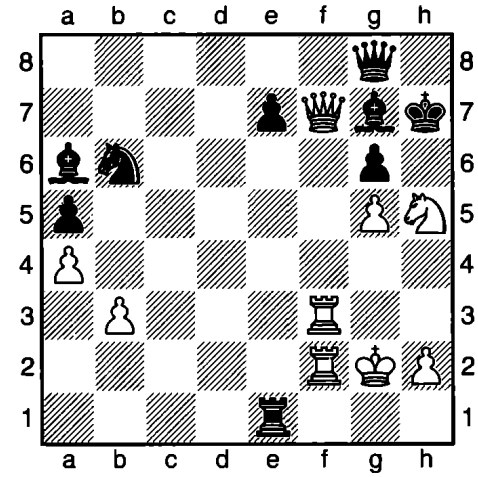
584) Black to play (1 point)



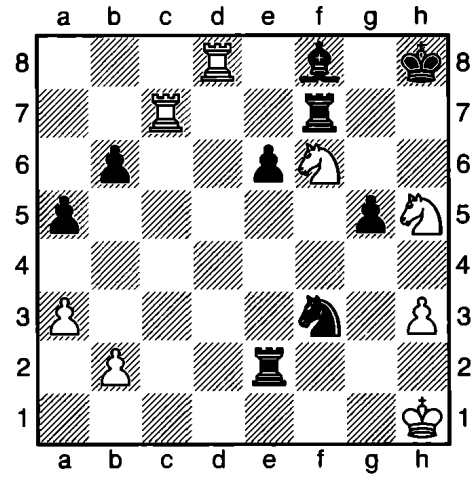
587) Black to play (1 point)



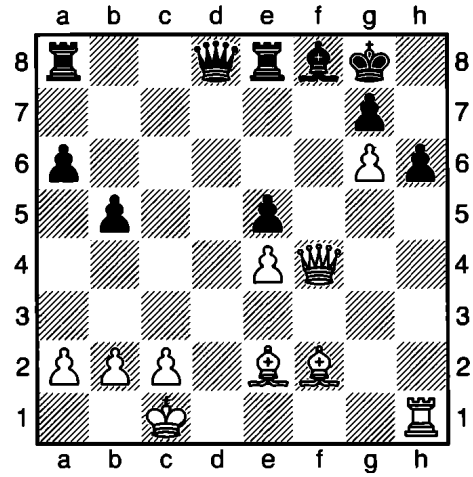
585) White to play (1 point)



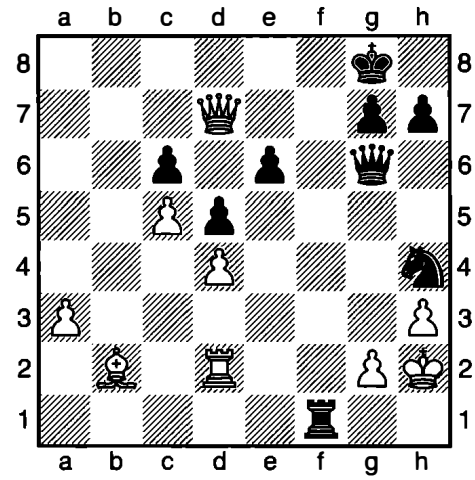
588) White to play (1 point)



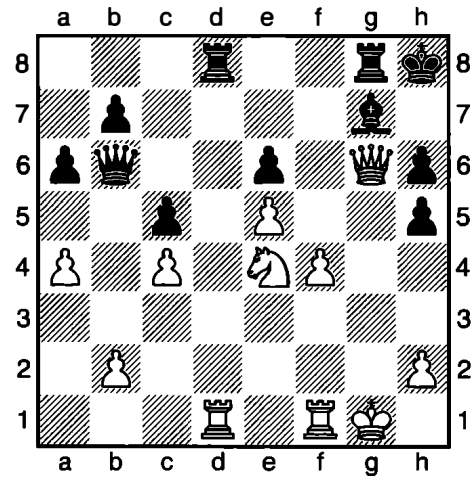
589) White to play (1 point)



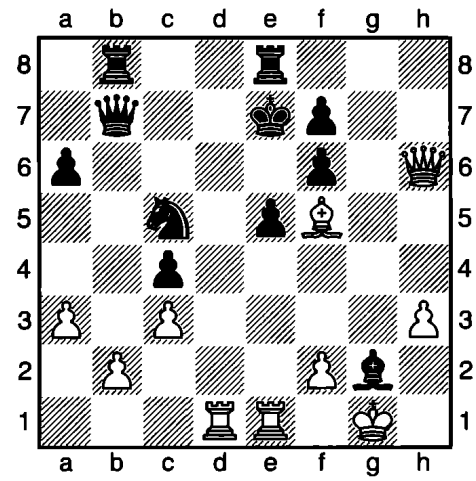
592) White to play (2 points)



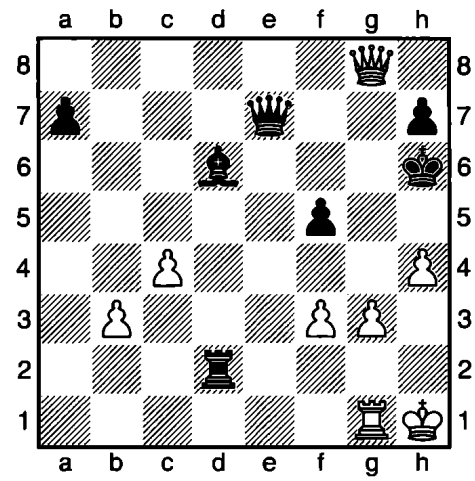
590) Black to play (2 points)



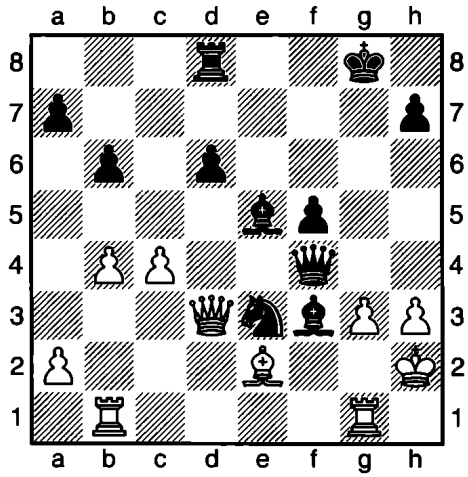
593) White to play (2 points)



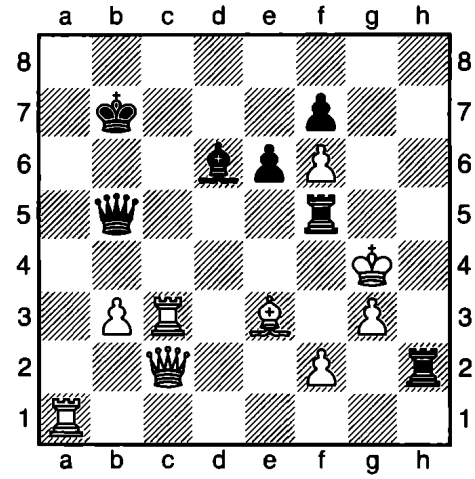
591) White to play (2 points)



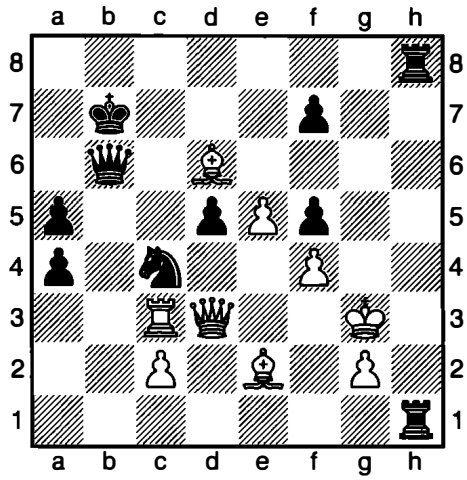
594) Black to play (2 points)



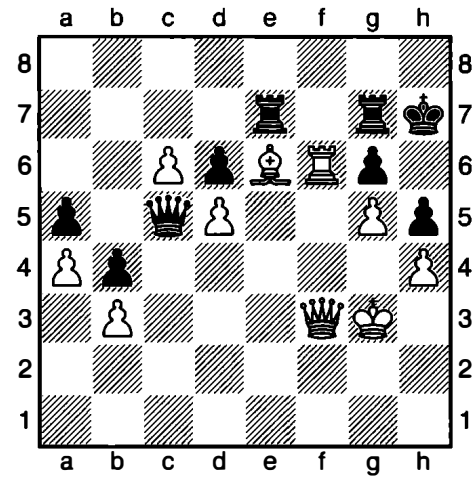
595) Black to play (2 points)



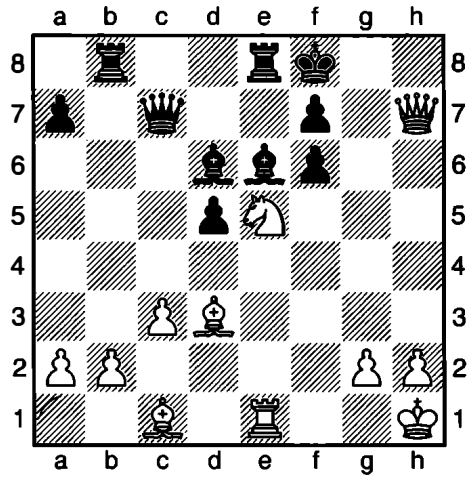
598) Black to play (2 points)



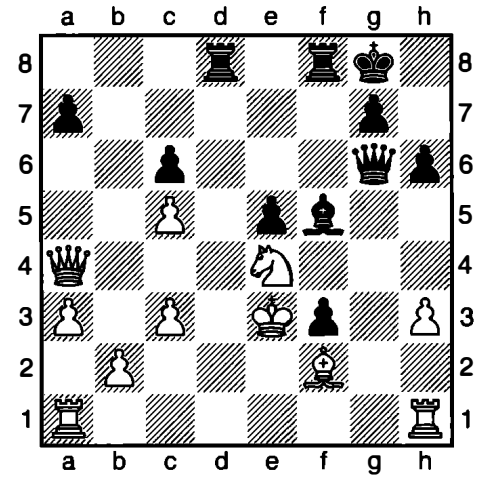
596) Black to play (2 points)



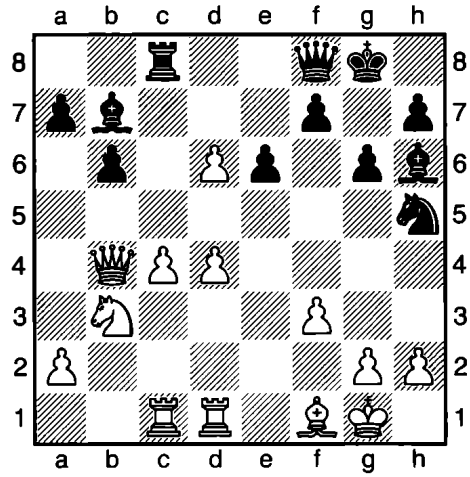
599) White to play (2 points)



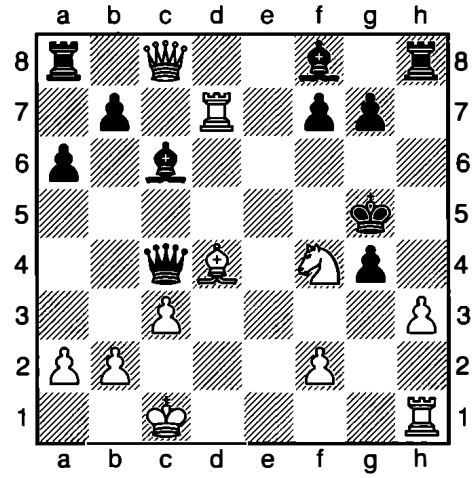
597) White to play (2 points)



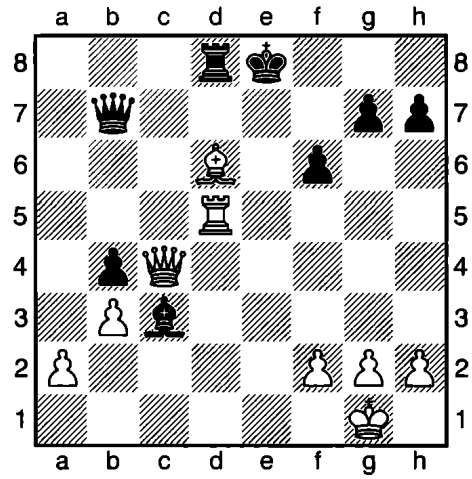
600) Black to play (2 points)



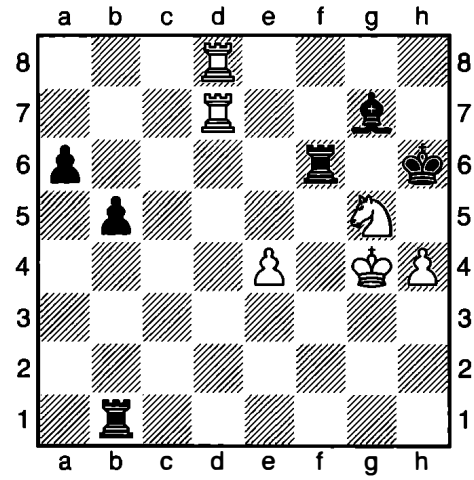
601) Black to play (3 points)



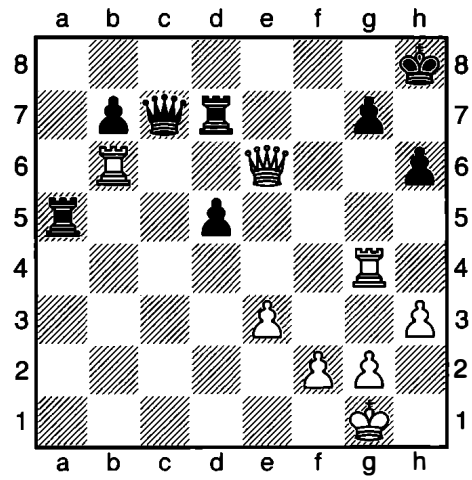
604) White to play (3 points)



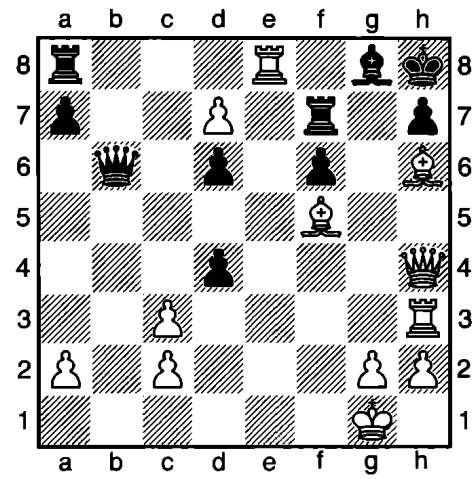
602) White to play (3 points)



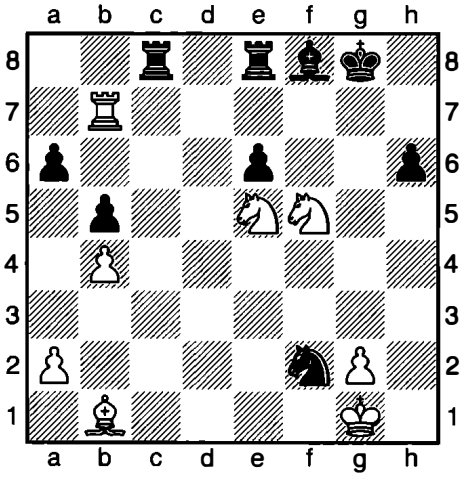
605) White to play (3 points)



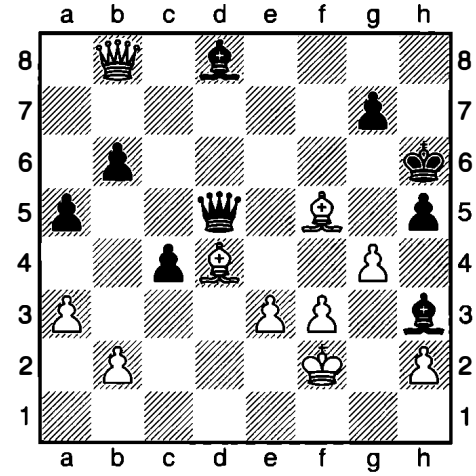
603) White to play (3 points)



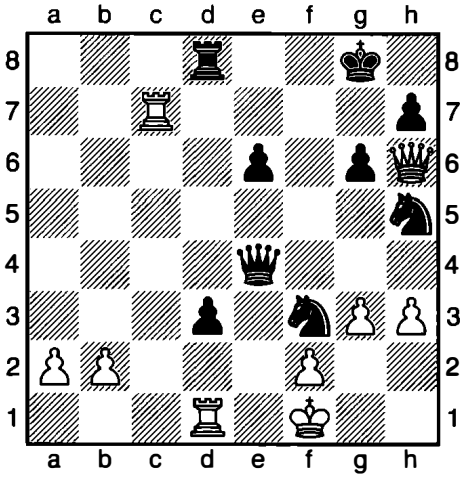
606) White to play (3 points)



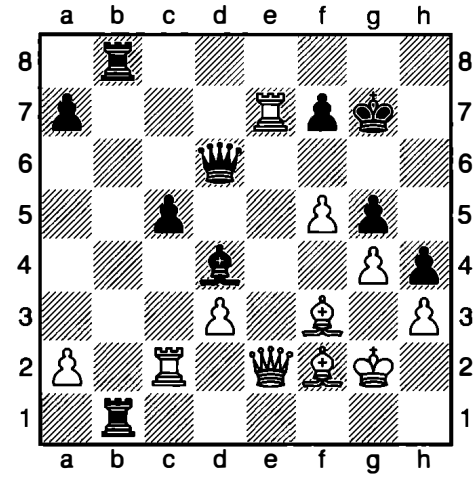
607) White to play (3 points)



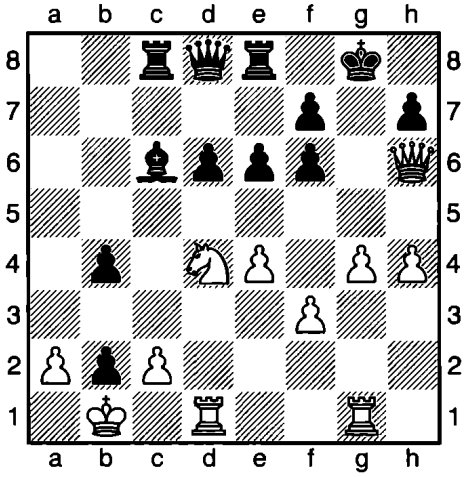
610) White to play (3 points)



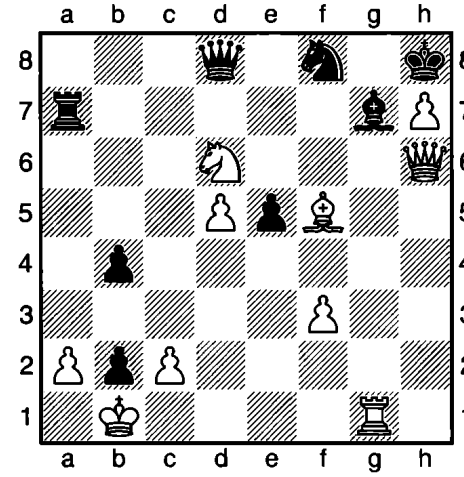
608) Black to play (3 points)



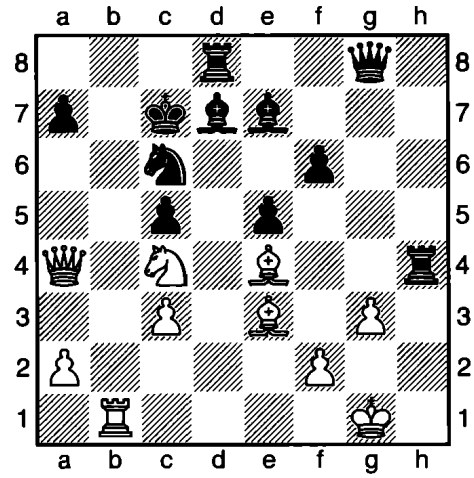
611) Black to play (3 points)



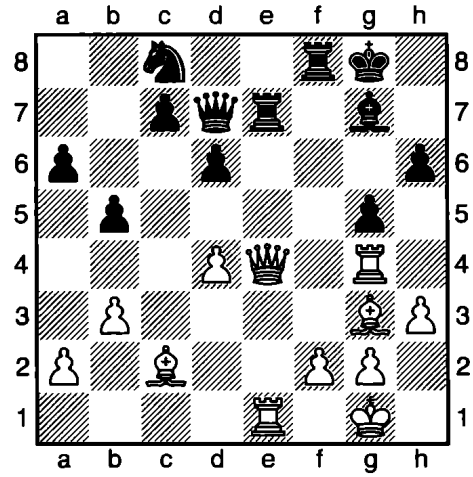
609) White to play (3 points)



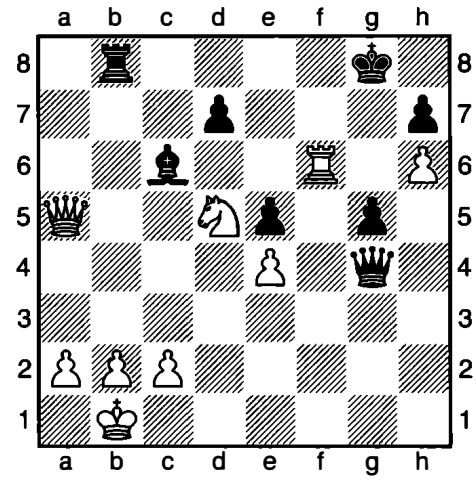
612) White to play (3 points)



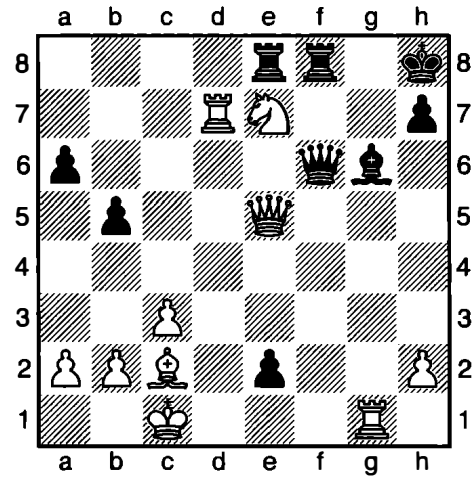
613) White to play (3 points)



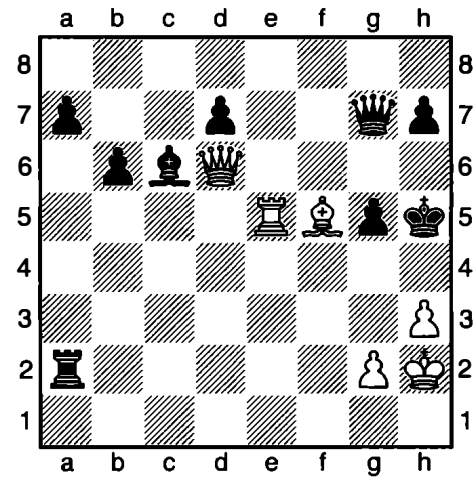
616) White to play (4 points)



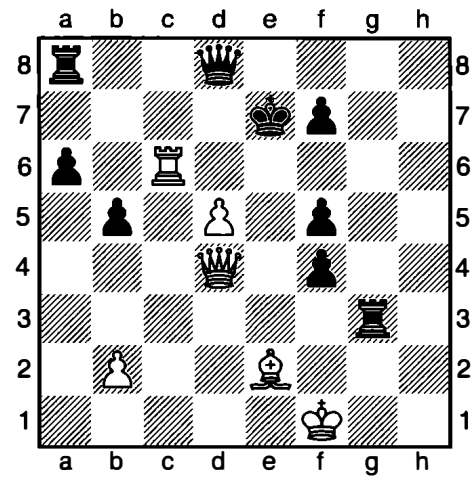
614) White to play (4 points)



617) White to play (4 points)



615) White to play (4 points)



618) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Mate by Line-Opening

571) B. Golubović – Civrić
European Ch, Budva 2009
1 ♖h3+! 1-0
This forces open the line from e2 to h5 and leads to mate after 1...gxh3 2 ♕h5#.

572) B. Savchenko – J. Hammer
Gjøvik 2009
1 ♗d5+! 1-0
Opening the line from gl to g7 and mating after 1...cxd5 (or any other move) 2 ♕xg7#.

573) D. Straubinger – S. Seres
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♗d3+! 0-1
Opening the diagonal for the queen and mating by 2...♕h1#.

574) Fab. Müller – Gisbrecht
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1...♖xg2+! 0-1
2 ♖xg2 (Black also mates after 2 ♔h1 ♕xh2# or 2 ♔f1 ♕xf2#) 2...♕e1#.

575) T.L. Petrosian – Wintzer
Gibraltar 2008
1 ♘g5+! 1-0
White opens the e-file with gain of tempo and mates after 1...hxg5 2 ♕xe7#.

576) Pecori – Ambrus
Canberra 2008
1...♕e3+! 0-1
A surprising sacrifice which opens the line from h2 to d2 so that Black's rook can guard the pawn after 2 fxe3 d2#.

577) Dzhumaev – Nikzaban
Baku 2008
1 ♘g6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...fxg6 2 ♕e8# or 1...hxg6 2 ♕e8# (or 2 ♖e8#).

578) Jakupec – Jelečević
Zagreb 2008
1...♘g3+
1...♘f2+? fails as 2 ♖xf2 defends g2.
0-1
Black will mate by 2...♕xg2#.

579) V. Milov – Bi. Cheng
Philadelphia 2008
1 ♖h5+! 1-0
Black resigned in view of 1...gxh5 (1...♔g8 is met by 2 ♕h8# or 2 ♖h8#) 2 ♕g7#.

580) Peng Zhaoqin – L. Konings
2nd Bundesliga 2006/7
1...♖h5+! 0-1
2 gxh5 ♖g5#.

581) Murugan – R. Popov
Internet (playchess.com) 2005
1...♕f1+! 2 ♘xf1 ♖g1#

582) Blatny – A. Kovaliov
Czech Team Ch 2004/5
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
1...♘xh8 2 ♖g8#.

583) Beltran Rueda – A. Torrecillas
Catalonian Team Ch 2003
1 ♖e8+! 1-0
1...♘xe8 2 ♕d7#.

584) Antonano Fernandez – J. Garcia Lainez
Aragon Team Ch 2003
1...♖f1+! 0-1
2 ♕xf1 ♕xh2#.

585) Zelčić – Zavacki
Bošnjaci 2003
1 ♕xh6+! 1-0
1...gxh6 2 ♖h7#.

586) B. Kettler – K. Müller Ludwig
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1...♖xh2+! 0-1
2 ♗xh2 ♕g2#.

587) N. Caputi – S. Pizzuto
Valenzano 2006
1...♘xe2+ 0-1
2 ♗xe2 ♕g2# (or 2...♕h1#).

588) Susilodinata – D. Bourmistrov
Queenstown 2006
White needs to clear the h-file with gain of tempo.
1 ♘f6+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...exf6 2 ♖h3#.

589) Ponizil – Rojicek
Kunčice 2006
Black is threatening mate on h2, so White must work fast.
1 ♖xf8+! 1-0
1...♖xf8 2 ♖h7#.

590) A. Ansell – A. Goldsmith
Queenstown 2009
1...♘f3+ 0-1
Black forces open the line from g6 to g1 and mates after 2 gxf3 ♕g1#.

591) D. Nygren – D. Olofsson
Swedish Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖xe5+! 1-0
1...♘e6 (1...fxe5 2 ♕d6#) 2 ♖xe6+! fxe6 3 ♕g7#.

592) T. Hirneise – W. Kreuscher
Schwäbisch Gmünd 2008
1 ♕f7+ ♔h8 1-0
Black resigned in anticipation of 2 ♖xh6+ gxh6 3 ♕h7#.

593) Ma. Kierzek – Sa. Martinović
Bled 2008
1 ♘g5!
1 ♘f6? doesn't work because after 1...♗xf6 the white queen is pinned and so cannot mate on h6.
1-0

In view of the threatened mate on h7, Black must take the knight by 1...hxg5 but this opens the line from h5 to h8 and allows mate by 2 ♕xh5+ ♗h6 3 ♕xh6#.

594) V. Zablotsky – Volontinas
Krasnoiarsk Ch 2008
1...♕xh4+! 0-1
Opening the d6-h2 line proves decisive after 2 gxh4 ♖h2#.

595) V.T. Martins – Dr. Stamenković
San Jose de Rio Preto 2008
1...♘g4+! 2 hxg4 0-1
White resigned before Black could play 2...♕h6#.

596) Becerra Rivero – Shulman
USA Ch, Tulsa 2008
1...♖1h3+!
1...♖8h3+? doesn't work because after 2 gxh3 ♕g1+ 3 ♔h4 the white king slips away.
0-1
2 gxh3 ♕g1+ 3 ♔f3 ♖xh3#.

597) P. Andrist – B. Kamber
Biel 2008
1 ♘g6+! fxg6 2 ♗h6+ ♕g7 3 ♕xg7#

598) Galović – S. Prielozny
Slovakian Team Ch 2006/7
White is threatening to mate by ♖a7+ followed by ♖c8#, so Black must act immediately.
1...♖f4+! 0-1
2 gxf4 (2 ♗xf4 ♕h5#) 2...♕h5+ 3 ♔g3 ♕h3#.

599) Hei. Titz – L. Deutsch
Austrian Ch, Hartberg 2004
1 ♕xh5+! 1-0
It's worth a queen to open the sixth rank, since mate is forced after 1...gxh5 2 ♖h6#.

600) Eskandary – Degtiarev
Germany (team event) 2002/3
1...♕g5+! 0-1
Drawing the knight away from e4 opens the line from f5 to d3, allowing Black to mate by 2 ♘xg5 ♖d3#. The only alternative is 2 ♔xf3, but

then Black mates by 2...♗xe4++ 3 ♔e2 (3 ♔xe4 ♕f4#) 3...♕d2+ 4 ♔f1 ♕xf2#.

601) Bo. Iveković – Boz. Topić
Bošnjaci 2009

1...♗e3+ 2 ♔h1 ♘g3+! 0-1

3 hxg3 ♕h6#.

This is a typical sacrifice to open the h-file for a rook or queen.

602) J. Hammer – Carlhammar
Caleta 2009

1 ♖e5+! 1-0

White sacrifices his rook to open the line from c4 to e6: 1...♔d7 2 ♕e6+ ♔c6 3 ♗b8+ ♖d6 4 ♕xd6# or 1...♗xe5 2 ♕e6+ ♕e7 3 ♕xe7#.

603) B. Grachev – Akobian
Moscow 2009

1 ♕e8+ ♔h7 2 ♖xh6+! 1-0

If Black takes with the pawn, the line from g4 to g8 is opened and the finish would be 2...♔xh6 3 ♕h8# or 2...gxh6 3 ♕g8#.

604) Sutovsky – Nayer
Natanya (rapid) 2009

1 ♖d5+! 1-0

Opening the line from c8 to g4. 1...♕xd5 (Black is mated more quickly after 1...♔h6 2 ♖h5# or 1...♔xf4 2 ♕xg4#) 2 ♕xg4+ ♔h6 3 ♕h4+ ♕h5 4 ♕xh5#.

605) R. Dobrovolsky – Volontinas
Krasnoiarsk Ch 2008

1 ♖h8+! 1-0

White opens the seventh rank for the other rook to join in the attack: 1...♗xh8 (1...♔g6 2 h5#) 2 ♖h7+ ♔g6 3 h5#.

606) X. Montheard – D. Steininger
Metz 2005

1 ♗g7+!

Opening the line from h4 to h7 with gain of tempo.

1...♖xg7

1...♔xg7 2 ♕xh7+ ♗xh7 3 ♖xh7# is a similar conclusion.

2 ♕xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖xh7#

607) Arutinian – Frhat
Dubai 2008

1 ♘xh6+! 1-0

Opening the diagonal for the bishop: 1...♗xh6 2 ♗h7+ ♔f8 (2...♔h8 3 ♘g6# is similar) 3 ♘g6#.

608) Radice – Collutiis
Italian Team Ch, Arvier 2008

1...♘xg3+! 2 fxg3

After 2 ♔g2 Black can force mate in various ways. One of the quickest is 2...♘e1++ 3 ♔xg3 ♕f3+ 4 ♔h4 ♘g2+ 5 ♔g5 ♕f5#.

2...♕e2#

609) Hasangatin – Puskar
Zvolen 2008

White wins by opening the g-file to bring the rook on g1 into the attack.

1 ♘f5!

Threatening mate on g7.

1...exf5 2 gxf5+ 1-0

2...♔h8 3 ♕g7#.

610) Bluvshtein – Hungaski
Edmonton 2008

1 g5+! 1-0

White forces open the back rank to allow the queen to reach h8: 1...♗xg5 2 ♕h8# or 1...♔xg5 2 ♕f4#.

611) Canfell – J. Lakner
Australian Ch, Brisbane 2005

1...♕g3+! 0-1

A spectacular sacrifice to open the line from c5 to g1 and force mate after 2 ♗xg3 ♖g1+ 3 ♔h2 hxg3#.

612) P. Czarnota – Raf. Tomczak
Polish Junior Ch, Trzebinia 2002

1 ♕xg7+! 1-0

Blasting a way through to allow White's rook to reach g8: 1...♖xg7 2 ♘f7+! ♖xf7 3 ♖g8#.

613) Voiska – Tosoni
Rome 2002

1 ♕xa7+! ♘xa7

1...♔c8 2 ♕b7#.

2 ♖b7+ ♔c8 3 ♘b6#

614) Solodovnichenko – Vaibhav

New Delhi 2009

1 ♘e7+ ♔h8 2 ♖f8+! 1-0

White opens the line e5-h8 with gain of tempo, and mates after 2...♖xf8 3 ♕xe5+ ♖f6 4 ♕xf6#.

615) T. Bohn – R. Manner

Germany (team event) 2007/8

Black is threatening ...♖xg2+, so White must hurry.

1 ♗g4+

Playing 1 ♖e2 first also wins but doesn't lead to a quick mate after 1...g4. Give yourself two points if you chose this continuation.

1...♔h4 2 ♖e2! 1-0

The key move, blocking the attack on g2 and opening the line from d6 to g3. It's mate after 2...♖a3 3 g3+ ♖xg3 4 ♕xg3#.

616) Shukh – R. Safonov

Russian Under-18 Team Ch, Rybinsk 2008

1 ♕h7+

A couple of preliminary checks set Black up for the decisive line-opening.

1...♔f7 2 ♗g6+ ♔f6 3 ♖f4+! 1-0

This opens the line from h4 to f6 and leads to mate after 3...gxf4 4 ♗h4#.

617) Dzhakaev – Beshukov

St Petersburg 2001

1 ♘xg6+ hxg6

After 1...♔g8 White can mate in many ways; for example, 2 ♘xf8+ ♕g6 (2...♔xf8 3 ♕xf6#) 3 ♖xg6+ hxg6 4 ♕g7#.

2 ♕h5+! 1-0

This beautiful queen sacrifice mates after 2...♔g8 3 ♕h7# or 2...gxh5 3 ♖h7#.

618) J. Riedl – Besner

Austrian Team Ch 2008/9

1 ♕c5+ ♔e8

1...♔d7 2 ♖d6+ ♔e8 (2...♔e7 3 ♖e6++ ♔d7 4 ♕c6#) 3 ♖e6+ transposes to the game.

2 ♖e6+!

This sacrifice opens the line h5-e8.

2...fxe6

Other moves allow mate in one.

3 ♗h5+ ♔d7 4 ♕c6+ 1-0

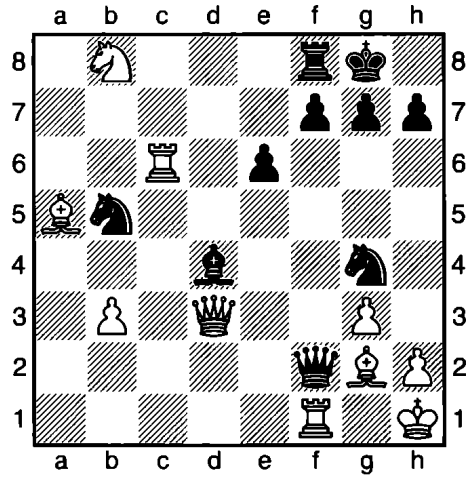
4...♔e7 5 ♕xe6+ ♔f8 6 ♕f7#.

Score-Chart for Mate by Line-Opening

Position number	Points	Score
571	1	
572	1	
573	1	
574	1	
575	1	
576	1	
577	1	
578	1	
579	1	
580	1	
581	1	
582	1	
583	1	
584	1	
585	1	
586	1	
587	1	
588	1	
589	1	
590	2	
591	2	
592	2	
593	2	
594	2	
595	2	
596	2	
597	2	
598	2	
599	2	
600	2	
601	3	
602	3	
603	3	
604	3	
605	3	
606	3	
607	3	
608	3	
609	3	
610	3	
611	3	
612	3	
613	3	
614	4	
615	4	
616	4	
617	4	
618	5	
Total	**101**	

12 Mate by Blocking Squares

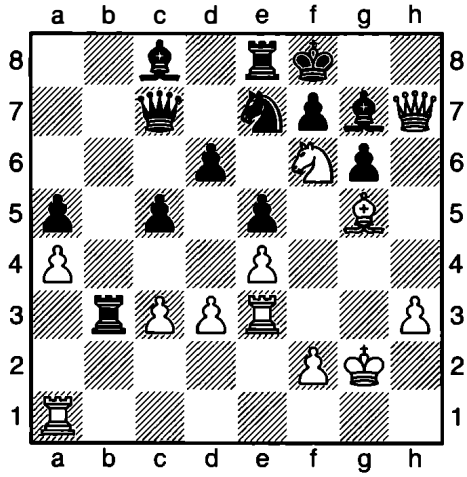
When delivering mate, it's usual for the attacking side's pieces to prevent the king from running away. However, in some cases it's the defender's own pieces which doom their king by blocking its escape.



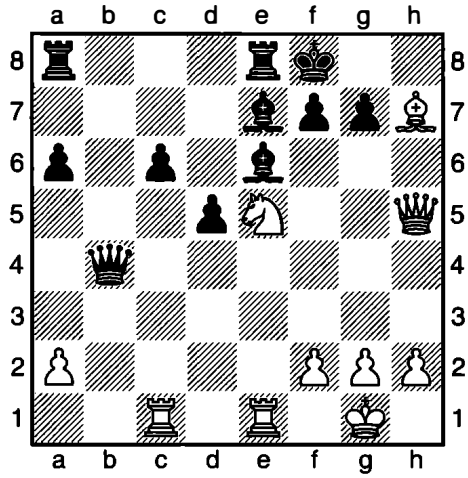
Hottes – Bautista Sanchez
European Seniors Team Ch, Dresden 2006

Here the white king is already restricted by the bishop on g2 and the pawn on h2. Black now played **1...♕g1+!** and **White resigned** (**0-1**) in view of the finish 2 ♖xg1 ♘f2#. The queen sacrifice draws the white rook to g1, which helps Black in two ways. Firstly, the rook no longer covers f2, so Black's knight can jump there unopposed, and secondly the rook helps to imprison White's king by blocking g1. This is an example of the famous *Smothered Mate*, in which a king is totally blocked in by friendly pieces.

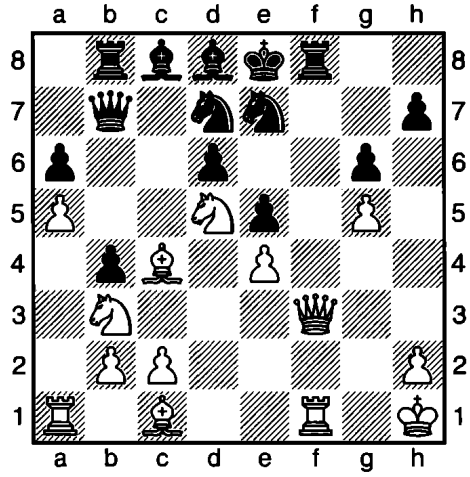
This chapter is all about forcing the enemy pieces to betray their own monarch – a useful trick once you know how to do it!



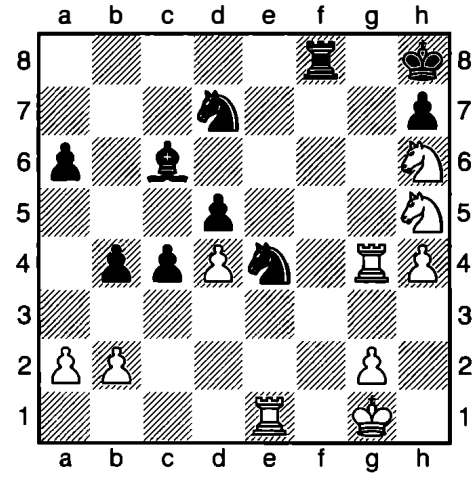
619) White to play (1 point)



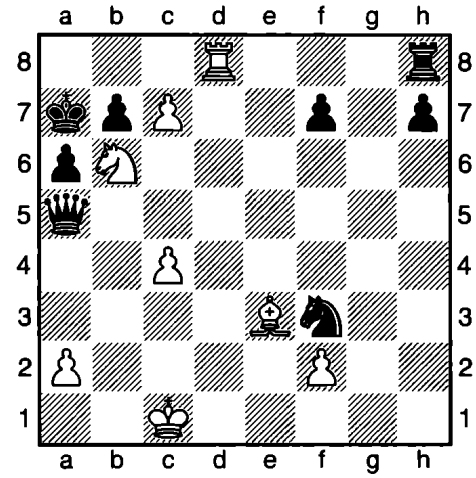
620) White to play (1 point)



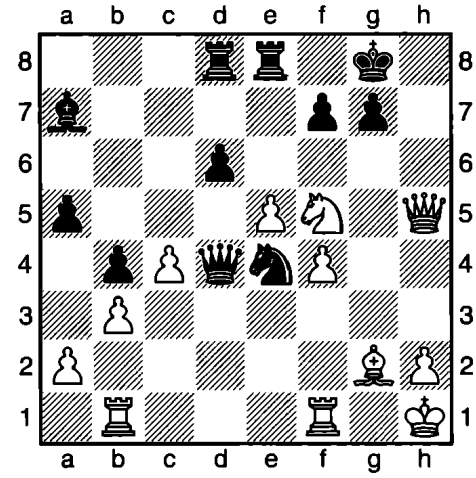
621) White to play (1 point)



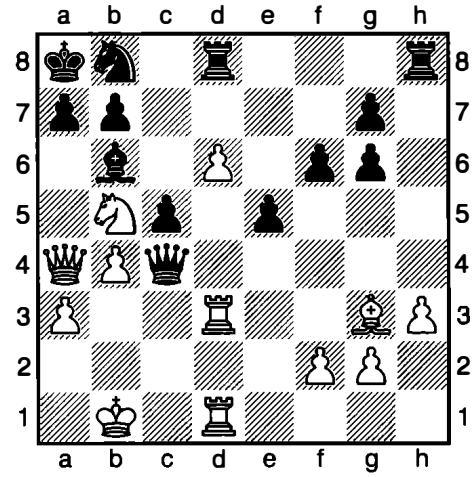
622) White to play (1 point)



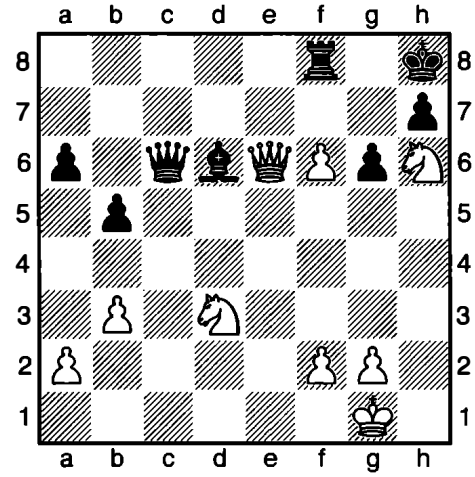
623) White to play (1 point)



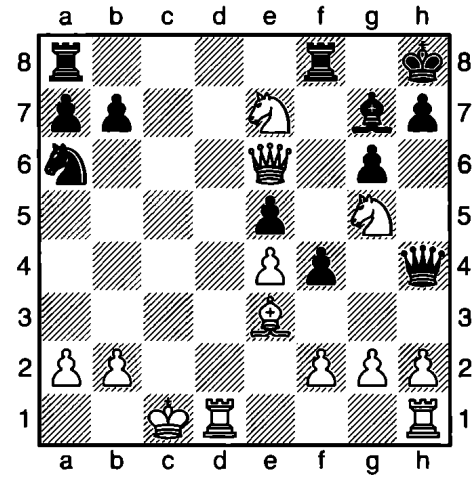
624) Black to play (1 point)



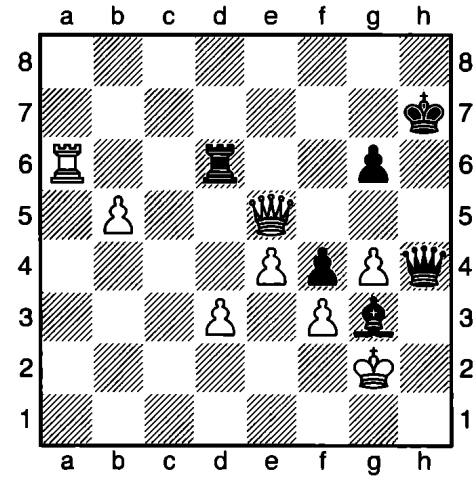
625) White to play (1 point)



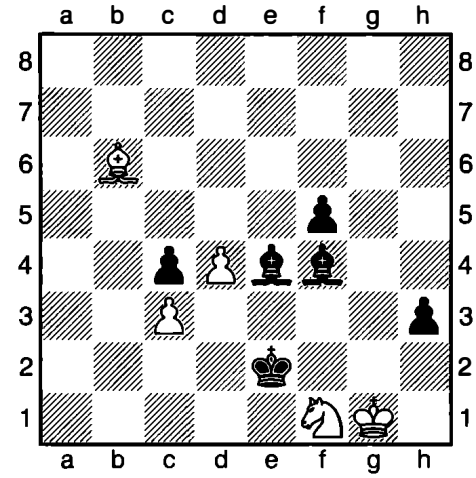
628) White to play (1 point)



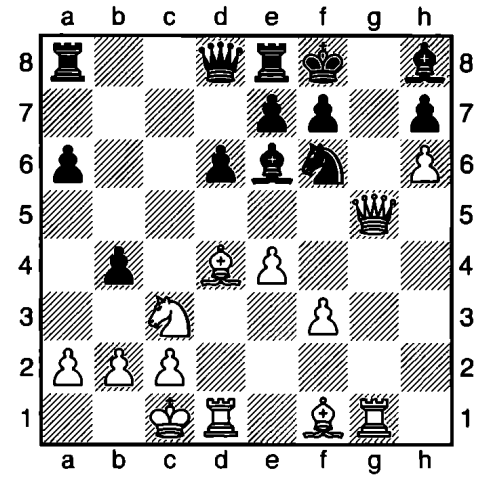
626) White to play (1 point)



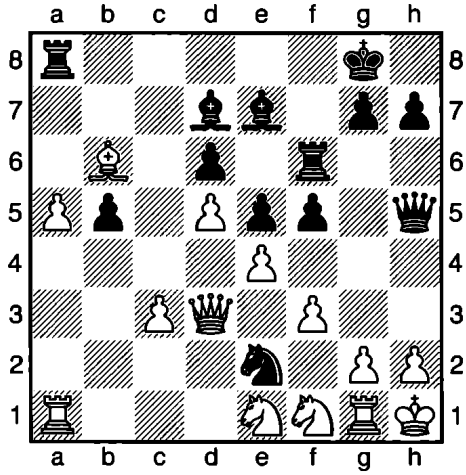
629) White to play (2 points)



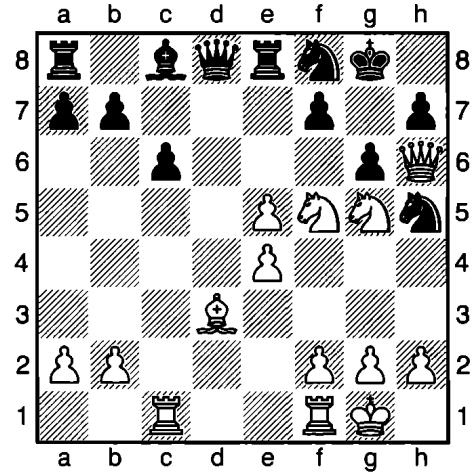
627) Black to play (1 point)



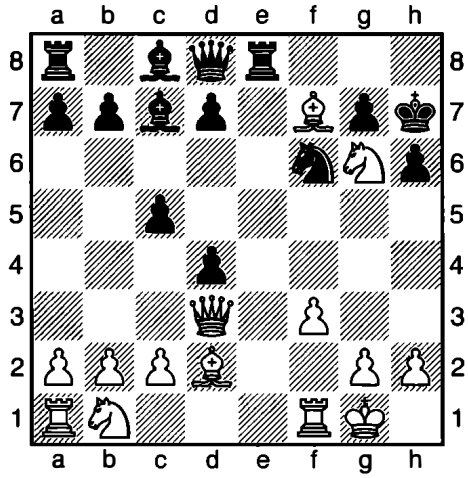
630) White to play (2 points)



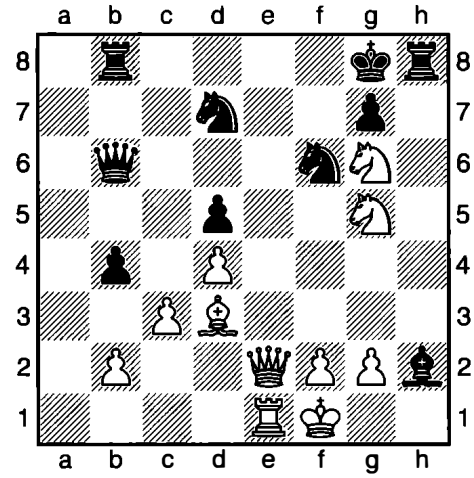
631) Black to play (2 points)



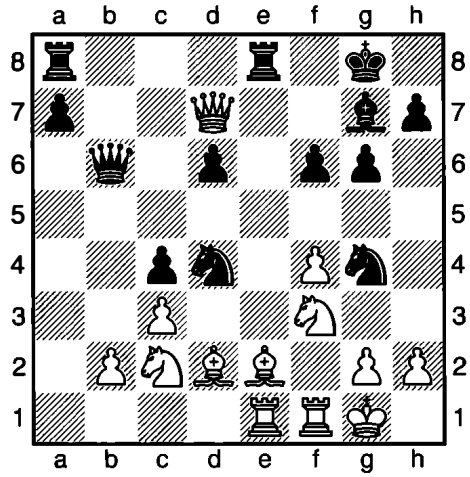
634) White to play (2 points)



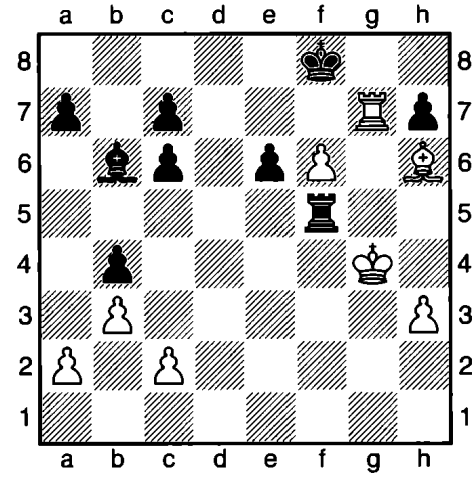
632) White to play (2 points)



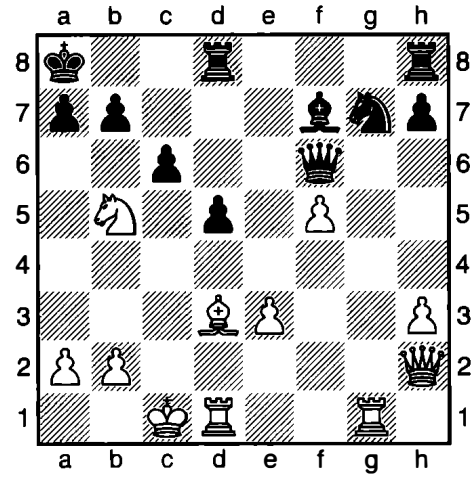
635) White to play (3 points)



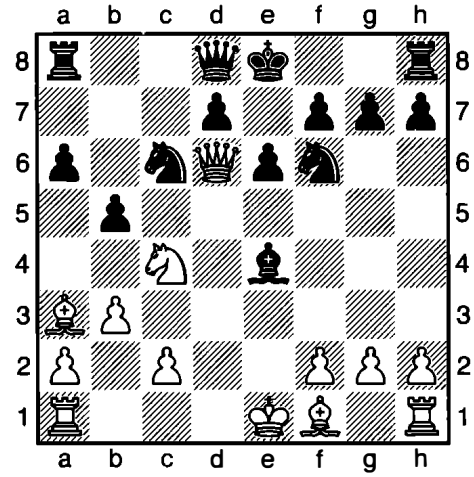
633) Black to play (2 points)



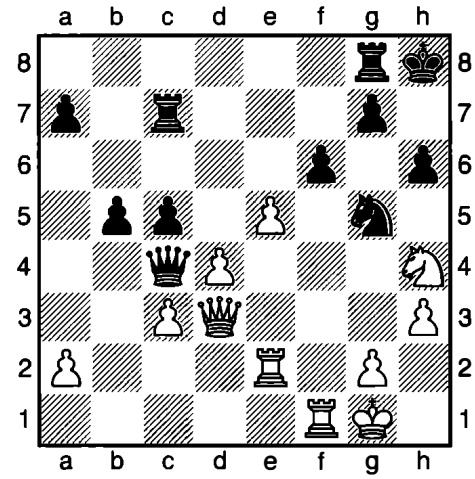
636) White to play (3 points)



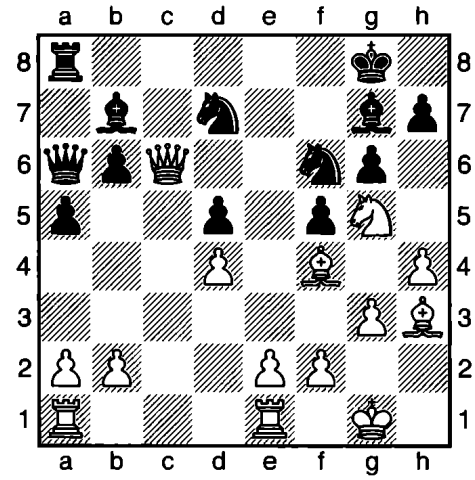
637) White to play (3 points)



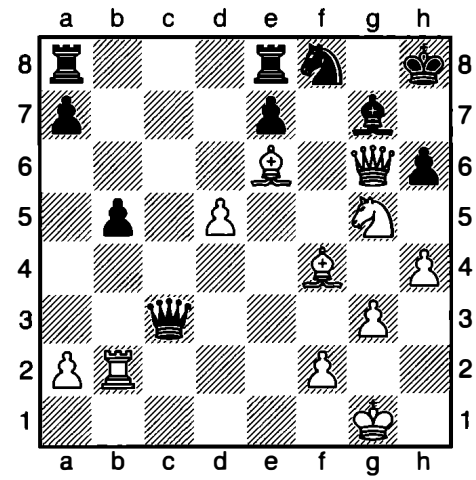
640) White to play (3 points)



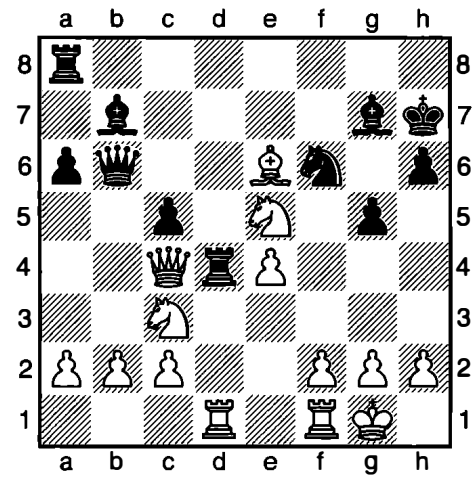
638) White to play (3 points)



641) White to play (3 points)



639) White to play (3 points)



642) White to play (4 points)

Solutions for Mate by Blocking Squares

619) H. Kraft – He. Tessmer
Bad Wörishofen (Seniors) 1994
1 ♕g8+! ♘xg8 2 ♘h7#
The mating move not only attacks the black king but also uncovers the bishop's guard of e7.

620) V. Yakimov – Vysochin
Yuzhny 2009
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♗xf7 2 ♘d7#.

621) Thinius – M. Hahlbohm
Berlin 2004
1 ♕xf8+! ♘xf8 2 ♘f6#
A neat mate in which the knight blocks the rook's control of f7, but opens up a line for the bishop to perform the same function.

622) V. Milov – I. Gaponenko
Zwolle 2003
1 ♖g8+! 1-0
1...♖xg8 2 ♘f7#.

623) Sedina – Tkeshelashvili
European Women's Ch, Istanbul 2003
1 ♖a8+!
There are other ways to win but this is by far the quickest.
1...♖xa8 2 ♘c8#

624) Miezis – Bellon
French Team Ch 1999/00
1...♕g1+! 0-1
2 ♖xg1 ♘f2#.

625) C. Garcia Martinez – Mengual Bolo
Spain (team event) 2004
1 ♕xa7+ 1-0
1...♗xa7 2 ♘c7#.

626) Vazquez Igarza – R. Swinkels
Amsterdam 2006
1 ♕g8+! ♖xg8 2 ♘f7#

627) I.G. Kiss – Konnyu
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1...h2+ 0-1
Forcing the knight to block h2 and mating after 2 ♘xh2 ♗e3#.

628) M. Kröncke – N. Molzahn
Bad Zwischenahn 2004
1 ♕g8+! ♖xg8 2 ♘f7#

629) Nunn – Y. Grünfeld
European Junior Ch, Groningen 1974/5
Black is threatening mate by 1...♕h2+ and 2...♕f2#, so White must operate with checks.
1 ♖a7+ ♔h6
1...♔g8 2 ♕g7#.
2 g5+! 1-0
It's mate after 2...♔h5 3 ♖h7# or 2...♕xg5 3 ♕h8#.

630) J. Trejo Morales – La. Morales Mendoza
Hermosillo (Under-14 Girls) 2002
1 ♕g8+! ♘xg8 2 ♗g7+ 1-0
2...♗xg7 3 hxg7#.

631) Chavez Lazo – Mark. Sanchez
Bolivar 2001
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♘xh2
2 ♔xh2 ♖h6#.
2...♘g3#

632) L. Braggaar – L. Brandenburg
Hengelo (Under-12) 2001
1 ♘f8++ ♔h8 2 ♕h7+! ♘xh7 3 ♘g6#

633) T. Taylor – Vavrak
Foxwoods 2007

1...♘xf3++

After 1...♘xe2++? 2 ♔h1 Black doesn't mate.

2 ♔h1 ♕g1+! 0-1

3 ♖xg1 ♘f2#.

634) Komljenović – Diaz de Cerio
Pamplona 2001

1 ♕g7+! 1-0

1...♘xg7 2 ♘h6+ ♔h8 3 ♘gxf7#.

635) F. Vass – Pa. Federić
Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♕e7 1-0

Threatening mate on f7, and if Black plays 1...♖f8 (1...♘e5 2 ♕f8+! is the same) then 2 ♕xf8+! ♘xf8 3 ♘e7#.

636) Adhiban – T.S. Ravi
Indian Ch, Chennai 2008

1 ♖e7+ ♔g8 2 f7+! 1-0

Forcing Black to block f7 and mating after 2...♖xf7 3 ♖e8+ ♖f8 4 ♖xf8#.

637) Ubiennykh – T. Ivanova
Sibirian Women's Ch, Novokuznetsk 2008

1 ♘c7+ 1-0

1...♔b8 2 ♘a6++ ♔a8 (2...♔c8 3 ♕c7#) 3 ♕b8+! ♖xb8 4 ♘c7#.

638) Ota – Juquois
St Quentin 2001

1 ♘g6+ ♔h7 2 ♘f8++ ♔h8 3 ♕h7+! ♘xh7 4 ♘g6#

639) Chabanon – C. Lamoureux
Lido Estensi 2002

1 ♕h7+! ♘xh7 2 ♘f7+ ♔g8 3 ♘e5+ 1-0

White mates by 4 ♘g6#.

640) Kotrotsos – Stiri
Iraklion 2005

1 ♕f8+! 1-0

1...♖xf8 2 ♘d6+ ♔e7 3 ♘f5++ ♔e8 4 ♘xg7#.

641) Sahajasri – K. Sangeet
Commonwealth Ch, Nagpur 2008

1 ♕e6+ ♔h8

1...♔f8 is met by 2 ♕f7# or 2 ♗d6#.

2 ♘f7+ ♔g8 3 ♘h6++ ♔h8 4 ♕g8+! ♖xg8 5 ♘f7#

642) G. O'Toole – A. McCumiskey
British League (4NCL) 2005/6

1 ♗f5+

White first of all drives the enemy king into the corner, where it is vulnerable to an attack by queen and knight.

1...♔h8 2 ♘f7+ ♔g8 3 ♘xh6++ ♔h8

3...♔f8 4 ♕f7#.

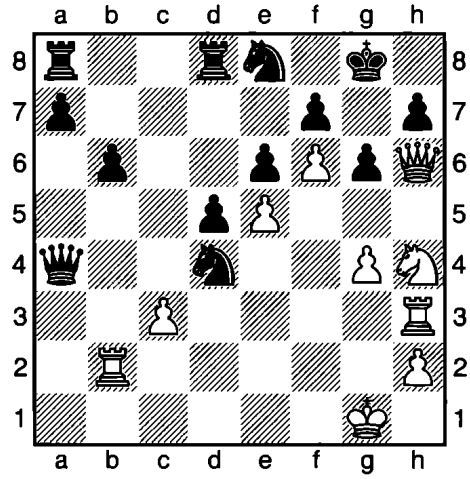
4 ♕g8+! ♖xg8 5 ♘f7#

Score-Chart for Mate by Blocking Squares

Position number	Points	Score
619	1	
620	1	
621	1	
622	1	
623	1	
624	1	
625	1	
626	1	
627	1	
628	1	
629	2	
630	2	
631	2	
632	2	
633	2	
634	2	
635	3	
636	3	
637	3	
638	3	
639	3	
640	3	
641	3	
642	4	
Total	**47**	

13 Mate Involving Discovered or Double Check

A *discovered check* occurs when piece A lies between piece B and the enemy king. When piece A moves, it unveils a check from piece B (piece B must be an appropriate line-moving piece, such as a bishop, rook or queen).

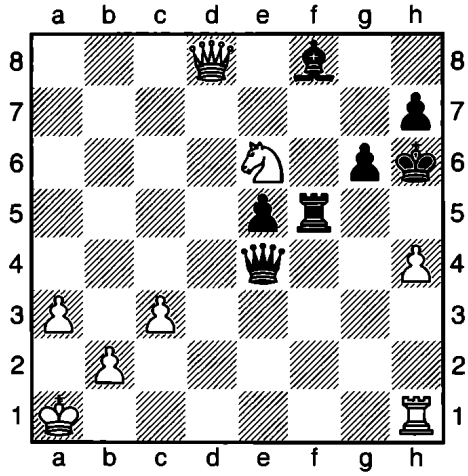


R. Rachela – E. Sokol
Slovakian Team Ch 2001/2

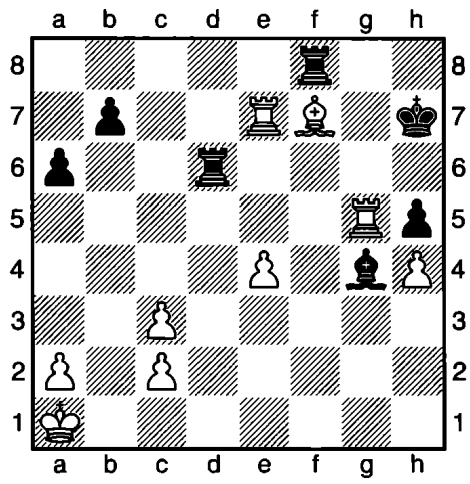
White continued **1 ♕xh7+!** (drawing the king into position for the discovered check) **1...♔xh7 2 ♘f5+** and **Black resigned** (**1-0**) since it's mate after 2...♔g8 3 ♘e7+ ♔f8 4 ♖h8#. Here the value of the discovered check lay in the way the white knight gained time to reach the deadly square e7; after 2 ♘f5+ Black had to move his king, so he was unable to prevent the knight transfer.

An especially lethal form of discovered check is the *double check*. If you remove Black's pawn from h7 in the above diagram, then in addition to the previously-mentioned win, White has an alternative mate by **1 ♕h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♘xg6++ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#**. Here White's second move is a double check because it gives check from rook and knight simultaneously. Double checks are especially dangerous because they **can only be answered by a king move**. If the king has nowhere to go, then it's mate.

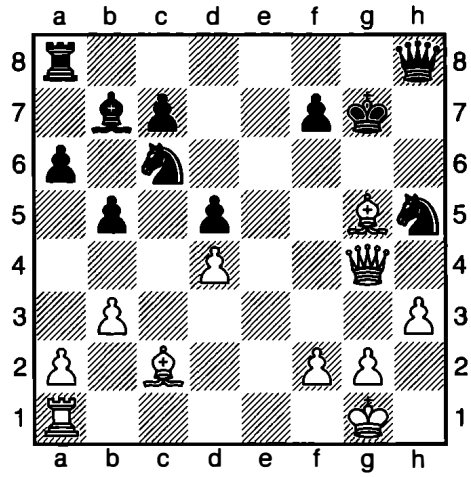
Now try to find the winning discovered or double check in the following positions.



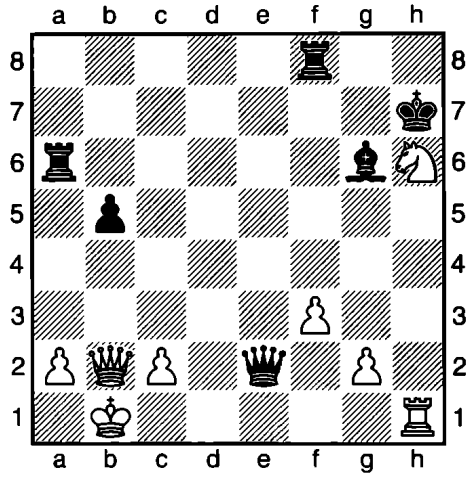
643) White to play (1 point)



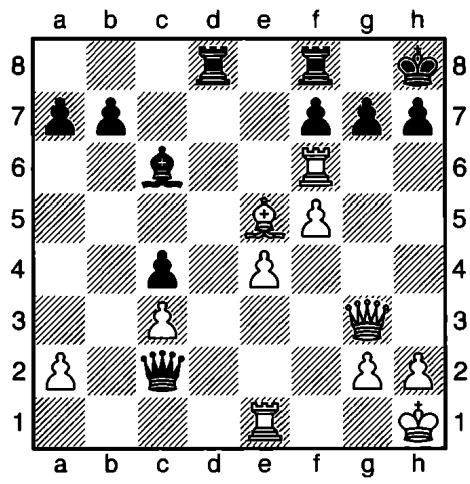
644) White to play (1 point)



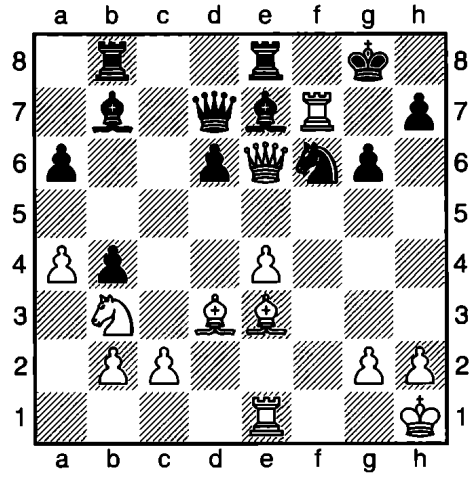
645) White to play (1 point)



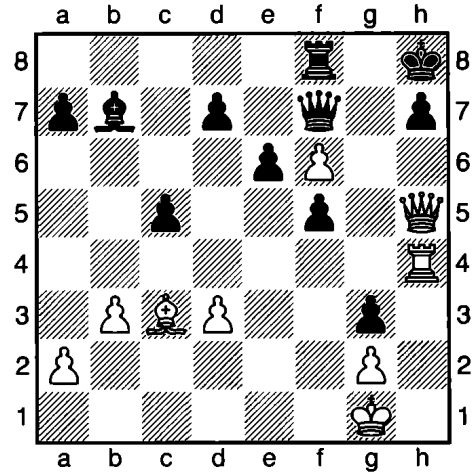
646) White to play (1 point)



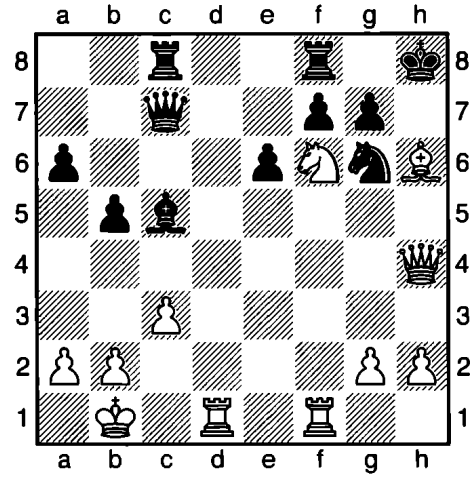
647) White to play (1 point)



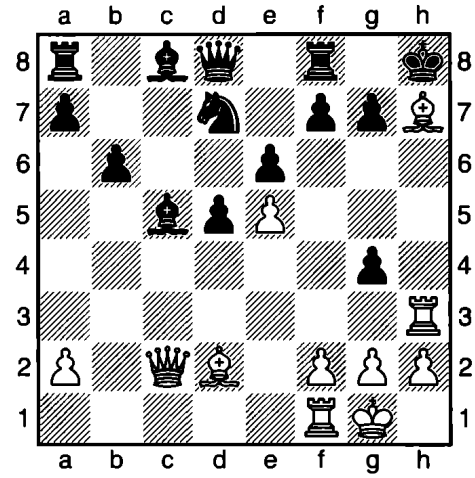
648) White to play (1 point)



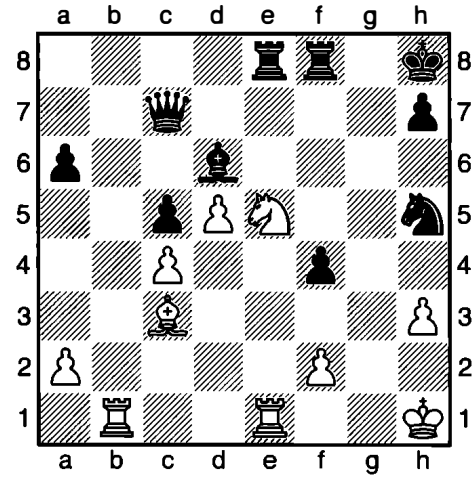
649) White to play (1 point)



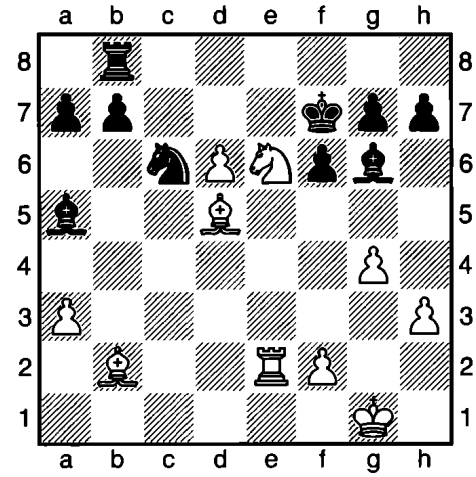
652) White to play (1 point)



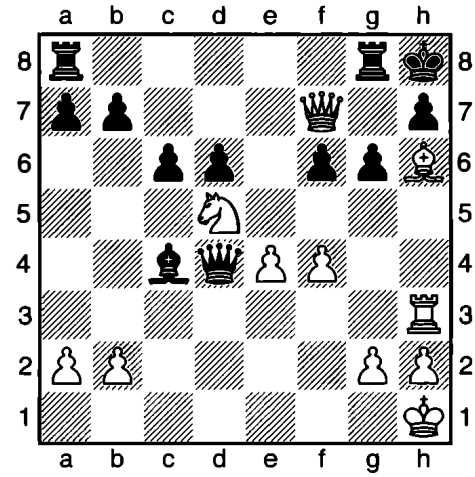
650) White to play (1 point)



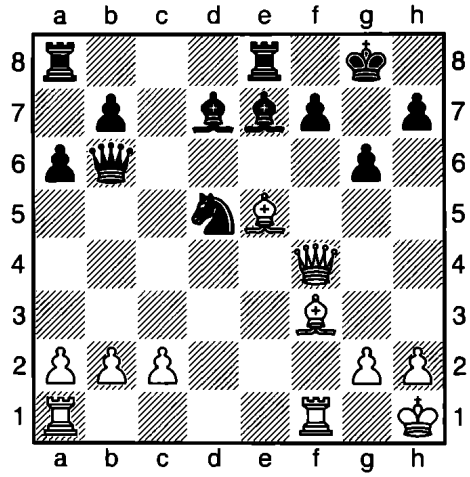
653) White to play (1 point)



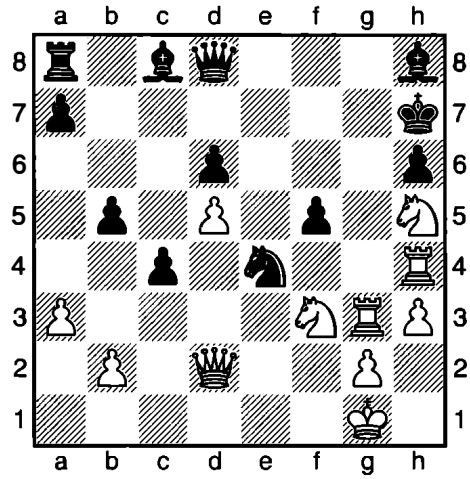
651) White to play (1 point)



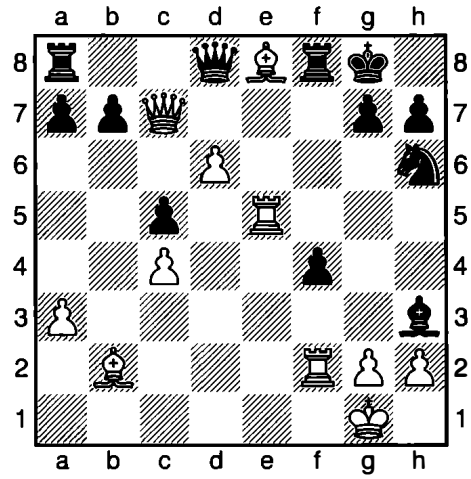
654) White to play (1 point)



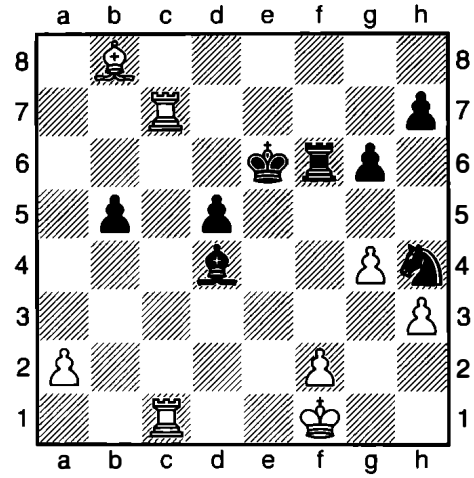
655) White to play (1 point)



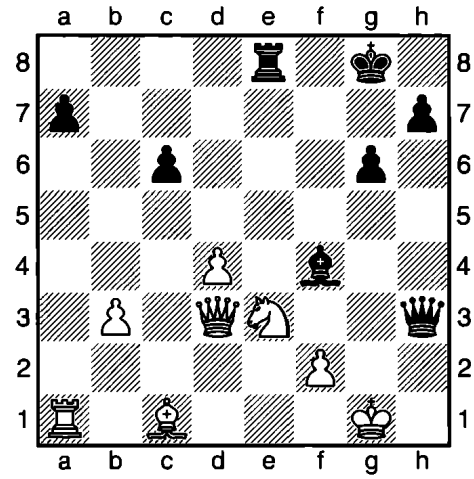
656) White to play (1 point)



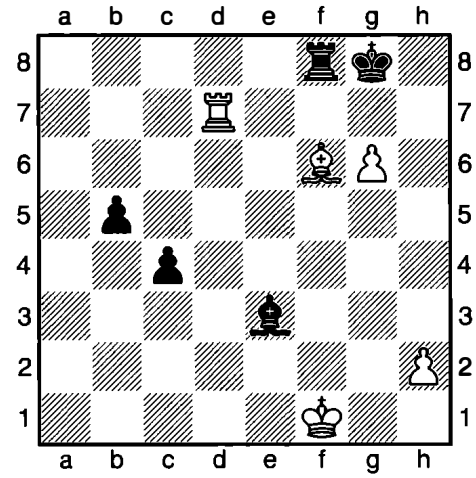
657) White to play (1 point)



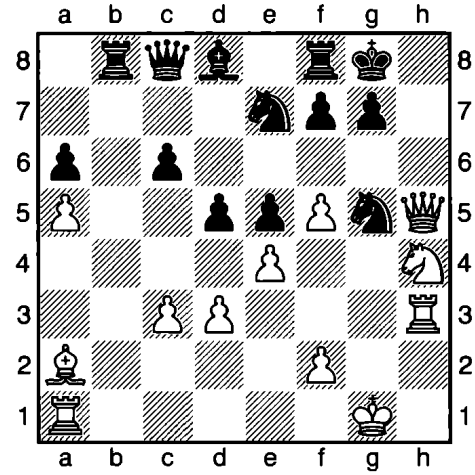
658) White to play (1 point)



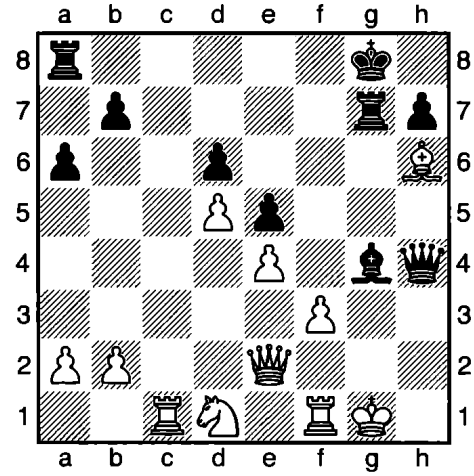
659) Black to play (2 points)



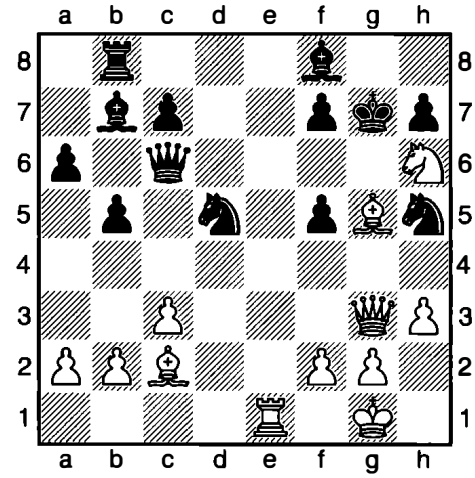
660) White to play (2 points)



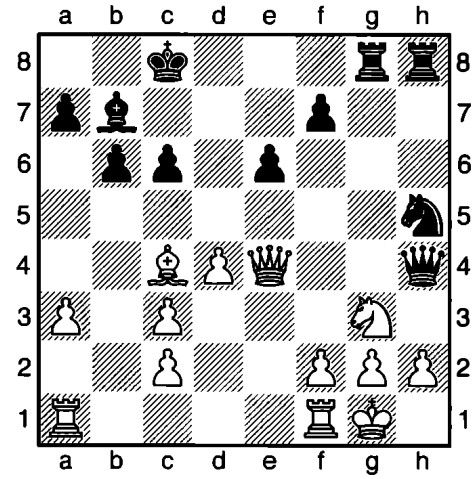
661) White to play (2 points)



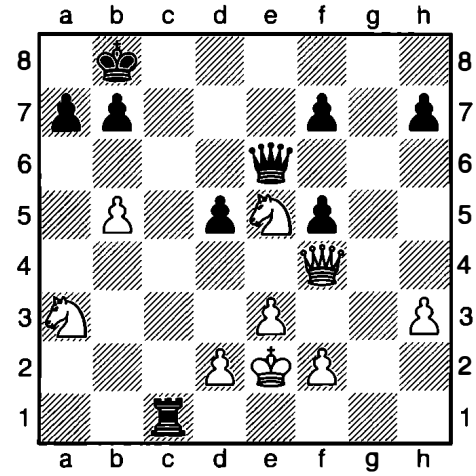
664) Black to play (2 points)



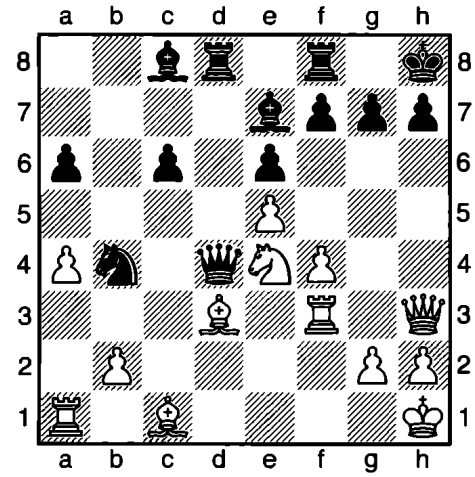
662) White to play (2 points)



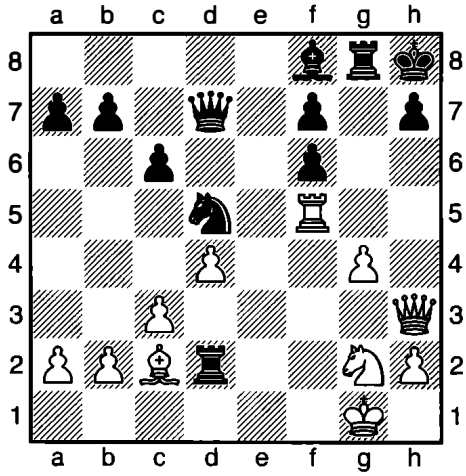
665) Black to play (2 points)



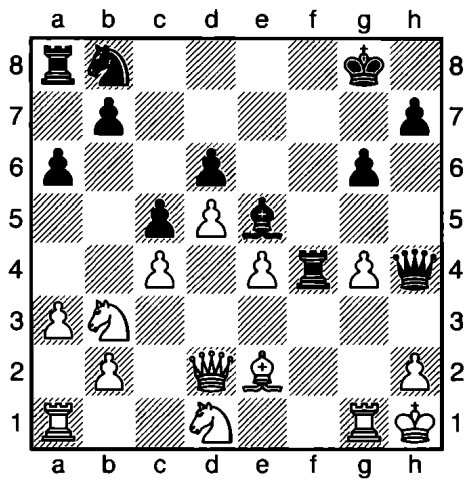
663) White to play (2 points)



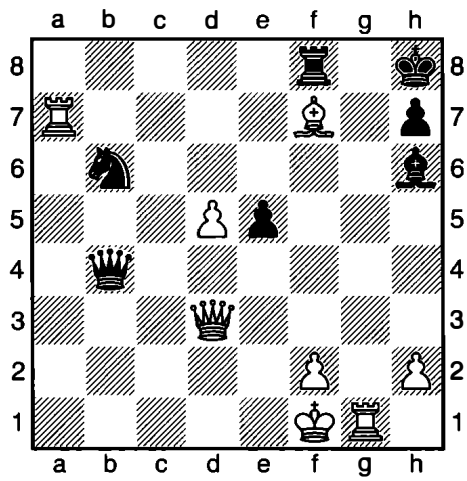
666) White to play (2 points)



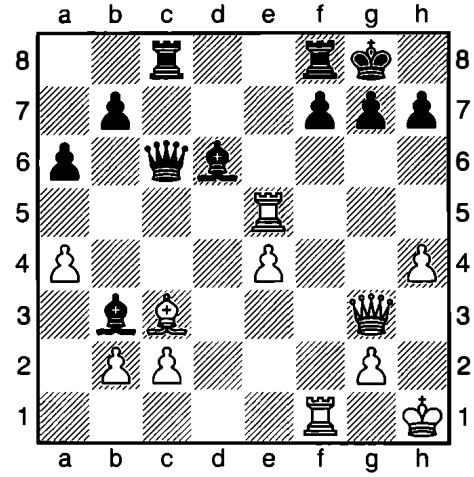
667) White to play (2 points)



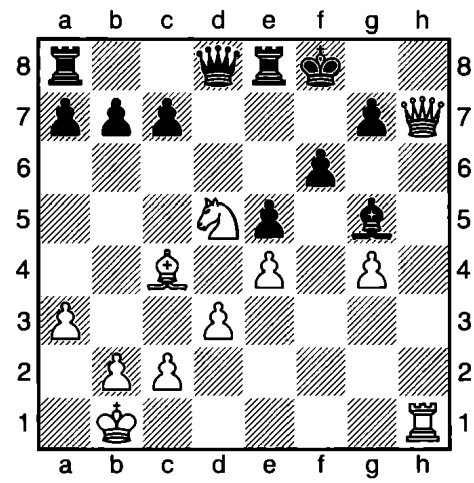
668) Black to play (2 points)



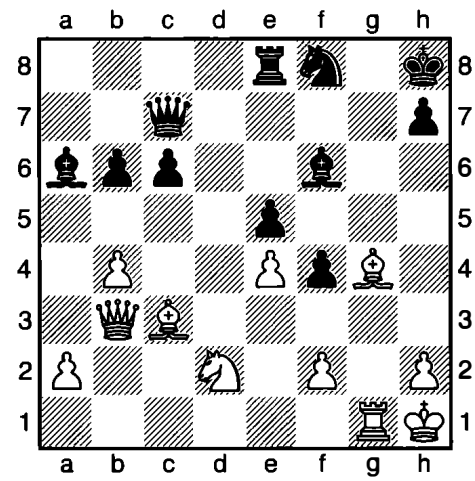
669) White to play (2 points)



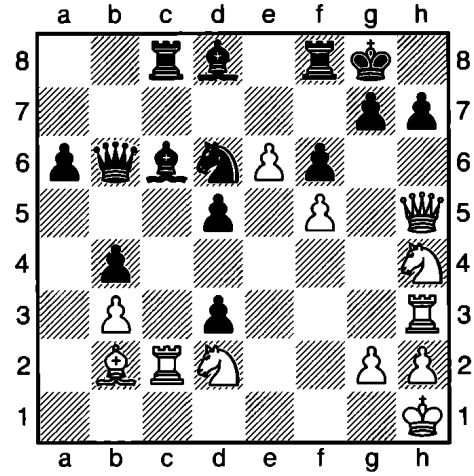
670) White to play (2 points)



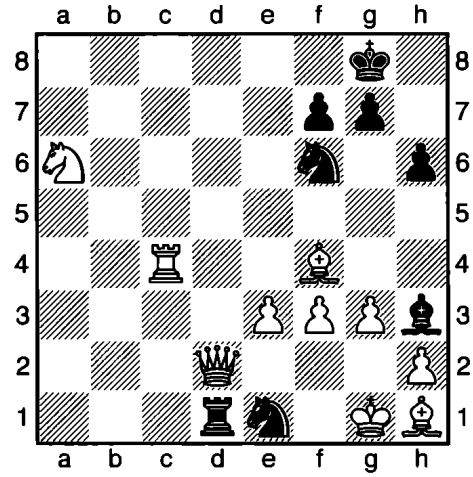
671) White to play (2 points)



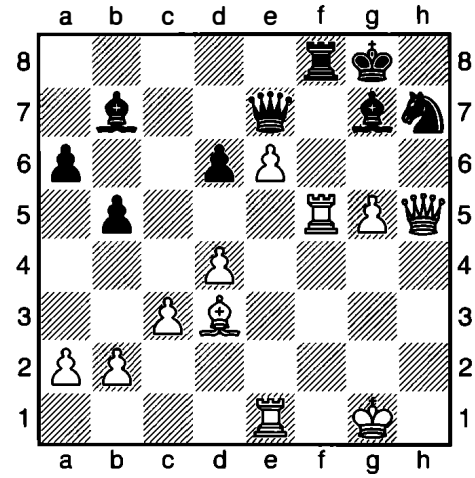
672) White to play (2 points)



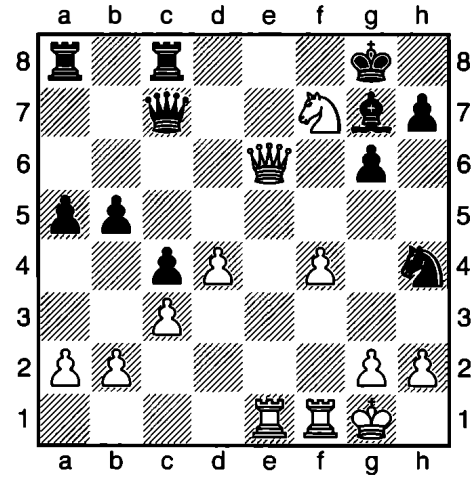
673) White to play (2 points)



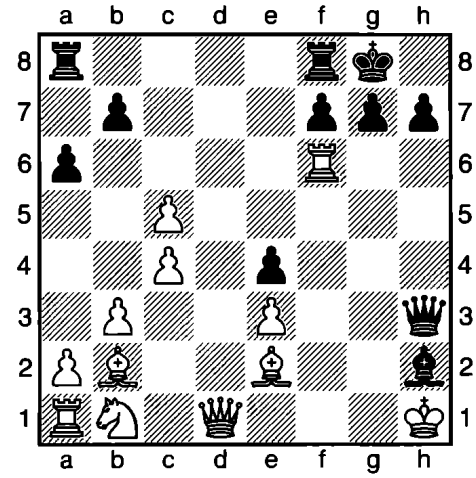
676) Black to play (2 points)



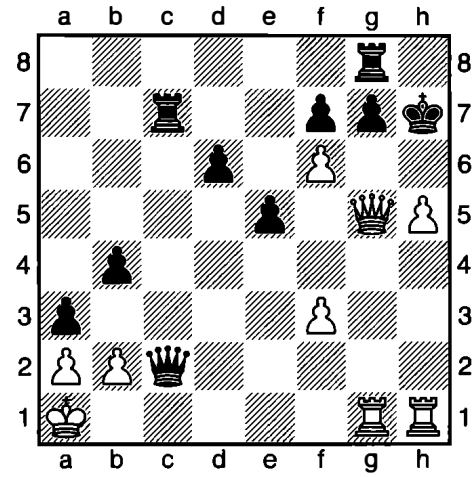
674) White to play (2 points)



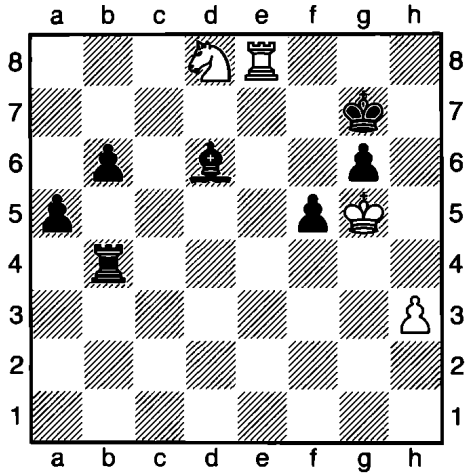
677) White to play (2 points)



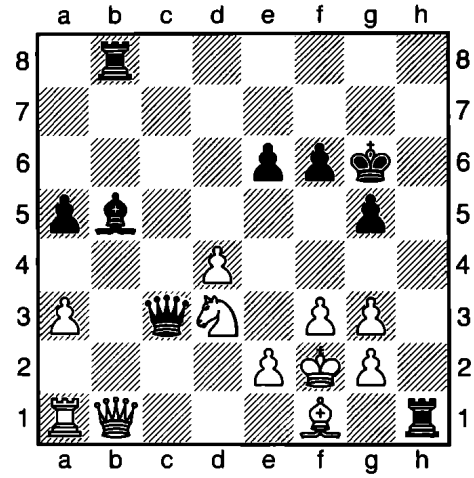
675) Black to play (2 points)



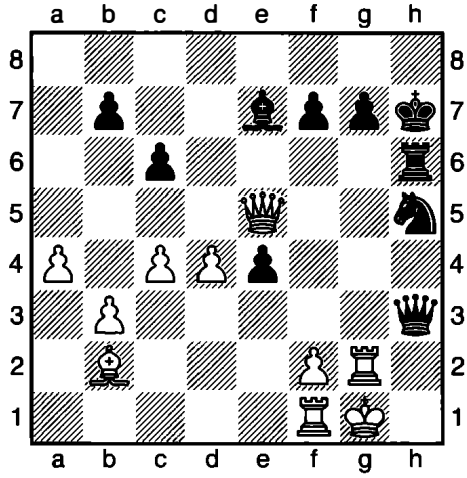
678) White to play (2 points)



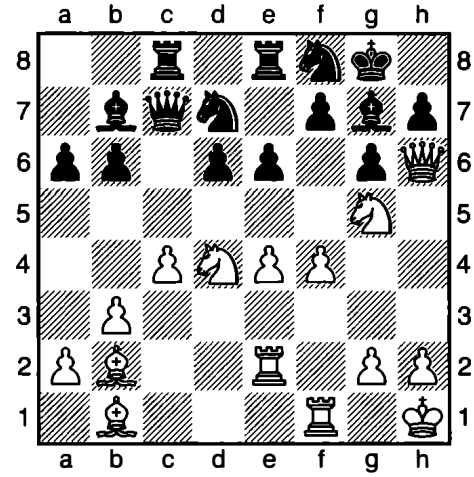
679) Black to play (2 points)



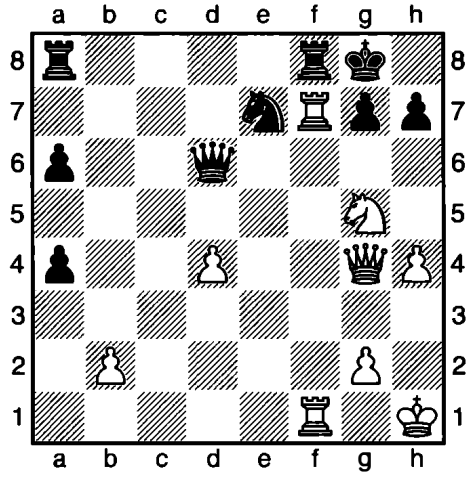
682) White to play (2 points)



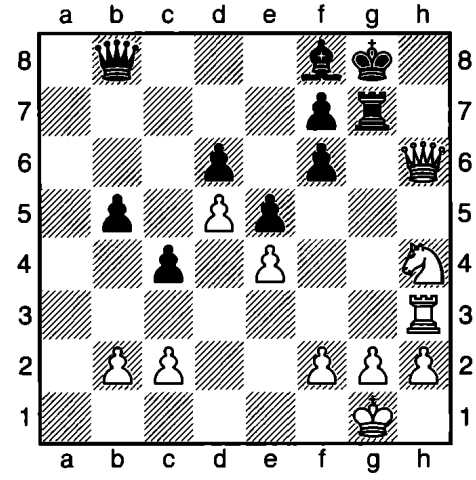
680) Black to play (2 points)



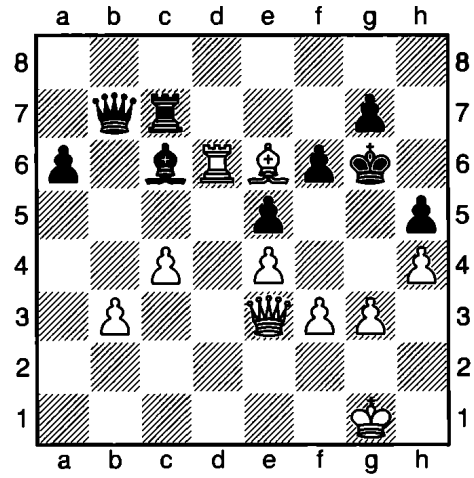
683) White to play (2 points)



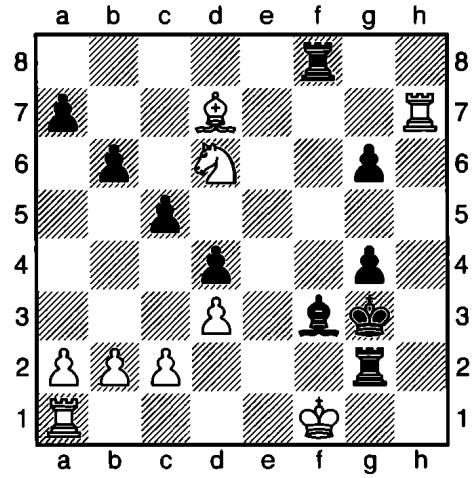
681) White to play (2 points)



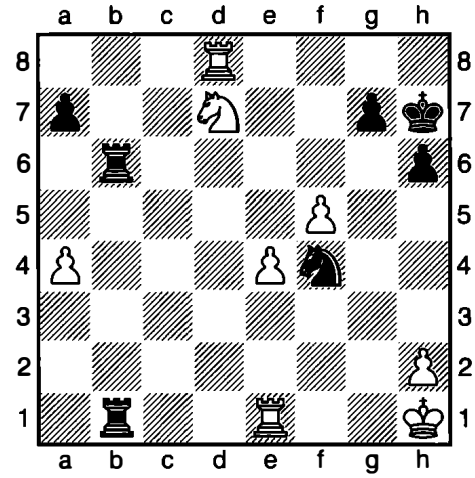
684) White to play (2 points)



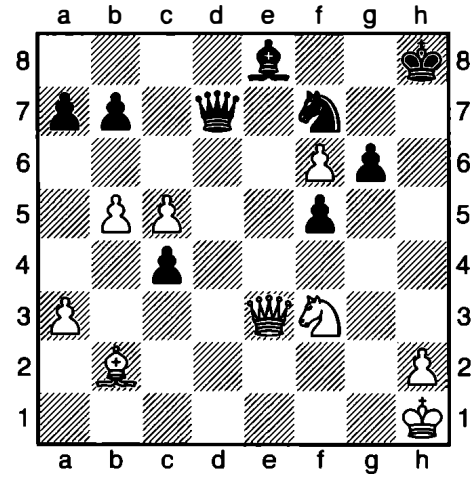
685) White to play (2 points)



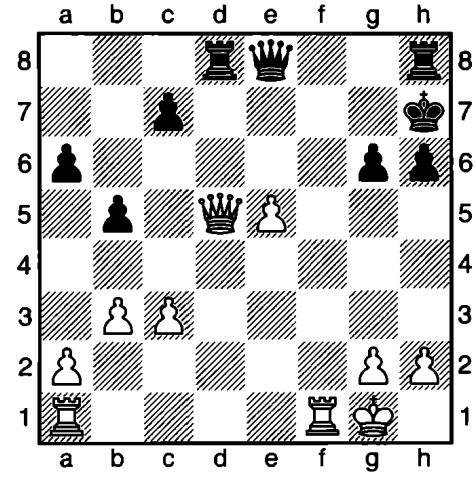
688) Black to play (3 points)



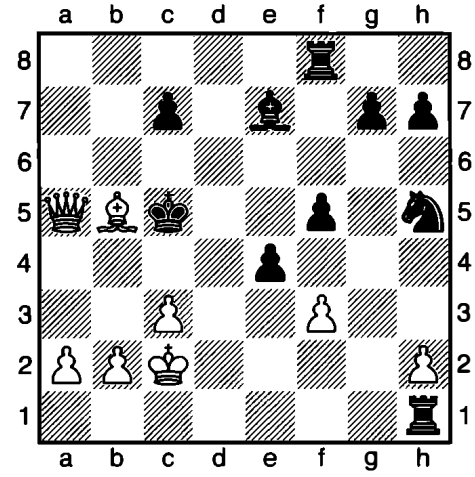
686) White to play (2 points)



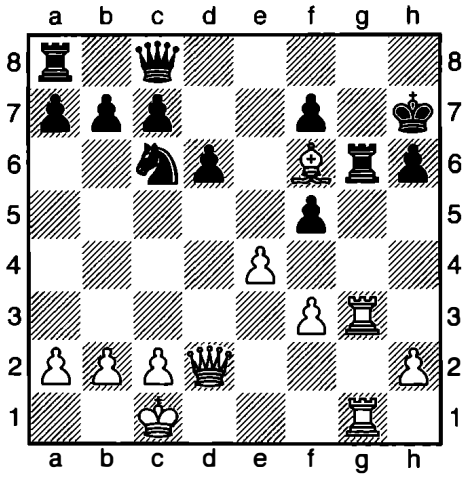
689) White to play (3 points)



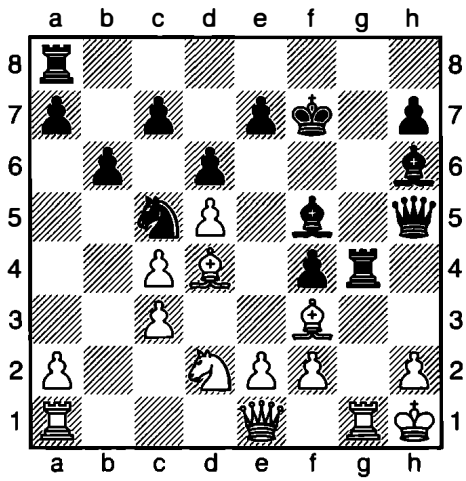
687) White to play (3 points)



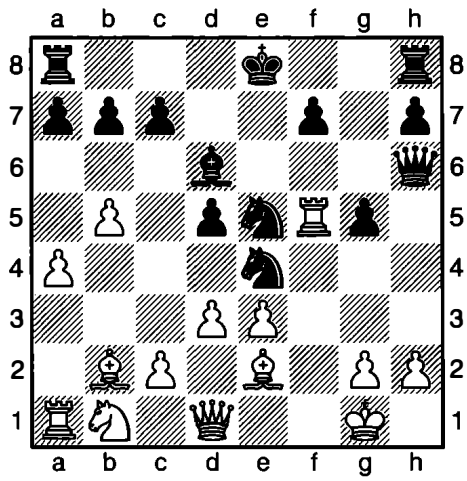
690) White to play (3 points)



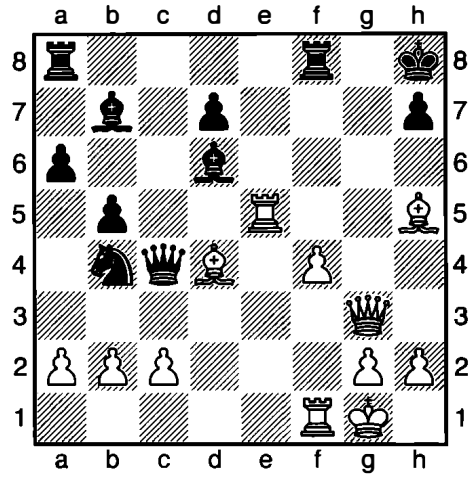
691) White to play (3 points)



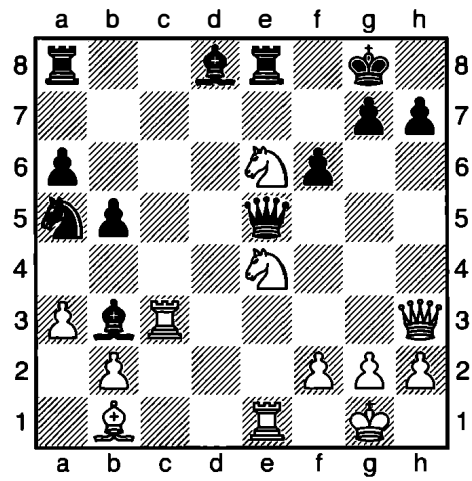
692) Black to play (3 points)



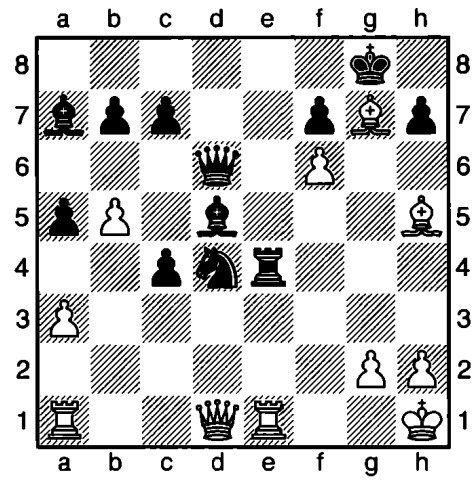
693) Black to play (3 points)



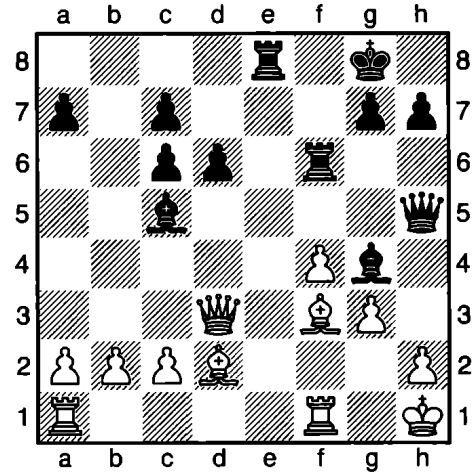
694) White to play (3 points)



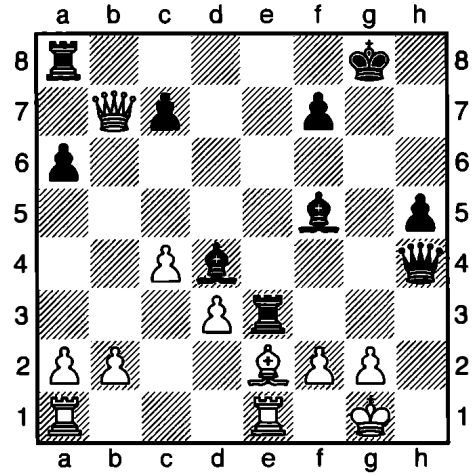
695) White to play (3 points)



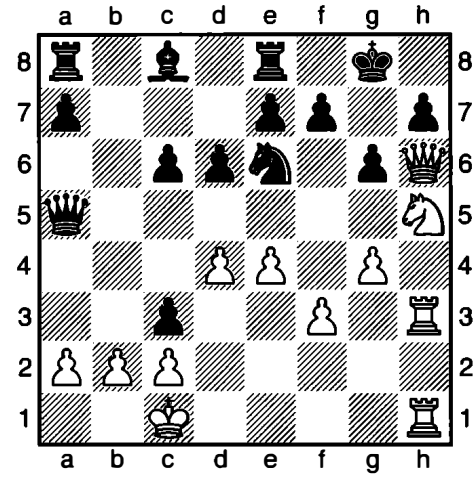
696) Black to play (3 points)



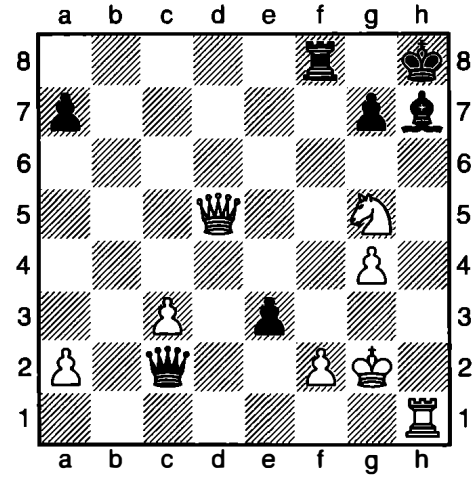
697) Black to play (3 points)



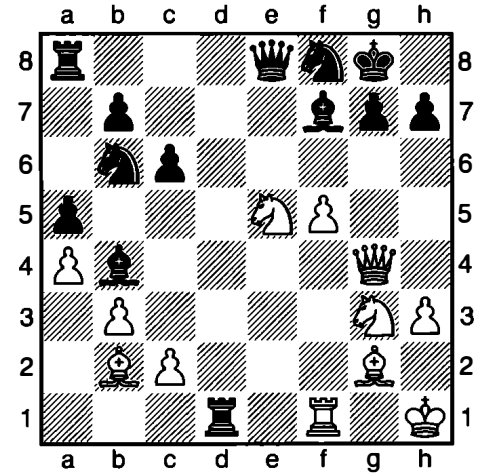
700) Black to play (3 points)



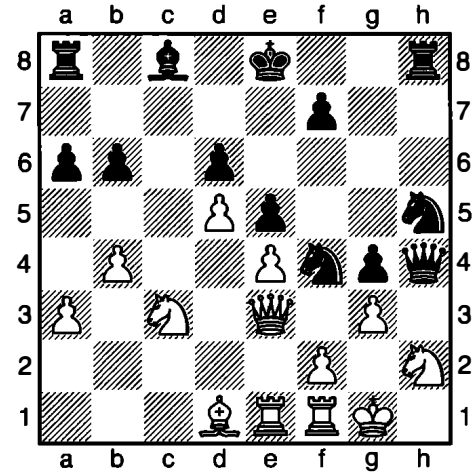
698) White to play (3 points)



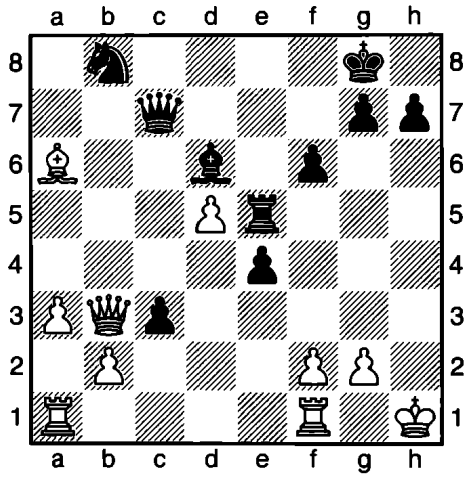
701) White to play (3 points)



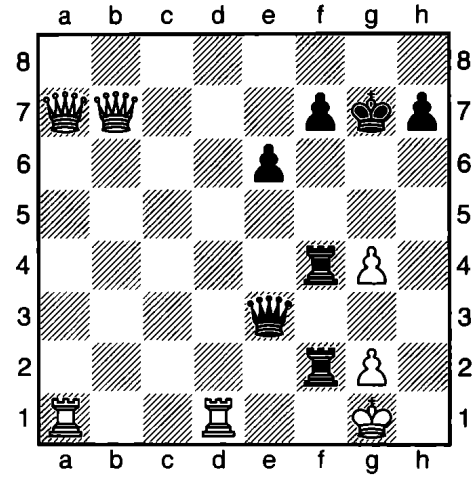
699) White to play (3 points)



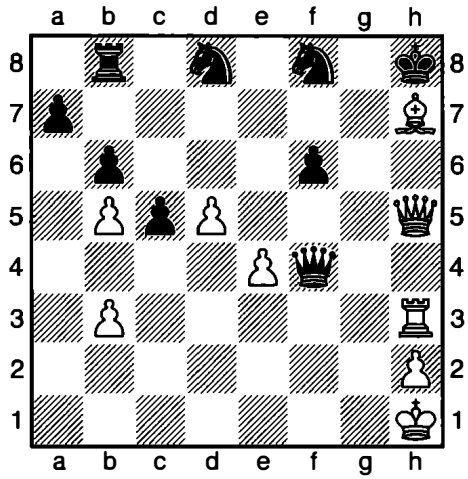
702) Black to play (3 points)



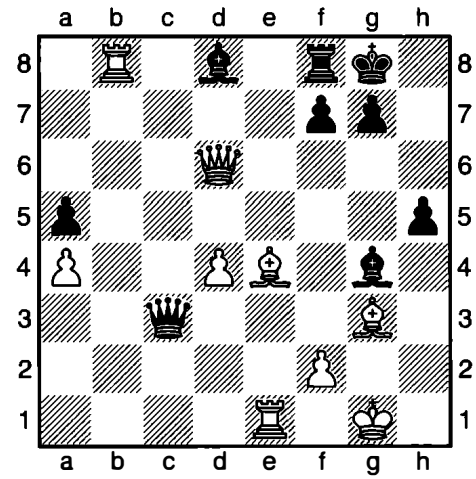
703) Black to play (3 points)



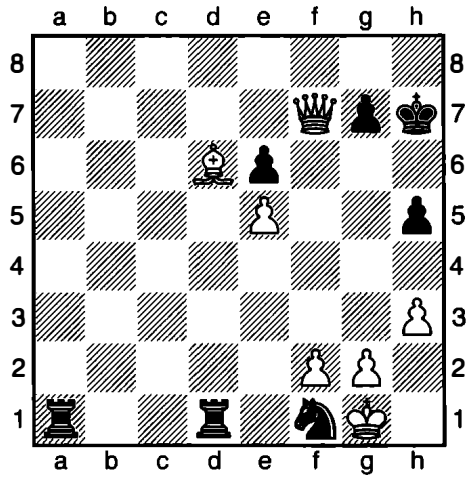
706) Black to play (3 points)



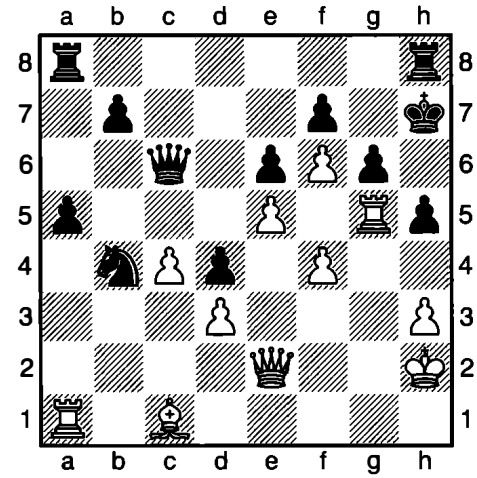
704) White to play (3 points)



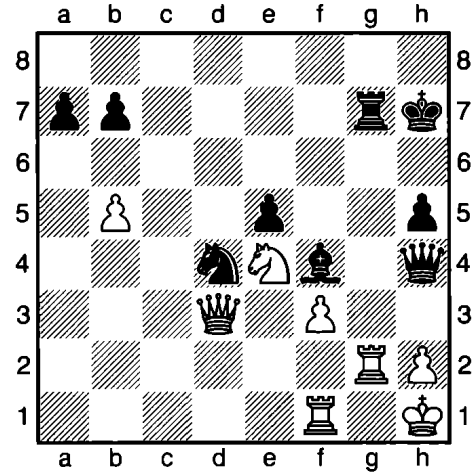
707) White to play (3 points)



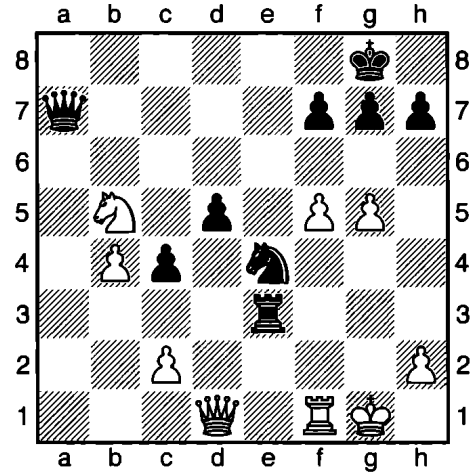
705) Black to play (3 points)



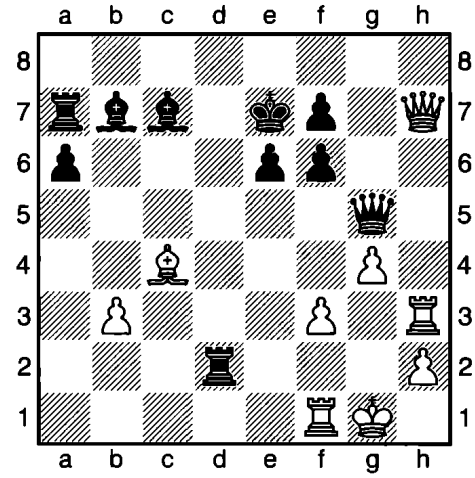
708) White to play (3 points)



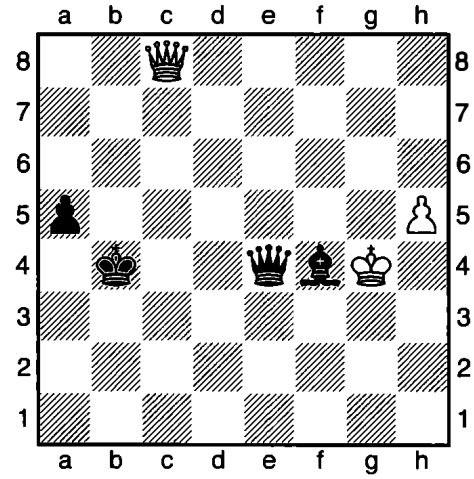
709) White to play (3 points)



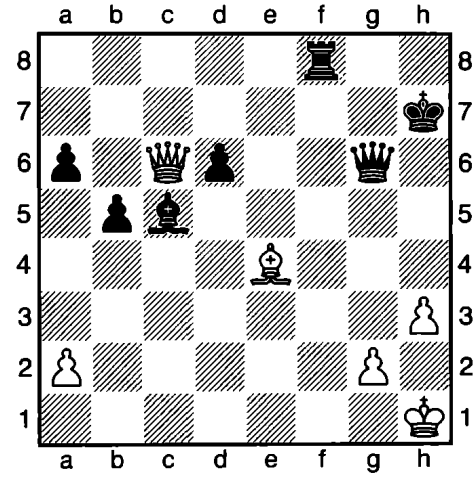
712) Black to play (3 points)



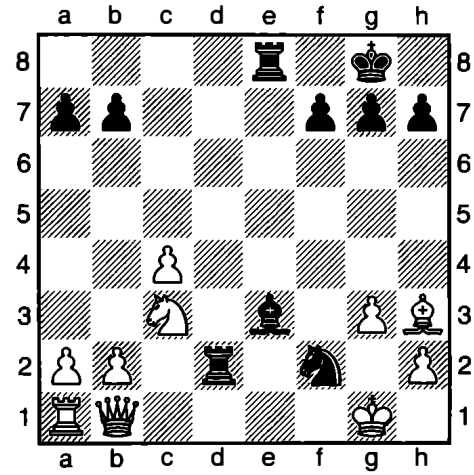
710) Black to play (3 points)



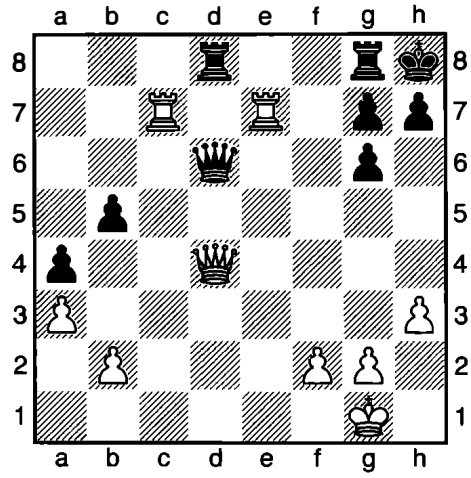
713) Black to play (3 points)



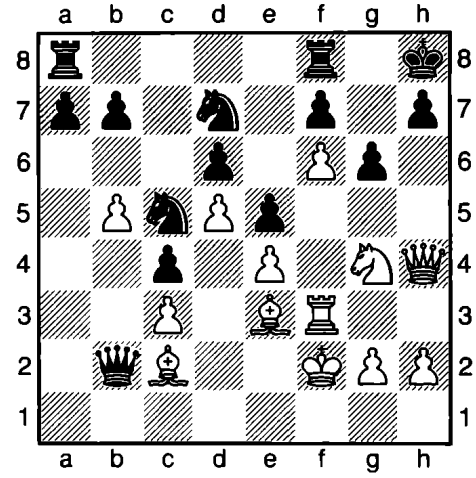
711) Black to play (3 points)



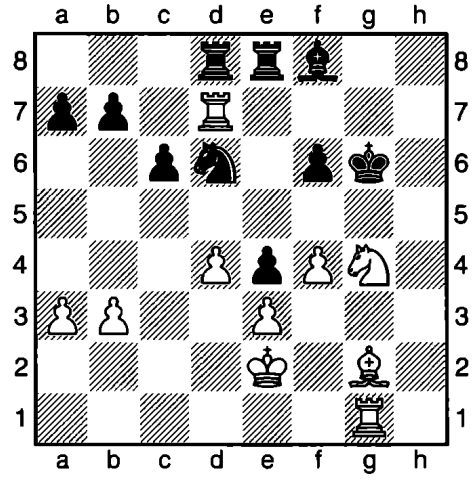
714) Black to play (3 points)



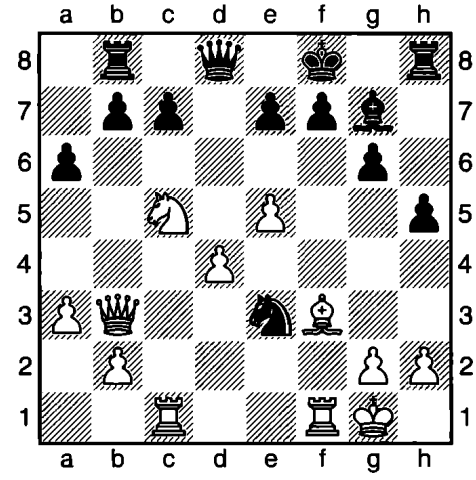
715) White to play (4 points)



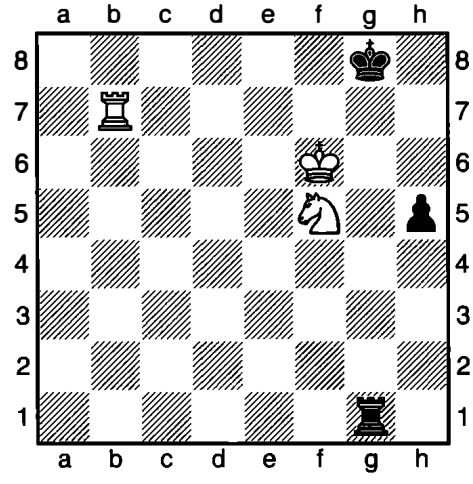
718) White to play (4 points)



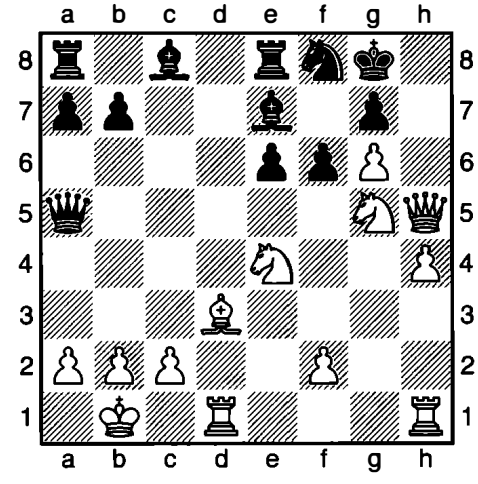
716) White to play (4 points)



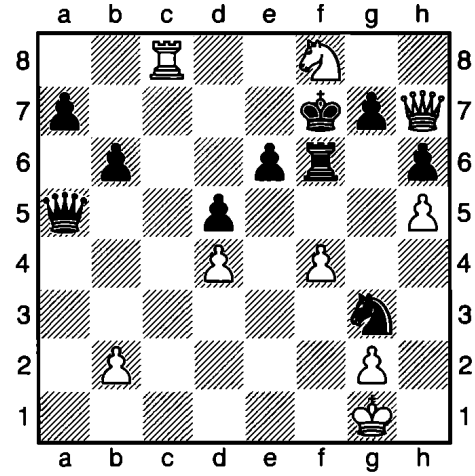
719) White to play (4 points)



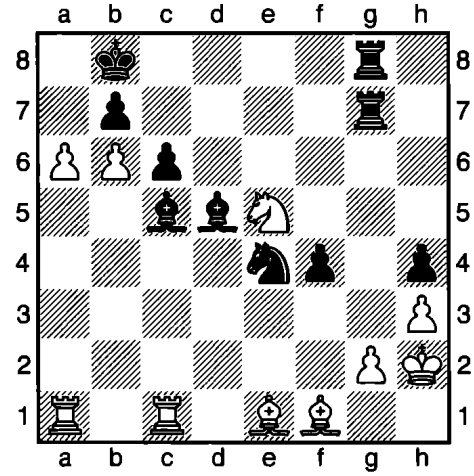
717) White to play (4 points)



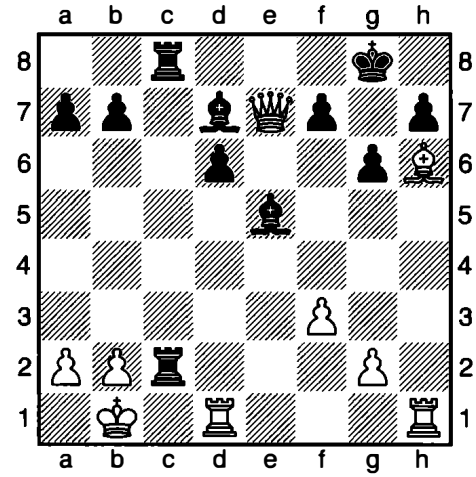
720) White to play (4 points)



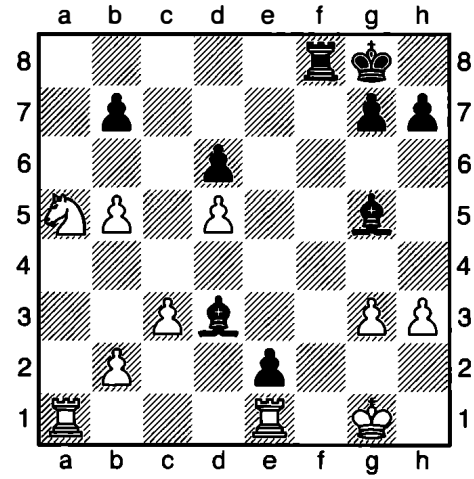
721) White to play (4 points)



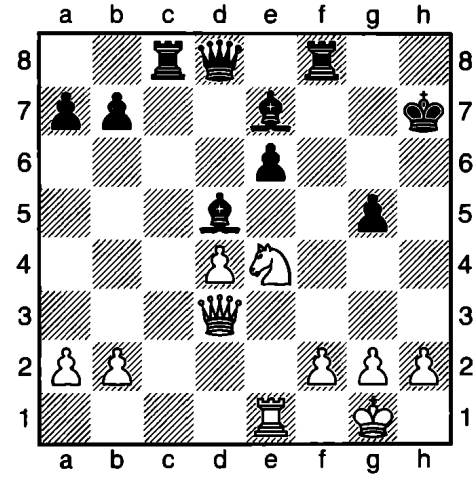
724) Black to play (5 points)



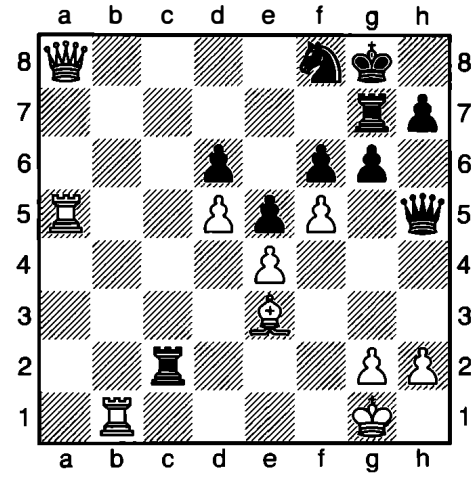
722) Black to play (4 points)



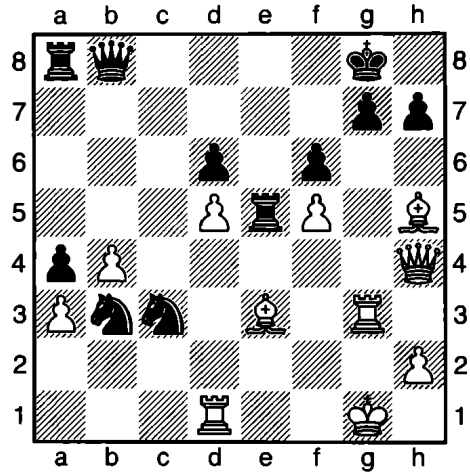
725) Black to play (5 points)



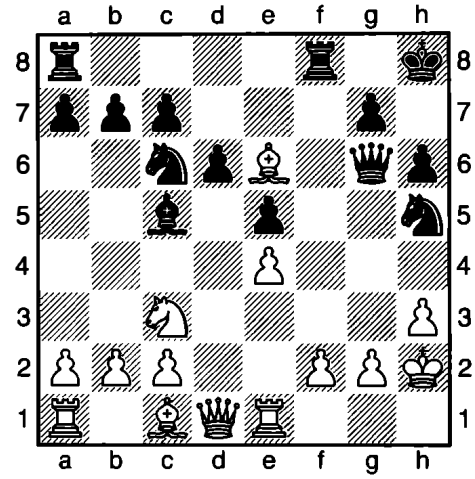
723) White to play (5 points)



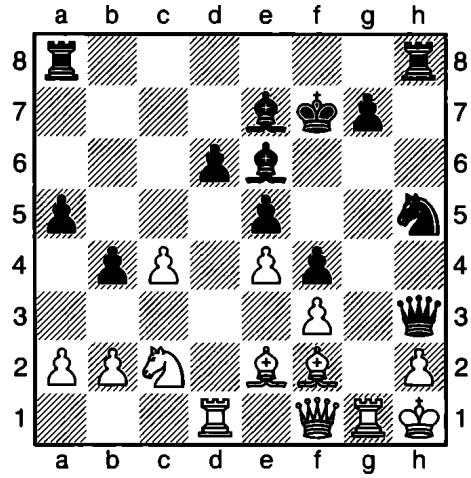
726) Black to play (5 points)



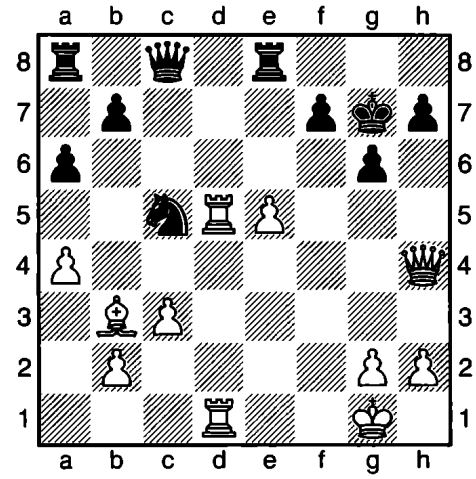
727) White to play (5 points)



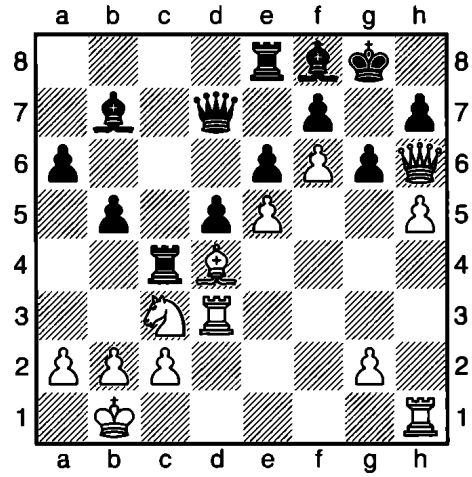
730) Black to play (5 points)



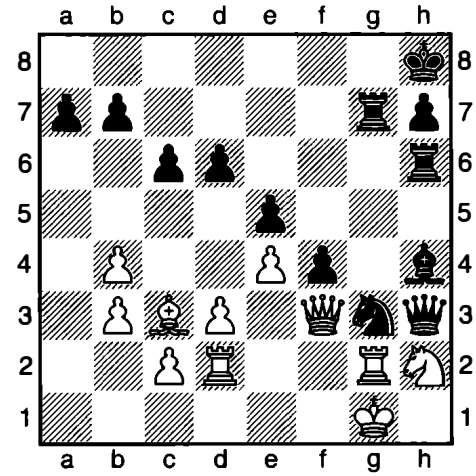
728) Black to play (5 points)



731) White to play (5 points)



729) White to play (5 points)



732) Black to play (5 points)

Solutions for Mate Involving Discovered or Double Check

643) Schachinger – J. Stocko
Pula 2009
1 ♕g5+! 1-0
1...♖xg5 2 hxg5#.

644) Ji. Kuba – F. Rous
Czech Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♗g8++ ♔h8
1...♔h6 is also met by 2 ♖h7#.
2 ♖h7#

645) P. Carlsson – Ruijgrok
Wijk aan Zee 2008
1 ♗e7+ 1-0
The correct check, preventing the king from escaping to f8, and mating after 1...♔h6 2 ♕g5#.

646) D. Poleshchuk – Hapuarachchi
World Under-18 Ch, Kemer 2009
1 ♘f5+ 1-0
It's mate after 1...♗h5 2 ♕g7# or 1...♔g8 2 ♕g7#.

647) Je. Alvarez Solis – R. Pascual Arevalo
Asturias Team Ch 1997/8
1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖g6#

648) V. Matta – A. Das
New Delhi 2009
1 ♖f8++ 1-0
It doesn't matter that White's queen is attacked, as a double check forces Black to move his king, allowing White to mate after 1...♔g7 2 ♕f7# or 1...♔xf8 2 ♗h6#.

649) R. Zsifkovits – P. Papp
Zalakaros 2008
1 ♕xh7+! ♕xh7 2 f7+ e5 3 ♗xe5#

650) L. Lenaerts – H. Valenzuela
World Under-10 Ch, Vung Tau 2008
1 ♗g8+! gxh3
Or 1...♔xg8 2 ♕h7#.
2 ♕h7#

651) Tsigelnitsky – Feigin
Vladivostok 2008
1 ♘c5+ ♔f8 2 ♘d7#

652) K. Kulon – M. Ignacz
European Girls Under-18 Team Ch, Szeged 2008
White's queen is attacked, so a double check is necessary:
1 ♗xg7++ 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♕h7#.

653) Greet – J.L. Hanley
British Ch, Liverpool 2008
1 ♘f7++ ♔g8 2 ♘h6#

654) O. Selin – A. Gusev
Donskoi 2001
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
The queen sacrifice eliminates the defensive pawn on h7 and forces mate after 1...♔xh7 2 ♗f8#.

655) Katolikov – E. Stepanov
Russian Under-18 Ch, Rybinsk 2001
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♔xf7 2 ♗xd5#.

656) Soln – Ferčec
Bled 2001
1 ♕xh6+! ♔xh6 2 ♘f6#
The only good square for the knight, as otherwise Black plays 2...♕xh4.

657) A. Dunne – Hoekstra
Philadelphia 2000
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♖g5#.

658) Konjicanin – T. Drmić
Bošnjaci 2006
1 ♖1c6+ 1-0
1...♔e5 2 ♖e7#.

659) Grochocinska – P. Vavra
Marianske Lazne 2009
1...♗h2+ 2 ♔h1 ♗g3+ 0-1
3 ♔g1 ♕h2+ 4 ♔f1 ♕xf2#. This is a standard mating idea which has occurred in thousands of games.

660) Jobava – Erdos
European Ch, Budva 2009
1 ♖g7+ ♔h8 2 ♖h7++ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

661) Hadraba – Cerv
Teplice 2006
1 ♕h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♘g6++ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#

662) Siugirov – Tiurin
Moscow 2008
White's queen is attacked, so only a double check is effective:
1 ♗f6++! ♔xf6
1...♔xh6 2 ♕g5#.
2 ♘g8#

663) Bosboom – G. Rauw
Leeuwarden 2009
1 ♘c6++
1 ♘d7++? ♔c8 lets Black escape.
1...♔a8
1...♔c8 2 ♕b8+ ♔d7 3 ♕d8#.
2 ♕b8#

664) Grüttner – A. Raykhman
Bad Wiessee 2009
1...♗xf3+
This discovered check is decisive even though the rook on g7 is attacked.
2 ♗xg7 ♕g3+ 0-1
3 ♕g2 ♕xg2#.

665) K. O'Brien – D. Salter
European Clubs Cup, Kallithea 2008
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♘xg3+ 0-1
3 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

666) Mari. Stojanović – J. Bojović
Serbian Women's Team Ch, Subotica 2008
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♘f6++ 1-0
It's mate after 2...♔h8 3 ♖h3# or 2...♔h6 3 ♖h3#.

667) Egri – Z. Korpas
Hungarian Team Ch 2004/5
A preliminary sacrifice draws Black's king into position for a lethal double check.
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h5++ 1-0
2...♔g7 3 ♖h7#.

668) M. Henriksen – Bronstein
Gausdal 1994
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖f2++ 3 ♔h3
3 ♔h1 is also met by 3...♖h2#.
3...♖h2#

669) L.B. Hansen – Mortensen
Vejle 1994
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♗g8++
2 ♗g6++ also mates, but more slowly.
1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♖h7#.

670) C. Oger – Habunek
Elancourt 2005
1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖g5++ 1-0
2...♔h6 3 ♗g7#.

671) Ghannoum – H. Bentsen
Gausdal 2005
1 ♕g8+! ♔xg8 2 ♘e7++ ♔f8 3 ♘g6#

672) Viot – Marcelin
Paris 1993
1 ♕g8+! ♔xg8 2 ♗e6++ 1-0
2...♔h8 3 ♖g8#.

673) I. Gerasimov – A.F. Sadykov
Kazan 2007
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♘g6+ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

674) Nathansky – Straslipka
Klatovy 2003
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖xf8+ 1-0
2...♗e4 3 ♗xe4#.

675) B. Vakhidov – Ravi Haria
Uxbridge 2009
1...♗g3+ 2 ♔g1 ♕h2+ 0-1
3 ♔f1 ♕h1#.

676) Morchiashvili – L. Bregadze
Georgian Ch, Tbilisi 2008
Instead of recapturing the queen, with a likely draw, Black forced mate using a double check:
1...♘xf3++ 2 ♔f2 ♖xd2+ 0-1
3 ♔xf3 ♗g4#.

677) Matrosov – K. Senkevich
St Petersburg 2008
The normal smothered mate idea doesn't work here as Black's queen is covering f7, but White can mate by a different method:
1 ♘d8+! 1-0
1...♔h8 (1...♔f8 2 ♕e8#) 2 ♕e8+ ♗f8 3 ♕xf8#.

678) J. Reeve – Gr. Huber
Edmonton 2008
1 ♕g6+! ♕xg6
1...♔h8 2 fxg7+ ♖xg7 3 ♕xg7# and 1...fxg6 2 hxg6# are no better.
2 hxg6#

679) Doncea – Vedmediuc
Timisoara 2008
1...♗f4+ 2 ♔h4 ♗e5+ 0-1
3 ♔g5 ♗f6#.

680) S.R. Chowdhury – Wang Rui
Asian Ch, Hyderabad 2005
1...♕h1+ 0-1
2 ♔xh1 ♘g3++ 3 ♔g1 ♖h1# (or 3...♘e2#).

681) P. Berg – D. Izso
Budapest 2003
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7
1...♔h8 2 ♖xh7+ ♔g8 3 ♘e6+ ♔xh7 4 ♕g7#.
2 ♘e6++ 1-0

Black is mated after 2...♔h6 3 ♕g5# or 2...♔h8 3 ♕g7#.

682) Ballai – G. Meszaros
Hungarian Team Ch 2003/4
1 ♘e5++ 1-0
1...♔g7 (or else 2 ♕g6 mates at once) 2 ♕g6+ ♔h8 (2...♔f8 3 ♕f7#) 3 ♘f7#.

683) Orso – D. Lutz
Miercurea Ciuc 2001
1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♘f5++ 1-0
2...♔g8 3 ♘h6#.

684) Suto – A. Paal
Fuzesabony 2001
1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 ♘g6++ ♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

685) T. Liebold – Ho. Müller
Germany (team event) 1999/00
1 ♕g5+!
This unexpected sacrifice opens the sixth rank and leads to mate by discovered check.
1...fxg5
1...♔h7 2 ♕xh5#.
2 ♗g8#

686) Jo. Toth – Peczeli
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♘f8+ 1-0
1...♔g8 2 ♘g6+ ♔f7 (2...♔h7 3 ♖h8#) 3 ♖f8#.

687) A. Goldsmith – M. Nyberg
Queenstown 2009
1 ♖f7+ ♔g8
1...♕xf7 2 ♕xf7#.
2 ♖d7+! 1-0
This is the only check that works, as White must cut off Black's attack on the white queen. It's mate after 2...♔f8 3 ♖f1+ ♕f7 4 ♕xf7#.

688) I. Starostits – Espinosa Aranda
La Roda 2009
1...♗e2++ 0-1
2 ♔e1 ♖f1+ 3 ♔d2 ♗f3#. This mating line involves both a double check and a discovered check.

689) Saifullin – Ig. Golubev
Moscow 2008

White sacrifices his queen to release the f6-pawn:

1 ♕h6+! ♘xh6
1...♔g8 2 ♕g7#.
2 f7+ ♔h7 3 ♘g5#

690) Van der Weide – G. Lorscheid
Cappelle la Grande 2008

Which of the many discovered checks is correct?

1 ♗c4+! 1-0
This is the right choice, and leads to mate after 1...♔xc4 2 b3#, 1...♔d6 2 ♕d5# or 1...♔c6 2 ♕b5+ ♔d6 3 ♕d5#.

691) E. Morozov – Vi. Poliansky
Voronezh Ch 2008

1 ♕xh6+! 1-0
1...♖xh6 (1...♔xh6 2 ♖h3#) 2 ♖g7+ ♔h8 3 ♖g8++ ♔h7 4 ♖1g7#.

692) K. Cottrell – M. Aigner
Las Vegas 2007

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 3 ♔g2 ♗h3+ 0-1
4 ♔h2 ♗f1#.

693) Grabmeier – Mozny
Deggendorf 2006

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♘f3++ 3 ♔h3
3 ♔h1 gives Black a choice of mates by 3...♘f2# or 3...♘g3#.
3...♘f2#

694) R. Bozzo – D. Madsen
Gausdal 1992

1 ♕g7+!!
A discovered check is less effective, as Black can take White's bishop with check, but this queen sacrifice transforms the discovered check into a double check.
1...♔xg7 2 ♖g5++
Now Black must move his king.
2...♔h6 3 ♗g7#

695) Milkin – Gerasko
Voronezh 2006

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7
1...♔f7 allows mate in a few moves; for example, 2 ♕xg7+ ♔xe6 3 ♘c5+ ♔d5 (3...♔d6 4 ♕d7#) 4 ♕d7+ ♕d6 5 ♖d3+ ♔c4 (5...♔xc5 6 ♕xd6+ ♔c4 7 ♕d4#) 6 ♖c1+ ♗c2 7 ♖xc2#.
2 ♘xf6++ ♔h6
2...♔h8 3 ♖h3+ is the same.
3 ♖h3+ 1-0
It's mate next move.

696) Dinckel – E. Kahn
Budapest 2000

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 3 ♔g1
3 ♔g3 ♘f5#.
3...♘e2++ 4 ♔f1 ♘g3#

697) S. Walter – Mat. Wittmann
Oberbayern Ch 1996

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 3 ♔g2 ♗h3+ 4 ♔h2 0-1
4...♗xf1+ 5 ♗h5 ♖xh5#.

698) Rai. Crespo – Escoms Monzo
Valencia Ch 1996

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♘f6++ ♔g7 1-0
3 ♘xe8+ ♔f8 4 ♖h8#.

699) Letelier – F. Rosa
Chilean Ch, Viña del Mar 1997

1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♘g4+ ♔g8
Black can delay mate by giving up pieces on the long diagonal, but the result is the same.
3 ♘h6#

700) P. Tomba – S. Garofalo
Salsomaggiore Terme 2005

1...♕xf2+!
Other moves, such as 1...♖h3, give Black a decisive attack, but the move played leads to the quickest mate.
2 ♔xf2
2 ♔h1 ♕h4+ 3 ♔g1 ♖f3#.
2...♖h3+ 0-1
3 ♔f1 ♖h1#.

701) Cselotei – Zala
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♘f7+
This is a version of the familiar smothered mate pattern.

1...♔g8
1...♖xf7 2 ♕d8+ ♖f8 3 ♕xf8#.
2 ♘h6++ ♔h8 3 ♕g8+! ♗xg8
3...♖xg8 4 ♘f7# is also mate.
4 ♘f7#

702) Faulkes – Ju. Hadi
British League (4NCL) 2008/9
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♘xg3+ 3 ♔g1
3 ♔xg3 ♖h3#.
3...♖h1#

703) Ge. Klein – T. Zojer
Vienna 2006
1...♖h5+ 2 ♔g1 ♗h2+ 3 ♔h1 ♗g1+! 0-1
4 ♔xg1 ♕h2#.

704) J. Ashwin – R. Djavadov
Baku 2008
1 ♗g6+
The correct square, covering f7 and so preventing 1...♔g8 due to 2 ♕h8#.
1...♔g7 2 ♕h8+ 1-0
2...♔xg6 3 ♕g8#.

705) Kosmo – Nyysti
Jyväskylä 2008
1...♘g3+ 2 ♔h2 h4! 3 fxg3
3 ♕h5+ ♘xh5 4 g3 only delays mate by a few moves.
3...♖h1#

706) Glek – Naiditsch
Mainz 2008
1...♖xg2++! 2 ♔xg2
2 ♔h1 ♕h3#.
2...♖f2+ 0-1
White resigned in view of the lines 3 ♔h1 ♕h3+ 4 ♔g1 ♕h2# and 3 ♔g1 ♕g3+ 4 ♔h1 ♕h2#.

707) Seret – S. Ferkingstad
Gausdal 2005
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♗d6+ ♔e8
2...♔g8 3 ♖xd8#.
3 ♗c6#

708) Hidalgo Santana – Aguirre Lorenzo
Santa Cruz de Tenerife 2004
It doesn't look likely that mate will be delivered by the bishop on c1, but just watch what happens.
1 ♕xh5+! gxh5
1...♔g8 2 ♖xg6+ fxg6 3 ♕xg6+ ♔f8 4 ♕g7+ ♔e8 5 ♕e7#.
2 ♖g7+ 1-0
2...♔h6 3 f5#.

709) Shikalov – Y. Ermakov
Kimry Ch 2004
1 ♘f6++ ♔h8
1...♔h6 2 ♕h7+! ♖xh7 3 ♘g8# is a second attractive mate.
2 ♕h7+! 1-0
2...♖xh7 3 ♖g8#.

710) Yarulin – Makhnev
Kimry 2004
1...♕xg4+! 2 fxg4
2 ♖g3 ♗xg3 also leads to a quick mate; e.g., 3 fxg4 ♖g2+ 4 ♔h1 ♖xh2++ 5 ♔g1 ♖xh7 followed by mate on h1.
2...♖g2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖g3+! 0-1
It's mate in three more moves.

711) Morozevich – Tkachev
Moscow (blitz) 2006
Although Black's queen is pinned, it still plays a part in the attack by defending his bishop in the mating position.
1...♖f1+ 2 ♔h2 ♗g1+ 3 ♔h1 ♗f2+ 4 ♔h2 ♗g3#

712) Marin – Yakovenko
Internet (playchess.com) 2006
1...♖g3++ 2 ♔h1 ♕g1+! 3 ♖xg1 ♘f2#

713) Shanava – Paichadze
Georgian Ch, Tbilisi 2006
Which discovered check leads to mate?
1...♗e5+ 2 ♔g5
2 ♔h3 ♕f3+ 3 ♔h4 ♗f6#.
2...♕f4+ 0-1
3 ♔g6 ♕f6+ 4 ♔h7 ♕g7#.

714) G. Pieroni – Abergel
French Team Ch, Clichy 2006
1...♘g4+

The correct check.

2 ♔f1

2 ♔h1 ♖xh2#.

2...♘xh2+ 0-1

3 ♔e1 ♘f3+ 4 ♔f1 ♖f2#.

715) Z. Andriasian – Nikolić

European Ch, Budva 2009

1 ♖xg7!

Threatening 2 ♖xh7#, so Black cannot take the queen.

1...♕xc7

A good try that almost succeeds. 1...♖d7 allows 2 ♖gxd7+ ♕xd4 3 ♖xh7#.

2 ♖d7+! 1-0

The key idea, cutting off the attack on the white queen, and mating after 2...♖g7 3 ♕xg7#.

716) Joa. Iglesias – C. Stahl

French Team Ch 2007/8

There are two white pieces between the rook on g1 and Black's king. By sacrificing one, White can give a double check with the other.

1 ♘e5+! ♔f5

1...♔h6 2 ♖h1# and 1...♖xe5 2 ♗xe4++ ♔h5 3 ♖h7+ ♗h6 4 ♗f3+ ♔h4 5 ♖xh6+ ♖h5 6 ♖xh5# also lead to mate.

The main line runs 1...fxe5 2 ♗xe4++ ♔h5 (2...♔f6 3 ♖g6#) and now White can mate in various ways; for example, 3 ♖h7+ ♗h6 4 ♗f3+ ♔h4 5 ♖xh6# or 3 ♖g5+ ♔h4 4 ♖h7+ ♗h6 5 ♖xh6#.

2 ♗h3#

717) Erdos – A. Sarić

Nova Gorica 2008

1 ♘h6+ ♔h8

1...♔f8 2 ♖b8#.

2 ♘f7+ ♔h7

2...♔g8 3 ♖b8+ ♔h7 4 ♖h8#.

3 ♘g5++ 1-0

It's mate after 3...♔g8 4 ♖b8# or 3...♔h6 4 ♖h7#.

718) K. Kluss – Nippgen

2nd Bundesliga 2003/4

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♔g8 3 ♘h6+ ♔h7 4 ♘f5+ 1-0

4...♔g8 5 ♘e7#.

719) Koerant – Megaritis

Athens 2006

1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7 2 ♗d5++ ♔e8 3 ♗f7+ ♔f8 4 ♘e6#

720) B. Gaulin – T. Peyre

Fouesnant 2007

1 ♕h7+! ♘xh7 2 gxh7+ ♔h8

2...♔f8 3 h8♕#.

3 ♘f7+ ♔xh7 4 ♘xf6#

721) N. Dobrev – Boichev

Sunny Beach 2005

1 ♕g8+! ♔e7

The key line is 1...♔xg8 2 ♘g6+ ♖f8 (or 2...♔f7 3 ♖f8#) 3 ♖xf8+ ♔h7 4 ♖h8#.

2 ♘g6+

2 ♕xg7+ also mates quickly.

2...♖xg6

2...♔d6 3 ♕d8#.

3 ♕e8+ 1-0

Black is mated after 3...♔f6 4 ♕f8# or 3...♔d6 4 ♖c6#.

722) L. Damjanović – A. Dimitrijević

Obrenovac 2004

1...♖xb2+ 2 ♔a1 ♖b1++!

The rook must move so as to give double check since otherwise White can play 3 ♕xe5.

0-1

3 ♔xb1 ♗f5+ and mate next move.

723) A. Braun – Buhmann

German Ch, Saarbrücken 2009

1 ♘xg5++!

1 ♘f6++? ♔g7 gets White nowhere.

1...♔h6

1...♔g7 2 ♕h7+ ♔f6 3 ♕h6+ ♔f5 4 ♖e5+ ♔g4 5 h3+ ♔f4 6 ♕h4#.

2 ♕h7+! ♔xg5 3 ♕g7+ ♔h5

This lasts longest. 3...♔f5 4 ♖e5+ ♔f4 5 ♕g3# and 3...♔h4 4 ♕h6+ ♔g4 5 h3+ ♔f5 6 ♖e5# allow a quicker mate.

4 g4+

4 ♖e5+ ♖f5 5 g4+ also mates, but a little more slowly.

4...♔h4 5 ♕h6+ ♔xg4 6 h3+ ♔f5

6...♔f3 7 ♖e3# (or 7 ♕e3#).

7 ♖e5#

724) D. Korth – P. Osthoff

Germany (team event) 2007/8

1...♖xg2+! 2 ♗xg2 ♖xg2+! 3 ♔xg2 ♘d2+

The only good discovered check as the knight must both cover f3 and be able to reach f1.

4 ♘f3 ♗xf3+ 5 ♔h2 ♘f1#

725) Kalies – I. Lauterbach

Women's Bundesliga 2007/8

1...♗e3+ 2 ♔h2

Or 2 ♔h1 ♗e4+ 3 ♔h2 ♖f2+ 4 ♔g1 ♖f1++ 5 ♔h2 ♗g1#.

2...♖f2+ 3 ♔g1

3 ♔h1 ♗e4+ 4 ♔g1 ♖f1++ 5 ♔h2 ♗g1# is the same mate again.

3...♖f1++ 4 ♔g2

4 ♔h2 ♗g1+ 5 ♔g2 ♗e4#.

4...♗e4+ 0-1

5 ♔h2 ♗g1#.

726) A. Kristjansson – Br. Thorfinnsson

Reykjavik 2006

1...♖xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♕e2+

Stronger than 2...gxf5+ 3 ♔f1 ♕f3+ 4 ♗f2, when there is no quick mate for Black.

3 ♗f2

It's also mate after 3 ♔h3 ♕f3+ 4 ♔h4 g5+ 5 ♗xg5 fxg5# or 3 ♔h1 ♕f3+ 4 ♔g1 gxf5+ 5 ♗g5 ♖xg5#.

3...gxf5+ 4 ♔h3

4 ♔h1 ♕f3#.

4...♕g4#

727) Tozer – Cullip

Guildford 1991

1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7

Or 1...♔h8 (1...♔f8 2 ♕xf6#) 2 ♖xh7+ ♔g8 (2...♔xh7 3 ♗g6++ ♔g7 4 ♕h7+ ♔f8 5 ♕f7#) 3 ♖h8+ ♔g7 (3...♔xh8 4 ♗g6+ is the same as the previous bracket) 4 ♗h6+ ♔xh8 5 ♕xf6+ ♔h7 6 ♕g7#.

2 ♗h6+!

The second sacrifice draws Black's king into a position which permits a discovered check.

2...♔xh6

2...♔h8 3 ♕xf6+ and 2...♔g8 3 ♕g4+ also lead to mate.

3 ♗g6+ 1-0

3...♔g7 4 ♕xh7+ ♔f8 5 ♕f7#.

728) Gauf – L. Winter

Erlensee 2007

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♘g3+ 0-1

3 ♕h3 (or 3 ♔g2 ♗h3+ 4 ♔h2 ♗xf1#) 3...♖xh3+! (3...♗xh3 is enough to win, but there is no mate after 4 ♖xg3) 4 ♔g2 ♖h2+! 5 ♔xh2 ♖h8+ 6 ♔g2 ♗h3+ 7 ♔h2 ♗f1#.

729) J. Sohier – Fleurent

Paris 2002

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 hxg6++ ♔g8

2...♔xg6 3 ♖g3+ ♔f5 4 ♖f1#.

3 g7!

Threatening 4 ♖h8#.

3...♗xg7 4 ♖g3

There is no way Black can escape mate by ♖xg7+ followed by ♖h8#.

4...♔f8 5 ♖xg7 1-0

It's mate next move by ♖h8#.

730) A. Flocco – J.F. Campos

Buenos Aires 1992

1...♕xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♖xf2+ 3 ♔h1

3 ♔g1 ♖e2+ (cutting off the rook's guard of e3 and so preventing an effective interposition by ♗e3) 4 ♔f1 (4 ♔h1 ♘g3#) 4...♘g3#.

3...♘g3+ 4 ♔g1 ♖d2+ 0-1

Now this is even quicker than moving to e2, since it's mate next move.

731) O. Wegener – C. Langer

North Rhine-Westphalia Ch 2002

1 ♕f6+ ♔g8

1...♔h6 2 ♖1d4 leads to a quick mate; for example, 2...♕f5 3 ♖h4+ ♕h5 4 ♖xh5+ ♔xh5 5 ♖d4 (threatening to mate on h4) 5...g5 6 ♗xf7#.

2 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7

2...♔h8 3 ♕f6+ ♔g8 4 ♖d7+ ♘xb3 5 ♕g7#.

3 ♖d7++ ♔f8 4 ♖f1#

732) Milla de Marco – I. Argandona

Mondariz 2000

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♖xh2

Black also mates after 2 ♔xh2 ♗f6+ (or any other square) 3 ♔g1 ♖h1+ 4 ♔f2 ♖f1# or 2 ♔f2 ♘xe4++ 3 ♔e2 (3 ♔f1 ♕h1+ 4 ♔e2 ♘xc3#) 3...♘xc3+ 4 ♔f1 ♕h1+ 5 ♖g1 ♕xg1#.

2...♘e2++ 3 ♔f1 ♖g1+ 0-1

4 ♔xe2 ♖e1#.

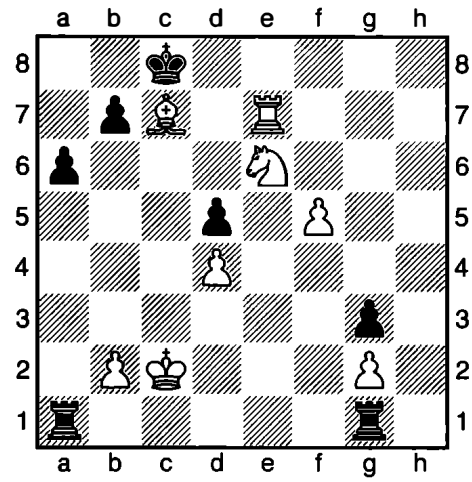
Score-Chart for Mate Involving Discovered or Double Check

Position number	Points	Score
643	1	
644	1	
645	1	
646	1	
647	1	
648	1	
649	1	
650	1	
651	1	
652	1	
653	1	
654	1	
655	1	
656	1	
657	1	
658	1	
659	2	
660	2	
661	2	
662	2	
663	2	
664	2	
665	2	
666	2	
667	2	
668	2	
669	2	
670	2	
671	2	
672	2	
673	2	
674	2	
675	2	
676	2	
677	2	
678	2	
679	2	
680	2	
681	2	
682	2	
683	2	
684	2	
685	2	
686	2	
687	3	
688	3	
689	3	
690	3	
691	3	
692	3	
693	3	
694	3	
695	3	
696	3	
697	3	
698	3	
699	3	

Position number	Points	Score
700	3	
701	3	
702	3	
703	3	
704	3	
705	3	
706	3	
707	3	
708	3	
709	3	
710	3	
711	3	
712	3	
713	3	
714	3	
715	4	
716	4	
717	4	
718	4	
719	4	
720	4	
721	4	
722	4	
723	5	
724	5	
725	5	
726	5	
727	5	
728	5	
729	5	
730	5	
731	5	
732	5	
Total	**238**	

14 Hunting the King

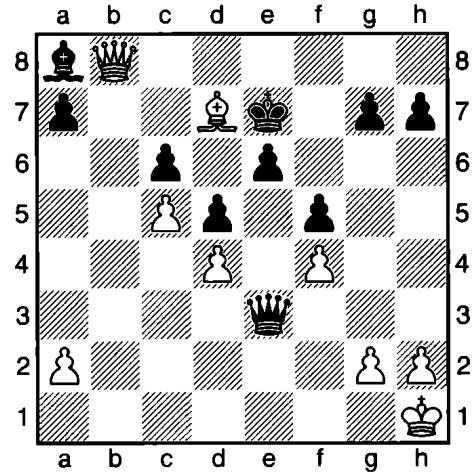
We have so far looked mostly at mating ideas which involve finishing the enemy king off more or less where it stands, but sometimes it's necessary to chase the king across the board before the execution can occur. We call such pursuits *king-hunts*. They are lots of fun to play, as with check after check you drive the helpless king mercilessly to its fate.



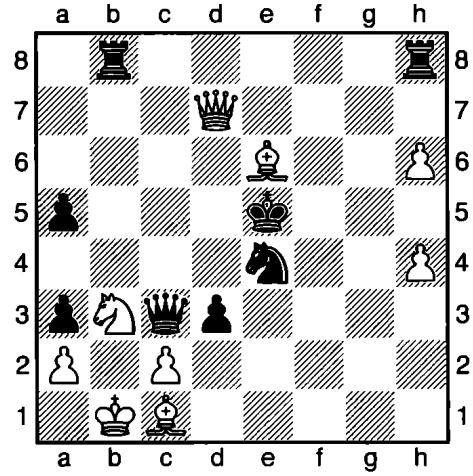
L. Vajda – Geirnaert
Belgian Team Ch 2007/8

Here White won by **1 ♖e8+ ♔d7 2 ♖d8+ ♔c6** (2...♔e7 is met by 3 ♗d6+ ♔f6 4 ♖f8#) **3 ♖d6+ ♔b5 4 ♖b6+ ♔c4** (Black is also mated after 4...♔a5 5 ♖xb7+ ♔a4 6 ♘c5# or 4...♔a4 5 ♘c5+ ♔a5, when White can finish by 6 ♖xb7# or 6 b4#) **5 b3#**.

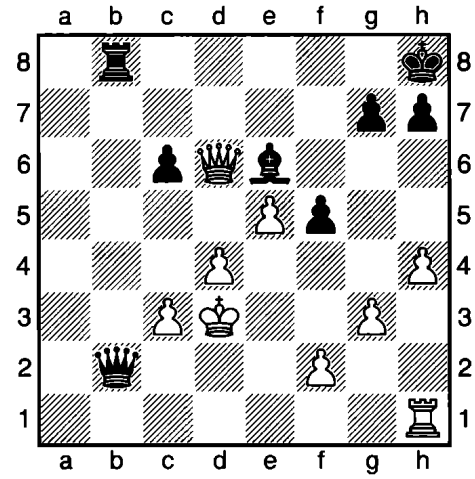
A king-hunt takes time, so the solutions in this chapter are longer than usual, but this shouldn't put you off tackling the positions. Working out king-hunts is excellent calculating practice, as well as teaching you how to hound the king to its doom.



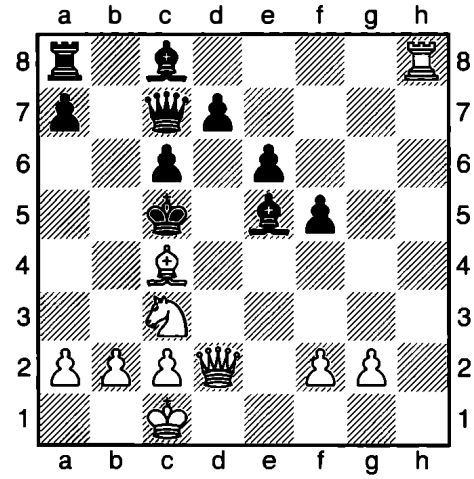
733) White to play (3 points)



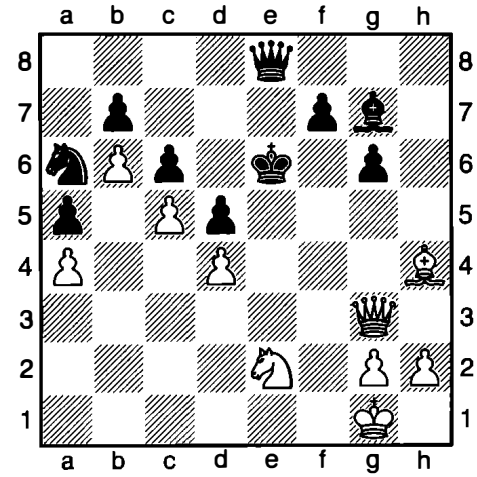
736) White to play (4 points)



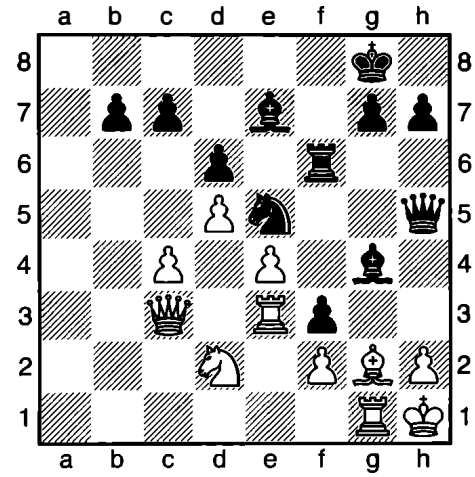
734) Black to play (3 points)



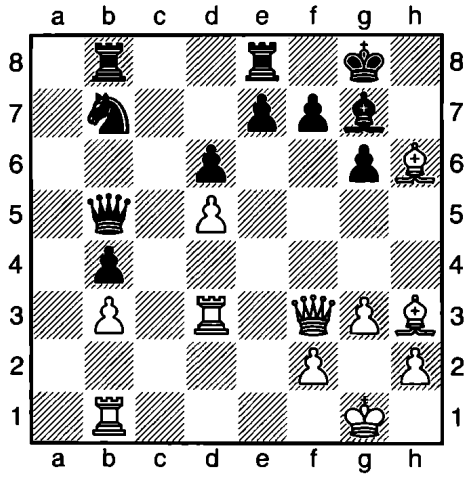
737) White to play (4 points)



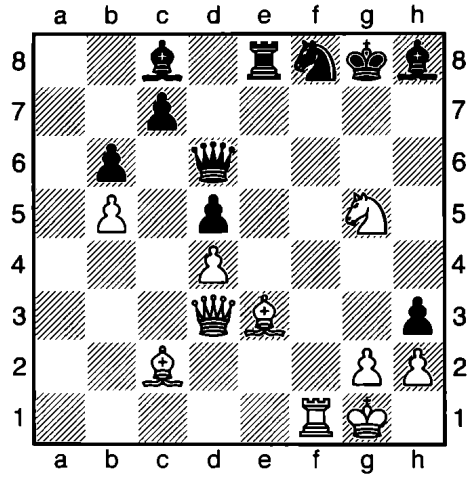
735) White to play (3 points)



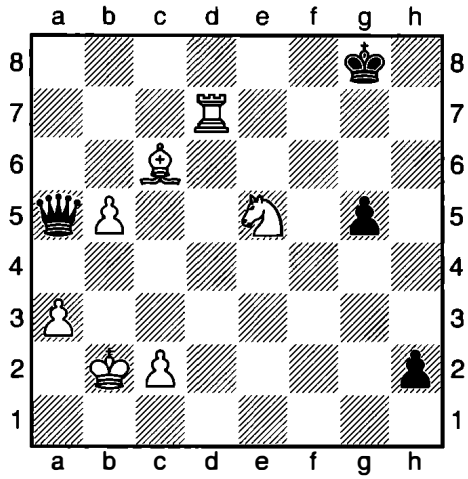
738) Black to play (4 points)



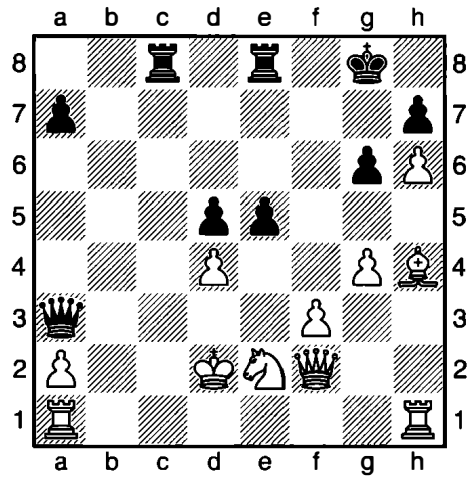
739) White to play (4 points)



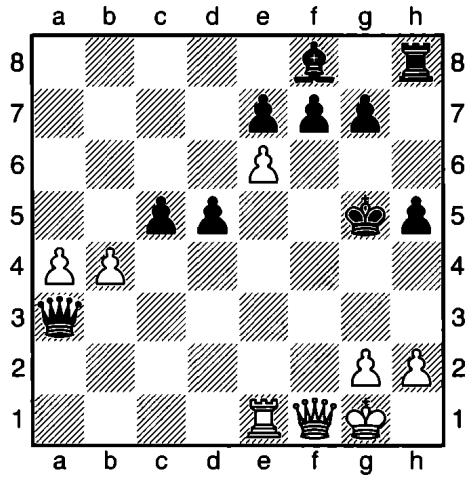
742) White to play (5 points)



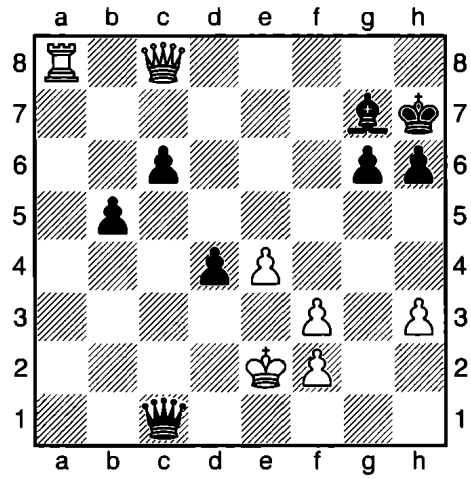
740) White to play (5 points)



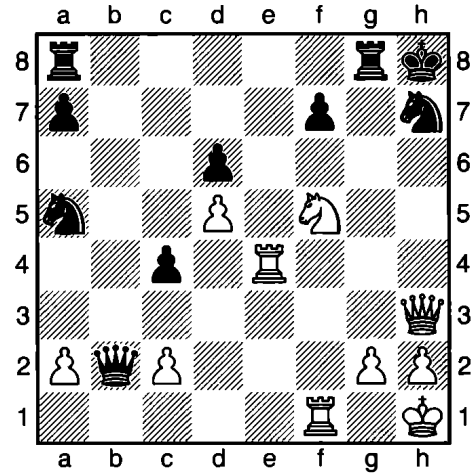
743) Black to play (5 points)



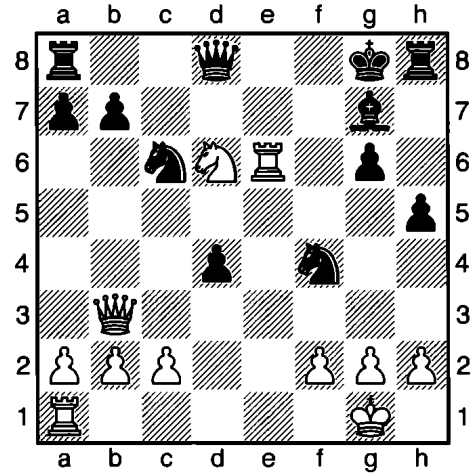
741) White to play (5 points)



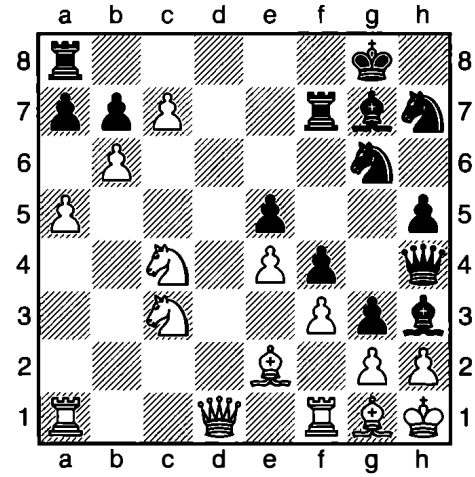
744) Black to play (5 points)



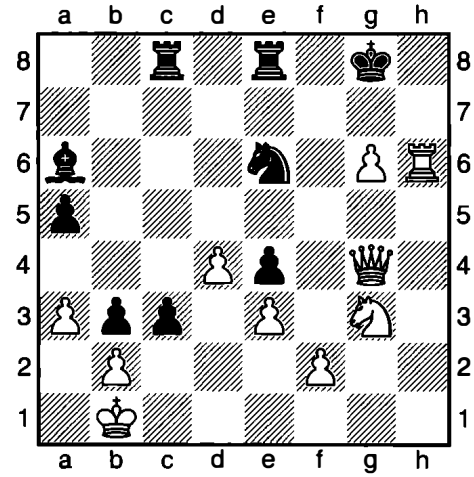
745) White to play (5 points)



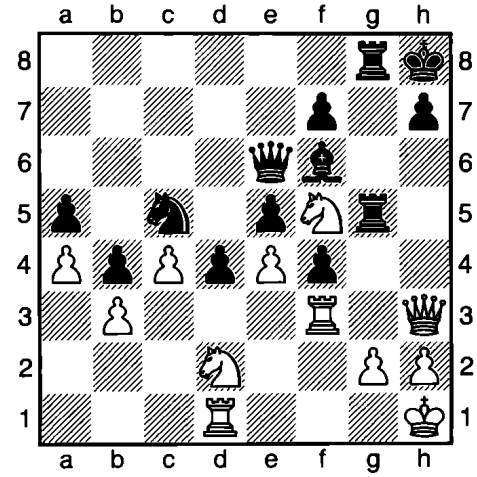
748) White to play (5 points)



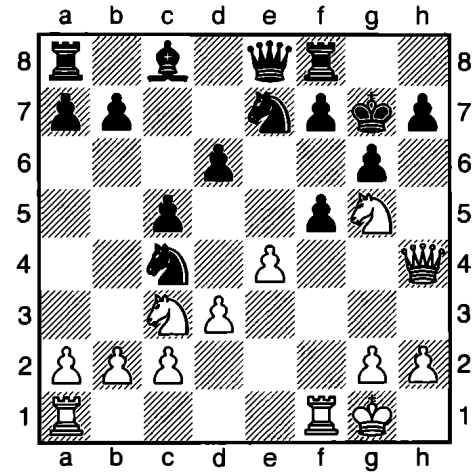
746) Black to play (5 points)



749) Black to play (5 points)



747) White to play (5 points)



750) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Hunting the King

733) Mohota – Nimmy

Indian Women's Ch, Calicut 2008

1 ♕e8+ ♔f6 2 ♕d8+!

2 ♕f8+? ♔g6 lets Black escape with a draw.

2...♔g6

2...♔f7 3 ♗e8+ ♔f8 4 ♗g6# (or 4 ♗h5#).

3 ♗e8+ ♔h6 4 ♕g5#

4 ♕h4# is equally effective.

734) V. Varadi – G. Emodi

Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1...♗c4+! 0-1

It's mate after 2 ♔xc4 ♕b5# or 2 ♔e3 ♕e2+ 3 ♔f4 ♕e4+ 4 ♔g5 ♕g4#.

735) Tazbir – P. Karhanek

Orlova 2006

1 ♕d6+ ♔f5 2 ♘g3+ 1-0

2...♔g4 3 h3+! ♔xh4 4 ♕f4#.

736) Konnyu – Nguyen Huynh Minh Huy

Budapest 2009

1 ♕d5+ ♔f6 2 ♗g5+ ♘xg5 3 hxg5+ ♔g6

3...♔e7 4 ♕d7+ ♔f8 5 ♕f7#.

4 ♗f7+ 1-0

4...♔h7 is met by 5 ♕f5# or 5 ♕e4#.

737) Va. Beliaev – Chernozemov

Tatarstan Ch, Kazan 2009

1 ♘a4+! ♔xc4 2 b3+ ♔b5 3 c4+ ♔a6 4 ♘c5+ 1-0

4...♔b6 5 ♕b4#.

738) S. Mulligan – D. Foord

Hastings Masters 2006/7

1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 3 ♔g3

3 ♗h3 ♖xh3#.

3...♗h4+ 0-1

4 ♔f4 may be met by 4...g5# or 4...♖f6#, while 4 ♔h2 runs into 4...♗xf2+ 5 ♗h3 ♖xh3#.

739) An. Varga – Glushenko

World Deaf Team Ch, Brno 1994

1 ♕xf7+! ♔xf7

Black must take, or else 2 ♕xg7#.

2 ♗e6+ ♔f6

2...♔f8 3 ♖f3#.

3 ♖f3+ ♔e5 4 ♗xg7+

4 ♖f4 also mates, but a little more slowly.

1-0

It's mate after 4...♔e4 5 ♖e3#.

740) Kotronias – Bellon

Caleta 2009

1 ♗d5+ ♔f8

1...♔h8 2 ♘g6#.

2 ♖f7+ ♔e8

2...♔g8 3 ♖e7+ followed by 4 ♘g6#.

3 ♗c6+ ♔d8 4 ♖d7+ ♔c8

The main line runs 4...♔e8 5 ♖b7+ ♔d8 (5...♔f8 6 ♘g6+ ♔g8 7 ♗d5#) 6 ♘f7+ ♔c8 7 ♘d6+ ♔d8 8 ♖d7#.

5 ♗b7+ 1-0

5...♔b8 6 ♘c6#.

741) E. Lenart – S. Seres

Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♖e5+ ♔h6

This survives longest. 1...♔h4 2 ♕f4# is immediate mate, while 1...f5 2 ♕xf5+ only lasts one move longer.

2 ♕f4+ g5

2...♔h7 3 ♖xh5+ ♔g8 4 ♕xf7# (or 4 exf7#).

3 ♕xg5+ ♔h7 4 ♕xh5+ ♗h6

4...♔g7 5 ♕xf7+ ♔h6 6 ♖h5#.

5 ♕xf7+

5 ♕f5+ ♔g7 6 ♕xf7# is equally good.

5...♗g7 6 ♖h5#

742) Restifa – J.L. Rodriguez

Buenos Aires 1994

1 ♕h7+!

This beautiful sacrifice leads to a forced mate.

1...♘xh7 2 ♗xh7+ ♔g7 3 ♖f7+ ♔h6 4 ♘e6+!

An accurate choice of check to cut off both the attack on the e3-bishop and Black's control of f5.

4...♔h5 5 ♖f5+ ♔h4

5...♔g4 6 ♖g5+ ♔h4 7 g3+ (7 ♗f2+ is also good) 7...♕xg3+ 8 hxg3#.

6 ♗f2+ ♔g4 7 ♖g5#

743) I. Padurariu – C. Foisor

European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

1...♕b2+ 2 ♔d3

Giving up the rook by 2 ♔e1 only delays mate slightly; for example, 2...♕xa1+ 3 ♔d2 ♕xa2+ 4 ♔e1 ♕b1+, etc. If White plays 2 ♔e3, then 2...exd4++ leads to mate after 3 ♔f4 ♕b8+ 4 ♔g5 ♕e5# or 3 ♔d3 ♕c2+ 4 ♔xd4 ♕c4#.

2...♕c2+ 3 ♔e3 exd4++ 4 ♔f4

4 ♔xd4 ♕c4#.

4...♕c7+ 0-1

5 ♔g5 ♕e5#.

744) Ubiennykh – A. Kirillov

Tomsk 2008

1...d3+! 2 ♔xd3 ♕d1+ 3 ♔e3 ♗d4+ 4 ♔f4 0-1

4...♕c1+ (4...♕d2+ also mates, but more slowly) 5 ♔g3 (5 ♔g4 ♕g5#) 5...♕g1+ 6 ♔f4 (after 6 ♔h4 Black has a choice of mates in one) 6...♕g5#.

745) Sutovsky – Smirin

Israeli Ch, Tel-Aviv 2002

1 ♕xh7+! 1-0

The mating sequence is long but completely forced: 1...♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g6 3 ♖h6+ ♔g5 4 h4+ ♔g4 5 ♘e3+ ♔g3 6 ♖f3#.

746) E. Peralta – Roselli

Montevideo 2001

1...♗xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♕h3+! 0-1

This beautiful second sacrifice proves deadly after 3 ♔xh3 (3 ♔h1 g2#) 3...♘g5+ 4 ♔g2 ♘h4+ 5 ♔h1 g2#.

747) Z. Tasić – B. Lukić

Belgrade Cup 2005

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♖h5

2...♔g6 3 ♖h6#.

3 ♖xh5+ ♔g6 4 ♖h6+ ♔g5 5 ♘f3+ ♔g4 6 h3#

748) Ulybin – J. Cabrera Trujillo

Cappelle la Grande 2008

1 ♖xg6+ ♔h7

1...♘d5 leads to a similar conclusion after 2 ♕xd5+ ♔h7 3 ♖xg7+ ♔xg7 4 ♕f7+ ♔h6 5 ♘f5+ ♔g5 6 h4+, etc.

2 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7

2...♔h6 3 ♘f5#.

3 ♕f7+ ♔h6 4 ♘f5+ 1-0

4...♔g5 5 h4+ ♔g4 6 f3#.

749) Gofshtein – Boim

Israeli Team Ch, Ramat Aviv 2000

1...♗d3+ 2 ♔c1

2 ♔a1 cxb2+ 3 ♔xb2 ♖c2+ transposes.

2...cxb2++ 3 ♔xb2

After 3 ♔d2 ♖c2+ 4 ♔e1 b1♕+ 5 ♕d1 ♕xd1+ 6 ♔xd1 b2 Black mates in a few moves.

3...♖c2+ 4 ♔xb3

Black also mates after 4 ♔a1 ♖a2# or 4 ♔b1 ♖xf2+ 5 ♔c1 b2+ 6 ♔d1 b1♕#.

4...♖b8+

Reversing moves by 4...♘c5+! 5 dxc5 ♖b8+ also works.

5 ♔a4 ♘c5+!

This further sacrifice allows the black rook to occupy c5 later.

6 dxc5

6 ♔xa5 ♖b5#.

6...♖c4+ 0-1

7 ♔xa5 ♖xc5+ 8 ♔a4 ♗c2#.

750) Reutsky – Gvilava

Moscow 2008

1 ♕xh7+ ♔f6 2 e5+! ♔xg5

The key line runs 2...♔xe5 (2...♘xe5 and 2...dxe5 are met by 3 ♘ce4#) 3 ♕g7+ f6 4 ♖ae1+ (or 4 ♕xe7+! first) 4...♘e3 (4...♔d4 allows 5 ♘f3# or 5 ♖f4#) 5 ♕xe7+! (eliminating this knight enables White to play ♘d5+ later; less spectacular moves also mate but take a little longer) 5...♕xe7 (5...♗e6 is similar) 6 ♖xe3+ ♔d4 7 ♘f3+ ♔xe3 8 ♘d5+ ♔e2 9 ♖e1#.

3 h4+ ♔g4 4 ♕h6 1-0

Now 4...f6 is the only way to prevent ♕g5#, but then White mates by 5 ♖f4+ ♔g3 6 ♘e2#.

Score-Chart for Hunting the King

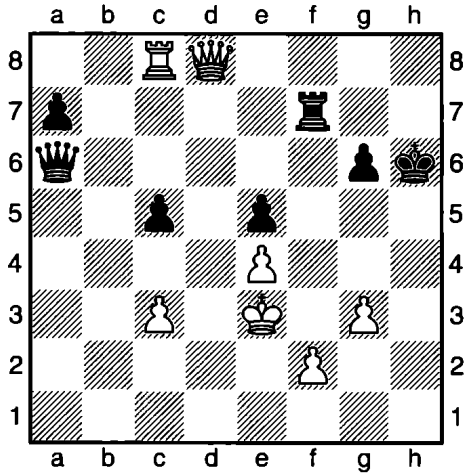
Position number	Points	Score
733	3	
734	3	
735	3	
736	4	
737	4	
738	4	
739	4	
740	5	
741	5	
742	5	
743	5	
744	5	
745	5	
746	5	
747	5	
748	5	
749	5	
750	5	
Total	**80**	

15 Miscellaneous Mates

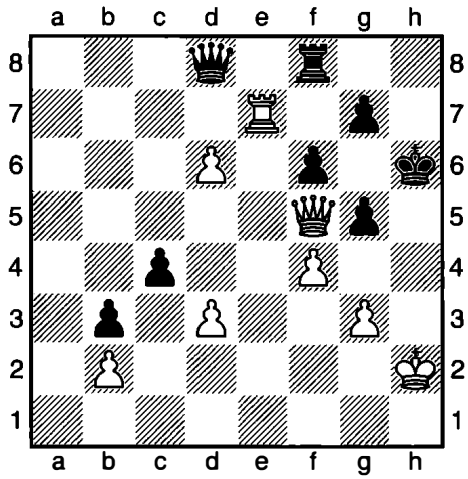
This chapter contains mates that aren't easy to classify. Some of them could have been wedged into other chapters, but it's important to realize that however many categories one devises for mating patterns, there will always be mates that don't fall into any of the categories.

In many ways, this is the most important chapter in the book. While I was choosing positions to include in this book, it struck me that many of the mates which had occurred in real games involved patterns that I hadn't seen before. Textbooks tend to limit themselves to named mating patterns and those which are extremely common, but there are lots of other mating ideas out there, and throughout the book I have tried to broaden the reader's horizons by including mates that are less familiar but nevertheless arise in actual play. This chapter shows the wide variety of mating possibilities in chess and demonstrates that knowledge and imagination go hand in hand.

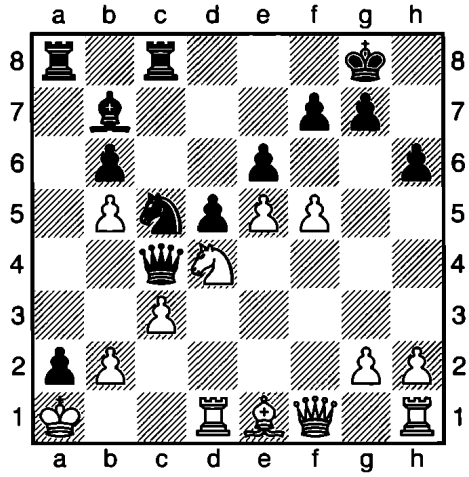
Solving the positions in this chapter will extend your imagination and help you to spot unfamiliar mates.



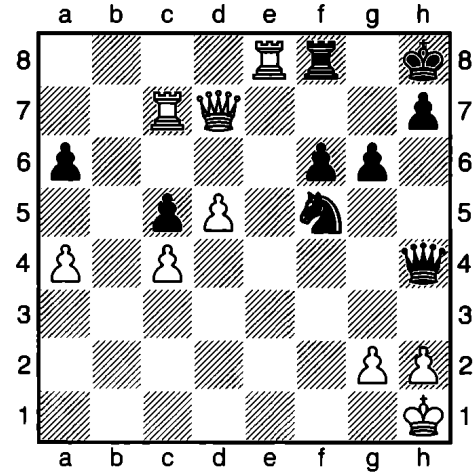
751) White to play (1 point)



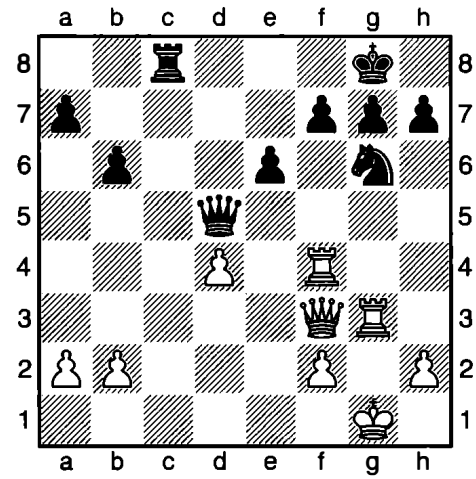
752) White to play (1 point)



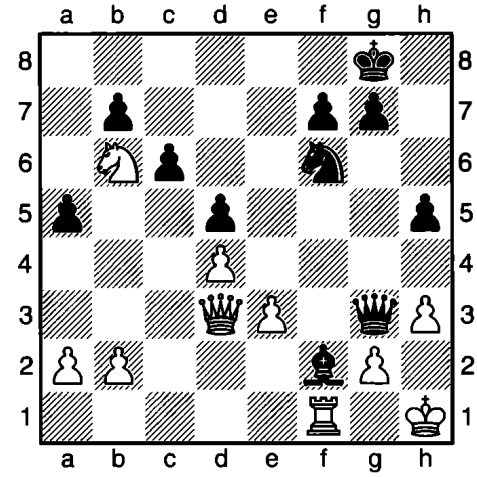
753) Black to play (1 point)



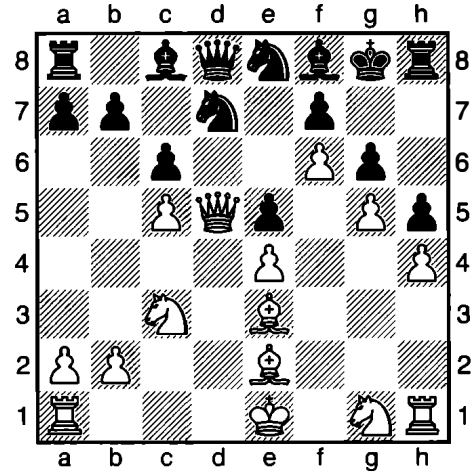
754) Black to play (1 point)



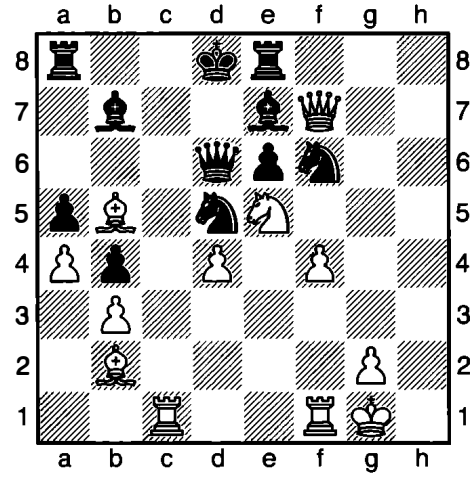
755) Black to play (1 point)



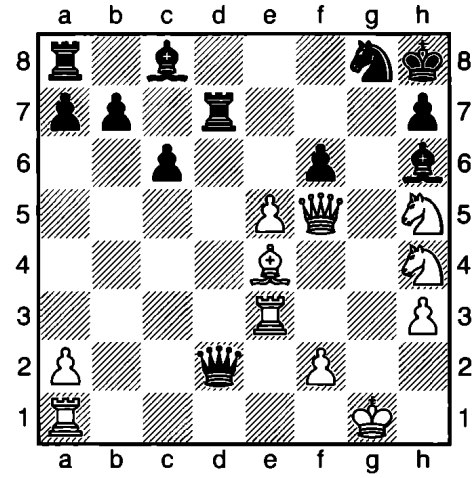
756) Black to play (1 point)



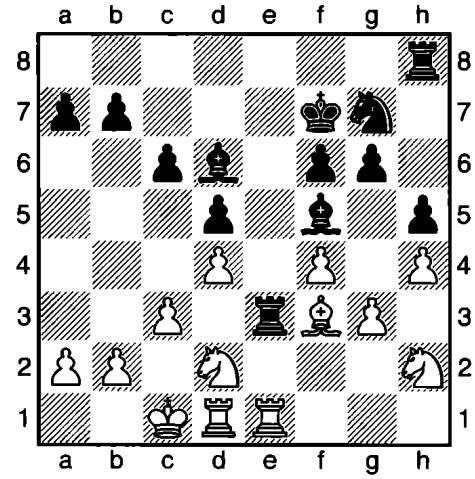
757) White to play (1 point)



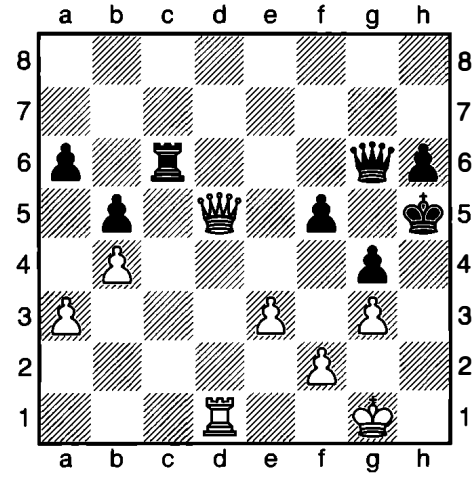
760) White to play (1 point)



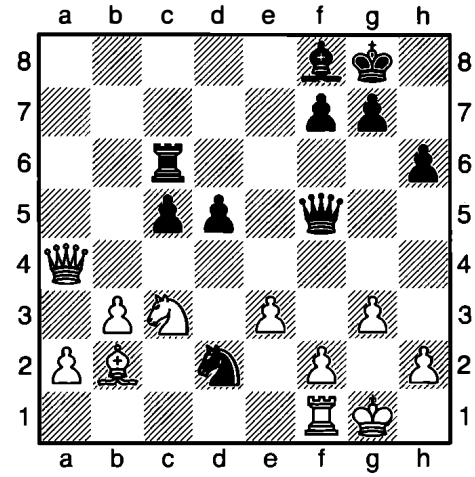
758) White to play (1 point)



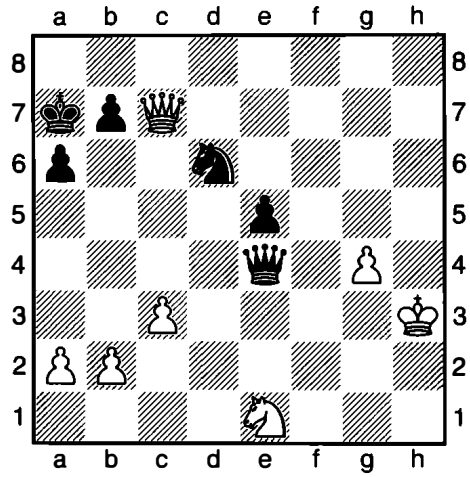
761) Black to play (1 point)



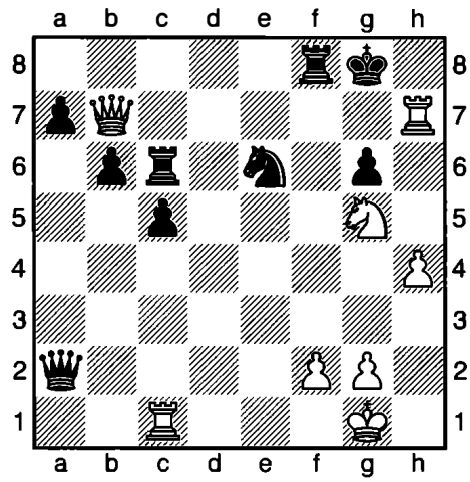
759) White to play (1 point)



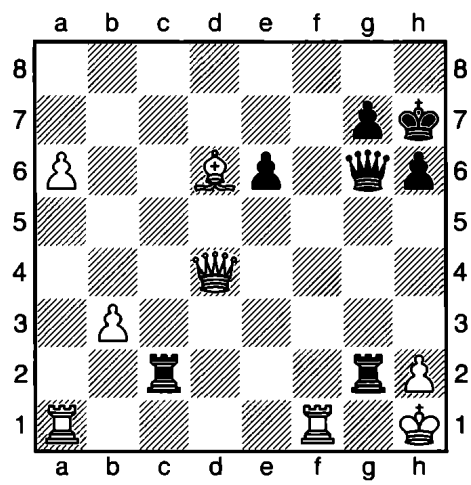
762) Black to play (1 point)



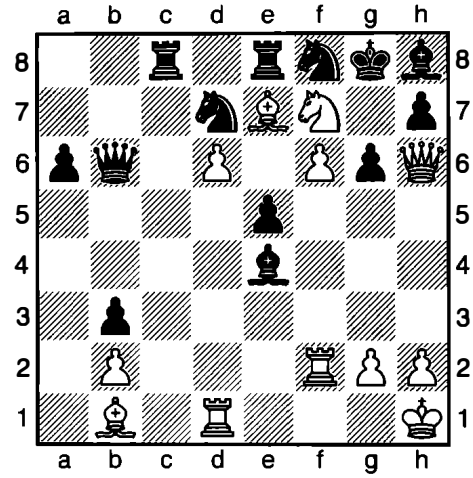
763) Black to play (1 point)



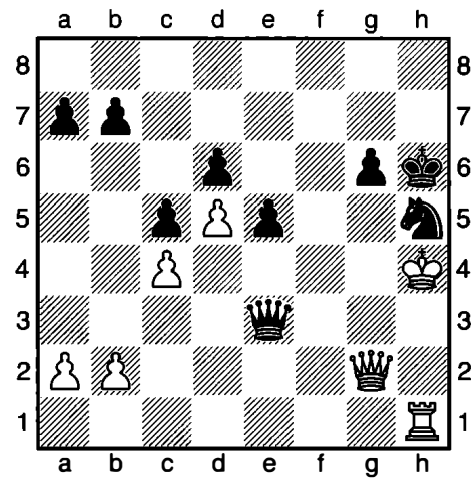
764) White to play (1 point)



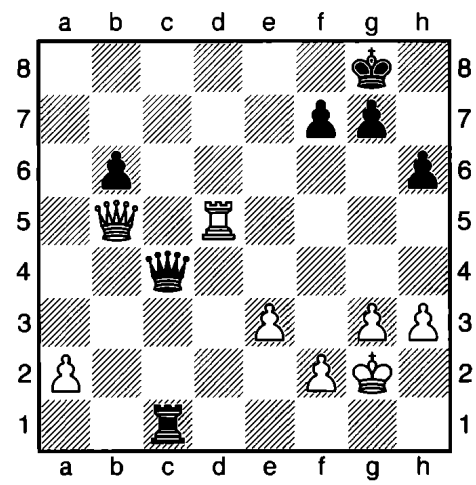
765) Black to play (1 point)



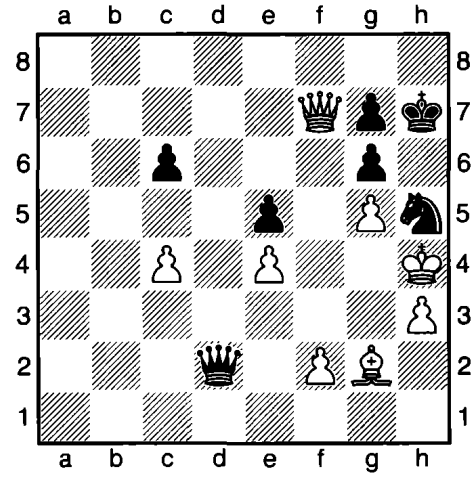
766) White to play (1 point)



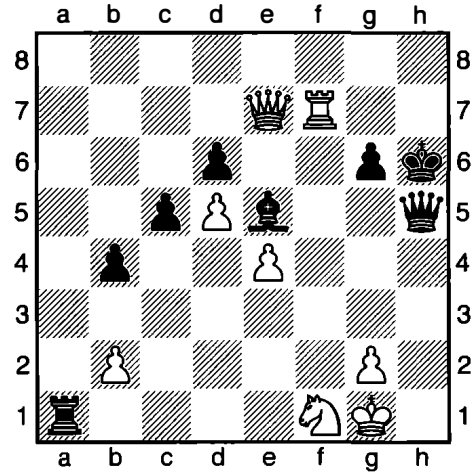
767) Black to play (2 points)



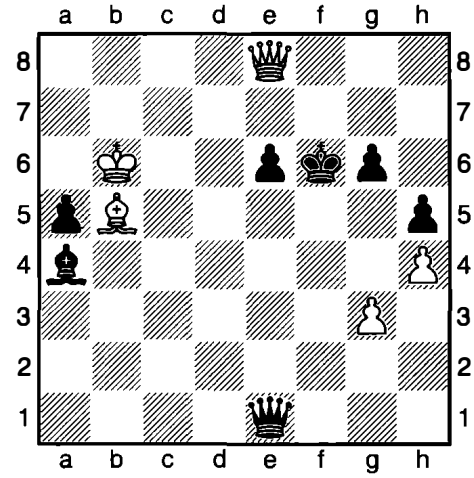
768) Black to play (2 points)



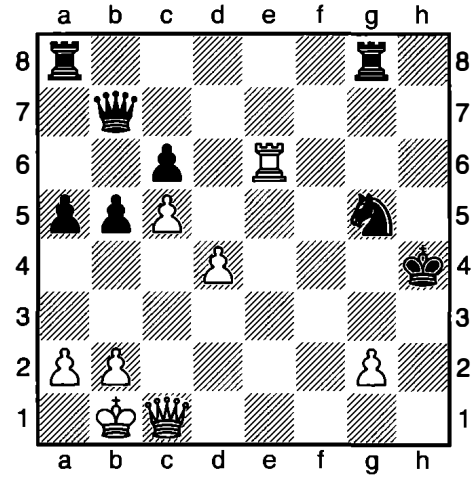
769) Black to play (2 points)



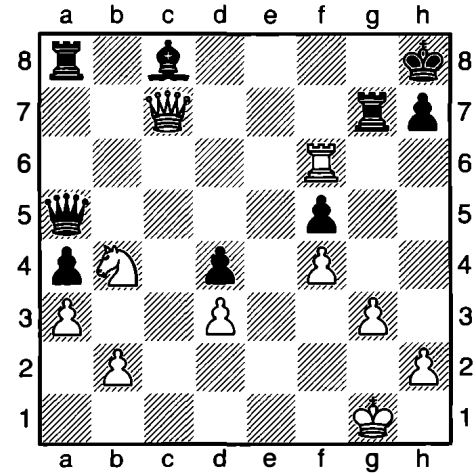
772) Black to play (2 points)



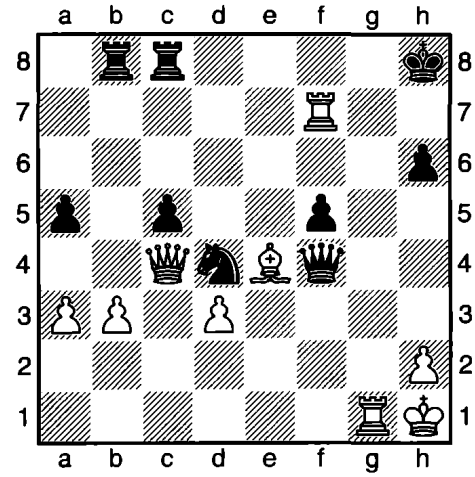
770) White to play (2 points)



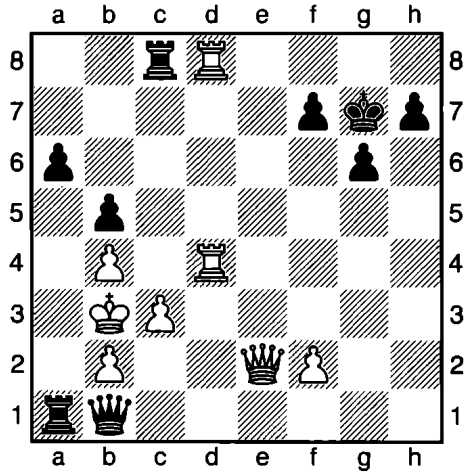
773) White to play (2 points)



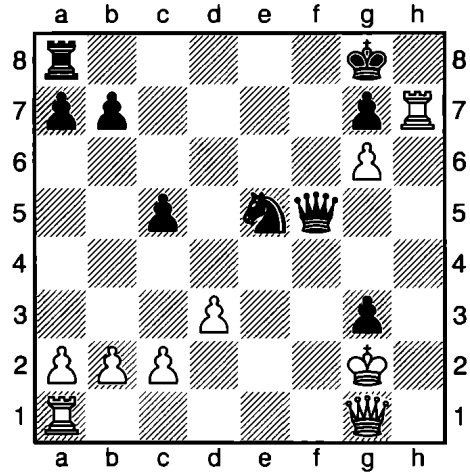
771) White to play (2 points)



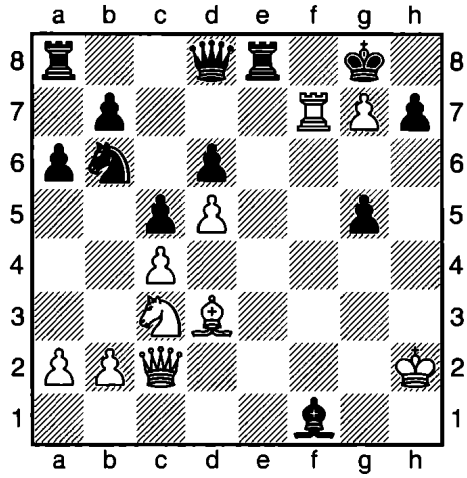
774) White to play (2 points)



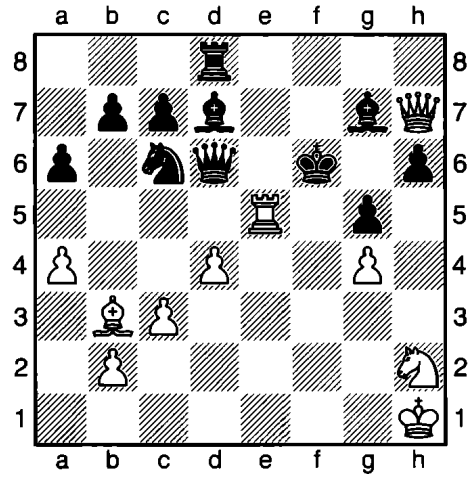
775) Black to play (2 points)



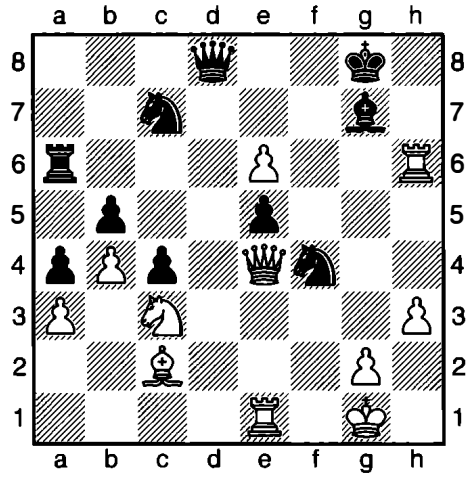
778) Black to play (2 points)



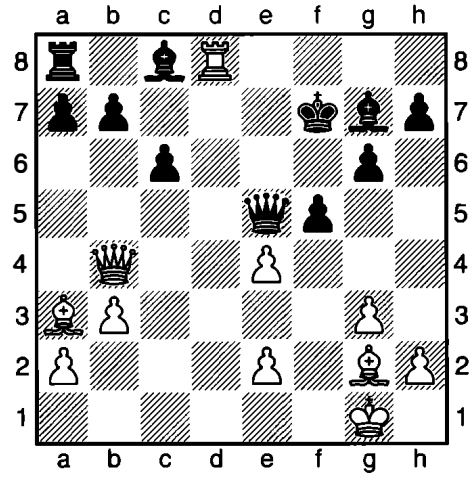
776) White to play (2 points)



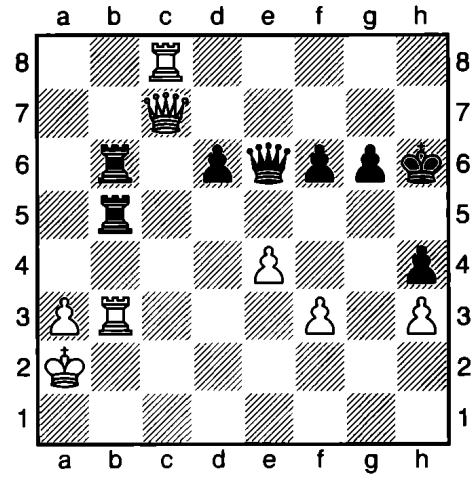
779) White to play (2 points)



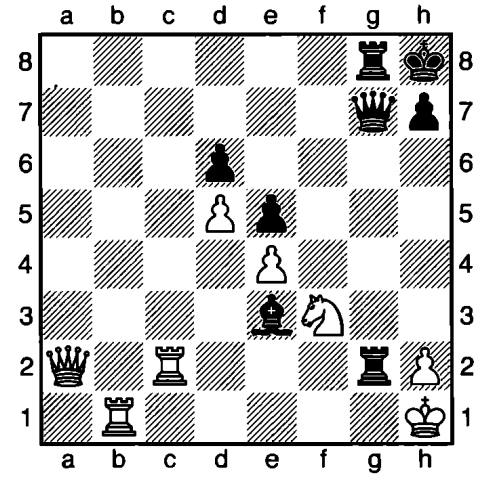
777) White to play (2 points)



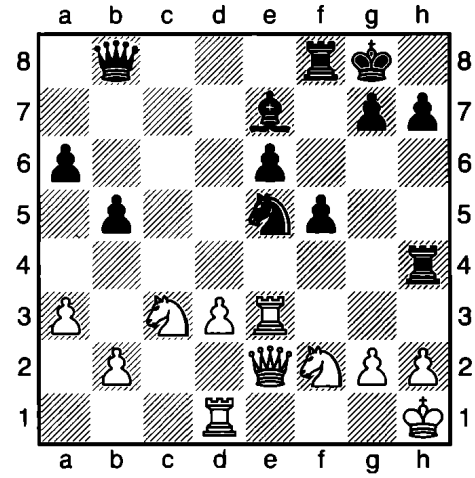
780) White to play (2 points)



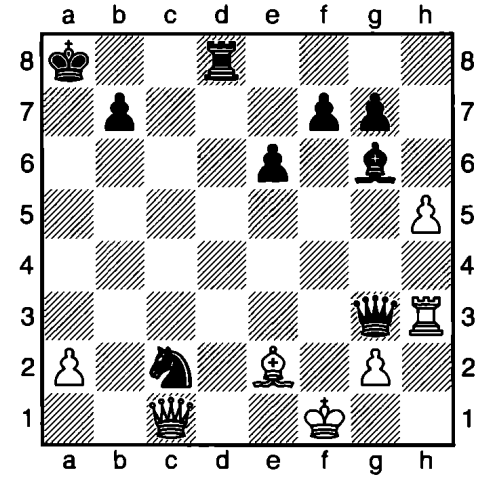
781) White to play (2 points)



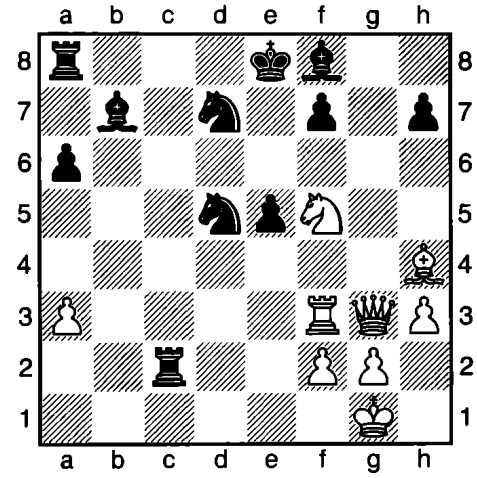
784) Black to play (2 points)



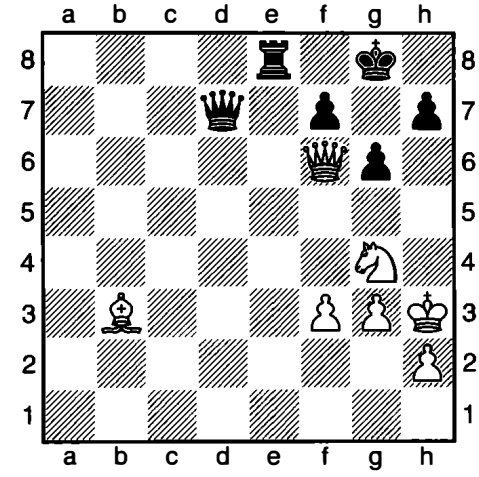
782) Black to play (2 points)



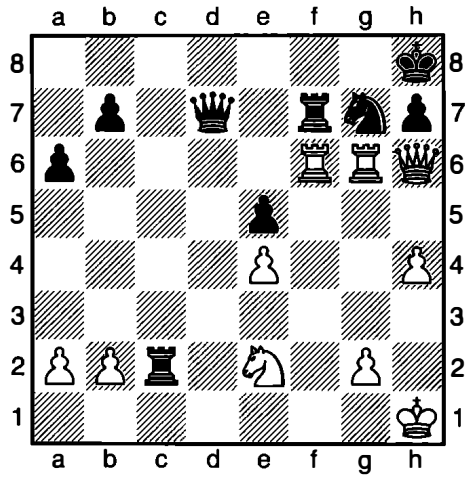
785) Black to play (2 points)



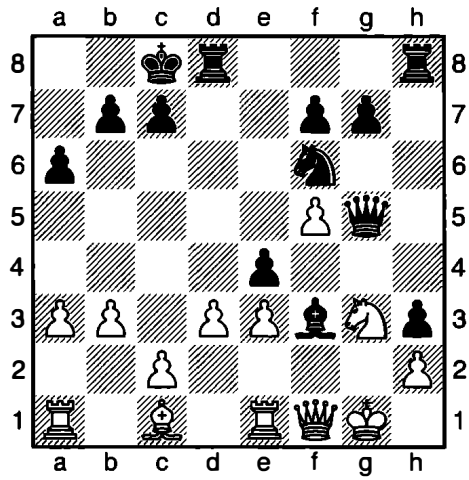
783) White to play (2 points)



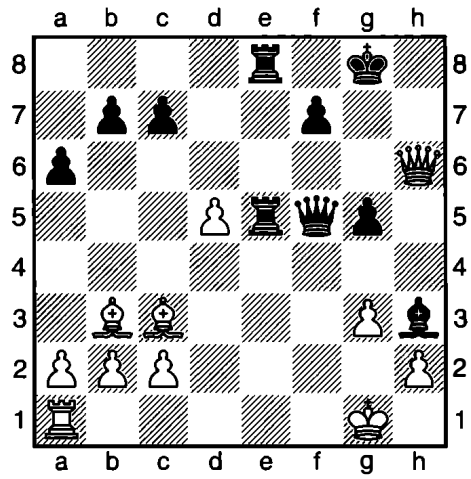
786) White to play (2 points)



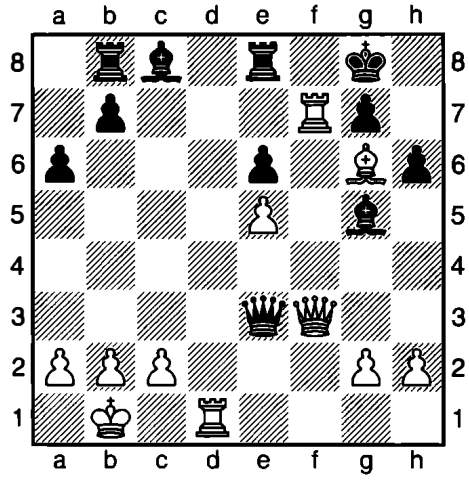
787) White to play (2 points)



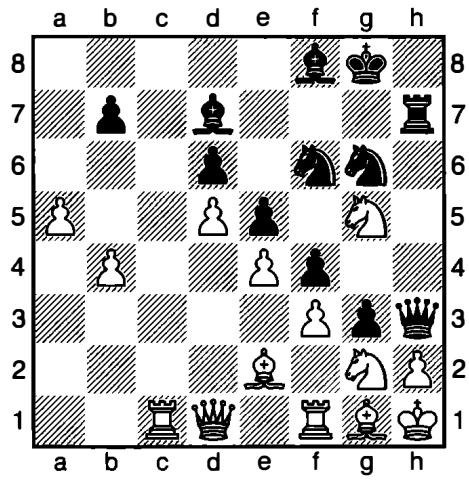
788) Black to play (2 points)



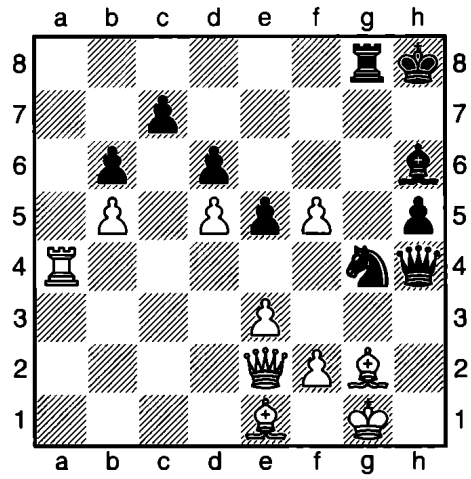
789) Black to play (2 points)



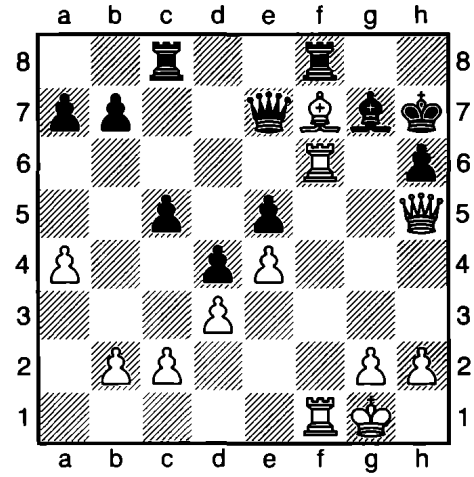
790) White to play (2 points)



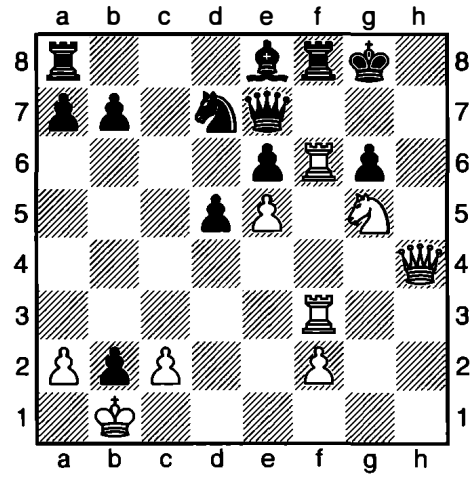
791) Black to play (2 points)



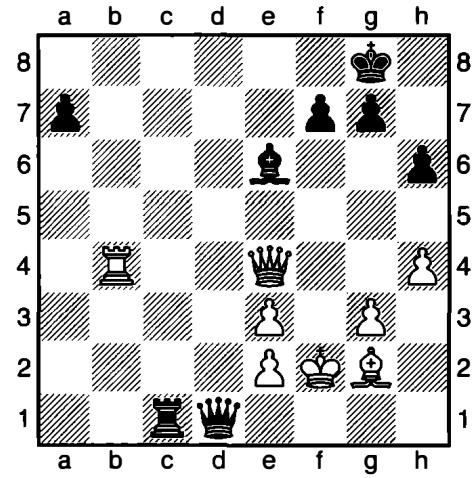
792) Black to play (2 points)



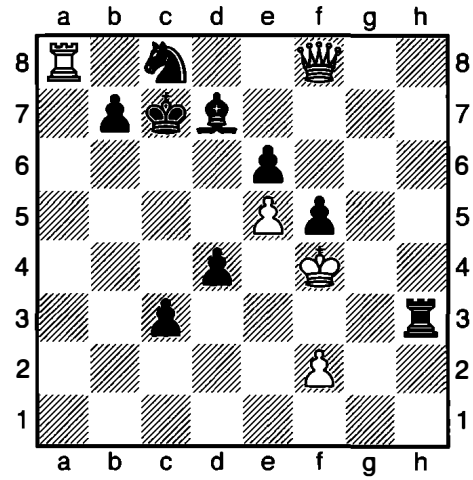
793) White to play (2 points)



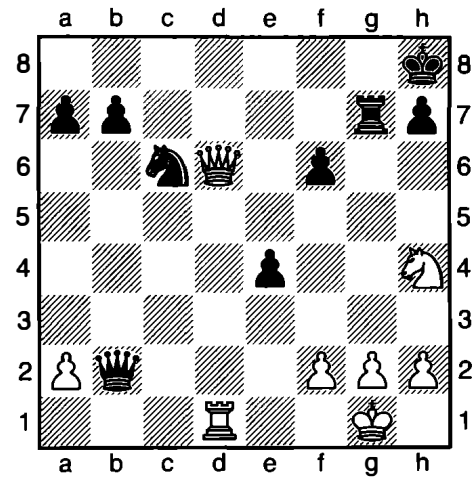
796) White to play (2 points)



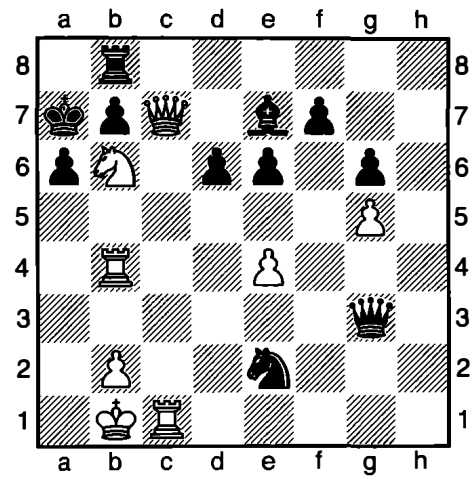
794) Black to play (2 points)



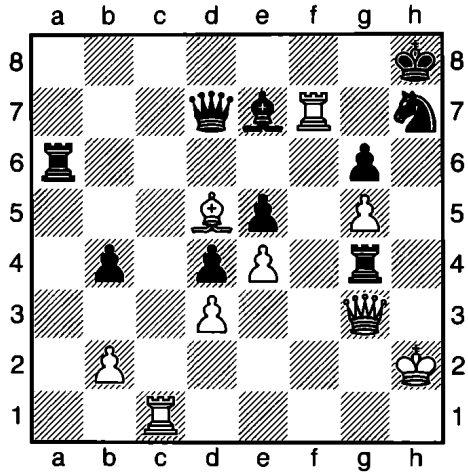
797) White to play (2 points)



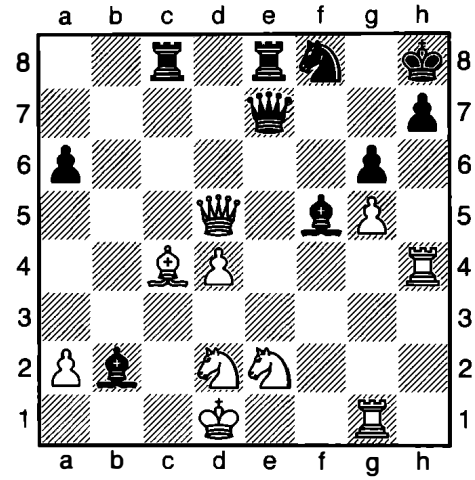
795) White to play (2 points)



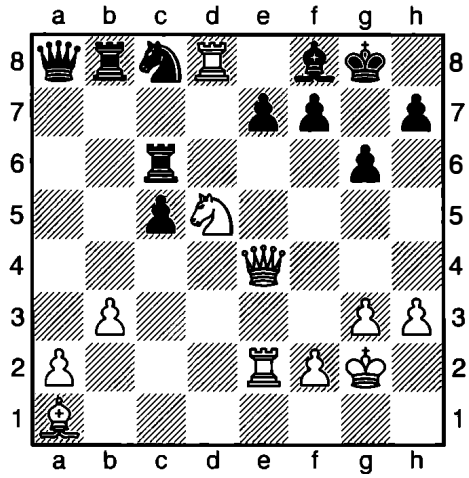
798) White to play (2 points)



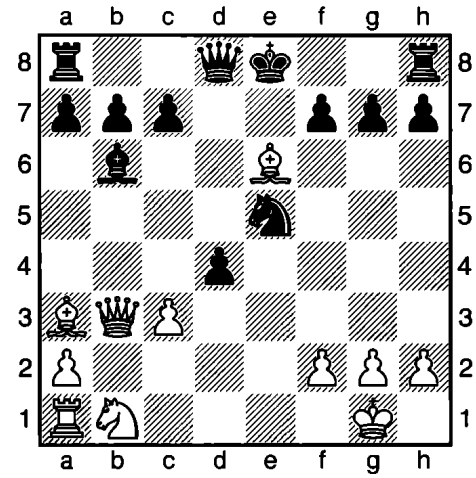
799) White to play (2 points)



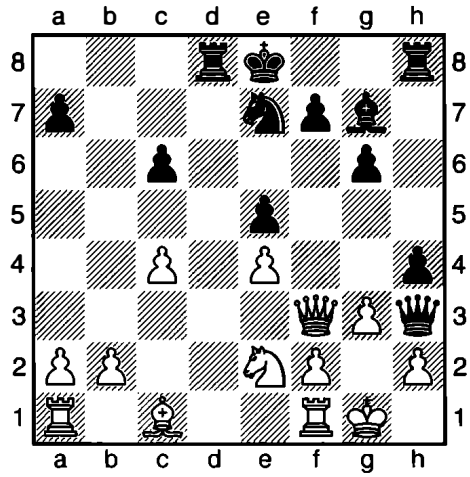
802) Black to play (2 points)



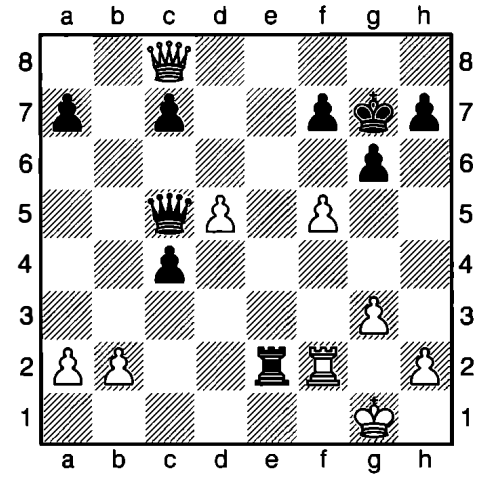
800) White to play (2 points)



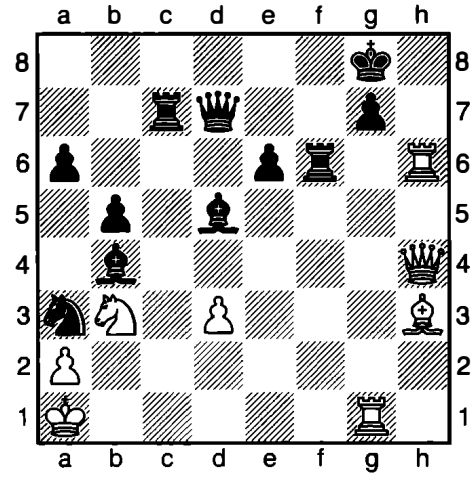
803) White to play (2 points)



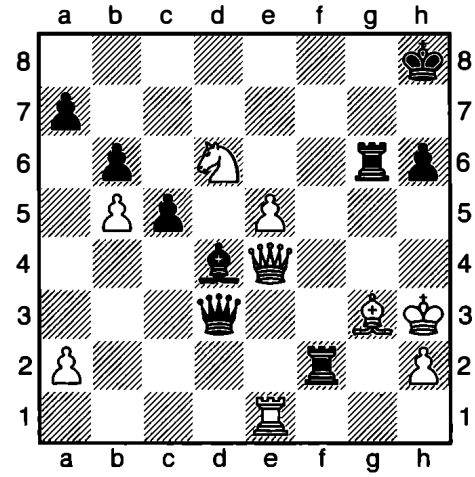
801) Black to play (2 points)



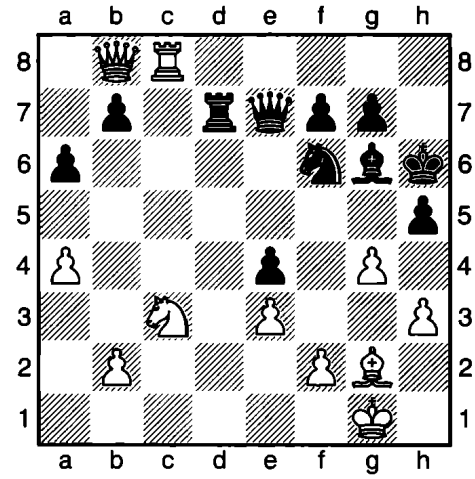
804) White to play (2 points)



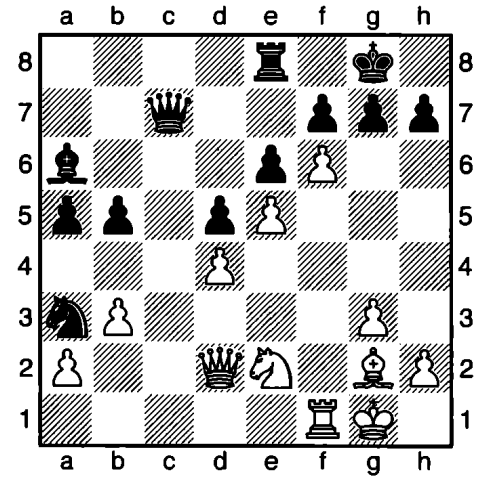
805) White to play (2 points)



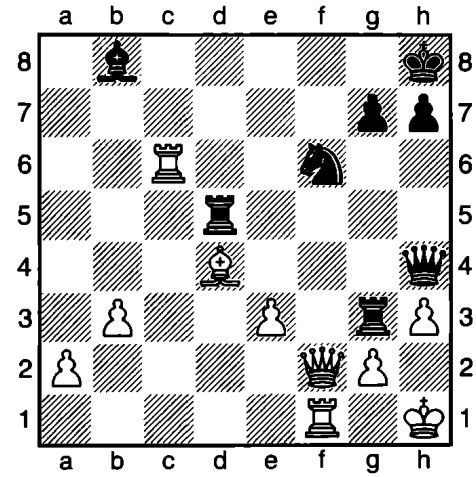
808) Black to play (2 points)



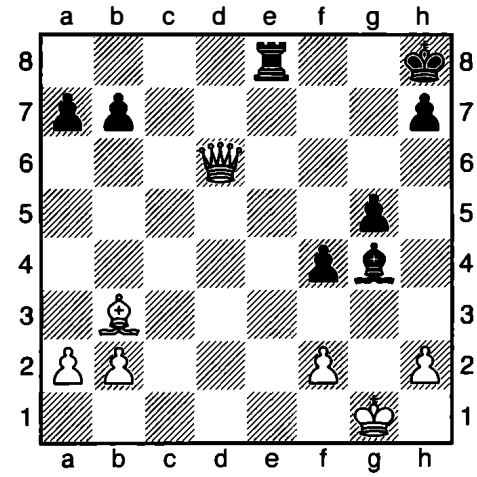
806) White to play (2 points)



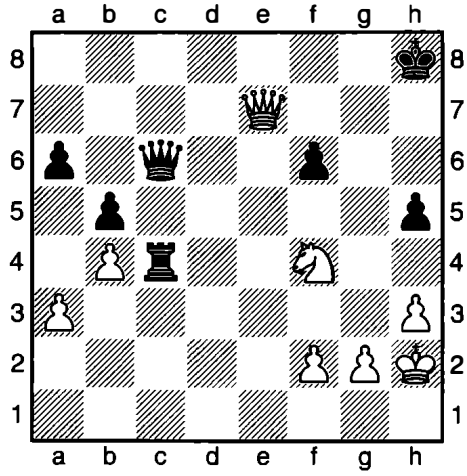
809) White to play (2 points)



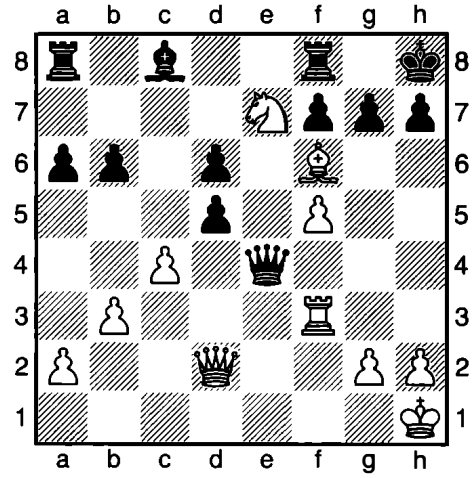
807) White to play (2 points)



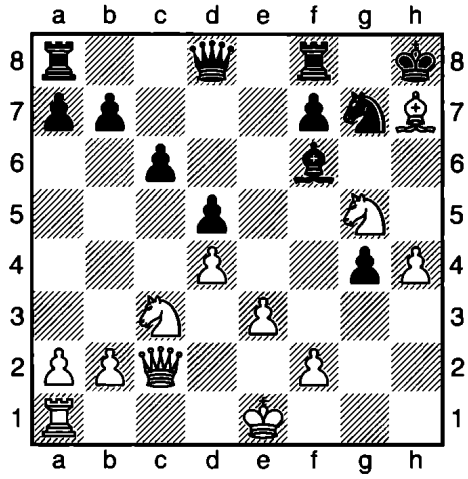
810) Black to play (2 points)



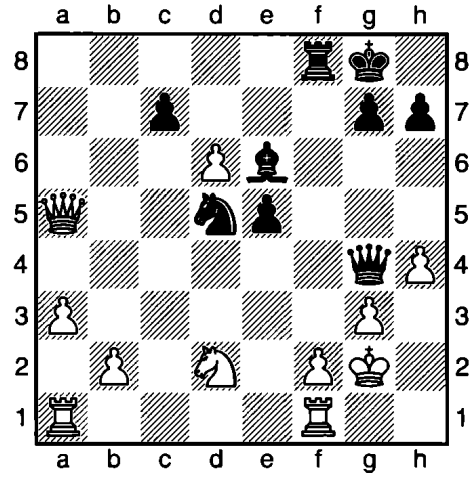
811) White to play (2 points)



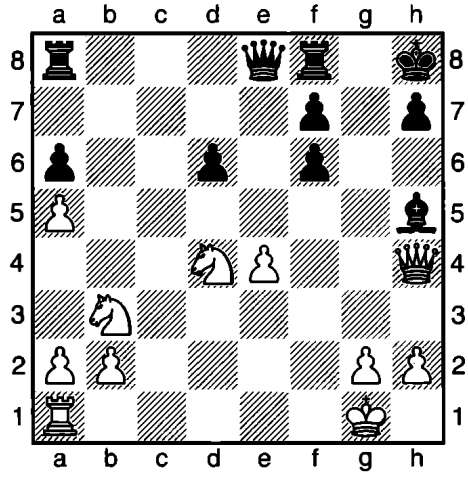
814) White to play (2 points)



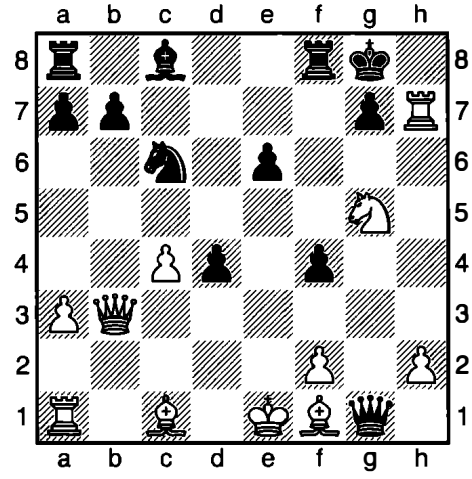
812) White to play (2 points)



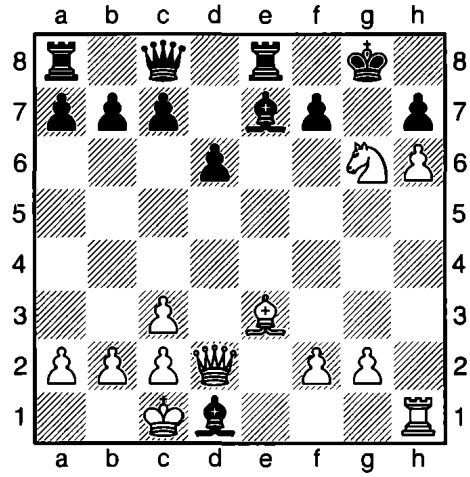
815) Black to play (2 points)



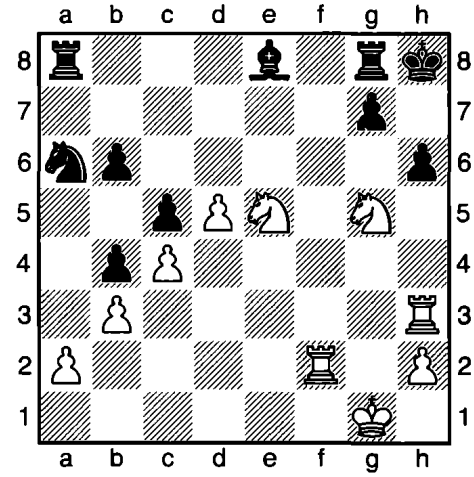
813) White to play (2 points)



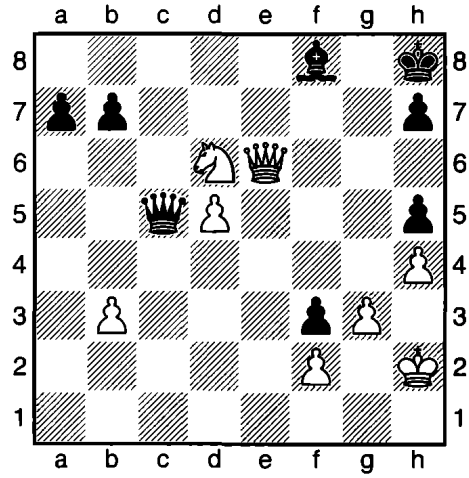
816) White to play (2 points)



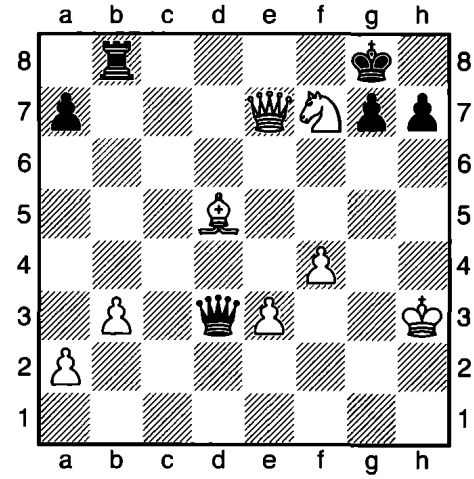
817) White to play (2 points)



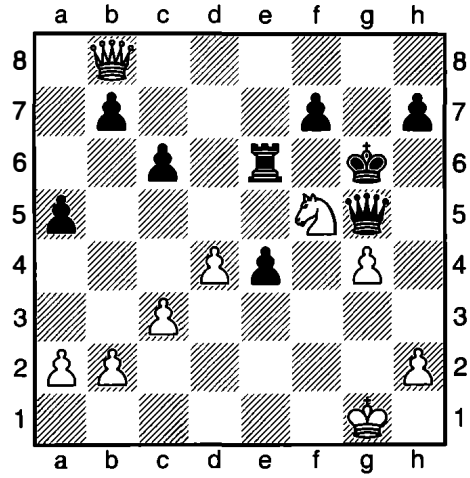
820) White to play (2 points)



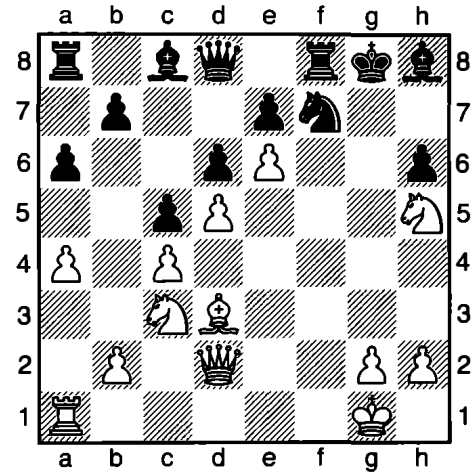
818) White to play (2 points)



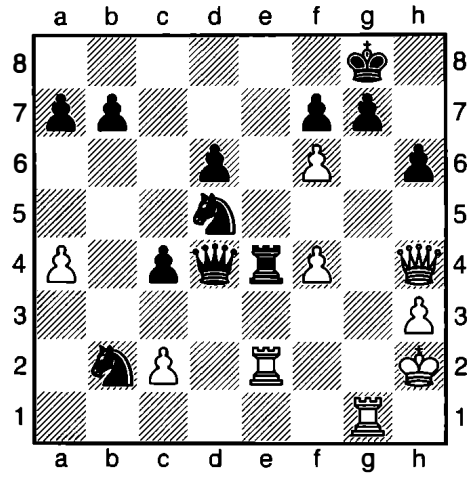
821) White to play (2 points)



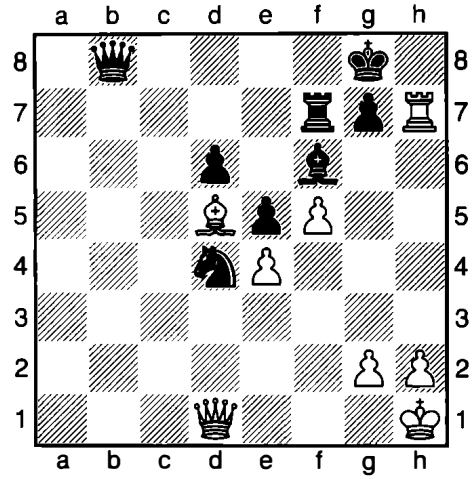
819) White to play (2 points)



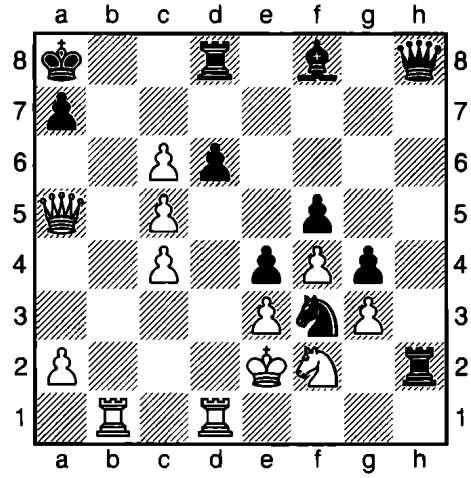
822) White to play (2 points)



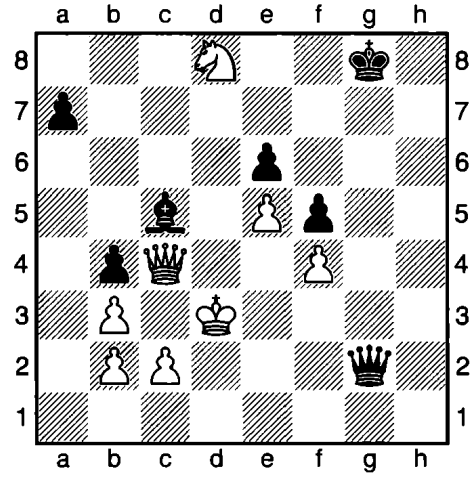
823) White to play (3 points)



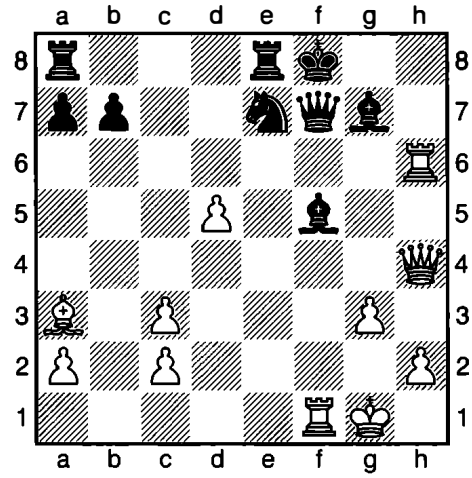
826) White to play (3 points)



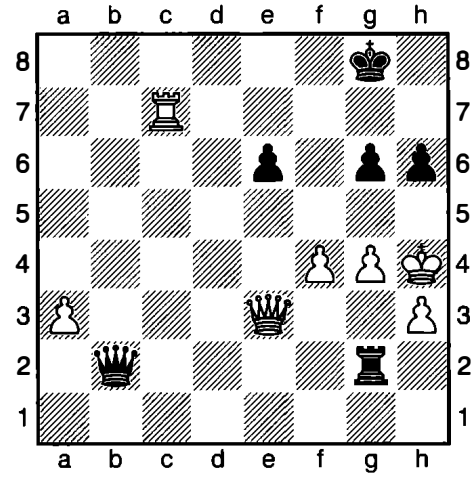
824) Black to play (3 points)



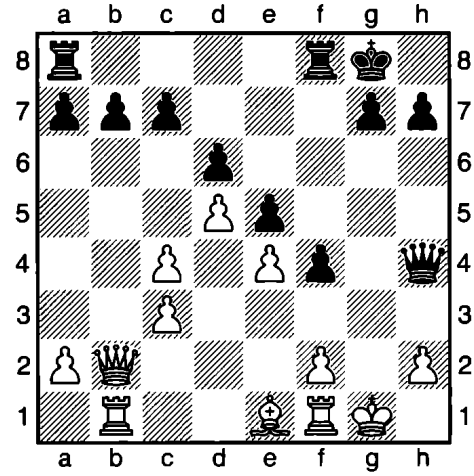
827) Black to play (3 points)



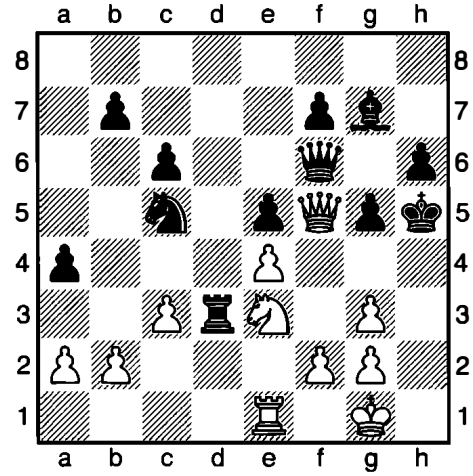
825) White to play (3 points)



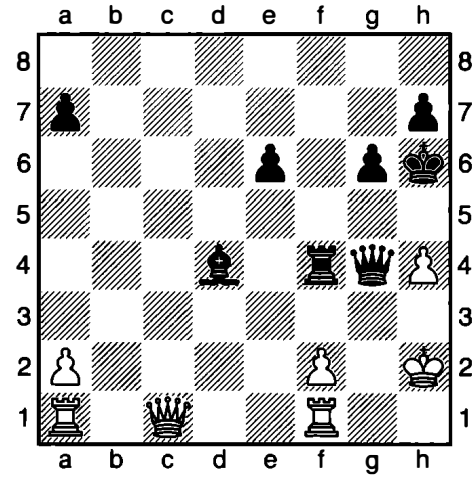
828) Black to play (3 points)



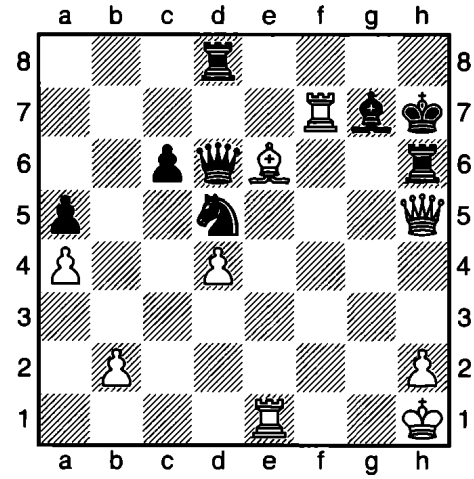
829) Black to play (3 points)



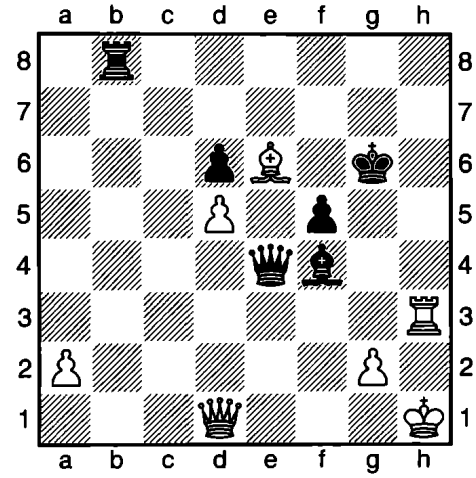
832) White to play (3 points)



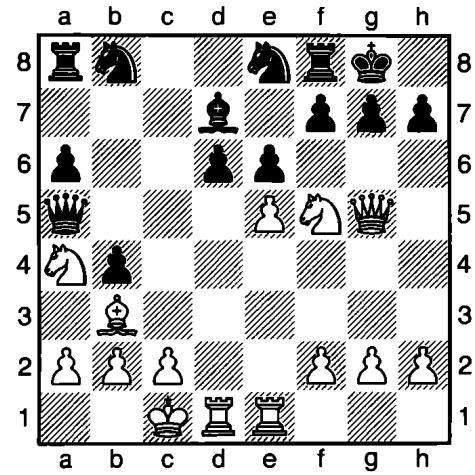
830) Black to play (3 points)



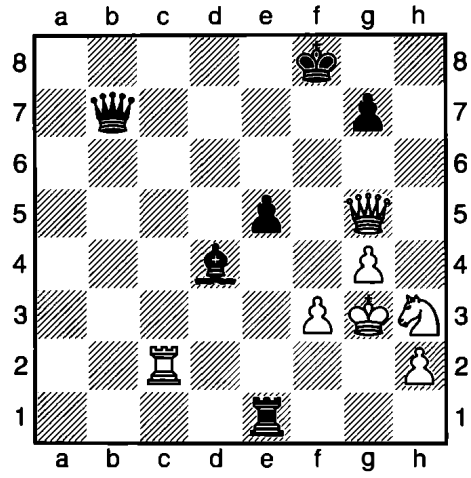
833) White to play (3 points)



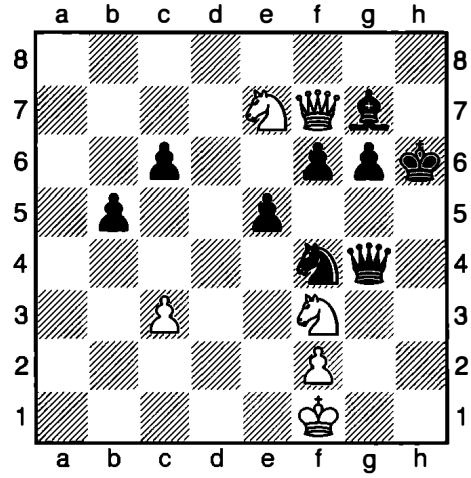
831) White to play (3 points)



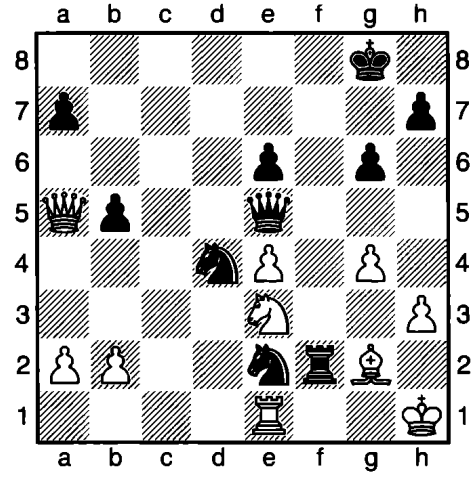
834) White to play (3 points)



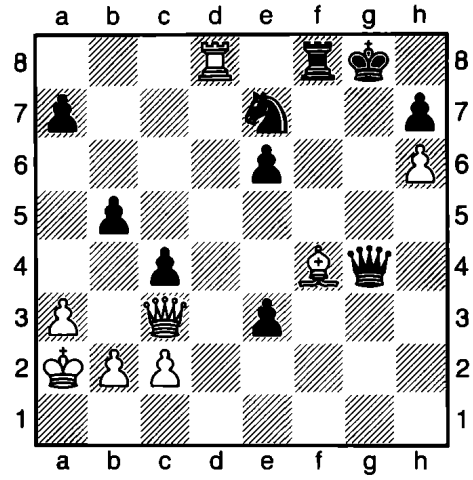
835) White to play (3 points)



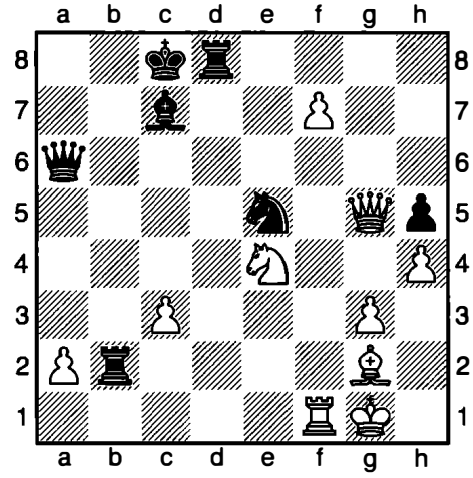
836) White to play (3 points)



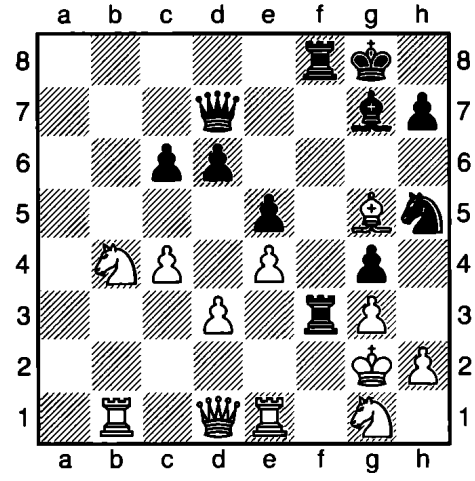
837) Black to play (3 points)



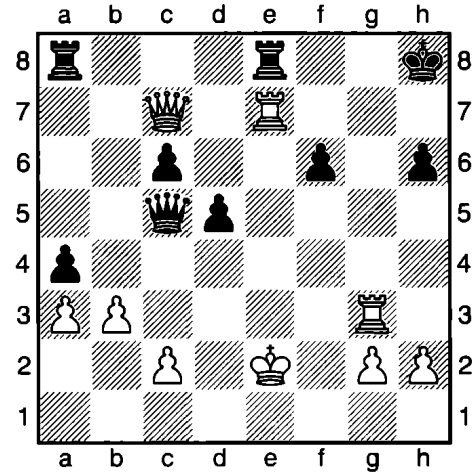
838) White to play (3 points)



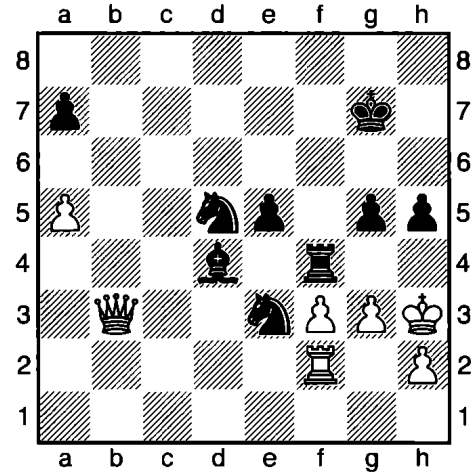
839) Black to play (3 points)



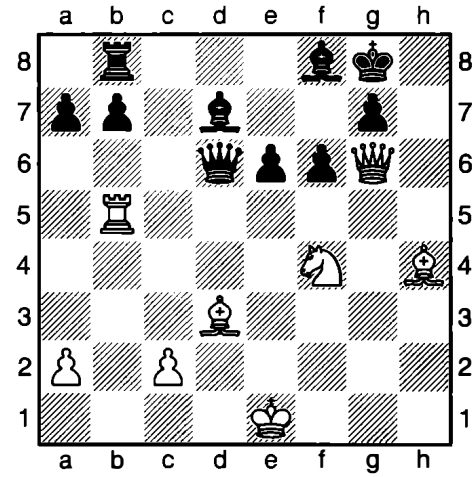
840) Black to play (3 points)



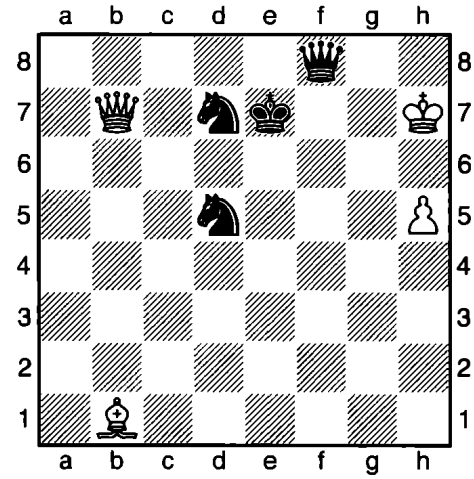
841) White to play (3 points)



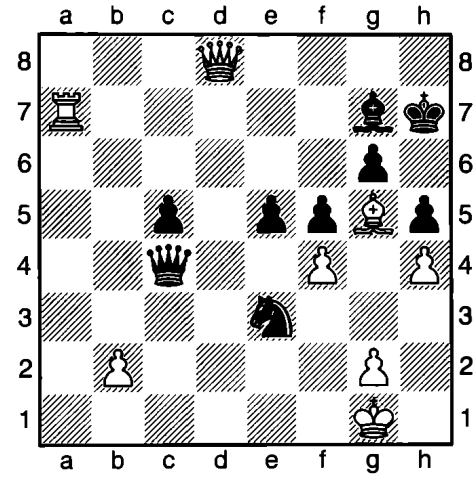
844) Black to play (3 points)



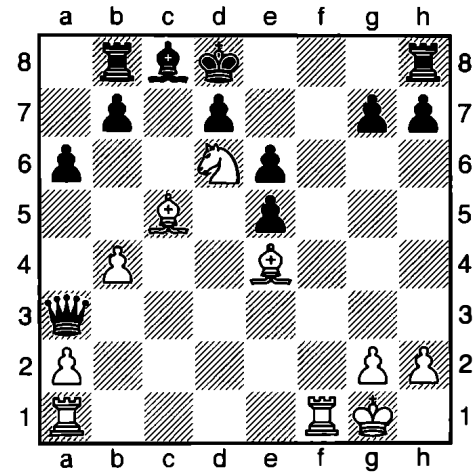
842) White to play (3 points)



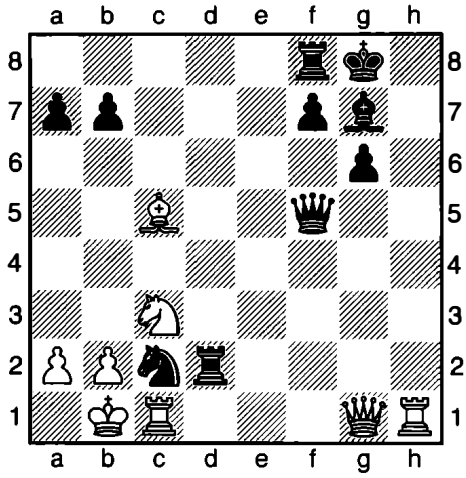
845) Black to play (3 points)



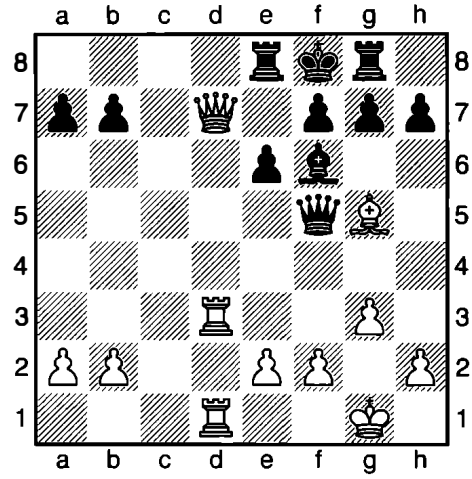
843) White to play (3 points)



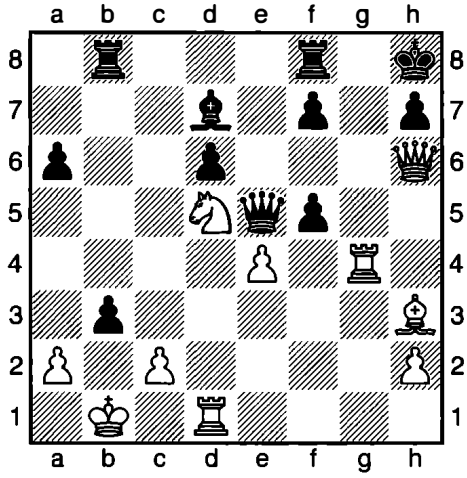
846) White to play (3 points)



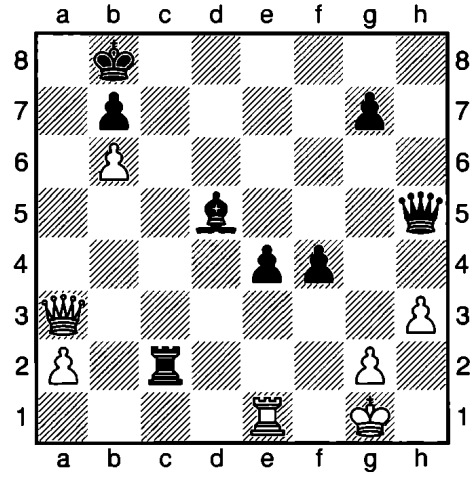
847) Black to play (3 points)



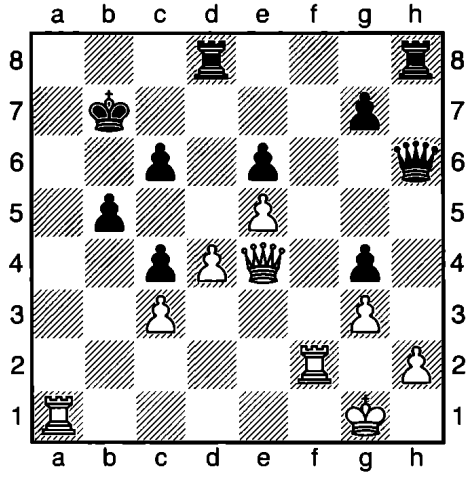
850) White to play (3 points)



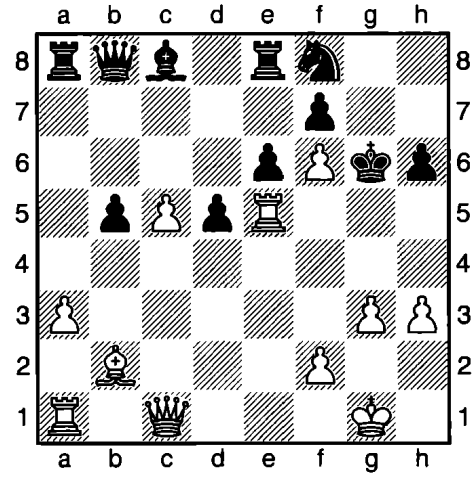
848) White to play (3 points)



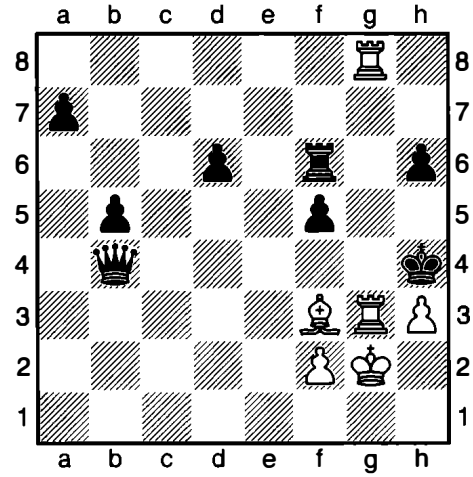
851) White to play (3 points)



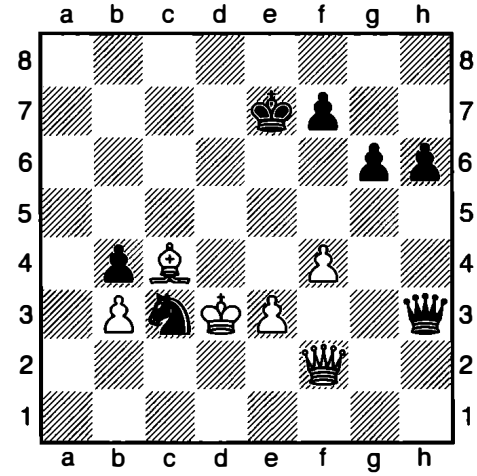
849) White to play (3 points)



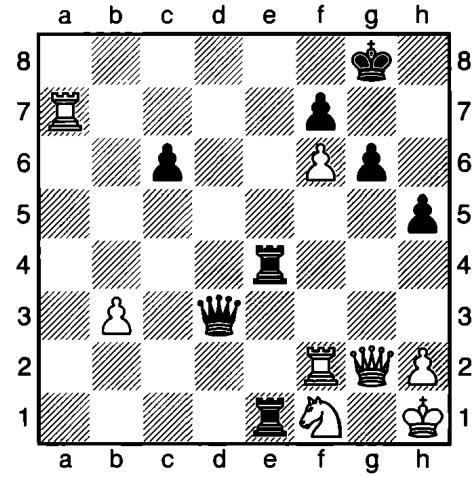
852) White to play (3 points)



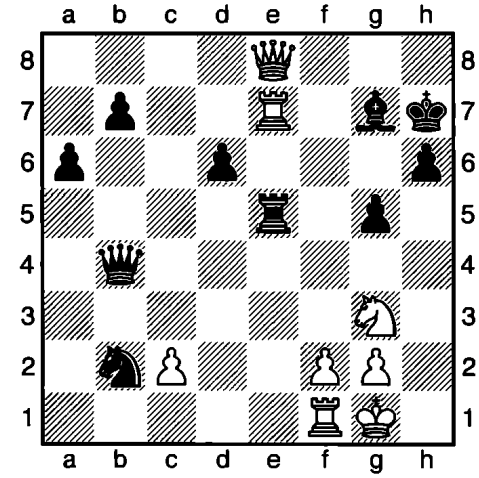
853) White to play (3 points)



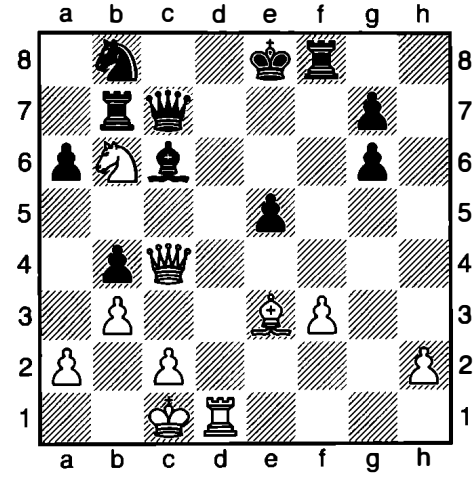
856) Black to play (3 points)



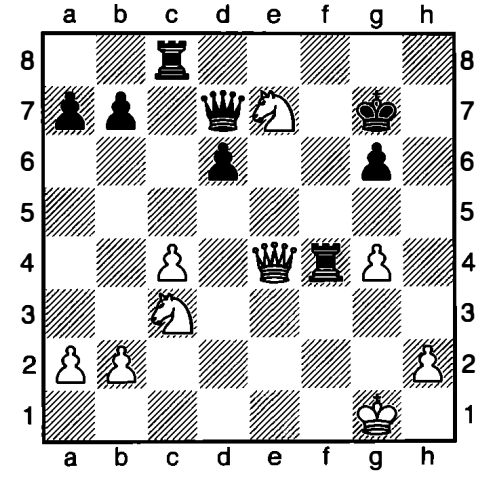
854) White to play (3 points)



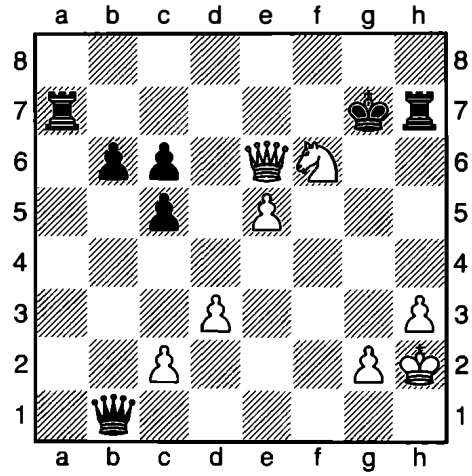
857) White to play (3 points)



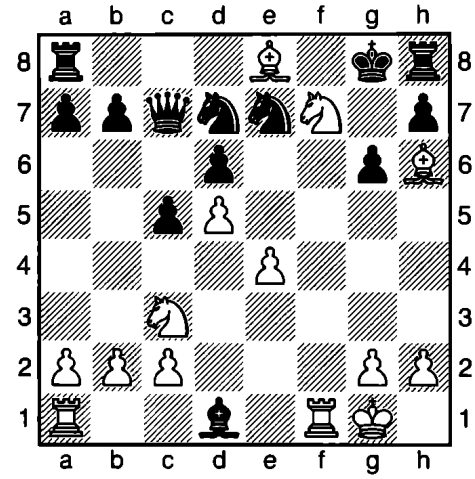
855) White to play (3 points)



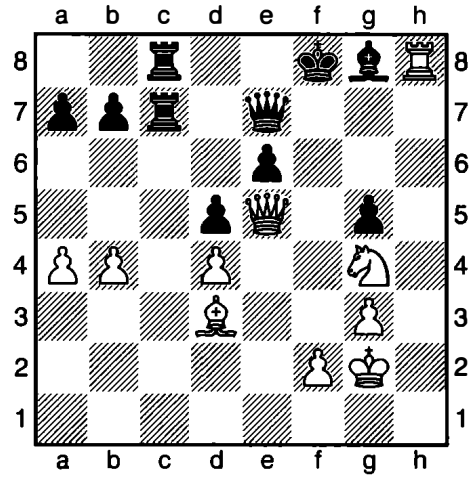
858) White to play (3 points)



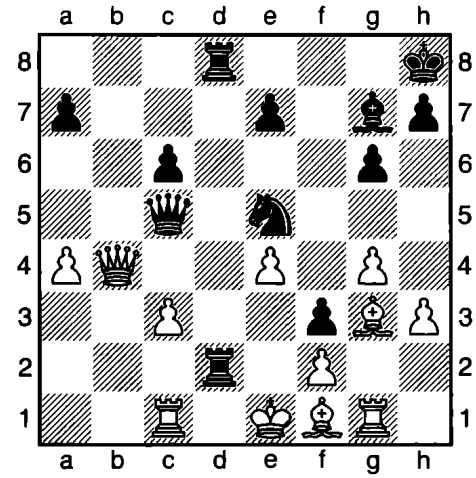
859) White to play (3 points)



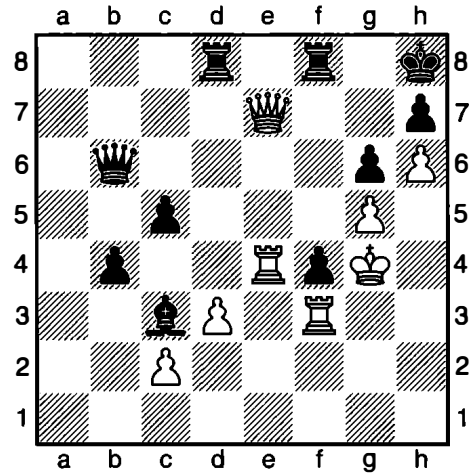
862) White to play (3 points)



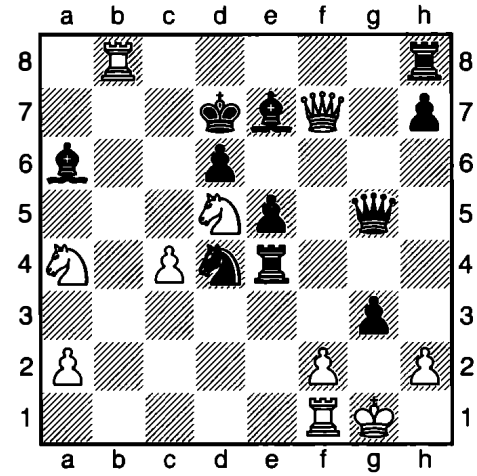
860) White to play (3 points)



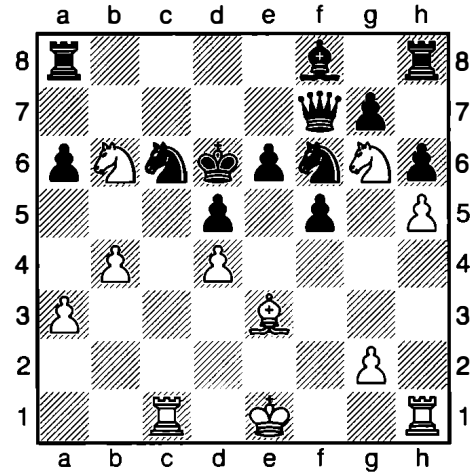
863) Black to play (3 points)



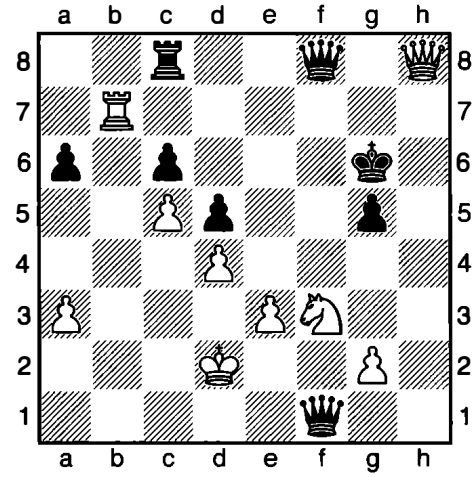
861) White to play (3 points)



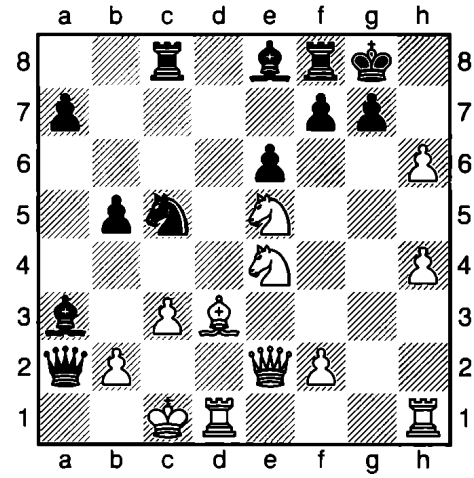
864) White to play (3 points)



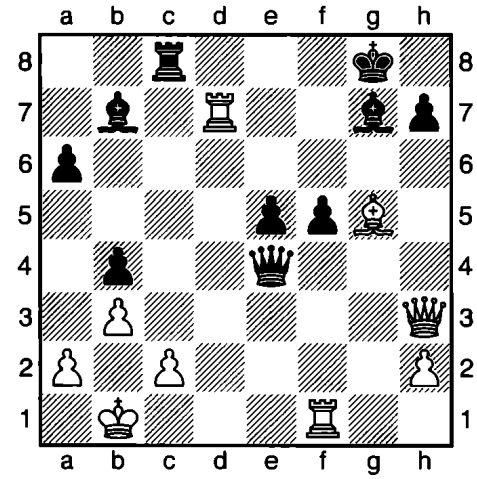
865) White to play (4 points)



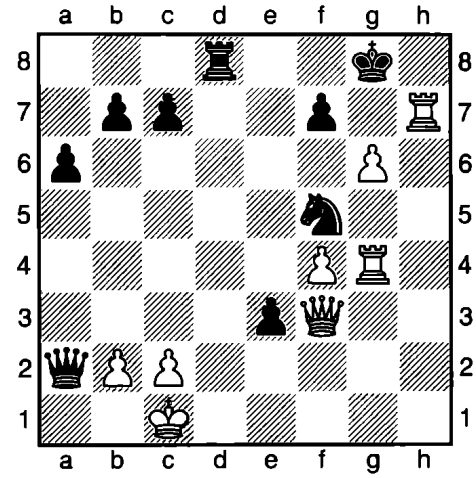
868) White to play (4 points)



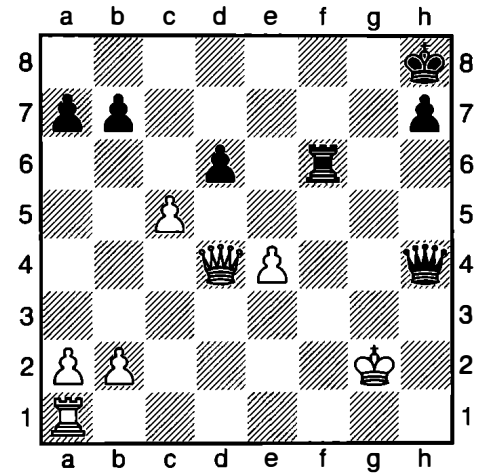
866) White to play (4 points)



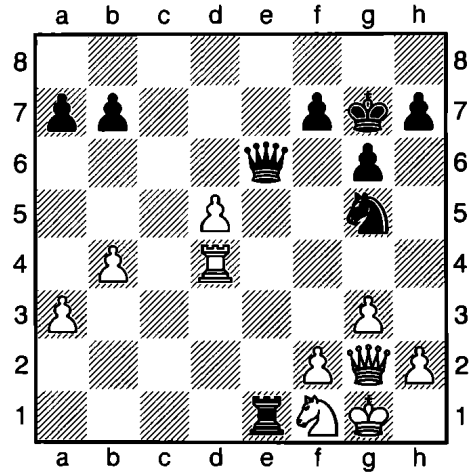
869) White to play (4 points)



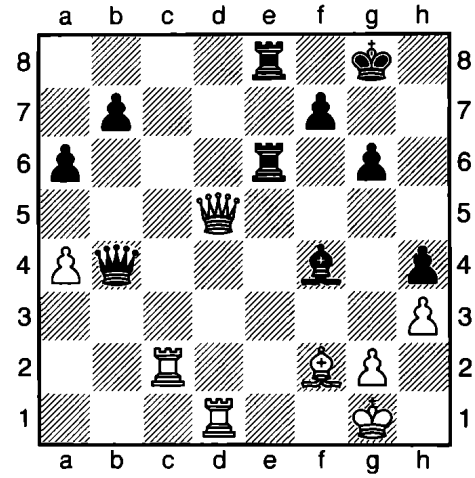
867) White to play (4 points)



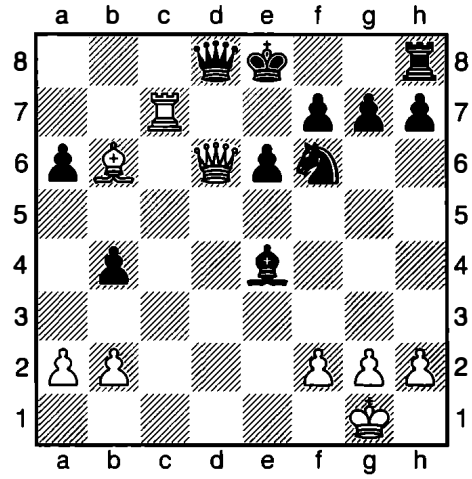
870) Black to play (4 points)



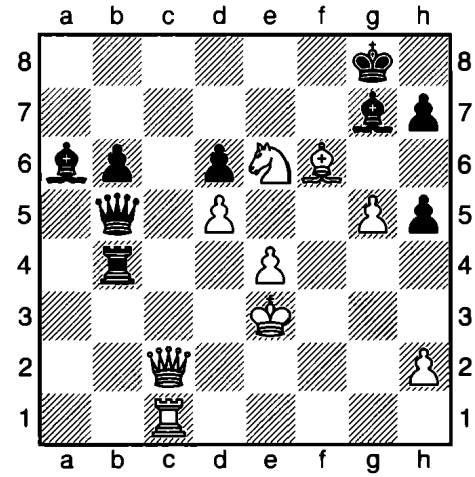
871) Black to play (4 points)



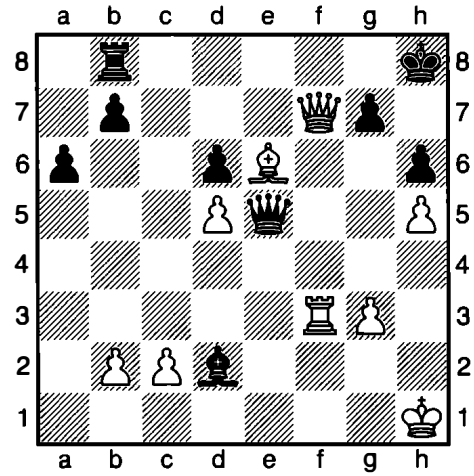
874) Black to play (4 points)



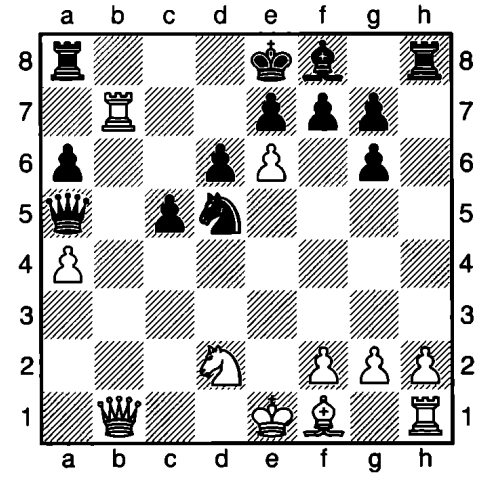
872) White to play (4 points)



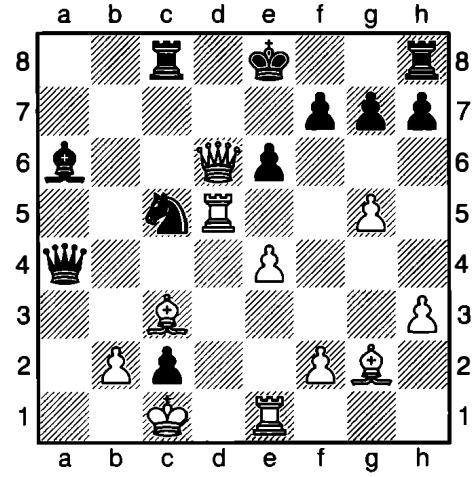
875) White to play (4 points)



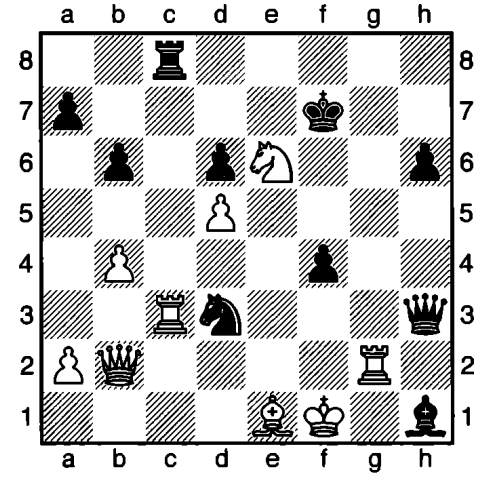
873) White to play (4 points)



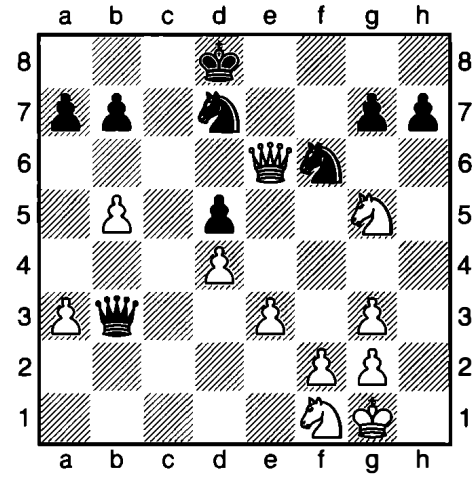
876) White to play (4 points)



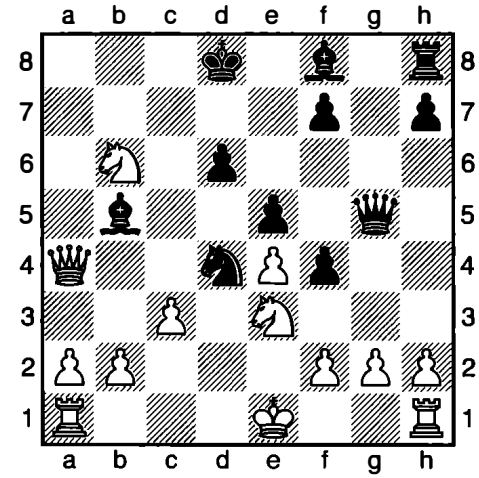
877) Black to play (4 points)



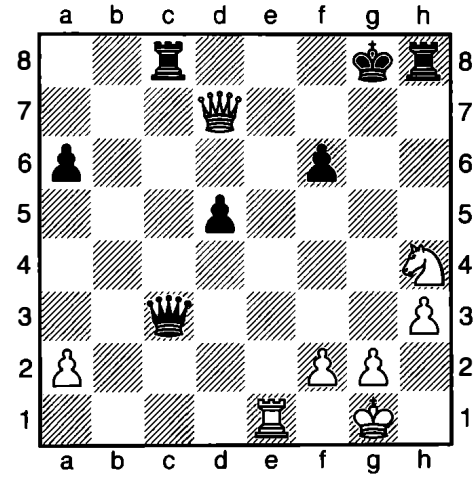
880) White to play (4 points)



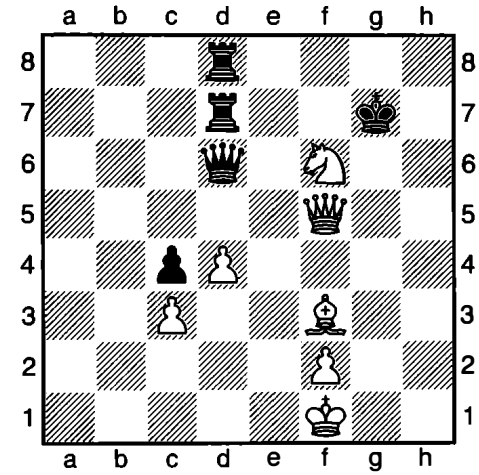
878) White to play (4 points)



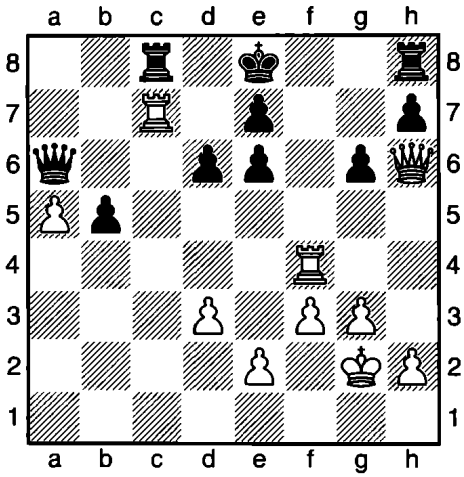
881) White to play (4 points)



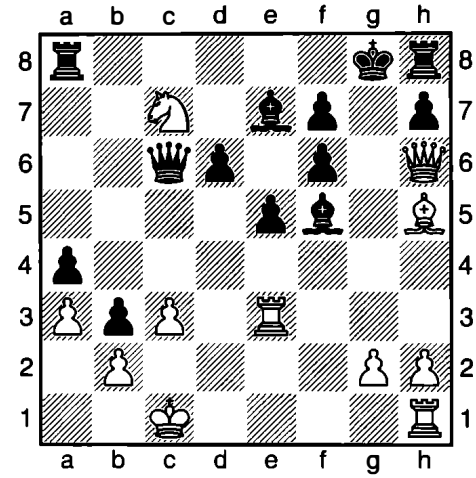
879) White to play (4 points)



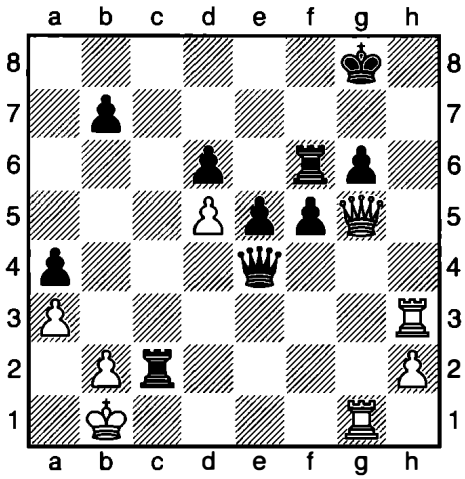
882) White to play (5 points)



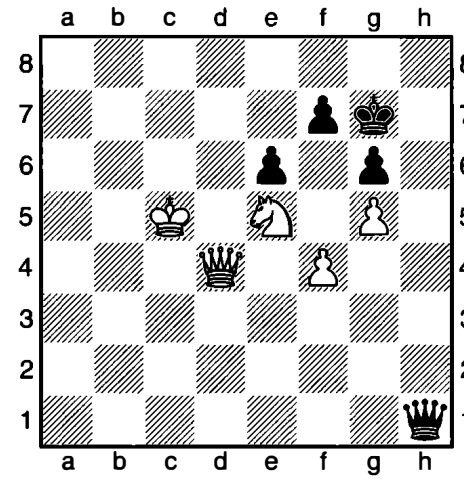
883) White to play (5 points)



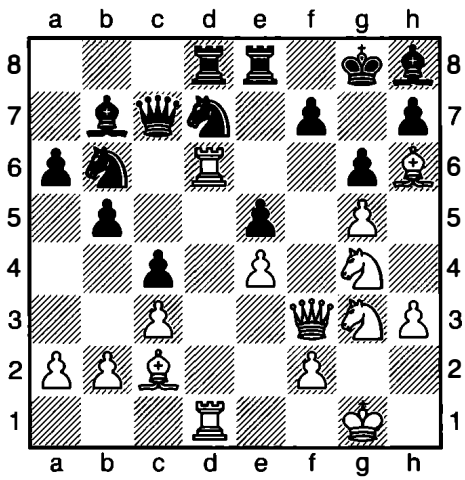
886) White to play (5 points)



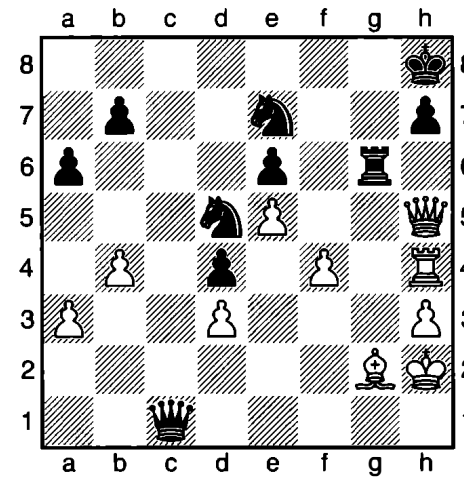
884) White to play (5 points)



887) White to play (5 points)



885) White to play (5 points)



888) Black to play (5 points)

Solutions for Miscellaneous Mates

751) Laxman – Rathnakaran
New Delhi 2009
1 ♕h4+ 1-0
1...♔g7 2 ♕h8#.

752) E. Lie – Ostmø
Norwegian Ch, Bergen 2009
1 ♕h3+ ♔g6 2 f5#

753) Drinoczi – Ja. Horvath
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♕xd4! 0-1
White has no reasonable way to prevent 2...♘b3#.

754) Perlovsky – Vlasenkov
Kolomna Ch 2008
1...♘g3+ 2 ♔g1 ♕d4+ 0-1
It's mate next move.

755) G. Waldschmidt – T. Willemze
Germany (team event) 2008/9
1...♖c1+ 0-1
Black mates after 2 ♔g2 ♘xf4# or 2 ♕d1 ♖xd1#.

756) Lputian – Nayer
Internet (playchess.com blitz) 2004
1...♘g4!
Threatening mate on h2.
2 hxg4 ♕h4#

757) Zubritsky – D. Ozerov
Moscow (Under-18) 2005
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♔xf7 2 ♗c4#. Black's pieces are curiously unable to block the bishop check.

758) V. Mihajlović – Tadić
Yugoslav Team Ch, Budva 2002
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♖xh7 2 ♘g6#.

759) Godard – Meijers
Prague 2009
1 ♕h1+ 1-0
1...♔g5 2 ♕h4#.

760) V. Johansson – Ir. Botvinnik
European Clubs Cup (Women), Izmir 2004
1 ♕xe8+ 1-0
1...♘xe8 2 ♘f7#.

761) S. Bartha – Rabineau
French Team Ch 2005/6
1...♖xc3+! 0-1
2 bxc3 ♗a3#.

762) O. Nazarenus – Bakin
Budapest 2009
1...♕h3 0-1
White cannot counter the twin threats of 2...♘f3+ and 2...♕xf1#.

763) K. Piorun – M. Narmontas
World Under-18 Ch, Kemer 2009
1...♕h1+ 2 ♔g3 ♘e4#

764) Shulman – Conquest
Reykjavik 2009
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 ♕h7#.

765) J. Fernandez Garcia – Ubilava
San Sebastian 2009
1...♖xh2+! 0-1
2 ♗xh2 ♕g2#.

766) F. Peralta – O. Almeida
Barcelona 2009
If White's queen were not on the board then he could mate with his knight, so he needs to give away his queen with gain of tempo.
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
White mates by 2 ♘h6#.

767) Khruschov – Rozum
Peterhof 2009
1...g5+ 2 ♔g4
2 ♕xg5+ ♕xg5+ 3 ♔h3 ♕g3#.
2...♕f4+ 0-1
3 ♔h3 ♕h4#.

768) J. Rukavina – Mir. Medić
Pula 2009
1...♕e4+ 0-1
2 ♔h2 allows mate on h1, while 2 f3 is met by 2...♕c2+, with mate in two more moves.

769) Ugrin – V. Klasan
Zagreb 2009
1...♘f6!
Black closes the line from f7 to f4 and so threatens 2...♕f4#. White can only delay this by giving up his queen.
2 ♔g3 ♕f4#

770) Vitoux – P. Guichard
Condom 2009
A powerful series of checks chases Black's king to its doom.
1 ♕f8+ ♔e5 2 ♕f4+ ♔d5 3 ♗c4#

771) N. Davies – Rendle
British League (4NCL) 2007/8
1 ♖f8+ ♖g8 2 ♕f7! 1-0
Threatening three different mates in one, by 3 ♕xg8#, 3 ♖xg8# and 3 ♕f6#, and if 2...♖xf8 then 3 ♕xf8#.

772) G. Szobi – Banhazi
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♗d4+ 2 ♖f2 0-1
White resigned without waiting for 2...♖xf1+ 3 ♔xf1 ♕d1#.

773) Haba – Gyimesi
Bundesliga 2007/8
1 ♕f4+ ♔h5 2 g4+ 1-0
2...♔h4 3 ♖h6#.

774) Ribli – D. Gross
Austrian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♖h7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♕f7+ ♔h8 3 ♕g7#.

775) Baisakhi Das – A. Ramaswamy
Asian Women's Team Ch, Visakhpatnam 2008
1...♖a3+! 0-1
2 ♔xa3 ♕a1+ 3 ♔b3 ♕a4#.

776) Val. Akhmadeev – F. Naumov
Kazan Region Ch 2008
1 ♗xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xf7 2 ♕g6+ ♔e7 3 ♕e6#.

777) Stoyko – B. Hulse
East Parsippany (team event) 2008
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
Black resigned due to 1...♗xh8 (1...♔xh8 2 ♕h7#) 2 ♕h7+ ♔f8 3 ♕f7#.

778) Kariakin – Grishchuk
Moscow (blitz) 2009
1...♕f3+ 2 ♔h3 g2+ 0-1
It's mate after 3 ♔h4 ♕g4# or 3 ♔h2 ♘g4#.

779) S. Grover – Boguslavsky
Bad Wiessee 2009
1 ♖f5+! 1-0
1...♔e7 2 ♕xg7+ ♔e8 3 ♕f7# and 1...♗xf5 2 ♕xf5+ ♔e7 3 ♕f7# both end in mate.

780) Mishuchkov – P. Welz
World Seniors Ch, Condino 2009
1 ♖f8+! 1-0
Black is mated after 1...♔e6 2 ♕e7# or 1...♗xf8 2 ♕xf8+ ♔e6 3 ♕e7#.

781) Zelčić – Slogar
Slovenian Team Ch, Sentjur 2009
Black resigned (**1-0**) without waiting for **1 ♖h8+ ♔g5 2 ♕c1#**.

782) Velcheva – Tairova
European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008
1...♘f3! 0-1
The triple attack on h2 is lethal; for example, 2 ♘g4 ♖xh2+ (or 2...♕xh2+) 3 ♘xh2 ♕xh2#.

783) Negi – Stefansson
Differdange 2008
1 ♘d6+! 1-0
1...♗xd6 2 ♕g8+ and 3 ♕xf7#.

784) Bo. Gonzalez – Arns
Villa Martelli 2008
1...♖g1+! 2 ♘xg1
2 ♖xg1 ♕xg1+ leads to the same conclusion.
2...♕xg1+! 0-1
3 ♖xg1 ♖xg1#.

785) I. Carlsson – Engqvist
Swedish Team Ch 2006/7
1...♖d1+!
The immediate 1...♘e3+? is met by 2 ♕xe3.
2 ♕xd1
2 ♗xd1 ♕e1#.
2...♘e3+ 3 ♔g1 ♕xg2#

786) Espinosa Aranda – Da. Gonzalez
Spanish Under-18 Ch, Padrun 2008
1 ♗xf7+! 1-0
White mates after 1...♔f8 2 ♗e6+ (or any other square in the same direction) 2...♕f7 3 ♕xf7# or 1...♕xf7 2 ♘h6+ ♔f8 3 ♕xf7#.

787) Andreikin – Lanin
Russian Junior Ch, St Petersburg 2007
1 ♕xg7+! ♖xg7 2 ♖f8+ 1-0
After 2...♖g8 either capture on g8 is mate.

788) C. Graf – W. Moser
Germany (team event) 2004/5
1...♕xg3+! 0-1
2 hxg3 h2+ 3 ♔f2 ♘g4#.

789) J. Koller – Haubt
Germany (team event) 2006/7
1...♖e1+ 0-1
2 ♖xe1 (2 ♗xe1 ♕f1#) 2...♖xe1+ 3 ♗xe1 ♕f1#.

790) Peregi – N. Pais
Hungarian Team Ch 2006/7
1 ♖xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♕f7+ ♔h8 3 ♕h7#.

791) Krivoshei – Golubev
Internet (playchess.com) 2004
1...♕xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♘h4+ 3 ♔h1 g2#

792) Bischoff – Bryzgalin
Internet (playchess.com) 2004
1...♕h2+ 2 ♔f1 ♕h1+! 0-1
3 ♗xh1 ♘h2#.

793) A. Paal – P. Biro
Hungarian Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♖xh6+! 1-0
1...♗xh6 2 ♕g6+ ♔h8 3 ♕xh6#.

794) Gacso – P. Gara
Hungarian Team Ch 2002/3
1...♕g1+ 2 ♔f3 ♖f1+! 3 ♗xf1 ♕xf1#

795) D. Mason – St. Clarke
British League (4NCL) 2002/3
1 ♕f8+ ♖g8 2 ♘g6+! 1-0
2...hxg6 3 ♕h6#.

796) Chernobai – P. Lobach
Serpukhov 2003
1 ♖xf8+ ♘xf8
1...♕xf8 2 ♕h7#.
2 ♖xf8+! 1-0
2...♕xf8 is met by 3 ♕h7#, while 2...♔xf8 3 ♕h8# and 2...♔g7 3 ♕h8# are also mate.

797) Nakamura – E. Berg
Bermuda 2003
1 ♖xc8+! ♗xc8
1...♔b6 2 ♕c5+ ♔a6 3 ♖a8#.
2 ♕d6#

798) Tatar Kis – Prokopisin
Nyiregyhaza 2003
1 ♕xb8+! 1-0
1...♔xb8 2 ♖c8+ ♔a7 3 ♖a8#.

799) Morozevich – C. Lutz
Biel 2003
1 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♕h3+ 1-0
2...♔g7 3 ♕h6#.

800) M. Pinc – P. Marik
Czech Junior Team Ch 2001/2
1 ♕xe7! 1-0
Threatening mate on f8, and if 1...♘xe7 then 2 ♘xe7#.

801) S. Lorenz – A. Orlov
Bundesliga 2000/1

1...♕xf1+! 0-1
2 ♔xf1 ♖d1+ 3 ♔g2 h3#.

802) Syrokhvatov – Ershova
Berezniki Ch 2001
1...♕xe2+! 0-1
Forcing open the c-file and mating after 2 ♗xe2 ♖c1#.

803) Krak – Sycova
Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♗xf7+! ♘xf7
1...♔d7 2 ♕e6#.
2 ♕e6+ 1-0
2...♕e7 3 ♕xe7#.

804) T. Fodor – Ag. Antal
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
Black resigned (**1-0**) in view of **1 f6+ ♔h6 2 ♕h3+ ♔g5 3 ♕h4#**.

805) P. della Morte – Sosiuk
Villa Ballester 2006
1 ♖h8+ ♔f7 2 ♖xg7+! 1-0
2...♔xg7 3 ♕h7#.

806) Gordenko – D. Semionov
Kiev 2006
1 g5+! 1-0
It's mate after 1...♔h7 2 ♖h8# or 1...♔xg5 2 ♕f4#.

807) Stubberud – Netušil
Prague 2006
1 ♖c8+ ♘g8 2 ♖xg8+! 1-0
2...♔xg8 3 ♕f8#.

808) U. Seidens – R. Mittag
Germany (team event) 2007/8
1...♖xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♕xg3+ 3 ♔h1 ♕h3#

809) Carlsen – J. Jimenez Capilla
Madrid (simultaneous) 2008
1 ♕g5 g6
The only way to prevent immediate mate on g7.
2 ♕h6 1-0
Now there's no defence to the threat of 3 ♕g7#.

810) Sowul – Koziak
Augustow 2008
Black has just sacrificed his queen, and now mates White neatly.
1...♖e1+ 2 ♔g2 f3+ 3 ♔g3 ♖g1#

811) Prathamesh – Ismagambetov
New Delhi 2009
1 ♕f8+ ♔h7 2 ♕f7+ 1-0
White mates after 2...♔h6 3 ♕g6# or 2...♔h8 3 ♘g6#.

812) Weinmann Musset – E. Zühlke
Leverkusen Ch 2008
1 ♗g8! 1-0
1...♘f5 2 ♕xf5 followed by mate on h7 next move.

813) Adhiban – Sh. Avinash
Gurgon 2009
1 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 2 ♘f5 1-0
There is no defence to the twin threats of 3 ♕g7# and 3 ♘h6#.

814) L. Genova – M. Vladimirova
Bulgarian Women's Ch, Dupnitsa 2009
Black is threatening to mate on White's back rank, so White must push her attack home forcefully.
1 ♗xg7+! 1-0
1...♔xg7 2 ♕g5+ ♔h8 3 ♕f6#.

815) Tokar – Rahl
Slovakian Team Ch 2007/8
1...♘f4+ 0-1
It's mate after 2 ♔h2 ♕h3+ 3 ♔g1 ♕g2# or 2 ♔g1 ♘e2+ and 3...♕h3#.

816) M. Ezat – Shetty
Manama 2009
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
The rook sacrifice enables the white queen to reach the h-file with gain of tempo: 1...♔xh8 2 ♕h3+ ♔g8 3 ♕h7#.

817) Ponomariov – Gelfand
Odessa 2008
1 ♕d4
Threatening mate on g7 or h8.

1...f6

After 1...♗f6 2 ♕xf6 White also mates next move.

2 ♕d5+ 1-0

2...♕e6 3 ♕xe6#.

818) Flear – D.B. Lund

British League (4NCL) 2005/6

1 ♕f6+ ♔g8

If 1...♗g7, then White mates by 2 ♕d8+ ♗f8 3 ♕xf8#.

1-0

Black resigned as White can mate by 2 ♕f7+ ♔h8 3 ♕xf8#.

819) Le Roy – Piot

French Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♕g8+ ♔f6 2 ♕h8+ 1-0

2...♔g6 3 ♕g7#.

820) Delemarre – Deleyn

Dutch Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♖f7! 1-0

Blocking the line from e8 to g6 and so threatening 2 ♘g6#. There are three ways Black can defend, but they all run into mate:

1) 1...g6 2 ♖h7# (or 2 ♖xh6#).

2) 1...♖f8 2 ♖xf8#.

3) 1...♗xf7 2 ♘exf7#.

821) Buchenthal – N. Elmali

Germany (team event) 2007/8

1 ♘d8+ 1-0

White blocks the line from b8 to e8, and mates by 2 ♕e8# next move.

822) Fayard – A. Ramaswamy

Nancy 2008

1 ♗h7+! 1-0

1...♔xh7 2 ♕c2+ (or 2 ♕d3+) 2...♔g8 3 ♕g6+ ♗g7 4 ♕xg7#.

823) J. Sondermann – O. Pucher

Nancy 2009

1 ♖xg7+ ♔f8

1...♔h8 2 ♕xh6#.

2 ♖g8+! ♔xg8 3 ♕g4+ 1-0

3...♔f8 (other moves are met by ♕g7#) 4 ♕c8+ ♖e8 5 ♕xe8# (or 5 ♖xe8#).

824) L. Karlsson – Guerra Bastida

Malaga 2008

1...♖xf2+! 0-1

2 ♔xf2 ♕h2+ 3 ♔f1 ♕g1+ 4 ♔e2 ♕g2#.

825) R. Panjwani – H. Masse

Canadian Open, Montreal 2008

1 ♖h8+! ♗xh8

1...♕g8 2 ♖xf5+ ♗f6 3 ♕xf6#.

2 ♕xh8+ ♕g8 3 ♖xf5#

A mate based on two pins.

826) Pascual Palomo – P. Llaneza Vega

Spanish Team Ch, Melilla 2008

1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♕xf7+ 1-0

White mates by 4 ♕h5#.

827) Ivanchuk – Mamedyarov

Amber Blindfold, Nice 2008

1...♕f3+ 2 ♔d2 ♗e3+ 0-1

It's mate after 3 ♔e1 ♕f2+ 4 ♔d1 ♕d2# or 3 ♔d3 ♗xf4+ (3...♗c1+ is equally good) 4 ♔d4 ♕e3#.

828) D. Yang – Mulyar

Tulsa 2008

1...♕f6+ 2 g5 hxg5+ 3 fxg5 ♕h8+ 0-1

4 ♖h7 ♕xh7#.

829) Vik. Ivanov – K. Zhukov

St Petersburg Club Ch 2008

1...♕g4+ 2 ♔h1 ♕f3+ 3 ♔g1 ♖f6 0-1

4 h3 ♖g6+ 5 ♔h2 ♕g2#.

830) Smolen – Raeber

Mitropa Cup, Olbia 2008

1...♕xh4+

1...♗xf2 also wins, but is much slower.

2 ♔g2 ♕g5+! 0-1

The key point, unpinning the rook to mate on h4 next move.

831) Jo. Straka – J. Danes

Teplice 2008

1 ♕h5+ ♔f6

1...♔g7 2 ♕f7#.

2 ♕f7+ ♔e5

2...♔g5 3 ♕g7#.

3 ♕g7#

832) S. Mansour – Wajdy
Amman (team event) 2008
1 g4+ ♔h4 2 ♔h2! 1-0
Threatening 3 g3#, and mating after 2...♖xe3 (2...♘xe4 3 g3+ also leads to mate) 3 g3+ ♖xg3 4 fxg3#.

833) M. Heider – Schalow
Rhineland-Palatinate Ch, Höheinöd 2008
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7
1...♔h8 2 ♕xh6#.
2 ♖g1+ ♔h7
2...♔f6 3 ♕f7#, 2...♔f8 3 ♕f7# and 2...♔h8 3 ♕xh6# are also mate.
3 ♕f7+ 1-0
3...♔h8 4 ♕g7#.

834) L. Wickström – A. Landgren
Swedish Ch, Växjö 2008
1 ♘h6+ ♔h8 2 ♕e7! 1-0
Exploiting the poorly placed rook on f8. The threat is simply 3 ♕xf8#, while if 2...♖g8 then 3 ♘xf7#. There is no defence.

835) Buhmann – Limontaite
Pardubice 2008
1 ♕d8+ 1-0
1...♔f7 2 ♘g5+ ♔g6 3 ♕d6+! ♔xg5 4 h4#.

836) Yaksin – R. Sousa
World Junior Ch, Gaziantep 2008
1 ♘g8+ ♔h5
After 1...♔h7 2 ♘xf6+ ♔h6 (or 2...♔h8 3 ♕g8#) 3 ♘xg4+ White not only wins the queen, but also mates in a few moves.
2 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6
In the case of 2...♔h6, White wins as above.
3 ♕h7#

837) Stabolewski – A. Shneider
Bad Zwesten 2005
1...♕h2+! 0-1
2 ♔xh2 ♘f3+ 3 ♔h1 ♘g3#.

838) Morozevich – Bologan
Russian Team Ch, Sochi 2004
1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 (1...♔f7 2 ♕xh7+ ♕g7 3 ♕xg7#) 2 ♖xf8+ ♘g8 3 ♗e5+ and mate next move.

839) Ibba – V. Milov
Bastia (rapid) 2004
1...♕xf1+! 0-1
2 ♗xf1 (2 ♔xf1 ♖d1# and 2 ♔h2 ♕xg2# are even quicker) 2...♘f3+ 3 ♔h1 ♖h2#.

840) M. Srebrnić – Varini
Portorož 2003
1...♖f2+ 2 ♔h1 ♖xh2+! 0-1
3 ♔xh2 ♖f2+ 4 ♔h1 ♘xg3#.

841) Gallagher – Vuilleumier
Lenk 2003
White's options are limited as his rook on e7 is pinned, but he still found a way to force mate.
1 ♖g8+! 1-0
1...♖xg8 unpins the rook for 2 ♖h7#, while 1...♔xg8 runs into 2 ♕g3+ followed by 3 ♕g7#.

842) Jobava – Safarli
Dubai 2003
1 ♕h7+ ♔f7 2 ♗g6+ ♔e7 3 ♗xf6+! 1-0
3...♔xf6 4 ♕h4#.

843) Polak – Vybiral
Brno 2003
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♗f6+ 1-0
2...♔f7 (2...♔h7 3 ♕h8#) 3 ♕e7+ ♔g8 4 ♕g7#.

844) Giam. Rossi – Damia
Vanzaghello 2003
1...♖h4+! 2 gxh4 ♘f4+ 3 ♔g3 ♘f5#

845) R. Prakash – S. Safin
New Delhi 2008
Black has a choice of checks, but only one leads to a quick mate:
1...♘f6+ 2 ♔g6 ♕g8+ 3 ♔f5
3 ♔h6 ♘g4#.
3...♕g4#

846) Mi. Nemeth – Ga. Papp
Hungarian Team Ch 2000/I
1 ♗b6+ ♔e7 2 ♖f7+! 1-0
2...♔xd6 3 ♖d1+ and mate next move.

847) Szieberth – V. Rajlich
Budapest 2001

1...♘a3++

1...♗xc3 also mates, albeit a little more slowly. Give yourself two points if you chose this continuation.

2 ♔a1 ♕b1+ 0-1

It's mate after 3 ♘xb1 ♗xb2# or 3 ♖xb1 ♘c2#. This is a version of the standard 'smothered mate' in which the long diagonal plays an additional role.

848) Acher – Santo-Roman

French Team Ch 1999/00

1 ♕xh7+! 1-0

1...♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g8 (other king moves are also met by ♖g1+) 3 ♖g1+ ♕g7 4 ♘f6# (or 4 ♘e7#).

849) A. Nemes – A. Demeny

Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♖f7+ ♔b6

Black is also mated after 1...♔c8 2 ♖a8# or 1...♔b8 2 ♖a8+! ♔xa8 3 ♕xc6+ ♔b8 4 ♕b7#.

2 ♖a6+! 1-0

2...♔xa6 3 ♕xc6+ ♔a5 4 ♖a7#.

850) Svetlov – K. Vorobiov

Moscow 2008

1 ♕xe8+! ♔xe8 2 ♖d8+ 1-0

It's mate after 2...♔e7 3 ♖1d7# or 2...♗xd8 3 ♖xd8#.

851) Villwock – U. Rohde

Germany (team event) 2008/9

1 ♕f8+ ♖c8 2 ♕d6+ 1-0

2...♔a8 3 ♕a3+ (White's queen returns to a3, but now Black's rook is blocking c8) 3...♔b8 4 ♕a7#.

852) Snape – F. May

British League (4NCL) 2002/3

1 ♖h5!

Threatening mate on h6.

1...♔xh5 2 ♕d1+ 1-0

2...♔g6 (2...♔g5 3 ♕g4#) 3 ♕g4+ ♔h7 4 ♕g7#.

853) Lubczynski – Kostiukova

Aghios Kirykos 2008

1 ♖3g5!

White threatens 2 ♖h5# and will answer 1...hxg5 with 2 ♖h8+ followed by mate. Black can only delay the end by giving away his queen.

1...♕g4+ 2 hxg4 1-0

It's mate all the same after 2...fxg4 3 ♖xg4+ ♔h5 4 ♖f4# or 2...hxg5 3 ♖h8+ ♖h6 4 ♖xh6#.

854) A. Horvath – Onishchuk

European Clubs Cup, Ohrid 2009

1 ♕xg6+! 1-0

Black is mated at once after 1...♔h8 2 ♕g7# or 1...♔f8 2 ♕xf7#.

The critical line is 1...fxg6 2 f7+ ♔f8 (otherwise White mates more quickly by 3 f8♕#) 3 ♖a8+ ♔e7 4 f8♕+ ♔e6 (4...♔d7 5 ♖a7+ ♔e6 6 ♕e7+ ♔d5 7 ♖d7#) and now there are several ways to mate, including 5 ♖f6+ ♔e5 (5...♔d5 6 ♕d6# or 5...♔d7 6 ♖a7#) 6 ♖e8+ ♔d4 (or 6...♔d5 7 ♕d6#) 7 ♕b4+ ♕c4 8 ♕xc4#.

855) Montero Campuzano – K. Berbatov

Seville 2009

1 ♕e6+ ♕e7 2 ♖d8+! 1-0

2...♔xd8 3 ♕c8#.

856) Marievich – N. Efanov

Ekaterinburg 2008

1...♕d7+ 2 ♔c2 0-1

2...♕d1+ 3 ♔b2 ♕b1#.

857) Gabre – Losić

Croatia Cup, Šibenik 2008

1 ♖xg7+! 1-0

It's mate after 1...♔xg7 2 ♘h5+ ♔h7 3 ♕f7+ ♔h8 4 ♕g7#.

858) Kå. Kristensen – Rostgaard

Baltic Sea Cup, Bornholm 2008

1 ♕xg6+ ♔f8

1...♔h8 2 ♕h6#.

2 ♕g8+! 1-0

2...♔xe7 3 ♘d5#.

859) Pikula – B. Ivanović

Yugoslav Team Ch playoff 2003

1 ♕g4+ ♔f7

After 1...♔h6 2 ♘g8# and 1...♔h8 2 ♕g8# Black is mated immediately.

2 ♕g8+ 1-0
2...♔e7 3 ♕e8#.

860) Csom – G. Feher
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♖xg8+! ♔xg8 2 ♘h6+ ♔f8 3 ♕h8#

861) Tomić-Potrebujes – I. Marčić
Split 2008
1 d4!
Blocking the c3-g7 line and so threatening 2 ♕g7#.
1...♖f5
This allows mate at once. 1...♗xd4 2 ♖xd4 doesn't change the situation and 1...♖g8 runs into 2 ♕e5+, while otherwise Black can only delay mate by giving away pieces.
2 ♕g7#

862) Filippas – Klokas
Athens 2008
1 ♘d8! 1-0
Any move by the knight threatens 2 ♗f7#, but this is the only one that saves the bishop from capture by Black's rook. Black can only prevent the bishop mate by 1...♘e5, but then White mates with 2 ♖f8# instead.

863) Rozhin – Firman
Evpatoria 2002
Black needs to clear f3 for his knight. This can be achieved by a two-stage operation.
1...♕e3+!! 0-1
2 fxe3 f2+! 3 ♗xf2 ♘f3#.

864) Aabling Thomsen – C. Eriksson
Danish Ch, Silkeborg 2009
1 ♘ab6+ ♔c6 2 ♘b4+ 1-0
It's mate after 2...♔c7 (2...♔c5 may be met by 3 ♘a4# or 3 ♘d7#) 3 ♘xa6+ ♔c6 4 ♕d5#.

865) Reinderman – Strating
Hilversum 2009
1 ♗f4+ e5
After 1...♘e5 White can play either 2 dxe5# or 2 ♗xe5#.
2 ♗xe5+
2 dxe5+? allows Black to escape by 2...♔c7.
2...♘xe5 3 dxe5+ ♔e6 4 ♖c6+ ♗d6 5 ♖xd6#

866) Kar. Horvath – G. Sztaray
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8
1 ♘f6+ ♔h8
1...gxf6 2 ♕g4+ ♔h8 3 ♕g7#.
2 hxg7+ ♔xg7 3 ♕g4+ 1-0
3...♔xf6 and 3...♔h6 are both met by 4 ♕g5#, while after 3...♔h8 4 ♕h5+ ♔g7 White has various ways to mate; 5 ♕g5+ ♔h8 6 ♕h6# is one of the quickest, but checking with a rook on g1 is also good.

867) Brandner – Liedl
Austrian Team Ch 2009/10
1 gxf7++! ♔xh7
1...♔f8 2 ♖g8+ ♔e7 3 f8♕++ ♔e6 4 ♕e4# (or 4 ♖g6#).
2 ♕h1+ ♘h6 3 ♕e4+ ♔h8
3...♘f5 4 ♕xf5+ ♔h8 (4...♔h6 5 ♕g6#) 5 ♕h5#.
4 ♕e5+ 1-0
4...♔h7 5 ♕g7#.

868) Kharlov – Dreev
Russian Team Ch, Dagomys 2008
1 ♘e5+ ♔f5 2 ♕h7+ ♔e6
2...♔f6 3 ♕g6#.
3 ♕d7+ 1-0
3...♔f6 4 ♘g4+ ♔g6 5 ♕h7#.

869) Pashikian – Melkumian
Gyumri 2008
1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♕h6+ ♔g8
2...♔h8 3 ♗f6+ ♔g8 4 ♕g7# is mate, while 2...♔f7 3 ♕f6+ ♔g8 (3...♔e8 4 ♕e7#) 4 ♕e6+ transposes to the game.
3 ♕e6+ ♔g7
Black is mated immediately after 3...♔h8 4 ♗f6# or 3...♔f8 4 ♗h6#.
4 ♗h6+ 1-0
4...♔h8 5 ♕f6+ ♔g8 6 ♕g7#.

870) Buslov – E. Medvedev
Tomsk 2008
Black could mate by ...♕g4+ or ...♕g5+, followed by ...♖h6#, except that his rook is pinned. In order to mate he has to use checks to transfer his queen to g7, thereby unpinning the rook.
1...♕g5+ 2 ♔h2 ♕h6+ 3 ♔g2 ♕g7+! 0-1
Black mates by 4...♖h6#.

871) J. Tuma – J. Johansson
Olomouc 2008

1...♘h3+ 2 ♔h1 ♕e2!
Threatening mate in two by 3...♖xf1+.
3 ♕xh3 ♖xf1+ 0-1
4 ♔g2 ♕xf2#.

872) Stoven – Piceu
Condom 2003

1 ♖e7+! ♕xe7
After 1...♔f8 2 ♕xd8+ White mates next move.
2 ♕b8+ ♔d7
2...♕d8 3 ♕xd8#.
3 ♕c7+ ♔e8 4 ♕c8+ ♕d8 5 ♕xd8#

873) Smirin – Ehlvest
FIDE Knockout, Moscow 2001

1 ♕f8+! ♖xf8
After 1...♔h7 2 ♕xb8 White wins a rook and has a decisive attack; for example, 2...♕xh5+ 3 ♔g2 ♕e5 4 ♗f7 ♕e2+ 5 ♔h3 and Black can only delay mate for a short time by giving up his queen.
2 ♖xf8+ ♔h7 3 ♗g8+ ♔h8 4 ♗f7+ 1-0
4...♔h7 5 ♗g6#.

874) M. Portero – R. Colas
Spain (team event) 2006

1...♖e1+ 2 ♗xe1
2 ♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 3 ♗xe1 ♕xe1#.
2...♖xe1+ 3 ♔f2 ♗g3+
3...♗e3+ is equally good and leads to the same mate.
4 ♔f3 ♕f4#

875) Scalcione – P. Piscopo
Campobasso 2002

1 ♕c8+! ♗xc8
1...♔f7 also leads to mate after 2 ♖c7+ ♔g6 3 ♘f4# (or 3 ♖xg7#).
2 ♖xc8+ ♔f7
2...♕e8 3 ♖xe8+ ♔f7 4 ♖e7+ ♔g8 (4...♔g6 is again met by 5 ♘f4# or 5 ♖xg7#) 5 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 6 ♖g6#.
3 ♖c7+ 1-0
It's mate after 3...♔g6 4 ♘f4# (or 4 ♖xg7#), 3...♔e8 4 ♖e7# or 3...♔g8 4 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 5 ♖g6#.

876) E. Cosma – Calzetta
European Women's Ch, Plovdiv 2008

1 ♖b8+ ♖xb8
1...♕d8 2 ♗b5+ (2 ♕b5+ is just as effective) 2...axb5 3 ♕xb5#.
2 ♕xb8+ ♕d8 3 ♗b5+! 1-0
3...axb5 4 ♕xb5+ ♕d7 5 ♕xd7#.

877) A. Dole – P. Zelbel
World Under-16 Ch, Kemer 2009

When a discovered or double check is available, it's easy to overlook other possibilities. Here Black forces mate by ignoring the discovered checks:
1...♘b3+ 2 ♔xc2 ♖xc3+! 0-1
3 bxc3 (3 ♔xc3 ♕c4# or 3 ♔d1 ♕a1#) 3...♕a2+ 4 ♔d1 ♕b1#.

878) Kardon – A. Zoltan
Hungarian Team Ch 2007/8

1 ♘f7+ ♔c8
1...♔c7 2 ♕d6+ ♔c8 3 ♕e7 comes to the same thing.
2 ♕e7! ♔c7
2...b6 3 ♕d8+ ♔b7 4 ♘d6#.
3 ♕d8#

879) Peek – B. van den Berg
Maastricht 2008

1 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 2 ♕xe8+ ♔g7
2...♔h7 3 ♕g6#.
3 ♘f5+ ♔h7 4 ♕f7#

880) Mirzanurov – V. Rodchenkov
Kostroma 2008

White could have forced mate by **1 ♖c7+! ♖xc7** (1...♔e8 2 ♕h8#) **2 ♕g7+ ♔e8 3 ♕f8+ ♔d7 4 ♕d8#**.
Instead, the game finished **1 ♘c7?? ♖xc7??** (1...f3! would have won for Black, but after the move played White wins after all) **2 ♖xc7+ ♔e8 3 ♕h8#**.

881) Frigeri – Opačić
Verona 2006

1 ♕a8+ 1-0
1...♔e7 (1...♔c7 2 ♘ed5#) 2 ♘ed5+ ♔e6 3 ♕c8+ ♗d7 4 ♕xd7#.

882) Vokač – Lickleder

Germany (team event) 2007/8

1 ♕g5+ ♔f8

The main line runs 1...♔f7 (1...♔h8 2 ♕h6+ ♖h7 3 ♕xh7#) 2 ♗h5+ ♔e6 (2...♔e7 3 ♕g7+ ♔e6 4 ♗g4# and 2...♔f8 3 ♕g8+ ♔e7 4 ♕f7# also mate quickly) 3 ♕g4+! ♔xf6 (3...♔e7 4 ♕g7+ ♔e6 5 ♗g4#) 4 ♕g6+ ♔e7 5 ♕f7#.

2 ♕g8+ ♔e7 3 ♕g7+ 1-0

3...♔e6 4 ♗g4#.

883) Chua Xing Jian – Nihal

World Schools Team Ch, Singapore 2008

1 ♖xe7+! ♔xe7

1...♔d8 2 ♖f8+ ♔xe7 (2...♖xf8 3 ♕xf8#) 3 ♕g7#.

2 ♕g7+ ♔d8

The other main line runs 2...♔e8 3 ♕xh8+ ♔d7 (3...♔e7 4 ♕g7+ ♔e8 5 ♖f8#) 4 ♖f7+ ♔c6 5 ♕c3+ ♔d5 6 e4#.

3 ♖f7 1-0

Threatening mate in one by 4 ♕xh8# and mate in two by 4 ♖d7+ or 4 ♕f6+. After 3...♔e8 (3...♕c6 4 ♕f6+) the quickest win is 4 ♖d7 with mate next move by 5 ♕e7#, although 4 ♖e7+ is also good.

884) Si. Bjornsson – A. Kristjansson

Reykjavik Ch 2009

1 ♖h8+! ♔f7

Or 1...♔xh8 (1...♔g7 2 ♕h6+ and White mates next move) 2 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 (2...♔h7 3 ♕xg6+ followed by mate) 3 ♖xg6+ ♔h7 4 ♕g7#.

2 ♖f8+! ♔xf8 3 ♕xf6+ ♔e8

3...♔g8 4 ♖xg6+ ♔h7 5 ♕g7#.

4 ♕xg6+ 1-0

4...♔d8 (after 4...♔f8 there are many mates; for example, 5 ♕g8+ ♔e7 6 ♖g7+ ♔f6 7 ♖f7#) 5 ♕xd6+ ♔e8 (5...♔c8 6 ♖g8#) 6 ♖g8+ ♔f7 7 ♕e6# (or 7 ♕f8#).

885) Van Kemenade – S. James

British League (4NCL) 2006/7

White's plan is to eliminate the d7-knight so as to force mate with ♘f6+ followed by ♕xf6. In order to achieve this, White must give up both his rooks.

1 ♖xd7!

Threatening mate on f7.

1...♘xd7

Giving up the queen doesn't delay mate for long.

2 ♖xd7 ♕xd7

2...♖xd7 3 ♘f6+ is similar.

3 ♘f6+ ♗xf6 4 ♕xf6

Now Black can only delay mate for a few moves by giving some pointless checks, but he doesn't bother.

4...♕d3 5 ♕g7#

886) I. Kurnosov – De. Boros

Austrian Team Ch 2009/10

1 ♖g3+ ♗g6 2 ♗xg6

Threatening to mate by moving the bishop.

2...hxg6

2...fxg6 3 ♖xg6+ hxg6 (3...♔f7 4 ♕g7#) 4 ♕xg6+ transposes.

3 ♖xg6+ 1-0

3...fxg6 4 ♕xg6+ ♔f8 5 ♘e6#.

887) I. Popov – Y. Eliseev

Moscow Ch 2008

1 ♘d7+!

1 ♘g4+? ♔f8 is less clear since there is no immediate mate.

1...♔g8

1...e5 2 ♕xe5+ ♔h7 3 ♘f6+ ♔g7 4 ♘h5++ ♔f8 5 ♕b8+ ♔e7 6 ♕d6+ ♔e8 7 ♘f6# (or 7 ♘g7#).

2 ♘f6+ ♔g7

2...♔f8 3 ♕d8+ ♔g7 4 ♕g8#.

3 ♘h5++ ♔f8

3...♔g8 4 ♕g7#.

4 ♕d8#

888) Herczku – Cselenyi

Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1...♖xg2+! 2 ♔xg2 ♘e3+ 3 ♔f3

3 ♔h2 ♕d2+ leads to mate on g2, as does 3 ♔f2 ♕f1+ 4 ♔g3 ♕g2#.

3...♕h1+ 4 ♔e2

4 ♔f2 ♕f1+ 5 ♔g3 ♕g2#.

4...♕d1+

4...♕f1+? 5 ♔d2 is less effective as there is no mate on d1.

0-1

5 ♔f2 ♕f1+ 6 ♔g3 ♕g2#.

Score-Chart for Miscellaneous Mates

Position number	Points	Score
751	1	
752	1	
753	1	
754	1	
755	1	
756	1	
757	1	
758	1	
759	1	
760	1	
761	1	
762	1	
763	1	
764	1	
765	1	
766	1	
767	2	
768	2	
769	2	
770	2	
771	2	
772	2	
773	2	
774	2	
775	2	
776	2	
777	2	
778	2	
779	2	
780	2	
781	2	
782	2	
783	2	
784	2	
785	2	
786	2	
787	2	
788	2	
789	2	
790	2	
791	2	
792	2	
793	2	
794	2	
795	2	
796	2	
797	2	
798	2	
799	2	
800	2	
801	2	
802	2	
803	2	
804	2	
805	2	
806	2	
807	2	

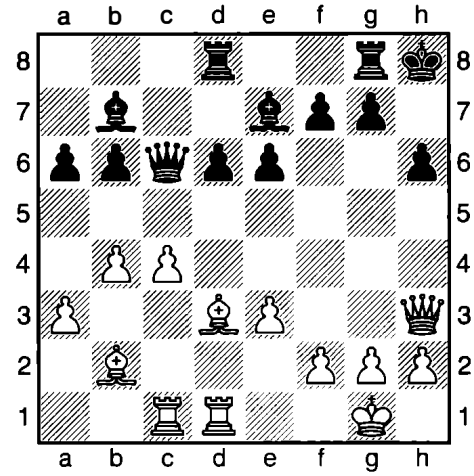
Position number	Points	Score
808	2	
809	2	
810	2	
811	2	
812	2	
813	2	
814	2	
815	2	
816	2	
817	2	
818	2	
819	2	
820	2	
821	2	
822	2	
823	3	
824	3	
825	3	
826	3	
827	3	
828	3	
829	3	
830	3	
831	3	
832	3	
833	3	
834	3	
835	3	
836	3	
837	3	
838	3	
839	3	
840	3	
841	3	
842	3	
843	3	
844	3	
845	3	
846	3	
847	3	
848	3	
849	3	
850	3	
851	3	
852	3	
853	3	
854	3	
855	3	
856	3	
857	3	
858	3	
859	3	
860	3	
861	3	
862	3	
863	3	
864	3	
865	4	
866	4	
867	4	
868	4	
869	4	
870	4	
871	4	
872	4	
873	4	
874	4	
875	4	
876	4	

Position number	Points	Score
877	4	
878	4	
879	4	
880	4	
881	4	
882	5	
883	5	
884	5	
885	5	
886	5	
887	5	
888	5	
Total	**357**	

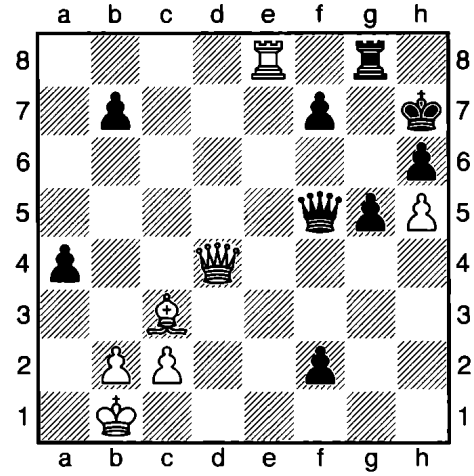
16 Mate Revision Test

This chapter enables you to revise what you have learned in the preceding chapters. The 60 positions embody many of the themes covered earlier in the book, but I've mixed them up so that when you see a position you won't know what the theme is.

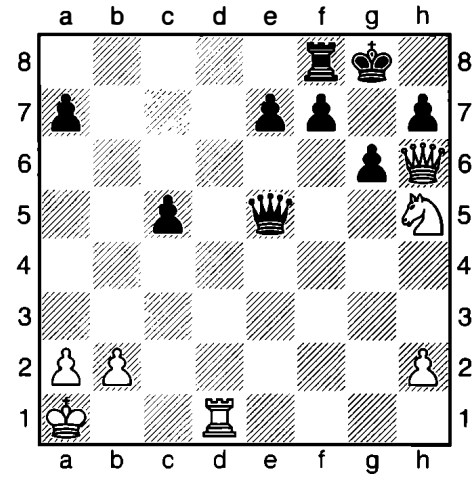
If you do well here, then you have mastered the not-so-gentle art of delivering checkmate.



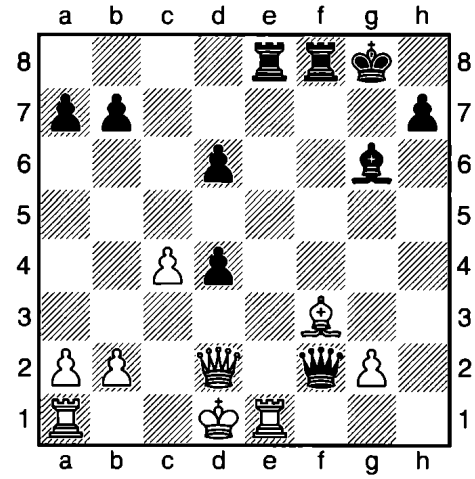
889) White to play (1 point)



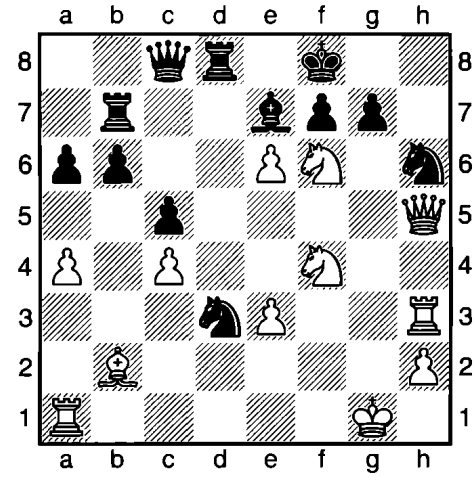
892) White to play (1 point)



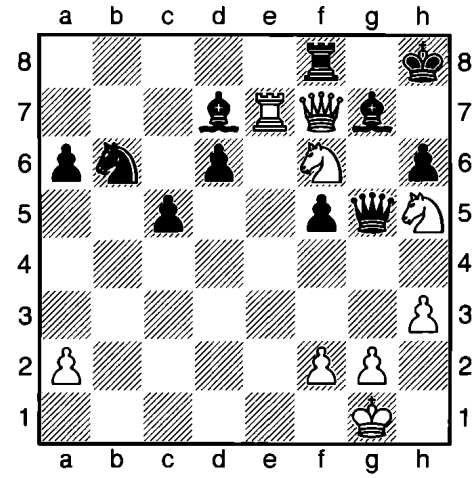
890) White to play (1 point)



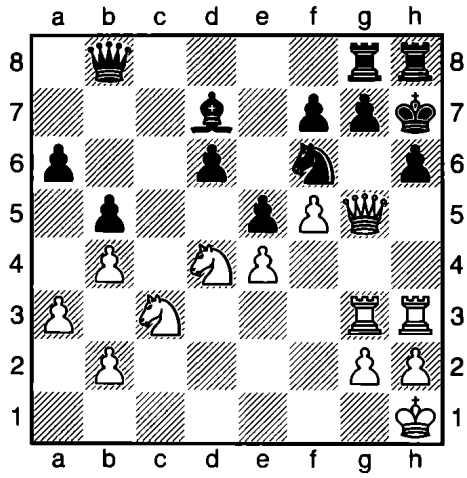
893) Black to play (1 point)



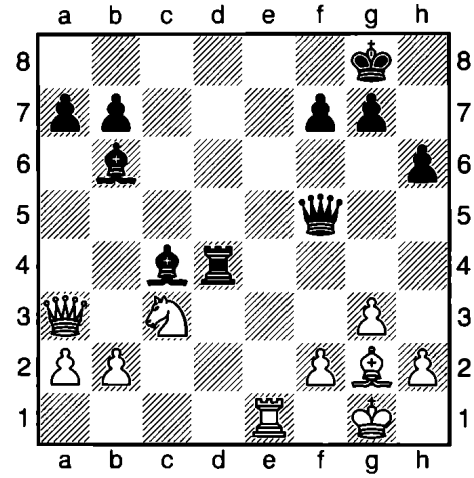
891) White to play (1 point)



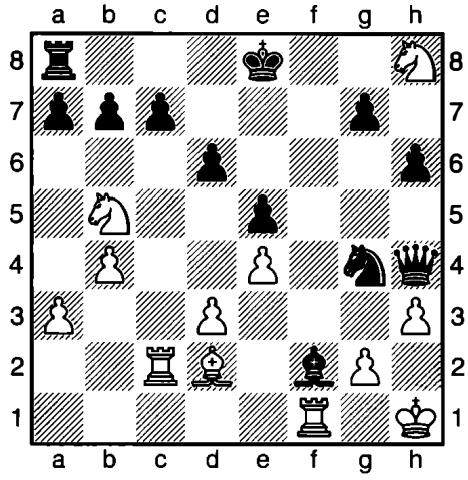
894) White to play (1 point)



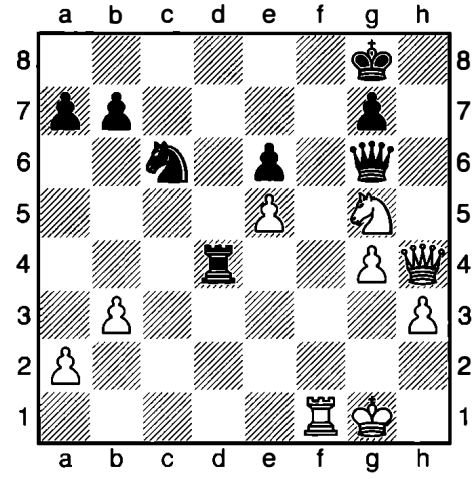
895) White to play (1 point)



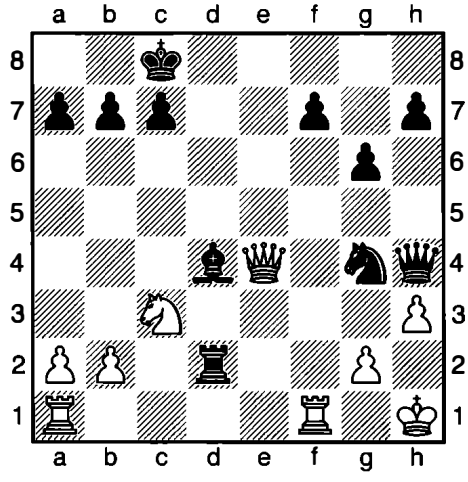
898) Black to play (1 point)



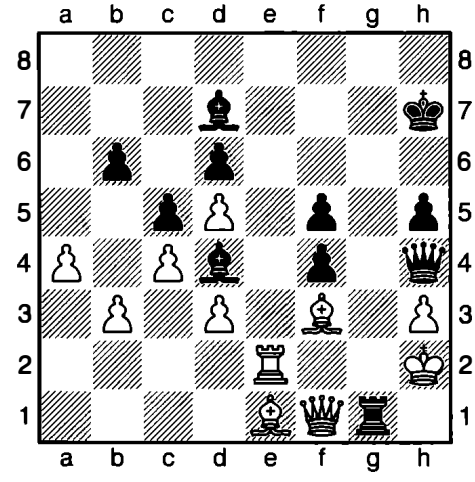
896) Black to play (1 point)



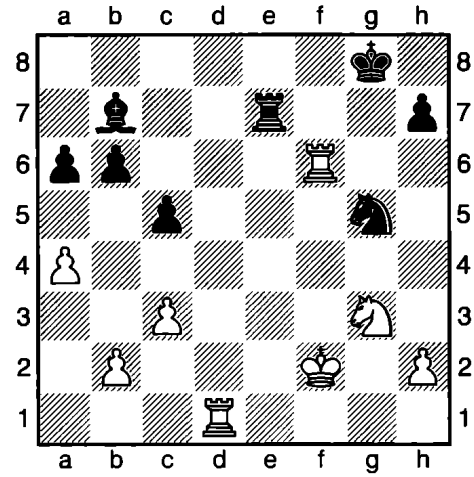
899) White to play (1 point)



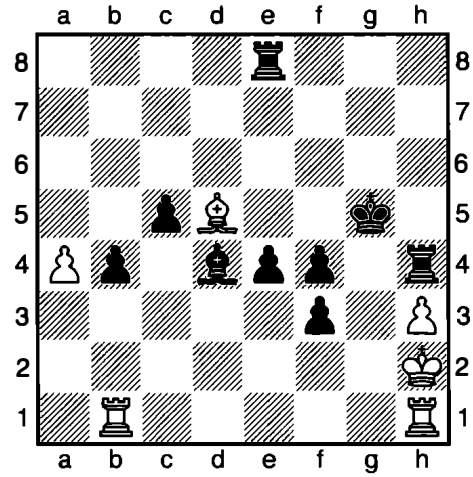
897) Black to play (1 point)



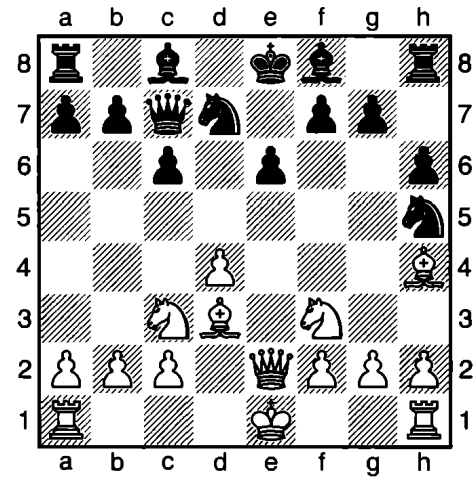
900) Black to play (1 point)



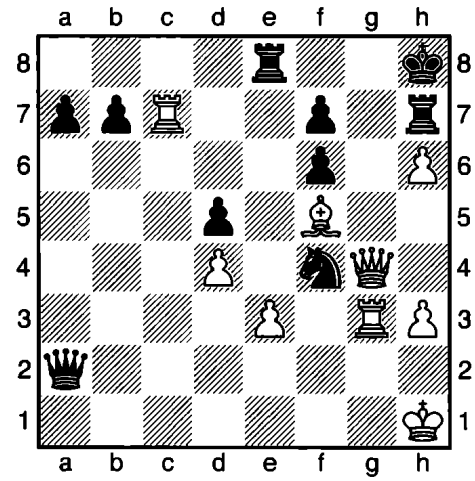
901) White to play (1 point)



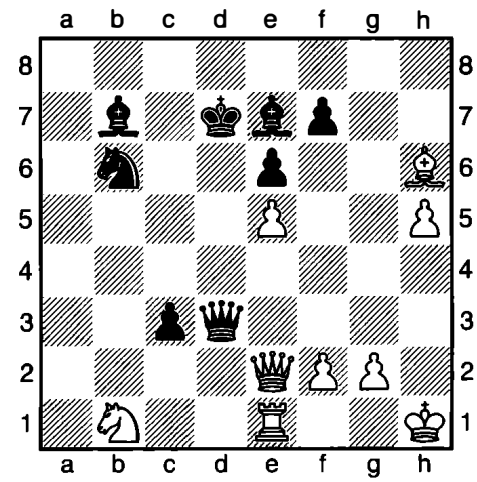
904) Black to play (1 point)



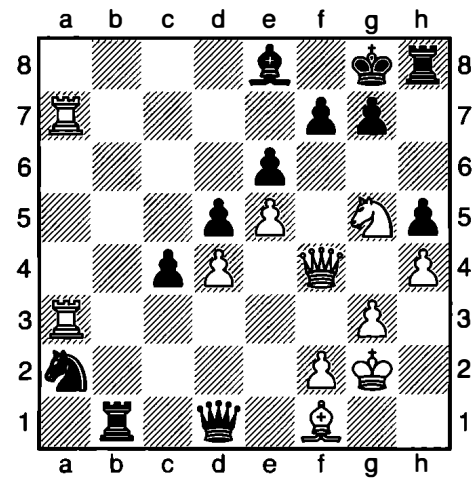
902) White to play (1 point)



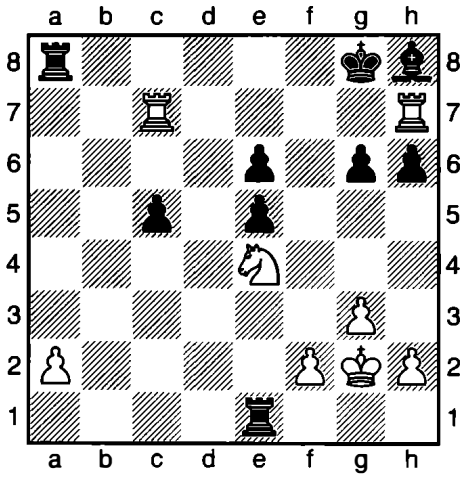
905) White to play (2 points)



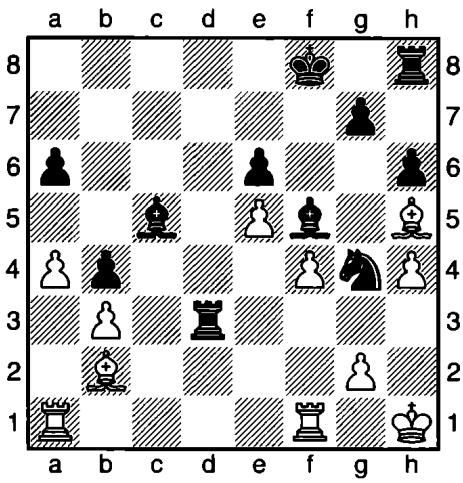
903) Black to play (1 point)



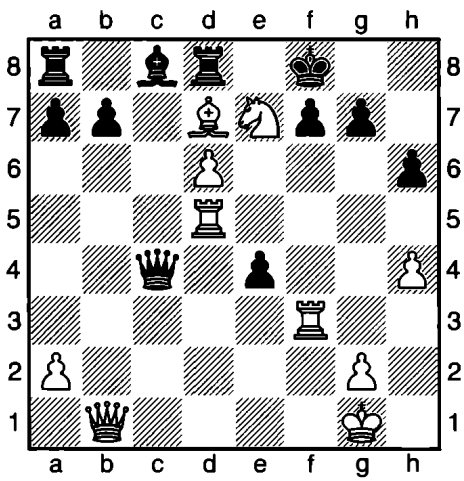
906) White to play (2 points)



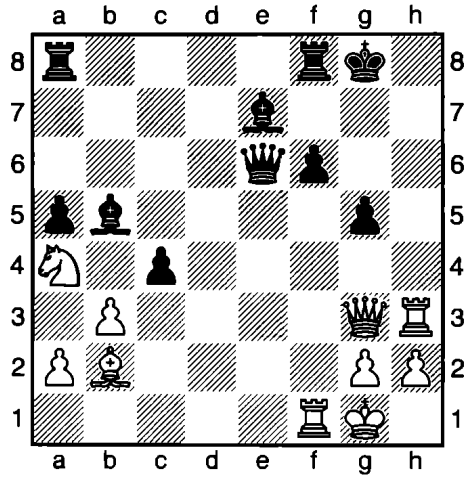
907) White to play (2 points)



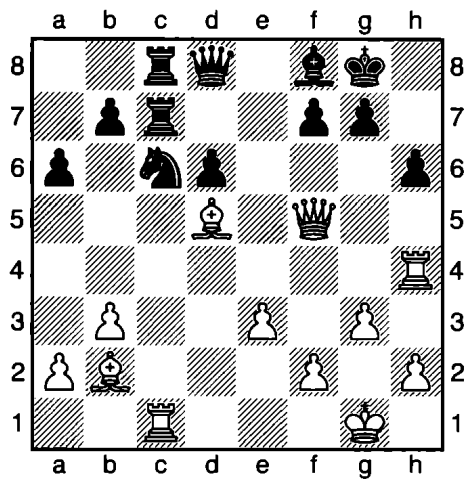
908) Black to play (2 points)



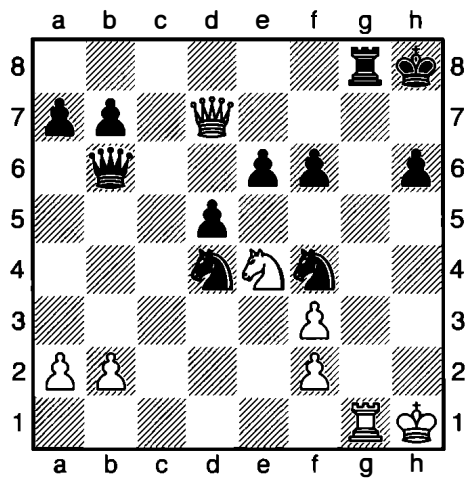
909) White to play (2 points)



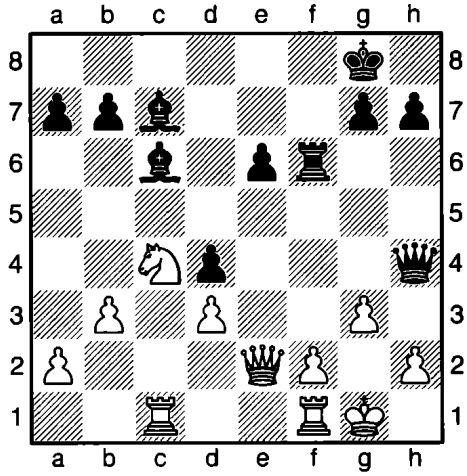
910) White to play (2 points)



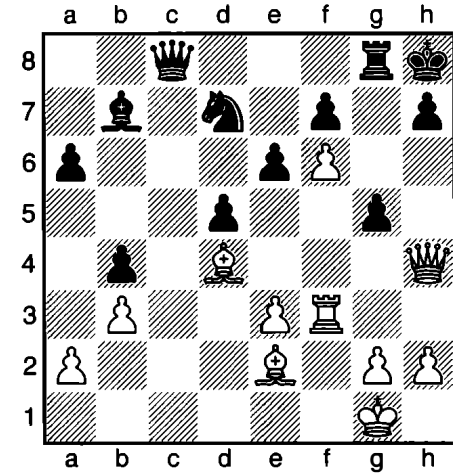
911) White to play (2 points)



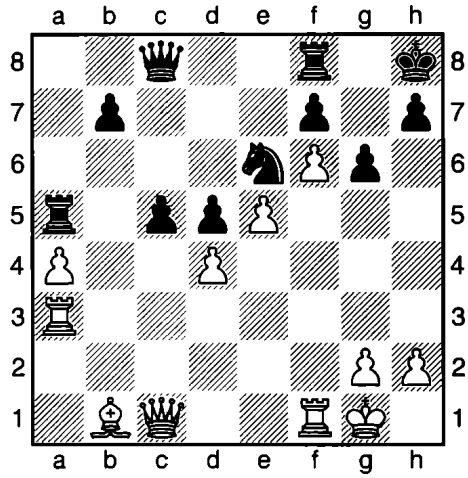
912) White to play (2 points)



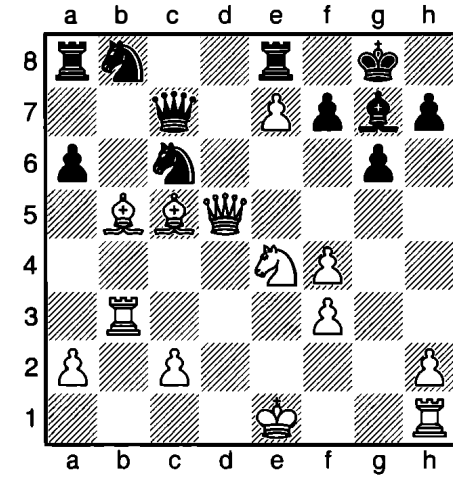
913) Black to play (2 points)



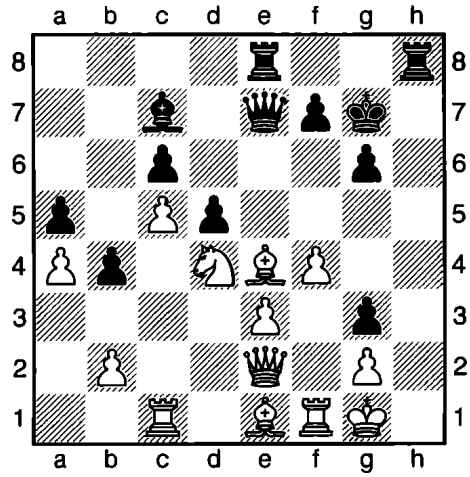
916) White to play (2 points)



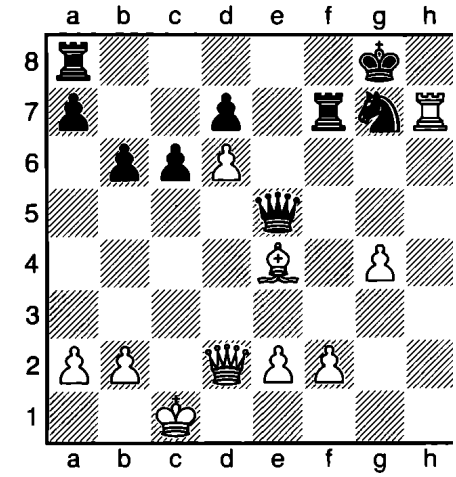
914) White to play (2 points)



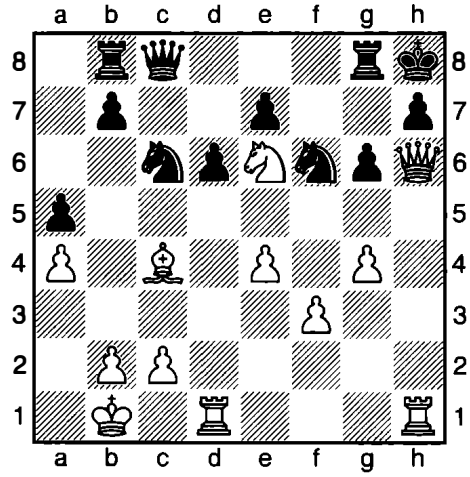
917) White to play (2 points)



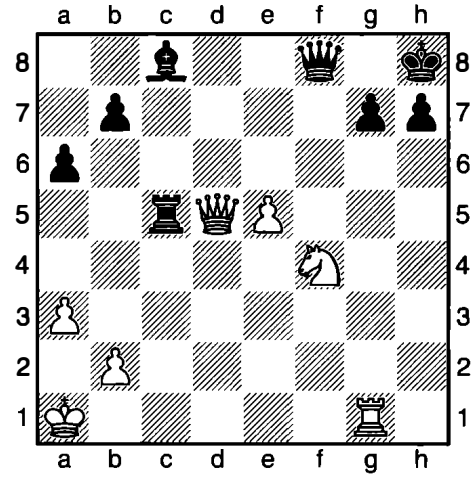
915) Black to play (2 points)



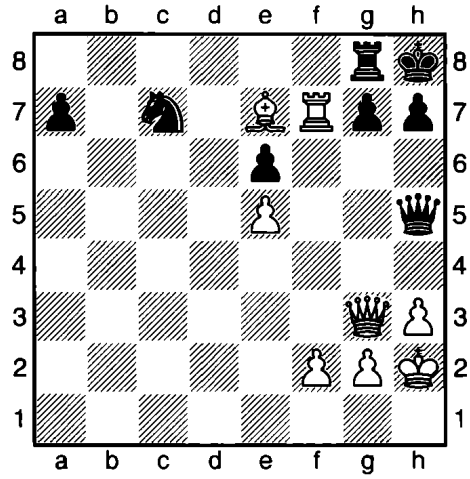
918) White to play (2 points)



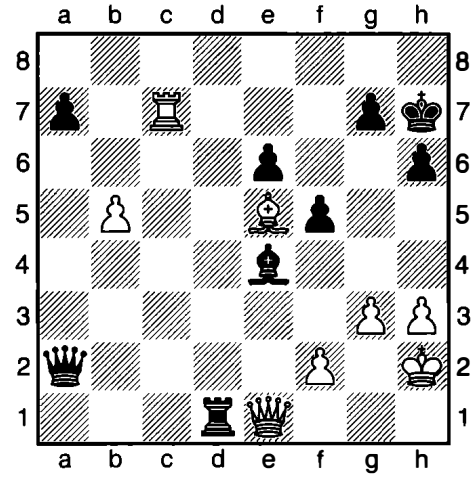
919) White to play (2 points)



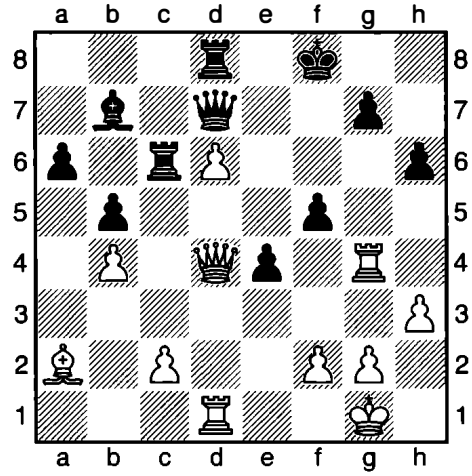
922) White to play (2 points)



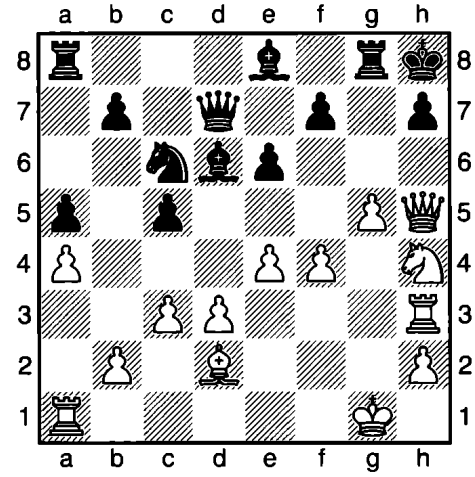
920) White to play (2 points)



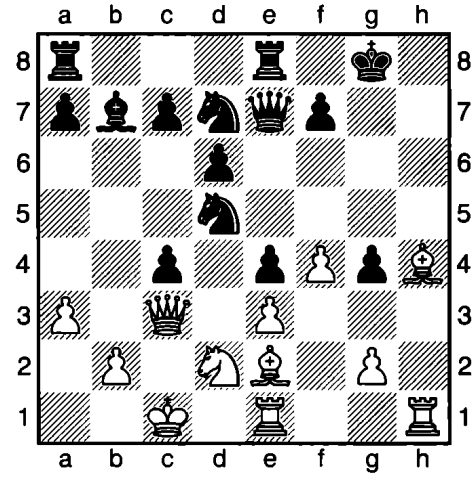
923) Black to play (2 points)



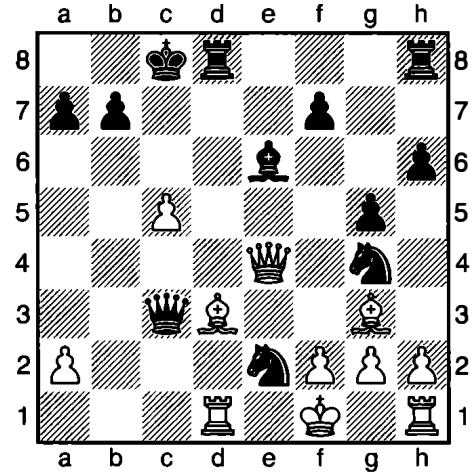
921) White to play (2 points)



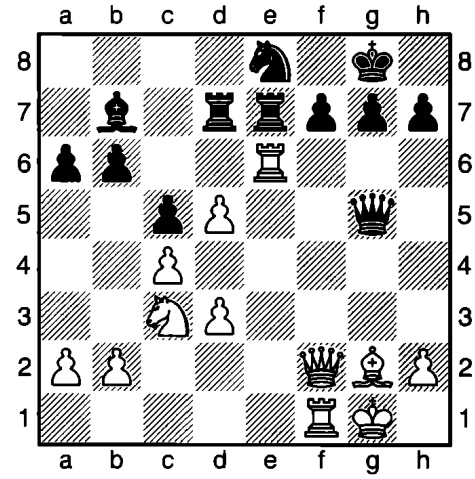
924) White to play (2 points)



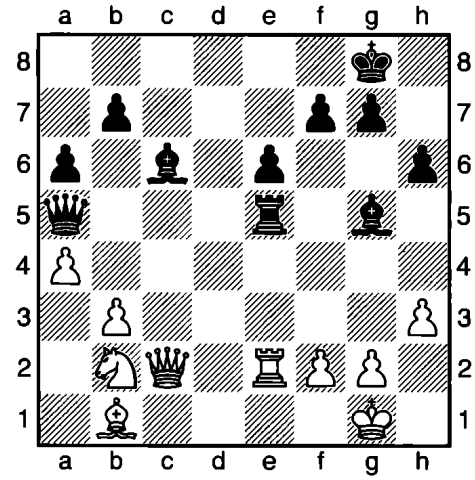
925) White to play (2 points)



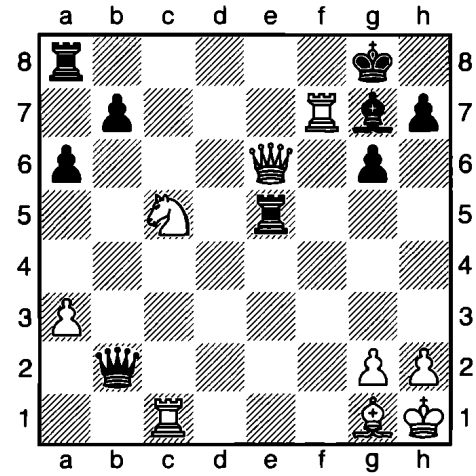
928) White to play (2 points)



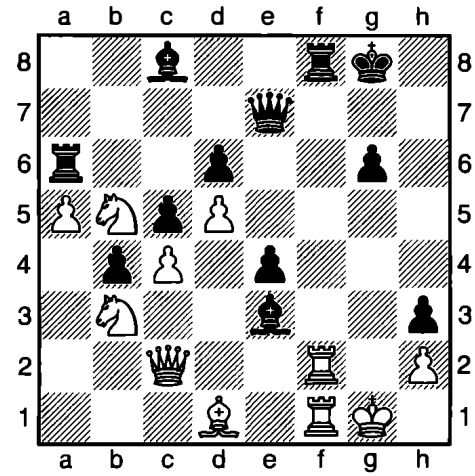
926) White to play (2 points)



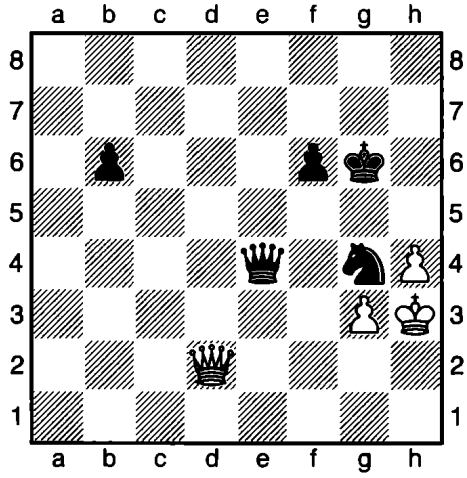
929) Black to play (3 points)



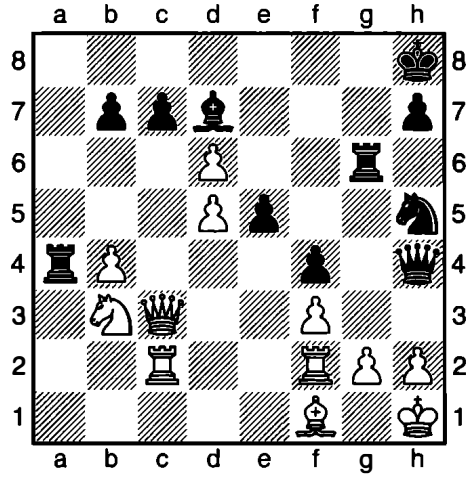
927) White to play (2 points)



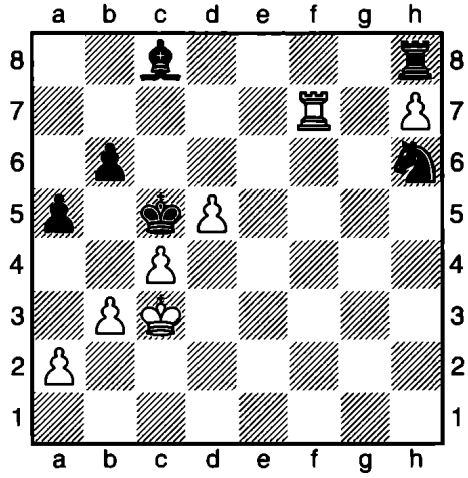
930) Black to play (3 points)



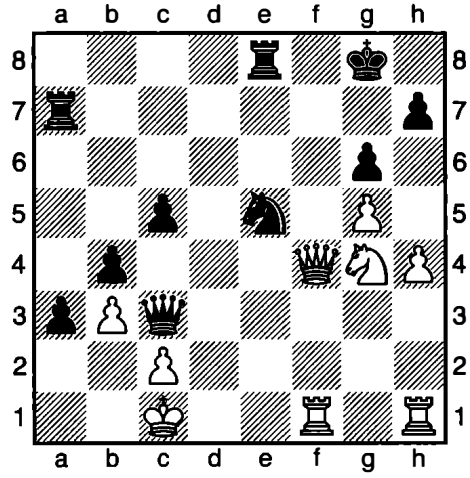
931) Black to play (3 points)



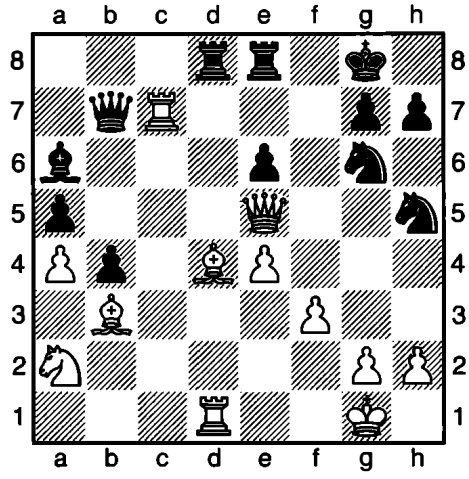
934) Black to play (3 points)



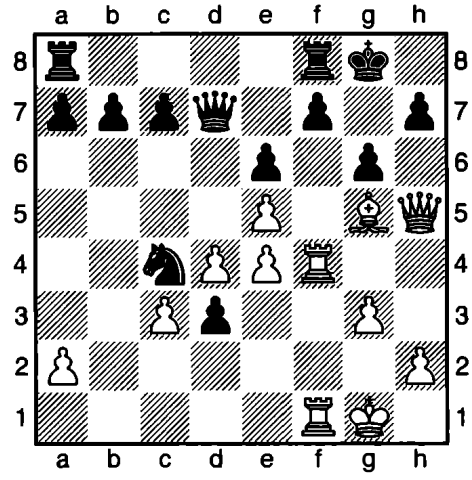
932) White to play (3 points)



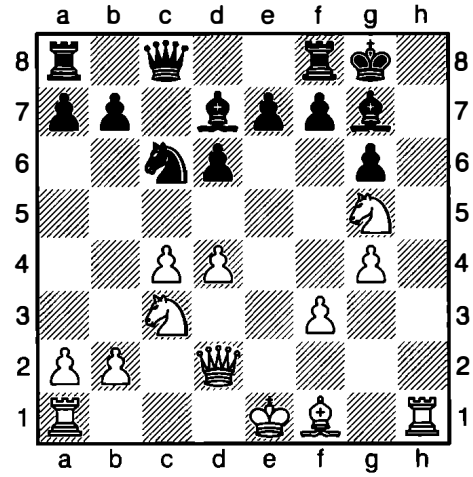
935) White to play (3 points)



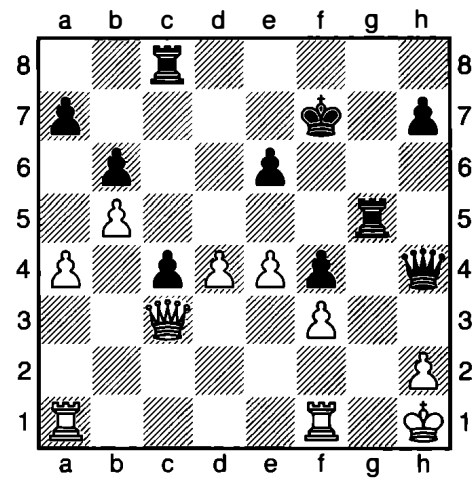
933) White to play (3 points)



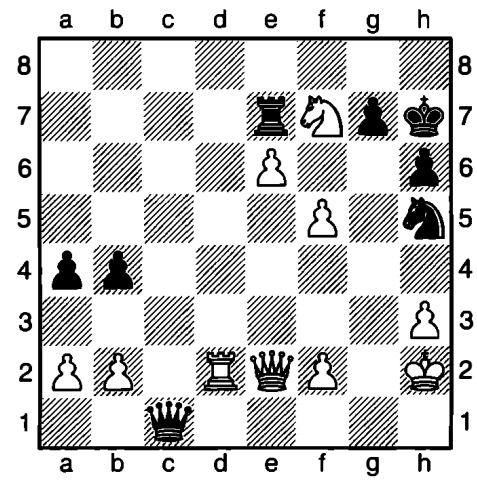
936) White to play (3 points)



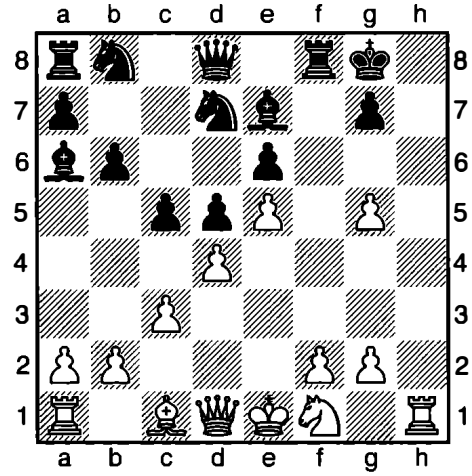
937) White to play (3 points)



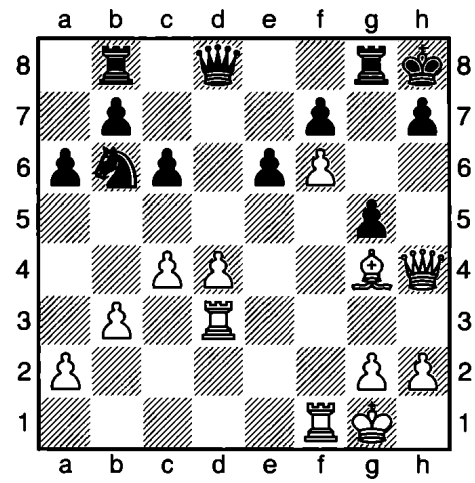
938) Black to play (3 points)



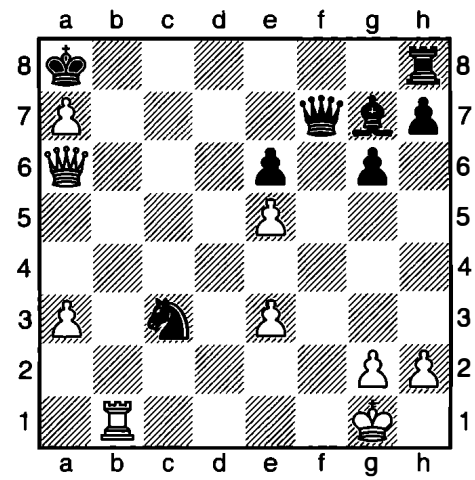
939) White to play (3 points)



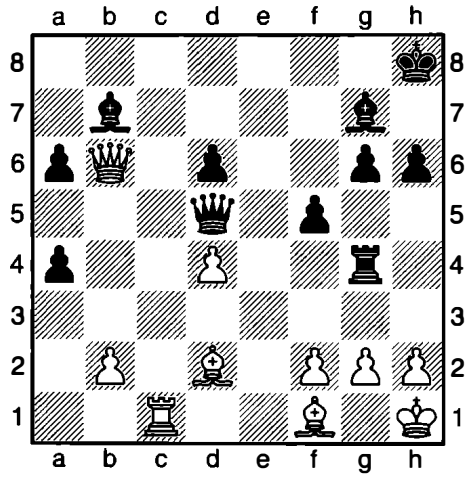
940) White to play (3 points)



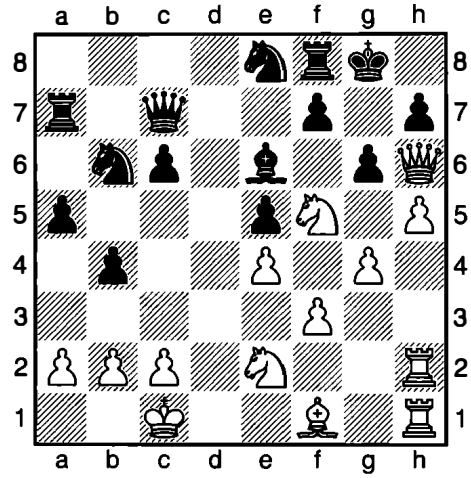
941) White to play (3 points)



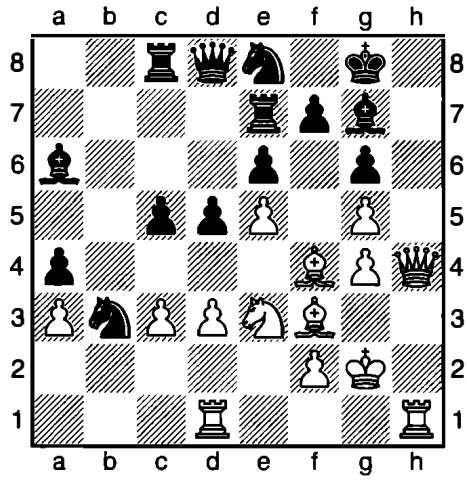
942) White to play (4 points)



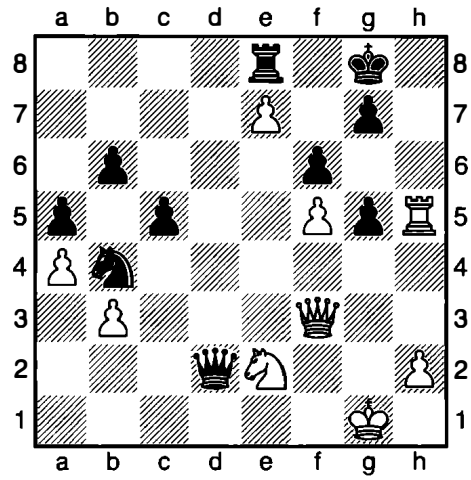
943) Black to play (4 points)



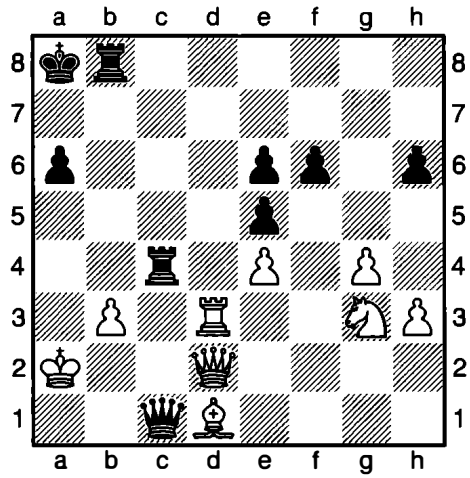
946) White to play (4 points)



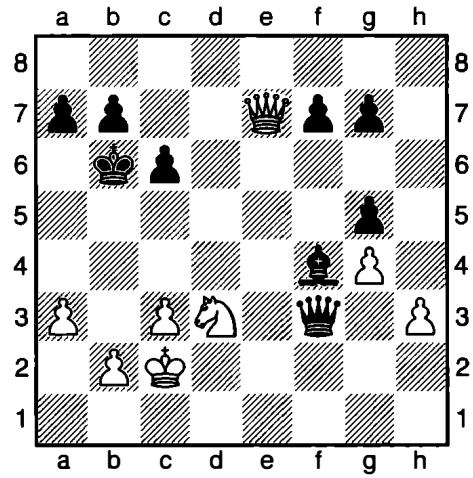
944) White to play (4 points)



947) White to play (4 points)



945) Black to play (4 points)



948) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Mate Revision Test

889) Van der Velden – De Mooij
Leiden 2009
1 ♕xh6#

890) Beltran Medina – Ma. Bednar
Prague 2009
1 ♕xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♖d8#

891) D. Flores – Escobar Forero
Latin American Ch, Morelia 2008
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♘xf7 2 ♘g6#.

892) Felegyhazi – Szieberth
Zalakaros 2001
1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♖xh8 2 ♖xh8#.

893) M. Maleki – T. Todorov
French Team Ch 2007/8
1...♖xe1+ 0-1
A simple exchange opens the line from f2 to c2, resulting in mate after 2 ♕xe1 ♕c2#.

894) Timman – Wedberg
Swedish Team Ch 2002/3
1 ♕xf8+! 1-0
1...♗xf8 2 ♖h7#.

895) Sa. van Eijk – Jan Cheung
Dieren 2008
1 ♕g6+! 1-0
1...fxg6 2 fxg6#.

896) S. Langner – S. Oesterle
Tamm (Under-14 Girls) 2000
1...♕g3! 2 ♖xf2
Since 2 hxg4 is met by 2...♕h4#, White can only delay mate by futile moves such as 2 ♗f4 or 2 ♘xc7+.
2...♕h2#

897) Gerzhoy – Sutovsky
Tel-Aviv 2001
1...♕xh3+! 0-1
2 gxh3 ♖h2#.

898) W. Barbier – B. Laurent
Belgian Ch, Aalst 2005
1...♕xf2+! 2 ♔xf2
2 ♔h1 ♕xe1+ 3 ♗f1 ♕xf1#.
2...♖f4#

899) Cherednichenko – Malikentzos
Khalkida 2009
1 ♕h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 ♖f8#.

900) Janz – H. Darius
Germany Cup, Erfurt 2004
1...♕g3+! 0-1
2 ♗xg3 fxg3#.

901) S.M. Shyam – Kalshyan
New Delhi 2009
1 ♖d8+ 1-0
1...♔g7 2 ♘h5#.

902) E. Sanz Perez – Genestous
French Team Ch 2004/5
1 ♕xe6+! 1-0
1...fxe6 2 ♗g6# is a mate which occurs in several opening traps.

903) Djurhuus – L. Karlsson
Swedish Team Ch 2005/6
1...♕h3+ 0-1
2 ♔g1 ♕xg2#.

904) R. Kosak – A. Markgraf
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1...♖xh3+! 0-1
2 ♔xh3 ♖h8#.

905) Shalashov – E. Kalashnikova
Russian Under-18 Clubs Ch, Rybinsk 2008
1 ♕g8+! ♖xg8 2 ♖xg8+ ♔xg8 3 ♖c8#

906) Giaccio – Garza
Lorca 2005
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♗xf7 2 ♖a8+ and White mates in two more moves.

907) Calistri – E. Guyot
Issy-les-Moulineaux 2009
1 ♖xh8+! 1-0
After 1...♔xh8 2 ♘f6 Black can only delay ♖h7# by giving away his rooks.

908) Buker – Secer
Turkish Ch, Ankara 2008
1...♖h3+! 0-1
2 gxh3 ♗e4+ 3 ♖f3 ♗xf3#.

909) S. Laborde – Nguyen Huu Hoang
French Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♖xf7+! 1-0
1...♔xf7 2 ♖f5#.

910) A. da Silva – V. Chemin
Brazilian Ch, São Paulo 2005
1 ♕xg5+! 1-0
Black cannot escape: 1...♔f7 2 ♕h5+ ♔g7 3 ♕h7# or 1...fxg5 2 ♖h8#.

911) Jüttner – Frankl
Munich Ch 2003
1 ♖xh6!
Threatening mate by 2 ♕h7#.
1...gxh6
1...♗e7 2 ♕xf7# and 1...g6 2 ♖h8# also mate.
2 ♕g6+ 1-0
2...♗g7 3 ♕xg7#.

912) C. Äpfler – Karabalis
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1 ♕h7+! 1-0
Black is mated after 1...♔xh7 2 ♘xf6+ ♔h8 3 ♖xg8#. 1 ♖xg8+ ♔xg8 2 ♕e8+ also leads to mate, but is significantly slower than the move played.

913) L. Colnot – A. Labarthe
La Fère 2007
1...♕xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 3 ♔g1 ♖h1#

914) Cabrera – Stavast
Leeuwarden 2009
1 ♕h6
Threatening 2 ♖h3 followed by mate on h7.
1...♖g8
To meet 2 ♖h3 with 2...♘f8, but now Black runs into another mate.
2 ♕xh7+! 1-0
2...♔xh7 3 ♖h3#.

915) A. Evdokimov – Erenburg
Internet (playchess.com) 2006
1...♖h1+! 0-1
2 ♔xh1 ♕h4+ 3 ♔g1 ♕h2#.

916) Mos. Ali – A. Korda
Canberra Ch 1998
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ 1-0
2...♔g6 3 ♗d3#.

917) O. Lehner – Stanec
Austrian Team Ch 2005/6
1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♔xf7 is mated by 2 ♗c4#, while 1...♔h8 2 ♕xe8+ leads to mate next move.

918) Cruz Lopez – Beuselinck
Creon 2003
1 ♖h8+! 1-0
1...♔xh8 2 ♕h6+ ♔g8 3 ♕h7+ ♔f8 4 ♕h8#.

919) Kolker – A. Paulsen
Heusenstamm 2009
1 ♕xh7+! ♘xh7 2 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 3 ♖h1#

920) P. Mola – A. Rotstein
Porto San Giorgio 2001
1 ♕xg7+! 1-0
1...♖xg7 2 ♖f8+ ♖g8 3 ♗f6#.

921) S. Bold – K. Ovezova
World Under-14 Girls Ch, Szeged 1994
1 ♕f6+!
To force open the g-file.
1...gxf6

After 1...♔e8 2 ♕g6+ ♔f8 3 ♕h7 White mates quickly; for example, 3...♖c4 4 ♕h8+ ♔f7 5 ♕xg7+ ♔e6 6 ♖g6#.

2 ♖g8#

922) F. Graf – Sivuk
Moscow 2008

1 ♘g6+! hxg6 2 ♖h1+ 1-0
2...♗h3 3 ♖xh3#.

923) E. Denayer – V. Bolzoni
Namur 2009

White is threatening to draw with ♖xg7+ followed by, for example, ♖g6+, so Black cannot simply take the queen.

1...♕xf2+! 0-1
2 ♕xf2 ♖h1#.

924) J. da Costa – S.L. de Souza
São Sebastião do Paraiso 2001

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♘f5+ 1-0
2...♔g6 3 ♖h6#.

925) Peng Zhaoqin – Caoili
Bled Olympiad (Women) 2002

1 ♕h8+! ♔xh8 2 ♗f6++ 1-0
The double check forces mate next move by 2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

926) Borik – R. Kosak
Germany (team event) 2004/5

1 ♕xf7+! 1-0
1...♖xf7 2 ♖xe8+ and mate next move.

927) Ljubičić – B. Budimir
Bošnjaci 2006

1 ♖f8++ 1-0
A double check is necessary as White's queen is under attack, and it leads to mate after 1...♔xf8 2 ♘d7#.

928) Bog. Bozinović – G. Gaspariants
Biel 2003

1 ♕c6+! 1-0
1...bxc6 2 ♗a6#.

929) Al. Spielmann – V. David
Nancy 2003

1...♕e1+! 2 ♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 0-1
3 ♔h2 ♗f4+ 4 g3 ♖h1#. This combination starts with a typical back-rank queen sacrifice, but ends up with a ♖+♗ mate. Knowing the basic mating patterns helps to spot related possibilities.

930) Dukov – Balashov
Kurgan 2001

1...♕g5+ 2 ♔h1 ♕g2+! 0-1
3 ♖xg2 ♖xf1+ 4 ♖g1 ♖xg1#.

931) Duszczak – Kaszowski
Poznan 2008

Black is a piece up, but rather than a slower technical win, he found a way to finish White off immediately.

1...♕h1+! 2 ♔xg4
Or 2 ♕h2 ♘f2#.
2...f5+ 0-1
3 ♔f4 ♕e4#.

932) Mart. Braun – Ta. Kulcsar
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♖f6
Threatening 2 ♖c6#.
1...♗b7
1...♗d7 2 a3 is much the same.
2 a3 1-0
Black cannot prevent 3 b4+ followed by 4 axb4#.

933) Bhat – Alsina Leal
San Sebastian 2009

1 ♗xe6+ ♔h8
Black is also mated after 1...♔f8 2 ♕xg7+! ♘xg7 3 ♗xg7# or 1...♖xe6 2 ♕xe6+ ♔h8 (2...♔f8 3 ♕f7#) 3 ♗xg7+ ♘xg7 4 ♖xd8+, etc.
2 ♕xg7+! 1-0
2...♘xg7 3 ♗xg7#.

934) O. Clement – Vaisman
French Team Ch 2008/9

1...♘g3+ 2 ♔g1 ♕xh2+! 0-1
3 ♔xh2 ♖h6+ 4 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

935) Puuska – Joa. Chaves
Bled Olympiad (Women) 2002

1 ♘h6+ ♔h8
1...♔g7 2 ♕f6#.

2 ♕f8+! 1-0
2...♖xf8 3 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 4 ♖g8#.

936) S. Feller – R. Bernhardt
Germany (team event) 2005/6
1 ♕xh7+! 1-0
1...♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♔g8 (2...♔g7 3 ♗f6+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8#) 3 ♗f6 leads to mate by ♖h8#.

937) L. Baquero – Beudaert
Cannes 2000
1 ♖h8+!
1 ♕h2? allows Black to defend by 1...♖e8.
1...♗xh8
1...♔xh8 2 ♕h2+ ♔g8 3 ♕h7#.
2 ♕h2 ♔g7
2...♖e8 3 ♕h7+ followed by mate on f7 or h8.
3 ♕h7+ 1-0
3...♔f6 4 ♘ce4#.

938) Jak. Novak – D. Rozmbersky
Klatovy 1998
1...♕xh2+!
Unusually, this sacrifice is followed by a quiet move.
2 ♔xh2 ♖cg8 0-1
White has no good reply to the threat of mate by 3...♖h5#.

939) Ronchetti – I. Sarenac
World Junior Ch, Gaziantep 2008
1 ♘g5+! 1-0
Opening up the h-file so that White can take the knight on h5 with check. The end would be 1...♔g8 2 ♖d8+ ♖e8 3 ♖xe8# or 1...hxg5 2 ♕xh5+ ♔g8 3 ♖d8+ ♖e8 4 ♖xe8#.

940) St. Petersen – O. Vovk
Danish Team Ch 2008/9
1 ♖h8+! ♔xh8
1...♔f7 2 ♕h5+ g6 3 ♕h7+ ♔e8 4 ♕xg6#.
2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 g6 1-0
3...♘f6 4 exf6 ♖xf6 5 ♕h7+ ♔f8 6 ♕h8#.

941) J. Haase – F. Zimmermann
Germany (team event) 2006/7
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♔g6 3 ♗h5+ ♔h7 4 ♗xf7#

942) A. Tate – Kaszas
Budapest 2009
1 ♕c6+!
By forcing Black to take the a7-pawn, White opens the a-file so that a later ♕a6 will be check.
1...♔xa7 2 ♕b6+ ♔a8 3 ♕a6+ 1-0
3...♕a7 4 ♕c6+ ♕b7 5 ♕xb7#.

943) L. Ross – Gunina
World Under-14 Girls Ch, Iraklion 2002
1...♕xg2+! 2 ♗xg2 ♗xg2+ 3 ♔g1 ♗e4+! 0-1
This is the only square from which the bishop can safely switch to the f1-a6 diagonal. Mate follows after 4 ♔f1 ♗d3+ 5 ♔e1 ♖g1#.

944) Ma. Ursić – Nedimović
Nova Gorica 2004
1 ♕h7+ ♔f8 2 ♕h8+! ♗xh8 3 ♖xh8+ ♔g7 4 ♖dh1 1-0
Threatening 5 ♖1h7#, and if 4...♘f6 White mates by taking the knight.

945) Vehi Bach – C. Kulkarni
Barbera 2009
1...♖a4+!
Offering a rook to open the b-file.
2 bxa4 ♕b1+ 3 ♔a3 ♕a1+ 4 ♕a2 ♕c1+ 0-1
5 ♕b2 ♕xb2#.

946) Vehi Bach – Javierre Conesa
Zaragoza 1999
1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 hxg6++ ♔xg6 3 ♖h6+ ♔g5 4 ♖1h5#

947) A. Stahnke – J. Pyper
Australian Under-18 Ch, Adelaide 2009
1 ♖h8+! ♔f7
The main line is 1...♔xh8 2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♕xe8+ ♔h7 4 ♕h5+ (4 ♕g6+ is also good) 4...♔g8 5 e8♕#.
2 ♕h5+ ♔xe7 3 ♕xe8+
White not only wins a rook but also mates in a few more moves.
3...♔d6 4 ♕d8+ ♔c6
After 4...♔e5 5 ♕e7+ ♔xf5 6 ♘g3+ White also mates quickly.

5 ♕c8+ ♔d5

5...♔d6 6 ♖d8+ ♔e7 (6...♔e5 7 ♕e6#) 7 ♕c7+ and White mates next move.

6 ♕e6#

948) Petenyi – T. Barczi
Slovakian Junior Ch, Trenčin 2008

1 ♕d8+ ♔a6

Other moves also lead to a quick mate: 1...♔b5 2 c4+ (2 a4+ is also good) 2...♔xc4 3 b3+ ♔b5 4 a4+ ♔a6 5 ♘c5# (or 5 ♘b4#), or 1...♗c7 2 ♕d4+ ♔a6 (2...c5 3 ♕xc5+ ♔a6 4 ♘b4# or 2...♔b5 3 ♕b4+ ♔a6 4 ♘c5#) 3 ♘c5+ ♔b5 4 ♕b4#.

2 ♘c5+ ♔b5 3 a4+! 1-0

3...♔xc5 and 3...♔c4 are both met by 4 ♕d4#.

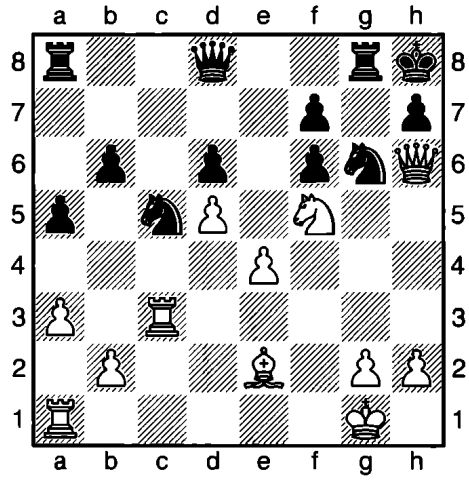
Score-Chart for Mate Revision Test

Position number	Points	Score
889	1	
890	1	
891	1	
892	1	
893	1	
894	1	
895	1	
896	1	
897	1	
898	1	
899	1	
900	1	
901	1	
902	1	
903	1	
904	1	
905	2	
906	2	
907	2	
908	2	
909	2	
910	2	
911	2	
912	2	
913	2	
914	2	
915	2	
916	2	
917	2	
918	2	
919	2	
920	2	
921	2	
922	2	
923	2	
924	2	
925	2	
926	2	
927	2	
928	2	
929	3	
930	3	
931	3	
932	3	
933	3	
934	3	
935	3	
936	3	
937	3	
938	3	
939	3	
940	3	
941	3	
942	4	
943	4	
944	4	
945	4	
946	4	
947	4	
948	5	
Total	**132**	

17 Extreme Mate Challenge

If you've made it this far, then you're probably ready for the Extreme Mate Challenge, a selection of 53 tough mating positions. Although the ideas in these positions are similar to those earlier in the book, the play is more complicated and you will have to calculate deeper to find the mate.

Although challenging, you should be able to solve at least some of these puzzles. Here's an example to show the type of position you will face in this chapter.

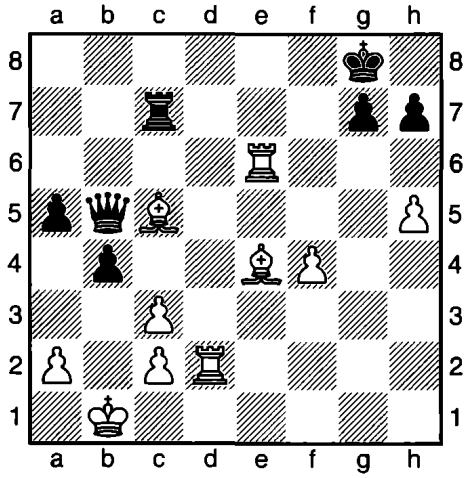


I. Radziewicz – Yakovich
Rilton Cup, Stockholm 1999/00

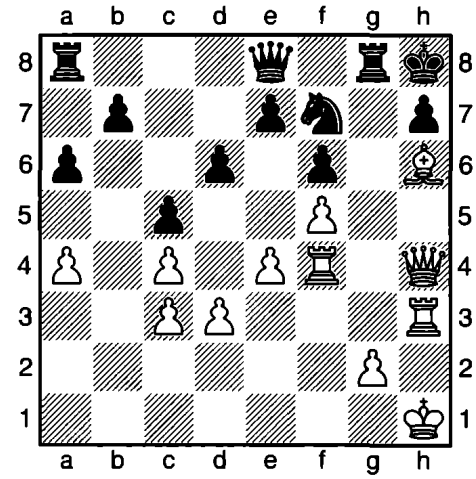
White finished the game by **1 ♕xh7+!! ♔xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♘h4 3 ♖xh4+ ♔g6 4 ♖h6+** and **Black resigned (1-0)**. After 4...♔g5 White can mate by 5 ♖f1! (5 g3 also mates, but more slowly) and now that the black king's escape-route to f4 has been cut off, there is no way to prevent 6 h4#.

The idea of sacrificing the queen on h7 has been seen earlier in the book (see Position 557, for example) but here the follow-up is more complicated, stretching over five moves and including a tricky quiet move.

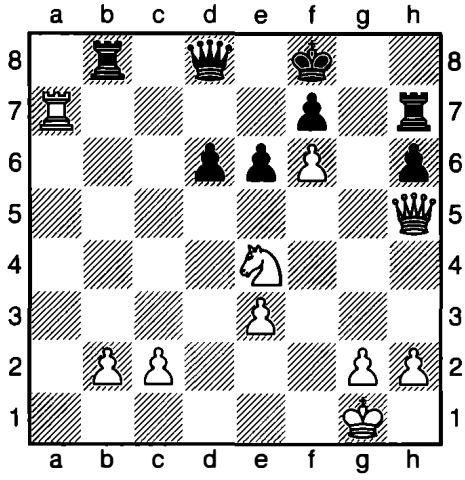
Good luck!



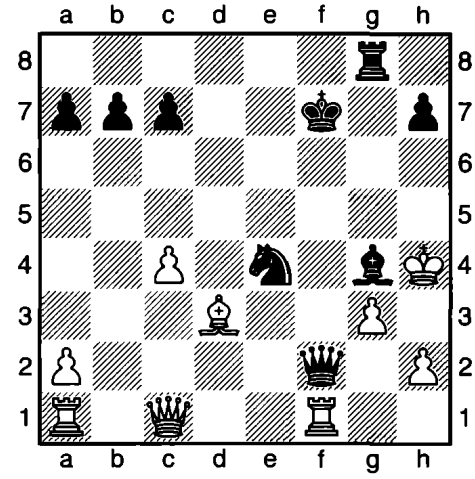
949) White to play (5 points)



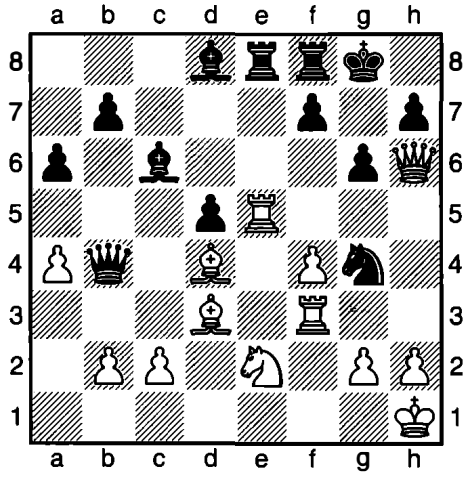
952) White to play (5 points)



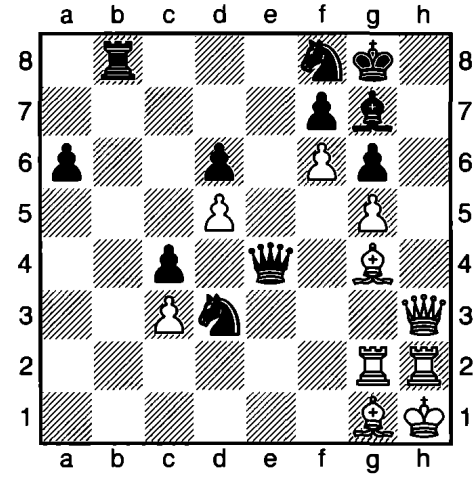
950) White to play (5 points)



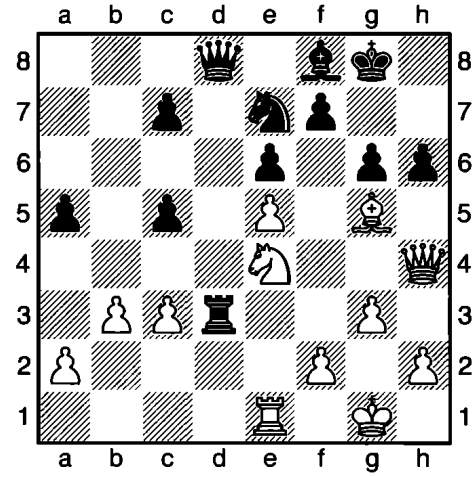
953) Black to play (5 points)



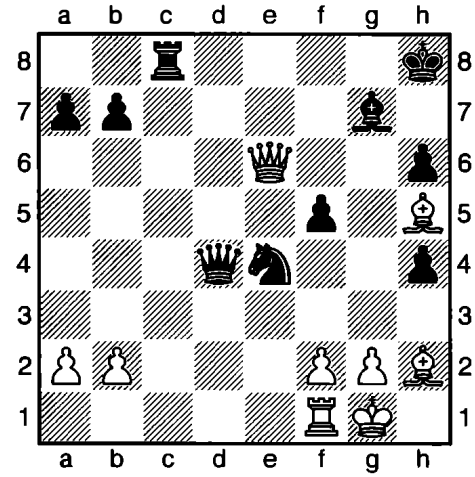
951) White to play (5 points)



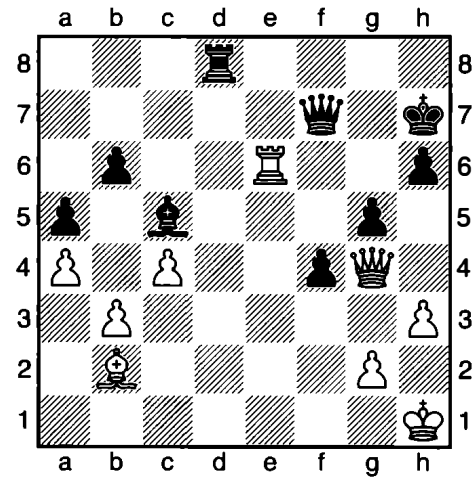
954) Black to play (5 points)



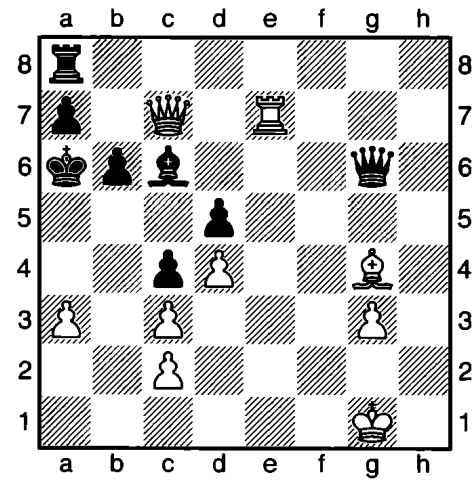
955) White to play (5 points)



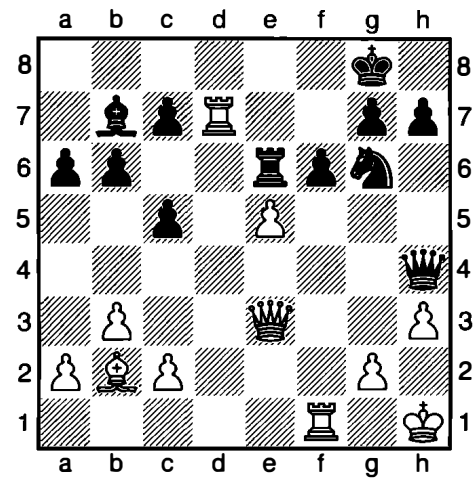
958) Black to play (5 points)



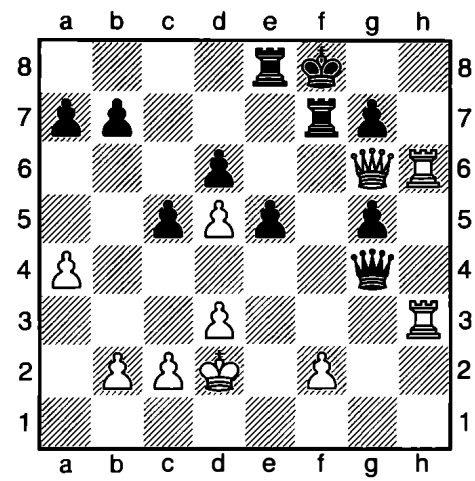
956) Black to play (5 points)



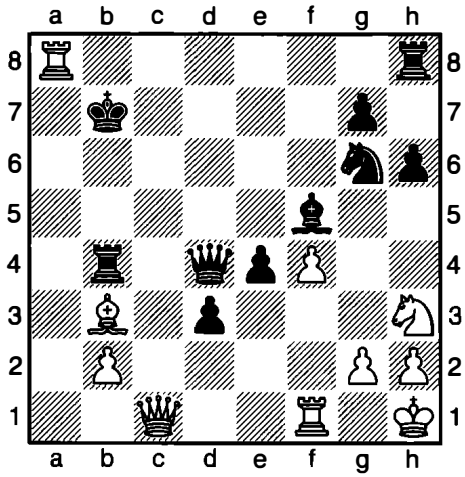
959) White to play (5 points)



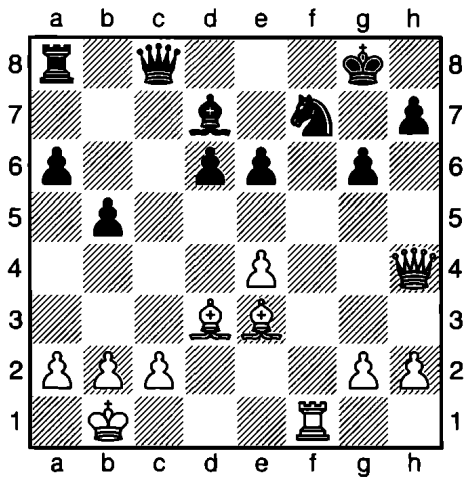
957) White to play (5 points)



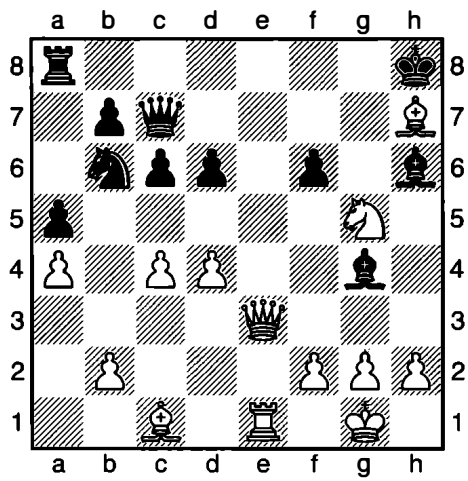
960) White to play (5 points)



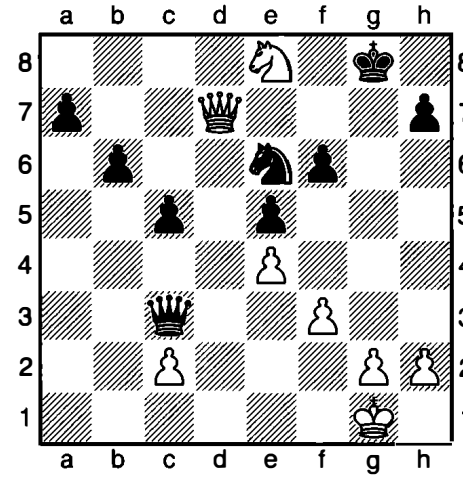
961) White to play (5 points)



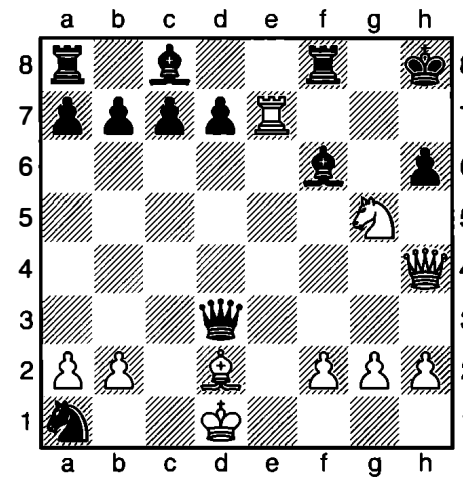
962) White to play (5 points)



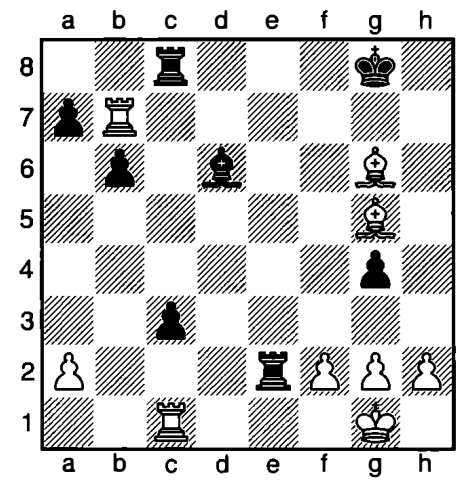
963) White to play (5 points)



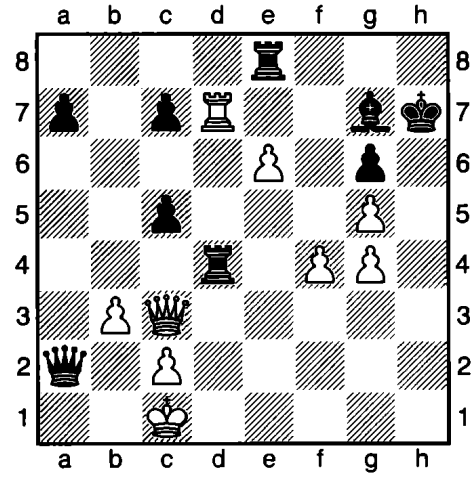
964) White to play (5 points)



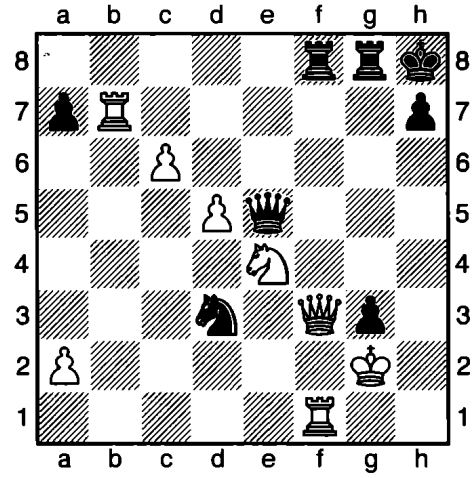
965) White to play (5 points)



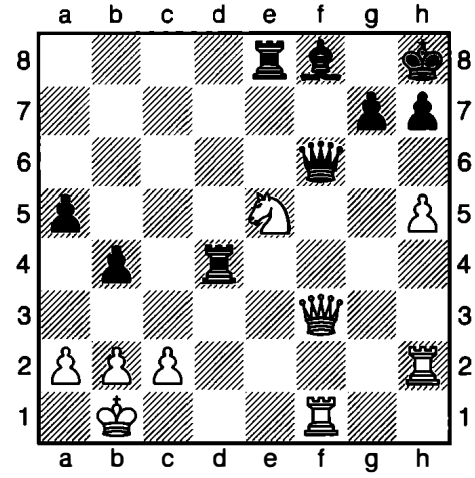
966) White to play (5 points)



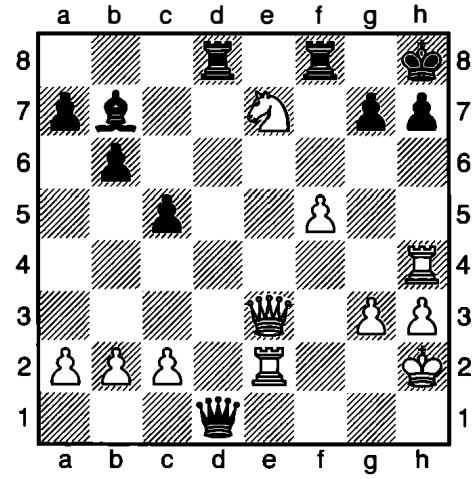
967) White to play (5 points)



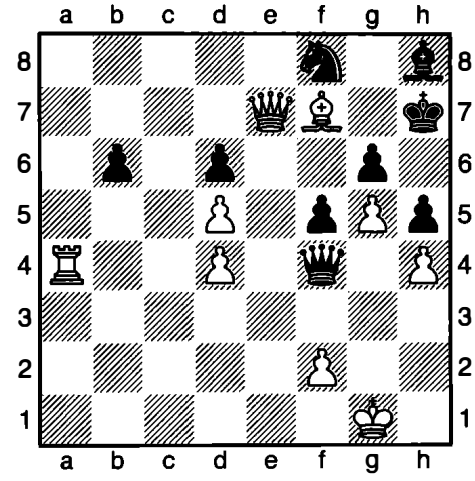
970) White to play (5 points)



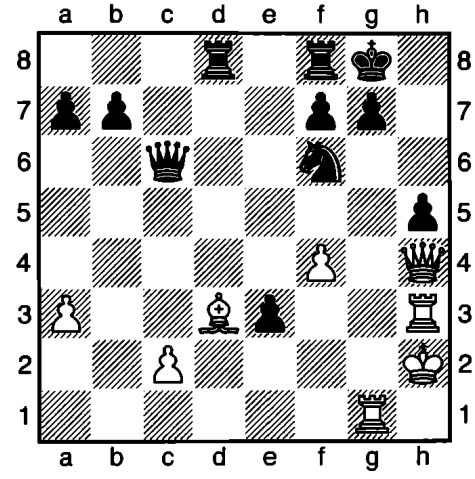
968) White to play (5 points)



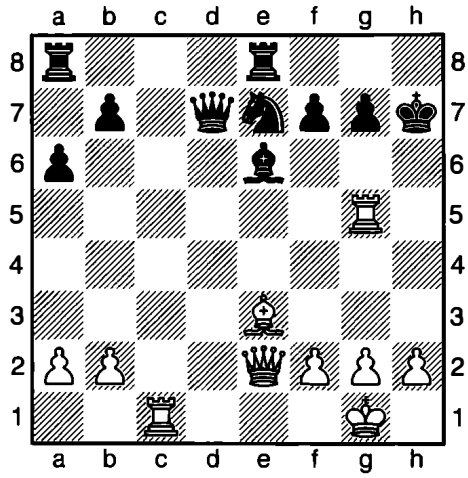
971) White to play (5 points)



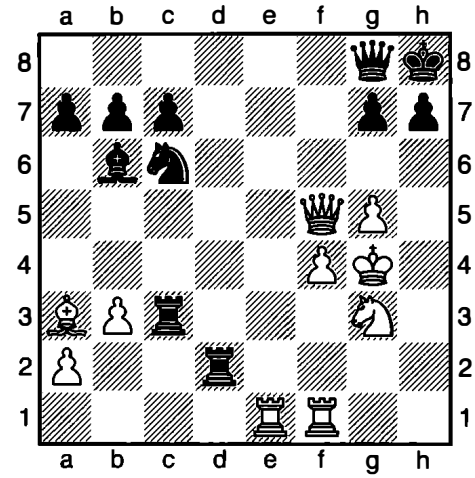
969) White to play (5 points)



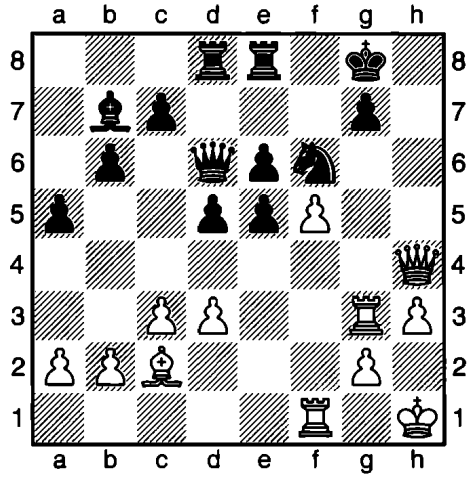
972) White to play (5 points)



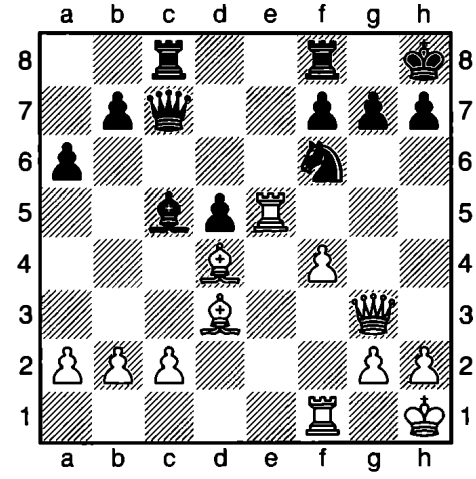
973) White to play (5 points)



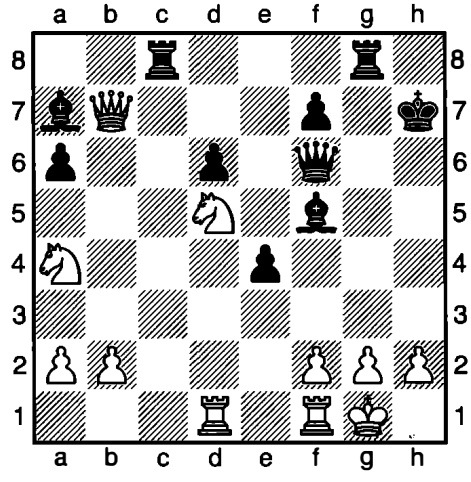
976) White to play (5 points)



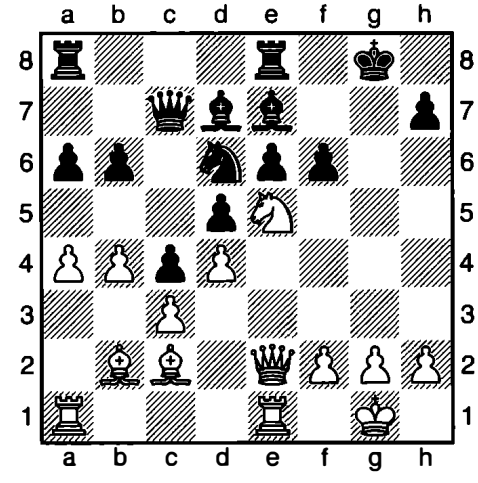
974) White to play (5 points)



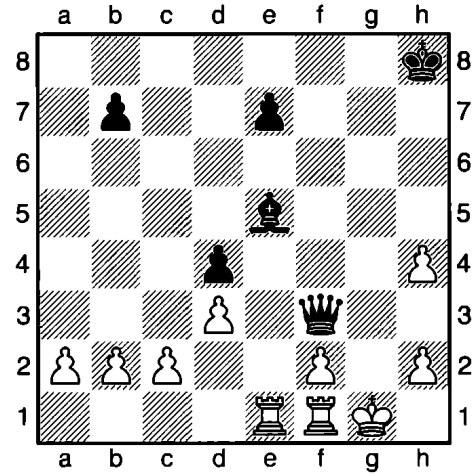
977) White to play (5 points)



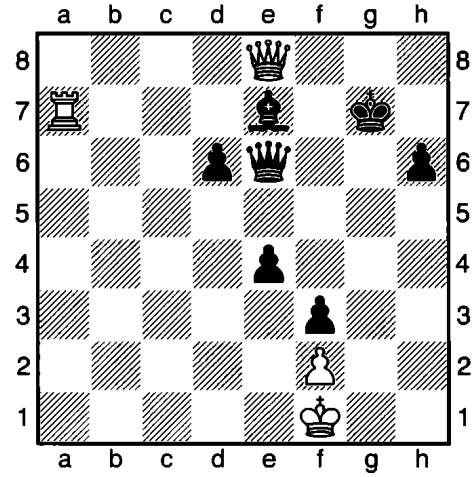
975) Black to play (5 points)



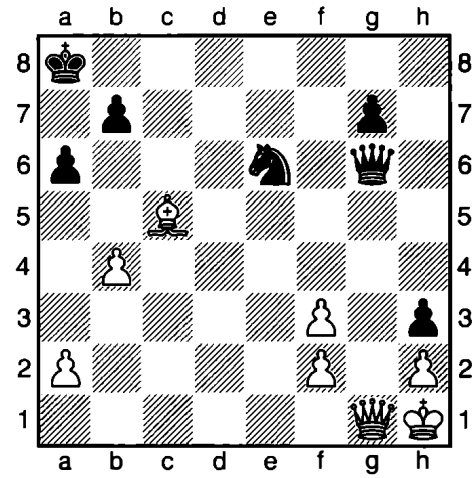
978) White to play (5 points)



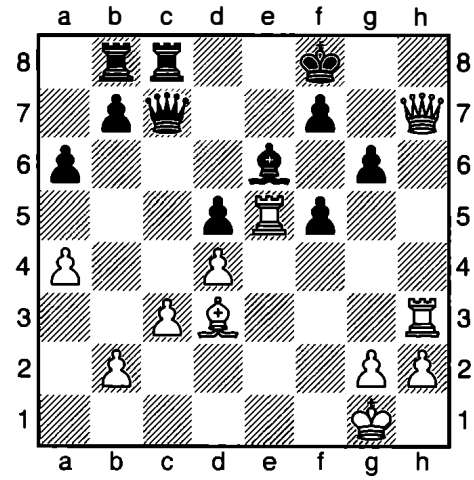
979) Black to play (5 points)



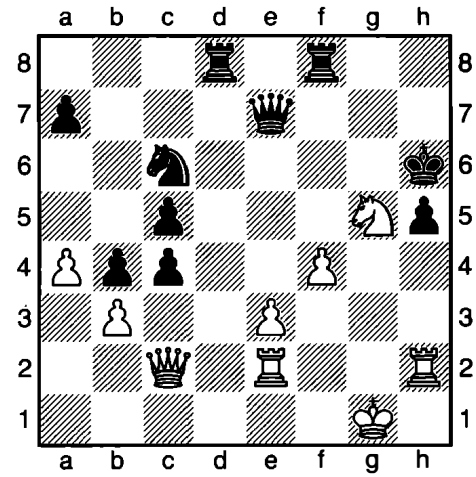
982) Black to play (5 points)



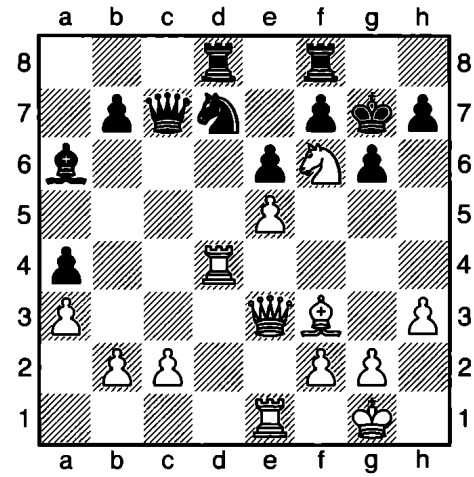
980) Black to play (5 points)



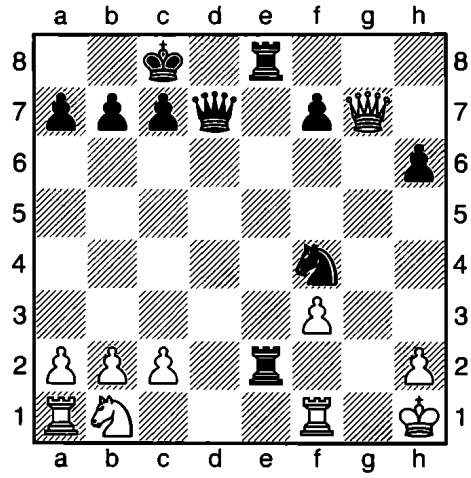
983) White to play (5 points)



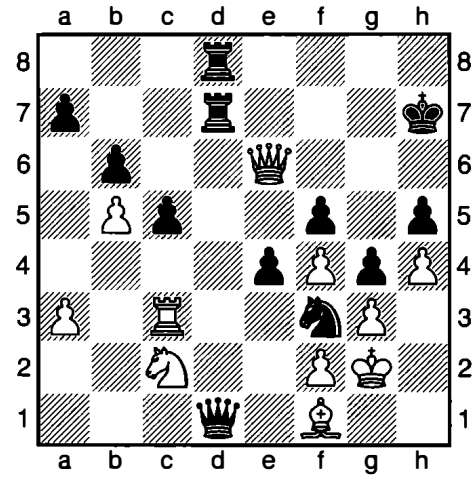
981) White to play (5 points)



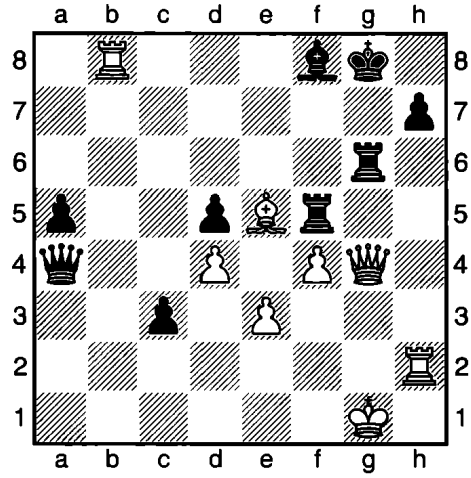
984) White to play (5 points)



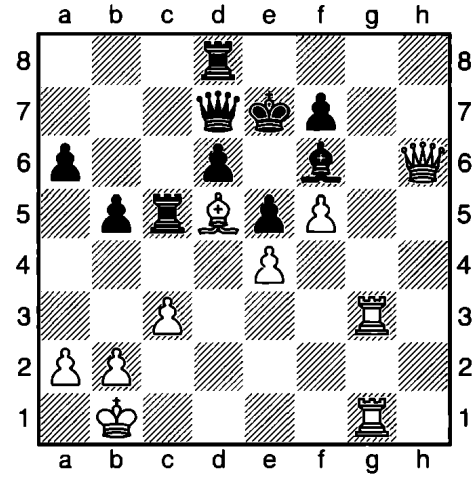
985) Black to play (5 points)



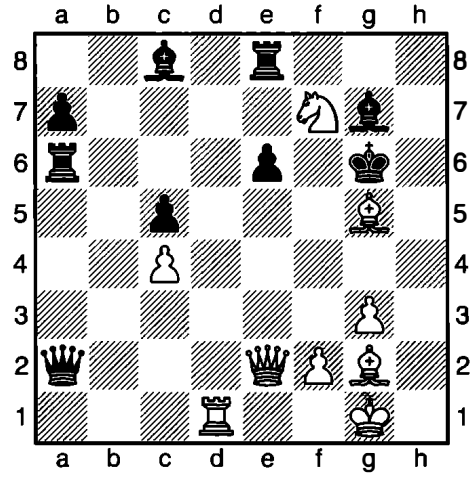
988) Black to play (5 points)



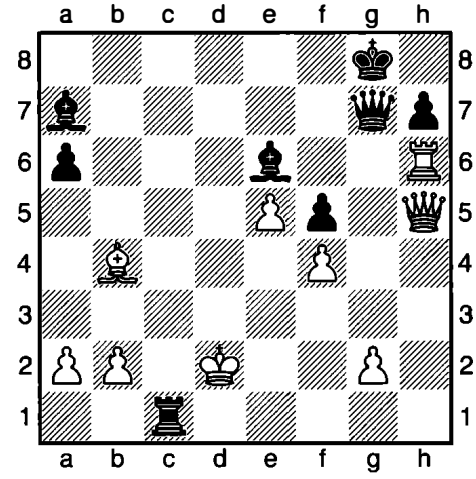
986) White to play (5 points)



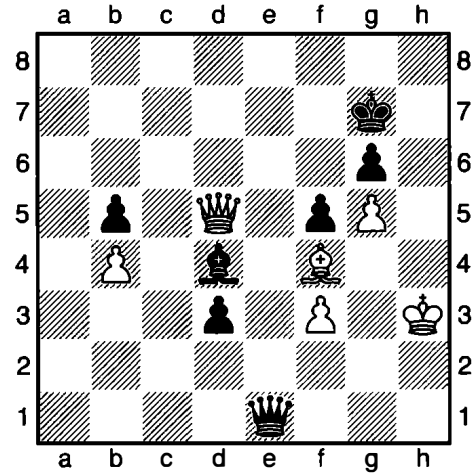
989) White to play (5 points)



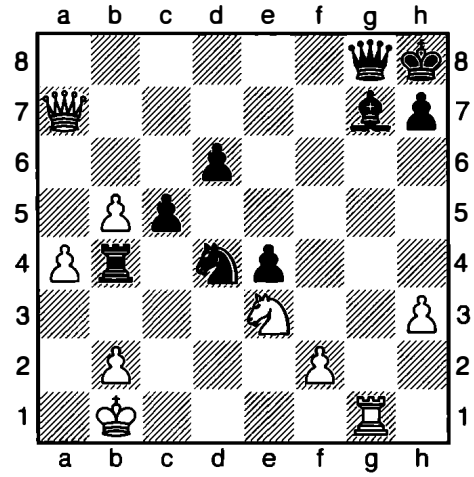
987) White to play (5 points)



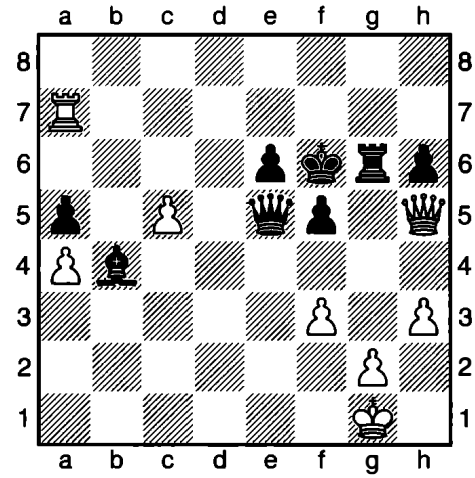
990) Black to play (5 points)



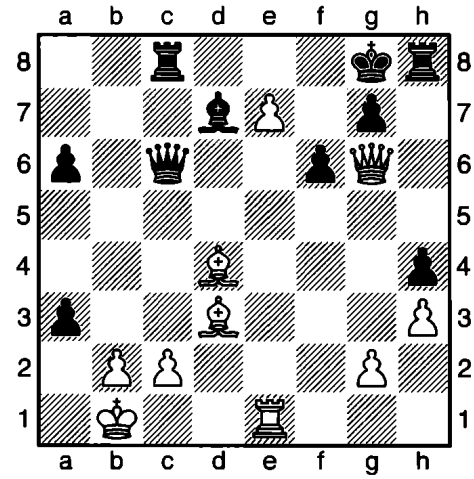
991) Black to play (5 points)



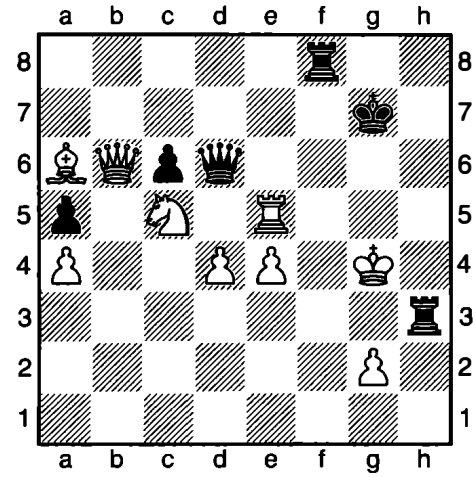
994) Black to play (5 points)



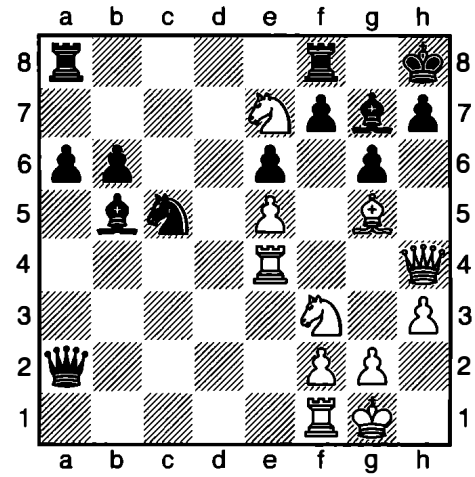
992) White to play (5 points)



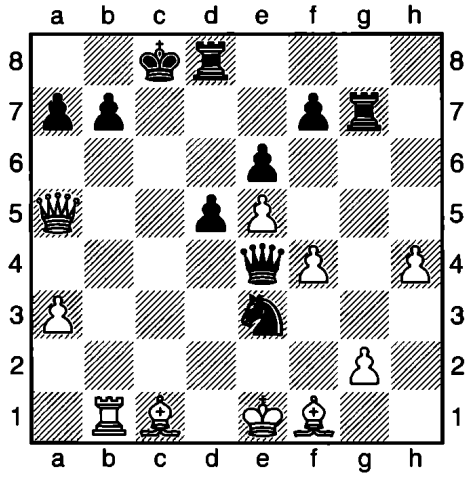
995) White to play (5 points)



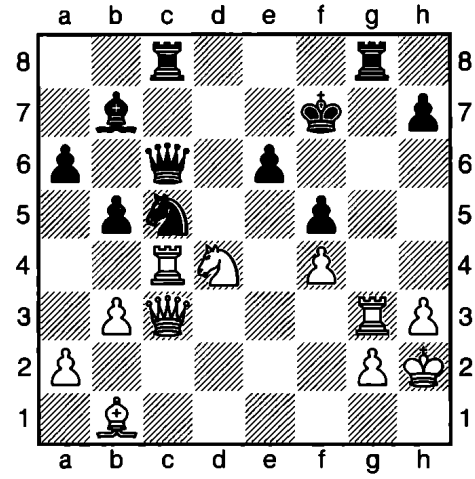
993) Black to play (5 points)



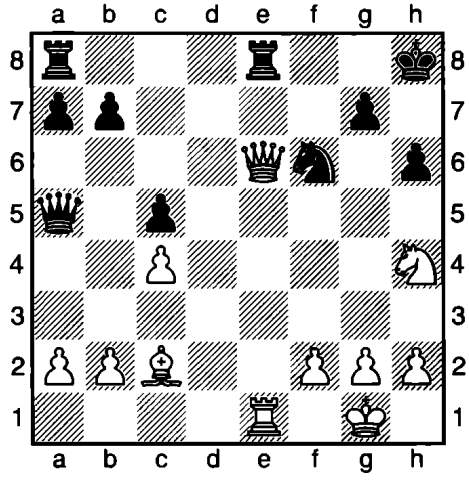
996) White to play (5 points)



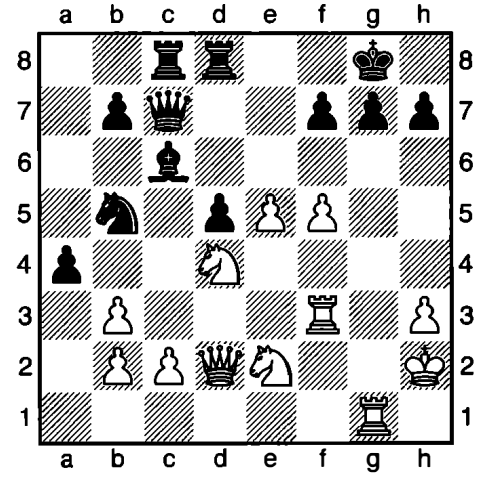
997) White to play (5 points)



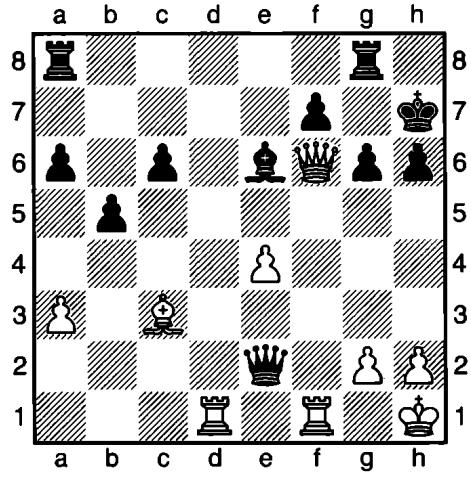
1000) Black to play (5 points)



998) White to play (5 points)



1001) White to play (5 points)



999) White to play (5 points)

Solutions for Extreme Mate Challenge

949) Erdogdu – Morchiashvili

Batumi 2003

1 ♖d8+ ♔f7 2 ♖e7+!

A surprising sacrifice to clear the way for a bishop check on d5.

2...♖xe7

2...♔f6 3 ♖f8#.

3 ♗d5+ 1-0

3...♔f6 (3...♖e6 4 ♖f8#) 4 ♖f8+ ♖f7 5 ♖xf7#.

950) J. Friedel – Mi. de Jong

Hoogeveen 2009

1 ♘g5!

Threatening 2 ♖xf7+ and 2 ♘xh7+.

1...hxg5

After 1...♔e8 2 ♖xf7 White forces mate quickly.

2 ♖xf7+! 1-0

White mates after 2...♔g8 3 ♕xh7#, 2...♖xf7 3 ♕h8# or 2...♔e8 3 ♖xh7+ ♔f8 4 ♕f7# (or 4 ♖h8#).

951) Kolesnik – Simantsev

Tula 2000

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h5+ ♘h6

2...♔g8 3 ♖h8#.

3 ♖xh6+! 1-0

3...♔xh6 4 ♖h3+ ♗h4 5 ♖xh4#.

952) D. Shilin – Mi. Fiodorov

Odessa 2007

1 ♗f8!

Threatening 2 ♕xh7# and at the same time preventing the defence 1...♖g7.

1...♘g5

After 1...♖g7 (or 1...h6 2 ♕xh6+ ♘xh6 3 ♖xh6#) 2 ♗xg7+ ♔xg7 the simplest win is by 3 ♖g4+ ♔f8 4 ♖hg3 ♘g5 5 ♕h6+ ♔f7 6 ♕xh7+! ♔f8 (6...♘xh7 7 ♖g7+ ♔f8 8 ♖g8+ ♔f7 9 ♖3g7#) 7 ♖xg5 fxg5 8 ♖xg5 with inevitable mate.

2 ♕xh7+! ♘xh7 3 ♖xh7+! 1-0

3...♔xh7 4 ♖h4+ ♕h5 5 ♖xh5#.

953) Fadi – Ah. Elgendy

Assiut 2008

Black's queen is pinned, so something spectacular is needed.

1...♗f5!

Threatening 2...♕xh2#, so White might as well take the queen.

2 ♖xf2 ♖g4+ 3 ♔h5

3 ♔h3 ♖xg3++ 4 ♔h4 ♖h3#.

3...♘f6+ 4 ♔h6 ♖g6#

954) G. Cerda – Fiorito

Buenos Aires 2003

1...♘f2+! 2 ♗xf2 ♖b1+ 3 ♗g1 ♖xg1+! 0-1

4 ♔xg1 ♕e1#.

955) Petitcunot – V. David

St Lorrain 2008

1 ♘f6+ ♔h8

1...♔g7 2 ♕xh6#.

2 ♗xh6

With many threats, including 3 ♗xf8#.

2...♘f5

Black prevents a discovered check, as White's queen is now attacked, but a double check proves deadly.

3 ♗g7++! 1-0

3...♔xg7 4 ♕h7#.

956) M. Gurevich – Gelfand

Cap d'Agde 2002

At the moment White's queen is covering the square d1, so it must be deflected with a sacrifice.

1...♕xe6! 2 ♕xe6

If White declines the sacrifice he will be a rook down and will face mate in short order.

2...♖d1+ 3 ♔h2 ♗g1+ 0-1

4 ♔h1 ♗f2+ 5 ♔h2 ♗g3#.

957) V. Dmitrenko – D. Gusev

Ukrainian Team Ch, Alushta 2008

1 exf6!

With various mating threats, including 2 ♕xe6+ and 2 f7+ ♔f8 3 ♗xg7+! ♔xg7 4 f8♕#.

1...♖xe3

Allowing one of the threats, but Black could only delay mate by a few moves; for example, 1...♘e5 2 ♖d8+ ♔f7 3 fxg7+ ♔xg7 4 ♗xe5+ ♖f6 5 ♗xf6+ ♕xf6 6 ♖g8+ ♔xg8 7 ♖xf6, etc.

2 f7+ ♔f8 3 ♗xg7+! ♔xg7 4 f8♕#

958) Sebag – Kozakov

Bois Colombes 2005

1...♕xf2+ 2 ♖xf2

After 2 ♔h1 ♕xf1+ Black mates quickly; for example, 3 ♗g1 ♘g3+ 4 ♔h2 ♕xg1+! 5 ♔xg1 ♖c1+ 6 ♔f2 (6 ♔h2 ♖h1#) 6...♗d4+ 7 ♕e3 ♖f1#.

2...♖c1+ 3 ♖f1 ♗d4+ 4 ♔h1 ♘f2+!

Not 4...♖xf1+? 5 ♗g1, after which White escapes.

0-1

5 ♔g1 ♘g4+ 6 ♔h1 ♖xf1+ 7 ♗g1 ♖xg1#.

959) Szoen – M. Bugalski

Polish Under-18 Ch, Leba 2004

1 ♗c8+ ♔b5

The lines 1...♖xc8 2 ♕xa7+ ♔b5 3 a4#, 1...♔a5 2 ♕xa7+! ♖xa7 3 ♖xa7+ ♔b5 4 a4# and 1...♗b7 2 ♕xb7+ ♔b5 3 ♕xd5+ ♔a4 4 ♕xc4+ all lead to a quick mate.

2 a4+! ♔xa4

2...♔a5 3 ♕xa7+! ♖xa7 4 ♖xa7#.

3 ♕xa7+! 1-0

It's mate after 3...♔b5 4 ♗a6+ ♔a4 5 ♗xc4+ ♖xa7 6 ♖xa7# or 3...♖xa7 4 ♖xa7+ ♔b5 5 ♗a6+ ♔a4 6 ♗xc4#.

960) D. Hersvik – Saevareid

Gausdal 2003

1 ♖f3!!

This spectacular move deflects either the black queen or the rook on f7.

1...♕xf3

The lines 1...♕d7 2 ♖h8+ ♔e7 3 ♖xf7+ ♔d8 4 ♖xd7+ ♔xd7 5 ♕xe8+ ♔c7 6 ♕d8# and 1...♖xf3 2 ♖h8+ ♔e7 3 ♕xe8+ ♔f6 4 ♖f8# also lead to mate.

1-0

Black resigned without waiting for 2 ♖h8+ ♔e7 3 ♕e6+ ♔d8 4 ♕xe8+ ♔c7 5 ♕d8#.

961) A. Sobh – Hakki

Cairo 2003

1 ♗d5+! ♕xd5

1...♔b6 2 ♕c6#.

2 ♖a7+! ♔xa7

2...♔b6 3 ♕c7+ ♔b5 4 ♖a5# and 2...♔b8 3 ♕c7# are no better.

3 ♕c7+ 1-0

3...♔a6 (other moves are also met by ♖a1+) 4 ♖a1+ ♖a4 (4...♔b5 5 ♖a5#) 5 ♖xa4+ ♔b5 6 ♖a5+ ♔b4 7 ♕c3#.

962) T. Gara – M. Ignacz

Hungarian Women's Ch, Budapest 2003

1 ♖xf7! ♔xf7

After 1...h5 2 ♕f6 White will mate more quickly.

2 ♕xh7+ ♔f6

2...♔f8 3 ♗h6+ ♔e8 4 ♕g8+ ♔e7 5 ♗g5# and 2...♔e8 3 ♕g8+ ♔e7 4 ♗g5# offer less resistance.

3 e5+! ♔xe5

3...dxe5 4 ♗g5+! ♔xg5 5 ♕xg6+ ♔h4 (or 5...♔f4 6 ♕g3#) 6 ♕f6+ ♔g4 7 ♗e2#.

4 ♕g7+

4 ♕h4! mates even more quickly, but the move played is good enough.

4...♔d5 5 ♗e4+ ♔xe4

5...♔c4 is met by 6 ♕d4# or 6 ♕c3#.

6 ♕d4+ 1-0

After 6...♔f5, White has a choice between 7 g4# and 7 ♕f4#.

963) Marusenko – H. Logdahl

Newport 2001

1 ♕e8+! ♖xe8

Other moves:

1) 1...♔g7 2 ♕g6+ ♔h8 3 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 4 ♕xe8+ ♔g7 5 ♕g8#.

2) 1...♗f8 2 ♕g6 ♗g7 (after 2...♕g7 3 ♘f7+ ♕xf7 4 ♕xf7 White mates quickly) 3 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 4 ♕xe8+ ♗f8 5 ♕xf8#.

2 ♖xe8+ ♗f8

2...♔g7 3 ♖g8#.

3 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 4 ♖g8+ ♔h6 5 ♖g6+

The quickest mate is 5 ♘e4+ ♔h5 (5...♔xh7 6 ♘xf6#) 6 ♘xf6+ ♔h4 7 ♖xg4#, but the move played is sufficient.

5...♔h5 6 ♘e6

Threatening both 7 ♖h6# and 7 ♘f4+ ♔h4 8 g3#.

6...♗xe6 7 ♖h6+ ♔g4 8 f3#

Or 8 h3#.

964) S. Lalić – I. Lauterbach

British League (4NCL) 2005/6

1 ♘xf6+ ♔f8

1...♔h8 2 ♕xh7#.

2 ♕e8+ ♔g7 3 ♘h5+ ♔h6 4 ♕xe6+ ♔xh5

4...♔g5 5 ♕f6+ ♔xh5 6 g4#.

5 ♕f5+ 1-0

5...♔h6 (5...♔h4 is met by 6 ♕g4# or 6 g3#) 6 ♕f6+ ♔h5 7 g4#.

965) Merieux – E. Wegner

French Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♘f7+ ♔g8

White also mates after 1...♖xf7 2 ♖e8+ ♔g7 3 ♕xh6# or 1...♔g7 2 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 3 ♕h8+! ♗xh8 4 ♘h6#.

2 ♘xh6+ ♔h8 3 ♘f7++ ♔g8

3...♔g7 4 ♕h6+ ♔g8 transposes.

4 ♕h8+! ♗xh8 5 ♘h6#

966) D. Coates – M.C. Campbell

British League (4NCL) 2005/6

1 ♗h7+ ♔f8

1...♔h8 2 ♗f6#.

2 ♗h6+ ♔e8 3 ♗g6+ ♔d8 4 ♗g5+ ♗e7

Or 4...♖e7 5 ♗xe7+ ♗xe7 6 ♖d1+ ♗d6 7 ♖xd6#.

5 ♖d1+ ♖d2 6 ♗xe7#

967) Granara – Liascovich

Villa Ballester 2006

White has a forced mate in 10, and although the line is very long, all White's moves are checks so Black has little chance to vary:

1 ♕h3+ ♔g8 2 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 3 ♕h6+ ♔g8 4 ♕xg6+ ♔h8

4...♔f8 5 ♕f7#.

5 ♕xe8+ ♔g7 6 ♕f7+ ♔h8 7 ♕f8+ ♔h7 8 g6+! ♔xg6 9 ♕f7+ 1-0

9...♔h6 10 g5#.

968) Lastin – Kriakvin

Moscow 2006

1 ♘g6+! ♔g8

The other main line runs 1...hxg6 (1...♕xg6 2 ♕xf8+! ♖xf8 3 ♖xf8#) 2 hxg6+ ♖h4 (2...♔g8 3 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 4 ♕h5+ ♔g8 5 ♕h7#) 3 ♖xh4+ ♕xh4 (3...♔g8 4 ♖h8+! mates as before) 4 ♕xf8+! ♖xf8 5 ♖xf8#.

2 ♕b3+ ♖e6 3 ♕xe6+! 1-0

3...♕xe6 4 ♖xf8#.

969) M. Castiglione – Kovacocy

Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6

1 ♗xg6++! ♔xg6

1...♔g8 2 ♕f7#.

2 ♕e8+ ♔h7

2...♔g7 3 ♖a7+ and White forces mate next move.

3 ♖a7+ ♗g7 4 ♕xh5+ 1-0

4...♔g8 5 ♕f7+ followed by 6 ♕xg7#.

970) Goganov – Gorovykh

St Petersburg 2009

1 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h1+ ♔g7

2...♔g6 3 ♕g4+ is the same.

3 ♕g4+ ♔f7 4 ♖h7+ ♖g7

4...♔e8 may be met by 5 ♕d7# or 5 ♕c8#, while 4...♕g7 allows 5 ♕e6#.

5 ♖xg7+ 1-0

5...♕xg7 6 ♕e6#.

971) T. Bogumil – Sokolovskaya

World Seniors Ch (Women), Condino 2009

1 ♘g6+ ♔g8 2 ♕e6+ ♖f7 3 ♕e8+! ♖f8

3...♖xe8 4 ♖xe8+ ♖f8 5 ♖xf8#.

4 ♘e7+ ♔h8 5 ♖xh7+! 1-0

5...♔xh7 6 ♕h5#.

972) Salido Polo – J. Auvray

European Under-14 Girls Ch, Šibenik 2007

1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7

1...♔h8 2 ♕g5, with the deadly threat of 3 ♕h6+, leads to a quick mate.

2 ♕g5+ ♔h8 3 ♕h6+ ♔g8

3...♘h7 4 ♕xh7#.

4 ♖g3+ ♘g4+ 5 ♖xg4+ 1-0

5...hxg4 6 ♕h7#.

973) Kai Jensen – B. Kara

Melbourne Club Ch 2005

1 ♕h5+ ♔g8 2 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7

2...♔f8 3 ♕h8+ ♘g8 4 ♗c5+ ♖e7 5 ♕xg8# (or 5 ♖xg8#).

3 ♗h6+ ♔g8

3...♔h7 4 ♗g5+ ♔g8 (4...♔g7 5 ♕h6+ ♔g8 6 ♗f6 leads to mate on g7 or h8) 5 ♗f6 ♘g6 6 ♕h6 followed by mate on g7.

4 ♕g5+ ♘g6

Or else White mates on g7 at once.

5 ♕f6

Black can only prevent ♕g7# by giving up his queen, but even this doesn't delay the end for long.

5...♕d4 6 ♕xd4 1-0

Mate follows soon; for example, 6...f6 7 ♕xf6 ♖e7 8 ♕xg6+ ♔h8 9 ♕f6+, etc.

974) Fedorchuk – R. Akhayan

Charleroi 2004

1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7

1...♔f8 2 ♕xf6#.

2 ♕g5+ ♔h7

2...♔f7 3 ♕g6+ ♔f8 (3...♔e7 4 ♕g7#) 4 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 transposes, and other king moves also transpose after White takes on f6 with check.

3 ♕g6+ ♔h8 4 ♕xf6+ ♔g8

4...♔h7 5 ♕g6+ ♔h8 transposes.

5 ♕g6+ ♔h8

5...♔f8 6 fxe6+ mates next move.

6 f6

Threatening mate on g7.

6...♕f8

6...♖d7 (6...♖g8 7 ♕h6#) 7 ♕h5+ ♔g8 (7...♖h7 8 ♕xe8+) 8 f7+ ♖xf7 9 ♖xf7 and White mates on h7 next move.

7 ♕h5+ ♔g8 8 f7+ ♔g7 1-0

Black resigned in view of 9 ♕xe5+ ♔h7 (9...♔h6 10 ♕f6+ ♔h7 11 d4#) 10 d4+ ♔h6 11 ♕f6+ ♔h5 12 g4# (or 12 ♗d1#).

975) Sikora Lerch – Pisk

Czech Team Ch 1994/5

1...♖xg2+! 2 ♔xg2

2 ♔h1 ♖xh2+ 3 ♔xh2 ♕h4+ followed by 4...♖g8#.

2...♗h3+! 3 ♔xh3

White is also mated after 3 ♔g1 ♖g8+ 4 ♔h1 ♕f3#, 3 ♔g3 ♕f3+ 4 ♔h4 ♕g4# and 3 ♔h1 ♕f3+ 4 ♔g1 ♕g2#.

3...♕f3+

3...♕e6+! is quicker; for example, 4 ♔h4 ♕h6+ 5 ♔g4 ♖g8+ 6 ♔f5 ♕g6+ 7 ♔f4 ♕g4#.

4 ♔h4 ♖g8

Threatening mate on g4.

5 ♕d7

5 h3 ♗xf2+ 6 ♖xf2 ♕g3+ 7 ♔h5 ♕g5#.

5...♗xf2+ 6 ♖xf2 ♕xf2+ 7 ♔h3

7 ♔h5 ♕xh2+ 8 ♕h3 ♕xh3#.

7...♕g2+ 8 ♔h4 ♕g5+ 0-1

9 ♔h3 ♕h5#.

976) M. Turner – Waage Tofte

Tromsø 2008

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7

1...♕xh7 2 ♖e8+ ♕g8 3 ♖h1+ ♖h2 4 ♖xh2#.

2 ♖h1+ ♔g6 3 f5+ 1-0

3...♔f7 4 g6+ ♔f6 5 ♘h5#.

977) Kanefsck – Cirianni

Mar del Plata 1999

1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖g5+ ♔h6

2...♔h8 3 ♗xf6#.

3 ♗xf6

Threatening 4 ♗g7#.

3...♖g8

3...♗d4 4 ♖f3 ♕d7 5 g4 leads to mate by ♖h3#.

4 g4!

It's also effective to play 4 ♖f3! ♖xg5 5 fxg5+ ♔h5 6 ♗f5 with inevitable mate; for example, 6...♗f2 7 ♖h3+ ♗h4 8 g4#.

4...♕e5

This prevents 5 ♖h5#, but it doesn't help for long. 4...♖xg5 5 fxg5# is a neat mate.

5 ♗xe5 1-0

It will be mate in any case after 5...f5 6 ♖h5+ ♔g6 7 ♖xf5 ♖c6 8 ♖f8+ ♔h6 9 ♖f3, when 10 ♖h3# cannot be prevented in any useful way.

978) M.A. Gonzalez Martinez – Idiazabal

Spanish Team Ch, Villava 2009

1 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7

Other moves also lead to mate:

1) 1...♔h8 2 ♕h5 fxe5 3 ♗g6+ ♔g7 4 ♕h7+ ♔f6 5 dxe5+ ♔g5 6 ♕h5+ ♔f4 7 g3#.

2) 1...♔f8 2 ♕g4 ♗d8 3 ♕g8+ ♔e7 4 ♘g6#.

3) 1...♔g7 2 ♕g4+ ♔h8 (2...♔xh7 3 ♕h5+ transposes to the game) 3 ♕h5 transposes to line 1.

2 ♕h5+ ♔g8 3 ♕g6+ ♔h8

3...♔f8 4 ♗c1! ♗d8 5 ♕h7! and the threats of 6 ♘g6# and 6 ♗h6# force mate next move.

4 ♖e3 1-0

Black has no good reply to the threat of 5 ♖h3#.

979) Codenotti – Brancaleoni

Cutro 2008

1...♗f4!

After 1...♗d6? 2 ♖e4 White avoids immediate disaster. The move played blocks the advance of the f-pawn and prevents White's rook from covering g4 by moving to e4. The immediate threat is 2...♕h3 followed by mate on h2.

2 ♖e4

After 2 ♖e6 ♕h3 3 ♖h6+ ♔g7 Black mates in a few moves.

2...♕g4+

This intermediate check seals White's fate.

3 ♔h1 ♕h3 0-1

Black mates by 4...♕xh2# or 4...♕xf1#.

980) Ar. Smirnov – T. Khakimov

St Petersburg 2008

White's king is trapped in the corner, but accurate play is needed to force mate.

1...♕d3!

Attacking f3 and at the same time preventing the defence 2 ♕d1. After 1...♕f5 2 ♕d1 Black is still winning, but there is no quick mate.

2 ♗e3

2 ♕g3 ♕d1+ 3 ♕g1 ♕xf3+ 4 ♕g2 ♕xg2#.

2...♕e2! 0-1

Again attacking f3 while covering d1. White has to defend f3 with his queen from g3 or g4, and then it's mate after, for example, 3 ♕g3 ♕d1+ 4 ♕g1 ♕xf3+ 5 ♕g2 ♕xg2#.

981) Khamitsky – I. Smirnov

Gdansk 2008

1 ♖xh5+! ♔xh5

1...♔g7 2 ♕h7+ ♔f6 3 ♖h6#.

2 ♖h2+ ♔g4 3 ♖h4+! 1-0

3...♔xh4 (3...♔g3 is met by 4 ♕f2# or 4 ♕h2#) 4 ♕h2+ ♔g4 5 ♕h3#.

982) N. Fortuit – F. Dussart

French Team Ch 2006/7

Black can force mate with a precise sequence of checks.

1...♕c4+ 2 ♔g1

2 ♔e1 runs into 2...♕e2# or 2...♕c1#.

2...♕c1+ 3 ♔h2 ♕f4+ 0-1

4 ♔h1 (4 ♔h3 ♕h4# is immediate mate, while 4 ♔g1 ♕g5+ transposes) 4...♕h4+ 5 ♔g1 ♕g5+ 6 ♔f1 (or else ...♕g2#) 6...♕c1#.

983) D. Schuh – Haselhorst

Germany (team event) 2004/5

1 ♖xe6!

Threatening 2 ♕h8#.

1...fxe6 2 ♕h8+ ♔e7 3 ♖h7+ ♔d6 4 ♕e5+ 1-0

4...♔c6 5 ♖xc7+ ♖xc7 (5...♔b6 6 ♕d6+ and White mates next move) 6 ♕xe6#.

984) Andreikin – Kretov

Russian Under-14 Ch, Dagomys 2004

1 ♕h6+! ♔xh6

1...♔h8 2 ♕xh7#.

2 ♖h4+ ♔g5

2...♔g7 3 ♖xh7#.

3 ♘xh7+! 1-0

After 3...♔xh4, 4 ♖e4# is quickest, although there are other ways to mate.

985) N. Clement – Platel

St Lorrain (Under-18) 2003

1...♖xh2+! 2 ♔xh2 ♕h3+ 3 ♔g1 ♘e2+ 4 ♔f2 ♕h2+ 5 ♕g2

5 ♔e1 ♘c3+ 6 ♕e5 ♖xe5#.

5...♕h4+ 0-1

6 ♕g3 ♕xg3#.

986) L. Dobeš – P. Gazda

Czech Republic (team event) 2002/3

1 ♕xg6+! hxg6 2 ♖h8+ ♔f7 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8

Black will also be mated after 3...♔e6 4 ♖b6+ or 3...♗g7 4 ♖xg7+ ♔e6 5 ♖b6+.

4 ♖g7+ ♔h8 5 ♖f7+! 1-0

White mates by 6 ♖bxf8#.

987) P. Fjodorow – Klimm
2nd Bundesliga 2002/3

1 ♗e4+! ♔xf7 2 ♕h5+ ♔f8
2...♔g8 3 ♕xe8+ ♗f8 4 ♕g6+ ♗g7 (or 4...♔h8 5 ♕h7#) 5 ♖d8#.
3 ♕xe8+! ♔xe8 4 ♗g6+ 1-0
4...♔f8 5 ♖d8#.

988) Mi. Kozak – S. Berezjuk
Ostrava 2003

1...♕xf1+! 2 ♔xf1 ♖d1+ 3 ♔e2
3 ♔g2 ♖g1#.
3...♘g1+ 4 ♔e3 ♖8d3+ 0-1
4...♖1d3+ is equally good. In either case, it's mate after 5 ♖xd3 ♖xd3#.

989) C. Lutz – Ftačnik
Bundesliga 2000/1

1 ♕xf6+!! ♔xf6
Any other move allows 2 ♖g8#.
2 ♖g6+! fxg6
2...♔e7 3 f6+ followed by 4 ♖g8#.
3 ♖xg6+ ♔e7 4 f6+ 1-0
White mates by 5 ♖g8#.

990) Listiak – M. Hagara
Slovakian Team Ch 2005/6

1...♕xg2+! 2 ♔xc1
2 ♔d3 walks into instant mate by 2...♕c2# or 2...♗c4#, while after 2 ♕e2 ♖c2+ 3 ♔xc2 ♕xe2+ Black wins the queen and then mates quickly.
2...♗e3+ 3 ♔d1
3 ♔b1 ♕f1+ is the same.
3...♕f1+ 4 ♔c2
4 ♗e1 ♕d3+ 5 ♗d2 ♕xd2#.
4...♕c1+ 5 ♔d3 ♗c4#

991) A. Kiss – Okhotnik
Hungarian Team Ch 2005/6

1...♕f1+ 2 ♔g3
2 ♔h2 ♗g1+ 3 ♔g3 (3 ♔h1 ♗e3+ 4 ♔h2 ♗xf4#) 3...♗f2+ transposes, while 2 ♔h4 leads to mate after 2...♗f2+ 3 ♗g3 ♕h1#.
2...♗f2+ 3 ♔h2 ♕g1+ 4 ♔h3 ♕h1+ 0-1
5 ♗h2 ♕f1#.

992) A. Ledger – Greet
British League (4NCL) 2005/6

1 ♕h4+ ♖g5 2 ♕xh6+ ♖g6 3 ♕h4+ ♖g5 4 ♕h8+ 1-0
4...♔g6 (4...♖g7 5 ♕xg7#) 5 ♕h7+ ♔f6 6 ♖f7#.

993) Zuse – Käser
German Ch, Osterburg 2006

1...♕g6+! 2 ♖g5
2 ♔xh3 ♖h8+ and Black mates next move.
2...♖g3+ 3 ♔xg3
3 ♔h4 ♕xg5#.
3...♕xg5+ 4 ♔h2 ♖h8+ 5 ♔g1 ♕e3+ 0-1
After 6 ♔f1 Black can mate by 6...♖f8# or 6...♖h1#.

994) S.P. Davydov – Karatorossian
Moscow 2006

1...♖xb2+! 2 ♔xb2 ♕b3+ 3 ♔c1
3 ♔a1 ♘c2#.
3...♘e2+ 4 ♔d2 ♕d3+ 5 ♔e1 ♗c3+ 0-1
6 ♔f1 ♘f4#.

995) I. Kurnosov – D'Costa
European Ch, Budva 2009

1 ♗xf6!
Threatening mate on g7.
1...♕xf6 2 e8♕+ ♗xe8
2...♖xe8 3 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 4 ♕xe8+ transposes.
3 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8
3...♕f8 4 ♕e6#.
4 ♕xe8+ 1-0
4...♕f8 5 ♗c4+ ♔h7 6 ♕h5#.

996) J.M. Dalmau – E. Kopasov
Rilton Cup, Stockholm 2003/4

1 ♕xh7+! ♔xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♗h6 3 ♗xh6
Threatening 4 ♗xf8#.
3...♕c4
This and 3...♕a4 (which is met the same way) are the only possible defences.
4 ♘g5+!
4 ♗xf8+?? ♕xh4 5 ♘xh4 ♖xf8 would give Black a winning ending.
4...♔h8 5 ♗g7++! 1-0
5...♔xg7 6 ♖h7#.

997) B. Brendel – F. Fleischer
Staufer 2010

1 ♕c5+ ♔b8

Or 1...♔d7 2 ♗b5#.

2 ♖xb7+!

The first of a pair of sacrifices which delivers a one-two knockout to Black's king.

2...♔xb7 3 ♗a6+! 1-0

3...♔xa6 (it's also mate after 3...♔a8 4 ♕c6+ ♔b8 5 ♕b7# or 3...♔b8 4 ♕b5+ ♔c7 5 ♕b7#) 4 ♕c6+ ♔a5 5 ♗d2+ and White mates next move.

998) V. Lazarev – N. Friedrich

Cattolica 2005

1 ♘g6+ ♔h7 2 ♘e5+

First the knight discovers check from the bishop...

2...♔h8 3 ♘f7+ ♔g8 4 ♘xh6++

...and then helps the queen deliver a double check.

4...♔h8

4...♔f8 5 ♕f7#.

5 ♕g8+! 1-0

After 5...♖xg8 or 5...♘xg8 White plays 6 ♘f7# and it all ends in a smothered mate.

999) J. Sanchez – P. Pascal

Montpellier 2005

1 ♕xf7+! ♗xf7 2 ♖xf7+ ♖g7 3 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 4 ♖xg6+ ♔h7 5 ♖g7+ ♔h8 6 ♖g3+ 1-0

It's just as good to play the rook to g4 or g5. In any case, after 6...♔h7 White mates by 7 ♖d7#.

1000) J. van der Veen – J. Veltman

Dieren 2005

1...♕xg2+! 2 ♖xg2 ♖xg2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖cg8!

With the deadly threat of 4...♖g1++ 5 ♔h2 ♖h1# (or 5...♖8g2#).

4 ♘f3

This doesn't help as the knight is pinned when Black checks on g1.

4...♖g1+ 0-1

5 ♔h2 ♖8g2#.

1001) Mahmutov – Kuyumcu

Under-16 Olympiad, Denizli 2003

1 ♖xg7+!! ♔xg7

After 1...♔h8 2 ♕h6 or 1...♔f8 2 ♘e6+ fxe6 3 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 4 ♕h6+ ♖g7 5 f6 White mates quickly.

2 ♕g5+ ♔f8

2...♔h8 3 ♕f6+ ♔g8 4 ♖g3+ ♔f8 5 ♘e6+ ♔e8 6 ♖g8+ ♔d7 7 ♕xf7#.

3 ♘e6+!

This second sacrifice shatters Black's position.

3...♔e8

3...fxe6 4 fxe6+ ♔e8 5 ♕g8+ (5 ♕h5+ is also good) 5...♔e7 6 ♕f7#.

After 3...♔e8, White could have forced mate by **4 ♕g8+ ♔e7 5 f6+! ♔xe6 6 ♕g4+ ♔xe5 7 ♕f4+ ♔e6 8 ♖e3+ ♕e5** (8...♔d7 9 ♖e7#) **9 ♕xe5+ ♔d7 10 ♕e7#.**

Instead, the game continued **4 ♘xc7+? ♖xc7 5 bxa4** (White is well ahead on material and also has a strong attack, but the finish of the game was not without incident) **5...d4 6 ♖d3 ♗e4 7 ♕g8+ ♔d7 8 ♕xf7+ ♔c8 9 ♕e6+ ♔b8 10 axb5 ♖xc2 11 ♕b3??** (11 ♖a3 ♖xe2+ 12 ♔g3 wins easily) **11...♖xe2+ 12 ♔g1 ♗xf5?** (12...♖g2+! 13 ♔f1 ♖dg8 gives Black a clear advantage since it is now White's king which is in serious danger) **13 b6?** (13 ♖g3 favours White) **13...♗xd3 14 ♕xd3 ♖xb2 15 e6 ♖xb6 16 e7 ♖g6+??** (16...♖e8 or 16...♖g8+ 17 ♔h2 ♖e6 would have drawn easily) **17 ♕xg6 1-0.**

Score-Chart for Extreme Mate Challenge

Position number	Points	Score
949	5	
950	5	
951	5	
952	5	
953	5	
954	5	
955	5	
956	5	
957	5	
958	5	
959	5	
960	5	
961	5	
962	5	
963	5	
964	5	
965	5	
966	5	
967	5	
968	5	
969	5	
970	5	
971	5	
972	5	
973	5	
974	5	
975	5	
976	5	
977	5	
978	5	
979	5	
980	5	
981	5	
982	5	
983	5	
984	5	
985	5	
986	5	
987	5	
988	5	
989	5	
990	5	
991	5	
992	5	
993	5	
994	5	
995	5	
996	5	
997	5	
998	5	
999	5	
1000	5	
1001	5	
Total	**265**	

Final Score-Chart

Chapter number	Maximum Points	Score
1	166	
2	116	
3	223	
4	86	
5	93	
6	139	
7	81	
8	138	
9	149	
10	219	
11	101	
12	47	
13	238	
14	80	
15	357	
16	132	
17	265	
Total	**2630**	

Congratulations to readers who have worked their way through the book and solved the puzzles. The mating patterns you have encountered will provide an arsenal of weapons with which to shock your opponents. If you have enjoyed this puzzle book and are interested in further reading, you might like to consider these more advanced books from Gambit Publications:

Learn Chess Tactics by John Nunn teaches the most important ways to win material and includes many puzzles.

The Ultimate Chess Puzzle Book by John Emms contains 1001 puzzles, starting at a similar level to the current book but moving on to a more advanced level.

Jon Speelman's Chess Puzzle Book by Jon Speelman is a personal selection of puzzles by the English grandmaster.

365 Ways to Checkmate by Joe Gallagher has a similar aim to the present book, but at a higher level.

The Giant Chess Puzzle Book by Zenon Franco is another collection of 1001 puzzles, mostly at a more advanced level.

Index of Players

Numbers refer to puzzles, unless otherwise stated. A **bold** number signifies that the named player had White.

Aabling Thomsen **864**; Abadia Pascual **393**; Abaturov **492**; Abdalla, L. 415; Abed, M. **440**; Abergel 714; Abhishek, K. 422; Acher **848**; Adhiban **636**, **813**; Adla **137**; Afanasiev, D. **232**; Agamaliev **291**; Agh 380; Aghabekian 129; Aguirre Lorenzo 708; Ahmed, Jam. 102; Aigner, M. 692; Airapetian, G. 152; Airapetian, Y. 149; Akhayan, R. 974; Akhmadeev, Val. **776**; Akobian 603; Akst, I. **259**; Alavkin 261; Albarran, G. **320**; Aleskerov 135; Alexandrovsky 143; Alford 472; Alho, S. 4; Ali, Mos. **916**; Almagro Llanas **470**; Almeida, O. 766; Alonso, I. **351**; Alsina Leal 933; Altenburger, R. 562; Alvarez Ramirez, M. 159; Alvarez Solis, Je. **647**; Alvarez, J.A. 56; Amanov, Z. 176; Amarasena 442; Amarasinghe, A. **442**; Ambrus 576; Amil Meilan **290**; Anand 467; Ananos Palacios, Da. 570; Anderson, S. **298**; Andreev, E. **135**; Andreikin 240, **787**, **984**; Andriasian, Z. **149**, **715**; Andrist, P. **597**; Andrzejewska, A. 449; Ansell, A. **590**; Ansell, S. 379; Antal, Ag. 804; Antal, J. **277**; Antonano Fernandez **584**; Anuprita 445; Apaydin, F. **63**; Äpfler, C. **912**; Apicella **138**, **267**; Apkhaidze 257; Appolonov **93**; Argandona, I. 732; Armbrust, F. 251; Arnold, L. 121; Arns 784; Aronian **179**; Aronow, M. **425**; Arsenault, M. **370**; Arutinian 250, **607**; Ashwin, J. **704**; Astengo, M. 517; Atakisi 85; Atako **407**; Autino 409; Autran 115; Auvray, J. 972; Aveskulov **364**; Avinash, Sh. 813; Avrukh 262

Bach, M. **488**; Bachmann Schiavo 340; Bagyanszky **496**; Baisakhi Das **775**; Bajramović 174; Bakin 762; Bakre **230**; Balaian, Ali. 126; Balashov 930; Balazs, An. 127; Baldauf, M. **234**; Balla, Ta. **23**, 274; Ballai **682**; Balster **446**; Banhazi 772; Banusz **346**; Baquero, L. **937**; Baranov, G. 383; Barbier, W. **898**; Barczi, T. 948; Barillaro 478; Barlage 425; Barle **110**; Barletta **97**; Barrett, S. **456**; Barsov 215; Bartel, Mario 310, 395; Bartha, S. **761**; Barva 60; Bathke, J. **202**; Battaglini **59**; Baumgartner **269**; Bautista Sanchez *page 184*; Beaton, K. **270**; Becerra Rivero **596**; Becker, Jö. 459; Becker, Marcel 153; Becker, Martin **53**; Bednar, Ma. 890; Beeke **208**; Beil, M. **353**; Beliaev, Va. **737**; Bellon 624, 740; Beltran Medina **890**; Beltran Rueda **583**; Benidze, D. **49**; Bensenousi, I. 464; Bentsen, H. 671; Berbatov, K. 855; Berczes, D. 294; Berezjuk, S. **367**, 988; Berg, E. 497, 797; Berg, K. ***page 92***; Berg, P. **681**; Berkemer, R. 495; Bernadsky **285**; Bernal Tinajero 276; Bernasek 516; Bernhardt, R. 936; Beshukov 617; Besner 618; Beudaert 109, 937; Beuselinck 918; Bharathi, R. 200; Bhat **933**; Bigalke, T. **540**; Bijaoui 369; Biolek **217**; Biro, P. 242, 793; Bischoff 494, **792**; Bjornsson, Si. **884**; Blatny 452, **582**; Blazquez Lopez, V. 393; Bluvshtein **610**; Bobras *page 82*, **281**; Bodrogi, M. 496; Bogdan, D. **381**; Bogenschütze 512; Bogumil, T. **971**; Boguslavsky 779; Boguszlavszkij **74**; Bogut 239; Bohn, T. **615**; Boichev 721; Boim 749; Bojković, N. **123**, **141**; Bojović, J. 666; Bolado 112; Bolbochan, Ju. **27**; Bold, S. **921**; Bologan 148, **566**, 838; Bolwerk 69; Bolzoni, V. 923; Bonafont **441**; Bondoc 324; Bontempi **517**; Boos, M. **417**; Borik **926**; Boros, De. 886; Bosboom **663**; Bosboom-Lanchava **373**; Bosiočić **85**; Bosman 457; Botvinnik, Ir. 760; Bourdonnais, L. 187; Bourmistrov, D. 588; Bourne, Joh. **120**; Bouzo 376; Bove, A. 487; Bozinović, Bog. **928**; Bozzo, R. **694**; Braga, F. **518**; Braggaar, L. **632**; Brancaleoni 979; Brandenburg, D. 454; Brandenburg, L. 632; Brandner **867**; Brandt, W. 86; Braun, A. **723**; Braun, Kons. **431**; Braun, Mart. **932**; Brcar, M. 477; Breder **553**; Bregadze, L. 676; Brendel, B. **997**; Brener 332; Broekmeulen 533; Bronstein 668; Brontz **544**; Brookes, C. **360**; Browne 528; Bruned, B. 518; Brynell **41**, **309**; Bryzgalin 792; Bu Xiangzhi **3**, 341; Buchal **499**; Buchenthal **821**; Bücker, S. 106; Budimir, B. 927; Bugalski, M. 959; Bugel 503; Buhmann 723, **835**; Bukavshin 350; Buker **908**; Bukovsky *page 170*; Bunzmann 536; Buslov **870**; Buss 392

Cabrera Trujillo, J. 748; Cabrera, A. **914**; Cabrera, M.A. **183**; Calas 125; Calistri **907**; Calzetta 876; Campbell, M.C. 966; Campomori 323; Campos, J.F. 730; Camus de Solliers 218; Canfell **611**; Canneva **196**; Cao, K. **437**; Caoili 925; Caputi, N. **587**; Carlhammar 602; Carlsen **212**, **809**; Carlsson, I. **785**; Carlsson, P. **645**; Carstensen, J. **188**; Casper **332**; Castiglione, M. **969**; Castillo Gallego, S. 504; Castro Rojas 268; Cebalo 110; Cejas, J. **443**; Celiker 63; Cerda, G. **954**; Cerv 661; Cesbron 548; Chabanon **639**; Chapygin **483**; Chaves, Joa. 935; Chavez Lazo **631**; Chelushkina **167**; Chemin, V. 910; Cheng, Bi. 579; Cherednichenko **899**; Cherniaev 140; Chernobai **796**; Chernomordik **343**; Chernozemov 737; Cheung, Jan 895; Choisy 541; Chowdhury, S.R. **680**; Christensen, St. 228; Chua Xing Jian **883**; Chueca Forcen 479; Chulivska 238; Cirianni 977; Civrić 571; Clarke, St. 795; Clement, N. **985**; Clement, O. **934**; Cmilyte **228**; Coates, D. **966**; Codenotti 476, **979**; Coene 95; Coenen, N. **506**; Colas, R. 874; Collutiis 608; Colnot, L. **913**; Conquest 764; Contin 427; Corrales, Z. **485**; Cosma, E. 167, **876**; Cotonnec, A. **187**; Cotonnec, M. 490; Cottrell, K. **692**; Cramling, P. 194; Crespo, Rai. **698**; Cristobal, M. **245**; Crosa Coll **400**; Cruz Lledo 233; Cruz Lopez **918**; Cruz, F. **312**; Csala, I. **365**; Cselenyi 888; Cselotei **701**; Csiszar, C. **538**; Csolig **242**; Csom **860**; Csorba, M. **292**; Cucančić 184; Cullip 727; Czarnecki 48; Czarnota, D. **190**; Czarnota, P. **612**

D'Costa 347, 995; da Costa, J. **924**; da Silva, A. **910**; Dalmau, J.M. **996**; Damia 844; Damjanović, L. 207, **722**; Danes, J. 831; Danielian, E. **317**; Darini 440; Darius, H. 900; Das, A. 648; Dauth **448**; Dautov **457**; David, V. 929, 955; Davies, N. **771**; Davydov, S.P. **994**; De Groote, E. **250**; De Haan **8**; De Jong, Mi. 950; De Mooij 889; de Souza, S.L. 924; Deak, L. **389**; Degenhardt, H. **495**; Degraeve **121**; Degtiarev 600; Delemarre **820**; Deleyn 820; Delgado, H. **34**; della Morte, P. **805**; Delorme, Ax. **155**; Delort 337; Delvos *page 146*; Demeny, A. 849; Demidowicz, M. 448; Demina, Y. **133**; Denayer, E. **923**; Deriabin, I. **35**; Dermann **153**; Deshpande **200**; Deutsch, L. 599; Diamant, A. **319**; Diaz de Cerio 634; Diaz Ordonez 485; Diaz, J.W. **268**; Diaz, W. 119; Diez Viera **296**; Dilleigh 456; Dimitrijević, A. 722; Dimitrov, A. 44; Dinckel **696**; Diuraev **159**; Djavadov, R. 704; Djukić, Z. ***page 46***, **315**; Djurdjević, P. **207**; Djurhuus **903**; Djurković, M. **145**; Dmitrenko, V. **957**; Dobeš, L. **986**; Dobias, R. **489**; Dobrev, N. **433**, **721**; Dobrotka **220**; Dobrov **61**; Dobrovolsky, R. **605**; Doggers **557**; Dole, A. **877**; Dolnik 11; Dombai 349; Domonkos, D. 403; Doncea **337**, **679**; Donrault 78; Dorst, Joh. **556**; Döry 258; Dostan, J. **237**; Dragičević ***page 31***; Dreev **15**, 868; Drill **426**; Drinoczi **753**; Drmić, T. 658; Drtina **225**; Dubrović, G. **509**; Dudas, E. **527**; Dudas, P. 493; Dukov **930**; Dunne, A. **657**; Duong The Anh 23, 500; Dussart, F. 982; Dusthageer **413**; Duszczak **931**; Dzhakaev **617**; Dzhangobegov 338; Dzhumaev **577**

Eames 76; Eberth, Z. 555; Eckhardt, C. 382; Efanov, N. 856; Efimov, I. 491; Egri **667**; Ehlvest 873; El Kher *page 71*; Elez, I. 509; Elgendy, Ah. 953; Eliet 401; Eliseev, A. 567; Eliseev, Y. 887; Elmali, N. 821; Elschner **382**; Eminov, A. 181; Emodi, G. 734; Englert, J. **449**; Engqvist 785; Epishin **480**; Epstein, A. **308**; Epstein, E. **210**; Erdogdu **949**; Erdos 660, **717**; Erenburg 915; Eriksson, C. 864; Ermakov, Y. 709; Ernst, T. 398, 480; Ershova 802; Escobar Forero 891; Escoms Monzo 698; Escuer Sanchez **570**; Eskandary **600**; Eskelinen **432**; Espinosa Aranda 688, **786**; Estevez Jacome **276**; Evdokimov, A. **915**; Evseev 163; Exposito Amaro 360; Ezat, M. **816**

Fabregas Fontanet 326; Fadi **953**; Fahnenschmidt, G. **368**; Faibisovich 532; Fandino Reyes **546**; Farago, S. **173**; Faulkes **702**; Fayard **822**; Federić, Pa. 635; Fedorchuk 339, **974**; Fedoseev, Vl. **534**; Feher, G. 860; Feigin 651; Fekete, A. 375; Felegyhazi **892**; Feller, J. 356; Feller, S. **936**; Feltan **174**; Fenil **422**; Ferčec **52**, 656; Ferkingstad, S. 707; Fernandez Diez, A. **396**; Fernandez Garcia, J. **765**; Fernandez, Fr. 546; Ferrer 408; Ferri 158; Figler, J. 254; Filip, L. 132; Filipiak, T. **51**; Filipović, Iv. 164; Filippas **862**; Filippov, An. **181**; Fiodorov, Mi. 952; Fiori, H. 290; Fiorido **409**; Fiorito 954; Firman 863; Fischer, Mart. 475; Fjodorow, P. **987**; Flear **818**; Fleischer, F. 997; Fleurent 729; Flierl **459**; Flitney, A. 508; Flocco, A. **730**; Florentiades **501**; Flores, D. **891**; Fluvia, Jor. **43**; Fodor, T. **804**; Fogarasi **536**, **551**; Foisor, C. 743; Foisor, S. **280**; Fomina, T. **194**, 510; Fontaine **354**; Foord, D. 738; Forcen Esteban, D. **233**; Forgas Moreno 34; Formanek, E. **505**; Forster, T. **131**; Forthoffer, P.

275; Fortuit, N. **982**; Fox, T.C. 108; François, Gi. 399; Frankl 911; Fraser, M. 270; Frasineanu **324**; Fressinet 362; Frhat 607; Fridman, D. **169**; Friedel, J. **950**; Friedrich, N. 998; Frigeri **881**; Frih **125**; Fritz, John **314**; Frolov, I. **260**; Fruteau, S. 407; Ftačnik 989

Gabre **857**; Gacso **794**; Gagarin, V. 193; Gagić, M. 484; Gal 277; Gallagher **401, 841**; Galović **598**; Gaponenko, I. 622; Gara, P. 794; Gara, T. **962**; Garancovsky **105**; Garcia Lainez, J. 584; Garcia Martinez, C. **625**; Garofalo, S. 700; Garro Beraza, H. 296; Garza 906; Gasparian, N. **129**; Gaspariants, G. 928; Gauf **728**; Gauglitz **231**; Gaulin, B. **720**; Gazda, P. 986; Gazić **547**; Gazizov 157; Geiko 492; Geirnaert *page 217*; Gelblum 370; Gelfand 817, 956; Genestous 902; Genova, L. **814**; Georgiadis **294**; Georgiev, Kr. 486; Gerasimov, I. **673**; Gerasko 695; Gerbery 105; Gershkowich 343; Gerzhoy **897**; Geske 124; Ghannoum **671**; Giaccio **906**; Giffard 267, **362**; Ginsburg, M. **156**; Gioseffi 97, **158**; Giri 55, **134**; Gisbrecht 574; Giuriati 471; Glavina 87; Gleizerov **261**; Glek **706**; Glimbrant **197**; Glukhov, A. **272**; Glushenko 739; Goasdoue 137; Godard **759**; Godena 37; Gofshtein **749**; Goganov **970**; Goldsmith, A. 590, **687**; Golichenko, I. **358**; Golizadeh 335; Golubev, Ig. 689; Golubev, M. 791; Golubičić **164**; Golubović, B. **571**; Gombocz **11**; Goncalves Coimbra 412; Gonda **37**; Gonzalez Martinez, M.A. **978**; Gonzalez Perez, A. **56**; Gonzalez, Bo. **784**; Gonzalez, Da. 786; Gonzalez, Yu. 396; Gorbatov **420**; Gorbenko 513; Gordenko **806**; Gorin, A. 166; Goriunov, S. 20; Gorovykh 970; Grabliauskas, V. 130; Grabmeier **693**; Grachev, B. **603**; Gracin **246**; Graf, C. **788**; Graf, F. **922**; Granara **967**; Granda **32**; Grant, J. 511; Gray, M. 79; Green, An. 222; Greet **653**, 992; Grishchuk 778; Grochocinska **659**; Gromovs, S. **58**; Gross, D. 774; Grover, S. **779**; Grünberg, R. **258**; Grünfeld, Y. 629; Gruskovnjak **403**; Grüttner **664**; Gschnitzer 282; Guerra Bastida **253**, 824; Guerra, Va. **453**; Guerrero, Alv. **427**; Guichard, P. 770; Guido, F. **374**; Gunina 943; Gupta, Ab. **176**; Gurevich, M. **956**; Gusakov, P. 289; Guseinov, G. **219**; Gusev, A. 654; Gusev, D. 957; Gustafsson **243**; Gustavsson, Jon. 537; Gutacker **265**; Gutov **378**; Gutt, O. **429**; Guyot, E. 907; Gvetadze, Sopio **391**; Gvilava 527, 750; Gyenes, I. **380**; Gyimesi 773

Haase, J. **941**; Haba **773**; Habunek 670; Hadi, Ju. 702; Hadraba **661**; Hagara, M. 990; Hagemann, T. 547; Hahlbohm, M. 621; Haider, F. 451; Hairapetian, A. 236; Hakki 961; Haller, P. 514; Hamdouchi **397**; Hammer, J. 572, **602**; Handke **545**; Hanley, J.L. 653; Hanreck 441; Hansen, L.B. **669**; Hansen, S.B. **402**; Hansen, Ve. 438; Happel 154; Hapuarachchi 646; Hardarson 377; Hasangatin **609**; Haselhorst 983; Haubt 439, 789; Hautot **9**; Hebden *page 107*; Hedjazian, K. **45**; Heider, M. **833**; Heindrich, M. 66; Hejberg *page 131*; Hellborg 387; Hellsten 446; Helstroffer **124**; Henrich, T. **356**; Henrichs **209**, 557; Henriksen, M. **668**; Henry, Liam **171**; Herczku **888**; Hernandez, El. **54**; Hersvik, D. **960**; Herzog, A. 269; Hess, C. **114**; Hidalgo Santana **708**; Hildebrand, K. 316; Hillarp Persson **329**; Hirneise, T. **592**; Hirsch, S. 53; Hj, A.M.A. 455; Hlinka 225; Hoekstra 657; Hoffmann, Mate. **142**; Hoffmann, Udo **251**; Høiberg, N. **359**; Holeksa 103; Holmsten **262**; Hortillosa **430**; Horvath, A. 386, **854**; Horvath, Ja. 753; Horvath, Jo. 389; Horvath, Kal. 10; Horvath, Kar. **866**; Horvath, Mario **482**; Horvath, Mi. **10**; Horvath, T. **100**; Hossain, E. 175; Hottes ***page 184***; Houdek, P. **321**; Housieaux, D. **322**; Hovhannisyan 252; Howell, D. **559**; Hrbolka **70**; Huber, Gr. 678; Huda, M. **238**; Hug, W. **392**; Hughey 468; Huguet, F. **50**; Hulse, B. 777; Hulshof 458; Hummel, E. 531; Hungaski 610

Ianocichin, V. 271; Ibba **839**; Ibraev, N. 394; Ibrahimov, R. **165**; Idiazabal 978; Iglesias, Joa. **716**; Ignacz, M. 652, 962; Imocha **177**; Inarkiev **150, 549**; Indjić **287**; Ingbrandt **398**; Ionescu, D. 138; Ismagambetov **394**, 811; Ivanchuk 14, **827**; Ivanenko, O.A. **249**; Ivanov, Al. 156; Ivanov, S. **4**; Ivanov, Vik. **829**; Ivanova, T. 637; Ivanović, B. 565, 859; Iveković, Bo. **601**; Izoria, Z. **473**; Izrailev, A. 42; Izso, D. 681

Jablonski, Mir. **81**; Jadoul **388**; Jakirlić ***page 117***, **404**; Jakubiec, E. 543; Jakupec **578**; James, S. 885; Janković, A. **239**; Janz **900**; Jasnikowski **144**; Javierre Conesa 946; Jaworski, Mi. **524**; Jelečević 578; Jenni **106, 211**; Jensby 359; Jensen, Kai **973**; Jha, K. 91; Jianu **170**; Jimenez Capilla, J. 809; Jobava, Ba. **660, 842**; Jobava, Be. **195**; Joehnk 51; Joerdens **299**; Johannessen, S. **89**;

Johansson, J. 871; Johansson, V. **760**; Jones, G. **1**; Jovančić 287; Juarez Flores, G. 331; Jugelt **86**; Julenyi 300; Juquois 638; Jusić 111; Justo, D. 64; Jüttner **911**

Kabachenko 423; Kachiwagi 244; Kadrić **146**; Kahn, E. **460**, 696; Kalagashvili 473; Kalashnikova, E. 905; Kalies **725**; Kalinin, Al. 424; Kalmar, K. 104; Kalshyan 901; Kamber, B. 597; Kanefsck **977**; Kanep 447; Kania, A. 5; Kaniansky 191; Kaplan, S. **235**; Kara, B. 973; Karabalis **439**, 912; Karatorossian 994; Kardon **878**; Karhanek, P. 735; Kariakin **778**; Karlsson, L. **193**, **824**, 903; Karpov, A. 94; Karpov, V. 39; Kartmann 519; Kartsev, So. 283; Käser 993; Kasparov, S. **38**; Kastner, W. **172**; Kaszas 942; Kaszowski 931; Katolikov **655**; Kelemen, F. **60**; Kengis **452**; Keprt **103**; Keschitz 237; Kettler, B. **586**; Khader 247; Khagurov **372**; Khakimov, T. 980; Khamitsky **981**; Kharashuta **126**; Kharlov **868**; Kharmunova, Na. 391; Khashimov **406**; Khismatullin 421; Khotenashvili 36; Khropova 30; Khruschov **767**; Khukhashvili **227**; Kierzek, Ma. **593**; Kindinova **304**; Kirillov, A. 744; Kirszenberg **115**; Kislik **408**; Kislinsky 223; Kiss, A. **991**; Kiss, I.G. **627**; Kitarović 327; Klasan, V. 769; Klein, Fe. 312; Klein, Ge. 208, **703**; Klerides 501; Klimm 987; Klimov, S. **355**; Klinger, Seb. **507**; Kliun 384; Klokas 862; Klundt **77**; Kluss, K. **718**; Kochetkova **236**; Koerant **719**; Kokkinakis **464**; Kolakovski 146; Kolesnik **951**; Kolker **919**; Koller, J. **789**; Komljenović **634**; Kondopoulos, D. 522; Kongevold, H. **428**; Konguvel 413; Konig, B. 131; Konings, L. **65**, 580; Konjicanin **658**; Konnyu 627, **736**; Kononenko, T. **84**; Kopasov, E. 996; Kopec, L. **419**; Kopytin 406; Korchnoi **255**; Korda, A. 916; Korennoi 182; Korobkin 529; Korochkin **21**; Korosciel 190; Korpas, Z. 667; Korth, D. **724**; Kosak, R. **904**, 926; Kosmo **705**; Kosov, I. **22**, 534; Kosten **347**, **568**; Kosteniuk 317; Kostiukova 853; Kotainy **42**; Kotan **390**; Kotronias **168**, **740**; Kotrotsos **640**; Kotter 417; Kovač, L. **201**; Kovač, M. 139; Kovačević, B. 90; Kovačević, V. **90**; Kovacocy 969; Kovaliov, A. **117**, 313, 582; Kovpak 21; Kowalska, E. **543**; Kozak, Mi. **988**; Kozakov **67**, 958; Koziak 273, 810; Kraft, H. **411**, **619**; Krak **554**, **803**; Kramnik **467**; Krasenkow ***page 82***; Krastev, K.N. 288; Krause, U. **136**; Krauseneck 77; Kreindl 418; Kretov 984; Kreuscher, W. 592; Kriakvin 968; Krieg, N. **257**; Kristensen, J.J. **466**; Kristensen, Kå. **858**; Kristiansen, J. *page 92*; Kristjansson, A. **726**, 884; Krivec *page 31*; Krivoshei 128, **791**; Kroll 466; Kröncke, M. 325, **628**; Krupa, M. **471**; Kruppa 358; Krush **469**; Kuba, Ji. **644**; Kuba, S. 321; Külaots **107**; Kulcsar, Ta. 932; Kulkarni, C. 945; Kulon, K. **652**; Kumar, Ma. 450; Kunz, Ko. **213**; Kuparadze 195; Kuporosov 40; Kupper, P. **550**; Kurmann, O. 256; Kurnosov, I. **886**, **995**; Kuyumcu 1001; Kuzevanova **539**

Labarthe, A. 913; Laborde, S. **909**; Lacour, S. 374; Lakner, J. 611; Lalić, S. **964**; Lalith, B. **334**; Lamoureux, C. 639; Landgren, A. 834; Langer, C. 731; Langer, M. 298; Langheinrich **19**; Langner, S. **896**; Lanin 787; Lanka, Z. **118**, **226**, **325**; Lantang 474; Larrat 196; Lastin **968**; Laurent, B. 898; Lauterbach, I. 725, 964; Laxman **751**; Lazarev, V. **62**, **998**; Lazaridis Patsalias 318; Lazić, M. 299; Le Goff, D. **490**; Le Roy **819**; Ledesma, Ho. **119**; Ledger, A. **140**, **992**; Lehner, O. **917**; Leisner, H. 540; Lelong 50; Lenaerts, L. **650**; Lenart, E. **741**; Leonardo, J. 453, **525**; Leone, J. 352; Lepik 419; Letelier **699**; Li Shilong 280; Liascovich 967; Lickleder 882; Lie, E. **752**; Lie, K. **16**; Liebold, T. **685**; Liedl 867; Likavsky 98; Limontaite 835; Limp **80**; Lindberg, Be. **387**; Lip, C. *page 117*; Listiak **990**; Ljubičić **927**; Ljubojević 345; Llaneza Vega, P. 826; Lobach, P. 796; Loewe, L. **512**; Logdahl, H. 963; Loginov **101**; Longa Yauca **479**; Lopez Heras 32; Lorand 173; Lorenz, S. **801**; Lorscheid, G. 690; Losić 857; Lovik, L. 16, 235; Lputian **756**; Lubczynski **853**; Ludwig, Li. 431; Ludwig, R. 45; Lukić, B. 747; Lukić, Milu. 315; Lund, D.B. 818; Lund, E. ***page 71***, 278; Lundström, M. 314; Lupulescu **132**; Lutz, C. 799, **989**; Lutz, D. 683

McCumiskey, A. 642; McLaughlin, J. 530; Maciejewski 291; McShane **537**; Madar 390; Madsen, D. 694; Maevsky **182**; Magony **73**; Mahmutov **1001**; Majdan **412**; Makepeace **46**; Makhnev 710; Maksimenko, A. 67; Maleki, M. **893**; Malfagia **185**; Malikentzos 899; Malov, L. 366; Mamedov, N. 165; Mamedyarov 827; Manakova **30**, **241**; Mandarin **399**; Manitz 234; Manner, R. 615; Mansour, S. **832**; Marcelin **282**, 672; Marchal, J. 293; Marčić, I. 861; Marechal 9; Mareco **311**; Margolin, B. 499; Marievich **856**; Marik, P. 800; Marin **712**; Markgraf, A. 904; Markos 367; Marszalek, M. **313**; Marten, G. 114; Martić, Z. **327**; Martin Alvarez, I. 54; Martinez Pelaez 351; Martinović, Sa. **328**,

593; Martins, V.T. **595**; Marusenko **963**; Mason, D. **795**; Masse, H. 825; Mastrovasilis, A. **318**; Mastrovasilis, D. **122**; Matejović **12**; Matić, Z. 344; Matnadze 43; Matrosov **677**; Matta, V. **648**; Mavrich, L. 443; May, F. 852; Mchedlishvili **229**; Medić, Mir. 768; Medina Menendez **376**; Medvedev, E. **39**, 870; Medvegy, N. **500**, 551; Megaritis 719; Meier, Re. **256**; Meier, W. 89; Meijers 759; Melia 227, **510**; Melkumian 869; Mengual Bolo 286, 625; Menkinoski **288**; Merieux **965**; Meszaros, A. 74, **349**; Meszaros, G. 682; Metz, Ha. **180**; Michalik, P. 482; Miezis **624**; Mihailovs, J. **215**; Mihajlović, V. **758**; Mihalyfi 75; Mijović, A. 221; Mikleeva 259; Milin, D. **484**; Milkin **695**; Milla de Marco **732**; Milov, V. **579**, **622**, 839; Mirzanurov **880**; Mirzoev 84, 397; Mirzoeva, E. 549; Mishuchkov **780**; Mitchell, M. 301; Mitjavila 434; Mittag, R. 808; Mladenović, J. 57, **542**; Moen, A. **497**; Mohacsi, I. **526**; Mohammad, J. **102**; Mohota **733**; Mojzis, Jar. 435; Mola, P. **920**; Molvig, H. 488; Molzahn, N. 628; Montero Campuzano **855**; Montheard, X. **606**; Morales Mendoza, La. 630; Morales, Ka. **465**; Morchiashvili **676**, 949; Morcillo Ferran 297; Mordue **162**; Moreto Quintana **273**; Moroz 553; Morozevich **711**, **799**, **838**; Morozov, E. **691**; Mortensen 669; Moser, W. 788; Moskwinski **47**; Mostertman **33**; Mousavi, S.K. **24**; Movldiev **383**; Movsesian **163**; Movsziszian 38; Mozny 693; Mühle, H. 428; Muir, A. **385**; Müller Ludwig, K. 586; Müller, Arm. **514**; Müller, Fab. **574**; Müller, Frank 231; Müller, Ho. 685; Müller, Le. **508**; Mulligan, S. **738**; Mulyar 828; Murillo, A. **331**; Murugan **581**; Muse, D. **475**; Muse, M. **303**; Muutnik **13**; Myers, S. 342

Nabaty **29**; Naiditsch 363, 538, 706; Nakamura 3, **797**; Namyslo **264**; Narmontas, M. 763; Nathansky **674**; Naumov, F. 776; Navara 31; Nayer 150, 302, 604, 756; Nazarenus, O. **762**; Nechepurenko **371**; Nedimović 944; Neffe **562**; Negi **783**; Neiksans **564**; Nemes, A. **849**; Nemet 118; Nemeth, Mi. 489, **846**; Nepomniashchy **421**; Nesterov 28; Netušil 807; Neubauer, M. 400; Neuman, P. 217; Nevostruev, V. 178; Nguyen Chi Minh **275**; Nguyen Huu Hoang 909; Nguyen Huynh Minh Huy 736; Ni, V. 22; Nickel 255; Nieminen, K. **558**; Nigalidze **306**; Nihal 883; Nikitina **82**; Nikolaev, V. **20**; Nikolić 715; Nikolov, M. 433; Nikolov, S. 328; Nikzaban 577; Nimmy **445**, 733; Nippgen 99, 718; Noetzel 498; Nogrady 266; Noroozi **116**; Novak, Jak. **938**; Nuber, K. **224**; Nunn ***page 6***, **108**, **148**, 199, **629**; Nybäck, J. **295**; Nyberg, M. **147**, 687; Nygren, D. **591**; Nyysti 263, 705

O'Brien, K. **665**; O'Toole, G. **642**; Occhipinti **323**; Oesterle, S. 896; Oger, C. **670**; Okhotnik 991; Oldach 414; Olejarczyk **48**; Oleksienko **252**; Oliver, G. 49; Olofsson, D. 591; Omariev 203; Onishchuk 854; Opačić 881; Orel, O. **139**; Orlov, A. 801; Orriols Miro, C. **434**; Orso **71**, **683**; Ortartchiev 284; Orton, W. 481; Oshana, D. 505; Osthoff, P. 724; Ostmø 752; Ota **638**; Ovezova, K. 921; Ozerov, D. 757

Paal, A. **555**, 684, **793**; Pace, R. 58; Pachman 27; Padurariu, I. **743**; Paichadze 713; Pais, N. **254**, 790; Palos **530**; Panarin **340**; Panchanathan **436**; Pandurević *page 46*; Panjwani, R. **825**; Panocki 186; Pap, G. **186**; Papadakis, M. 230; Papp, Ga. 846; Papp, P. 649; Parker **563**; Parkin 120; Pascal, P. 999; Pascual Arevalo, R. 647; Pascual Palomo **826**; Pashikian **869**; Pasztor **523**; Pataki 561; Patuzzo 550; Paulsen, A. 919; Pavlov, Vi. 232; Payen **339**; Pecha 160; Pechnikov **366**; Pecori **576**; Peczeli 686; Pedersen, Ø. **463**; Peek **879**; Pejović, M. **410**; Peng Zhaoqin **580**, **925**; Peralta, E. **746**; Peralta, F. **766**; Peray, S. 322; Peregi **790**; Perelshteyn, E. **214**; Perez de Villar Framil, I. **297**; Perez Ponsa 248; Perlovsky **754**; Perman, T. **248**; Perodeau **244**; Peschardt 444; Petenyi **948**; Petermann, Ha. 411; Petersen, St. **940**; Petitcunot **955**; Petrosian, T.L. 15, **575**; Petursson, G. **216**; Peyre, T. 720; Phanikanth 520; Picard, R. 134; Piceu 872; Piecka **305**; Pieroni, G. **714**; Pikula **859**; Pilaj **418**; Pinc, M. **800**; Pinczes 292; Pingitzer **111**; Piorun, K. **763**; Piot 819; Piscopo, P. 875; Pisk 975; Pizzuto, S. 587; Platel 985; Plomp, G. 388; Podzielny **154**; Poetsch, H. 19; Polak **843**; Poleshchuk, D. **646**; Polgar, J. 179, **302**; Poliansky, Vi. 691; Politov **405**; Polushkina 420; Pomaro, A. **476**; Ponizil **589**; Ponomariov **817**; Poobalasingam **98**; Popov, I. **887**; Popov, R. 581; Porrasmaa 432; Portero, M. **874**; Porth, H. **395**; Portisch *page 6*; Post, Maa. **503**; Post, Mar. 147; Potkin **31**; Poulsen, M.K. **444**; Pous, V. **548**; Prakash, R. **845**; Prathamesh **811**; Přibyl, J. **377**; Prielozny, S. 598; Primavera, C. **352**;

Prizker 209; Prokopisin 798; Prusikin **83**; Pucher, O. 823; Pucher, S. 155; Pulkkinen, K. 13; Puskar 609; Puuska **935**; Pyper, J. 947

Quillan 563

Rabineau **515**, 761; Rabovszky **104**; Rachela, M. **191**; Rachela, R. ***page 192***; Radice **608**; Radziewicz, I. ***page 278***; Raeber 830; Rahl 815; Rahls, P. 136; Rajlich, V. 847; Rakhmangulova 249; Rakhmanov 113; Rakitskaya **567**; Ramaswamy, A. 545, 775, 822; Ramirez Garcia, J. **112**; Ramnathan 436; Rathnakaran 751; Raupp, T. **205**; Rauw, G. 663; Ravi Haria 675; Ravi, T.S. 636; Ravnik 68; Raykhman, A. 664; Reddy, M.C. 177; Reeve, J. **468**, **678**; Reilhac **109**; Reinderman **454**, **865**; Reisch, S. 92; Rendle 771; Repkova **516**; Reshevsky **565**; Restifa **742**; Retera, J. 506; Reutsky **750**; Rey, F. 59; Rian, K. **455**; Ribli **774**; Richter, Gerh. **519**; Riedl, J. **618**; Ris 357; Rittie **293**; Rmus **221**; Robinson, D. 162; Rodchenkov, V. 880; Rødgaard **199**; Rodrigues, Af. 560; Rodriguez Lopez, R. 333; Rodriguez, J.B. **87**; Rodriguez, J.L. 742; Roemhild, M. **511**; Roganović, Milos 170; Roggeveen, P. 319; Roghani **335**; Rohde, U. 851; Rojicek 589; Romanishin 329; Rombaldoni, Ax. **478**; Ronchetti **939**; Rosa, F. 699; Roselli 746; Ross, L. **943**; Rossi, Giam. **844**; Rostgaard 858; Rothuis **95**; Rotoni 185; Rotstein, A. 920; Rouillon, L. **64**; Rous, F. 644; Rozhin **863**; Rozmbersky, D. 938; Rozum **223**, 767; Rublevsky **424**; Rudovskaya **384**; Rüger, E. 556; Ruijgrok 645; Ruiz Jimenez, F. 253; Rukavina, J. 198, **768**; Ruppaner **72**; Ruxton 469; Ryahi, N. 116

Saastamoinen **263**; Sadilek, P. **451**; Sadykov, A.F. 673; Saevareid 960; Safarli **36**, 842; Safin, S. 845; Safonov, R. **203**, 616; Sagit 309; Sahajasri **641**; Saifullin **689**; Sakaev **348**; Sakharov, L. 405; Salai 353; Salanki 526; Salem, A.R. **206**; Saleron **78**; Salido Polo **972**; Salonen, Jy. 558; Salter, D. 665; Salvador Lopez, D. **286**; Samsonkin 171; Sanchez Garcia, A. 470; Sanchez, In. 465; Sanchez, J. **999**; Sanchez, Mark. 631; Sanduay, N. 245; Sangeet, K. 641; Sanikidze **198**; Sanmartin Agustin, B. **88**; Santo-Roman 848; Sanz Perez, E. **902**; Sarenac, I. 939; Sarić, A. **151**, 717; Sarić, I. 52; Satransky 70; Savage, B. **192**; Savanović, A. 219; Savchenko, B. **572**; Savchenko, Vik. **541**; Savić, G. 542; Sbarra 521; Scacco **521**; Scalcione **875**; Šćekić, M. 123; Šćekić, N. 410; Schachinger **643**; Schalow 833; Schaper, B. **92**; Schatz, C. 180; Schiendorfer 6; Schlindwein **68**; Schmidt, I. ***page 146***; Schneider, Hei. 426; Schuh, D. **983**; Schulenburg, F. 202; Schuller, J. 437; Schumacher, G. **69**; Schutz, I. 544; Schwaninger, W. **552**; Schwarz, F. 303; Schwing, H. 205; Sebag **958**; Sebesta, R. ***page 170***; Secer 908; Sedina **623**; Segović 246; Seidens, U. **808**; Seleljo **435**; Selin, O. **654**; Semionov, D. 806; Semionova, Ir. **361**; Semprevivo, F. 311; Senff, M. **494**; Senkevich, K. 677; Sepp, O. 2; Seres, B. 381; Seres, S. 573, 741; Seret **707**; Shalashov **905**; Shanava **350**, **713**; Shankland 214; Shapar 364; Shaposhnikov **462**; Shaw, R. **79**; Shendrik 483; Shengelia 226; Shetty 816; Shikalov **709**; Shilin, D. **952**; Shirov 212; Shkuro **240**, 285; Shneider, A. 837; Short, N. **461**; Short, P. 1; Shukan, A. 378; Shukh **616**; Shulman 596, **764**; Shushpanov, V. **338**; Shyam, S.M. **901**; Sidorenko 29; Sikanjić **184**; Sikora Lerch **975**; Simacek 211; Simantsev 951; Simeonidis, I. 61; Simonian, Vl. 372; Simons, M. 192; Simonsen, O. 463; Sisatto 295; Siugirov **662**; Sivuk 922; Siwiec, B. 81; Skibbe, D. **316**; Slogar 781; Sloth 25; Slugin, S. **152**; Smirin 745, **873**; Smirnov, Ar. **980**; Smirnov, I. 981; Smith, Ax. 151; Smolen **830**; Snape **852**; So **55**; Sobek, J. 524; Sobh, A. **961**; Sobry **218**; Sohier, J. **729**; Sokol, E. *page 192*; Sokol, L. 201; Sokolov, A. 354; Sokolov, I. 264; Sokolovskaya 971; Sokolowski, Ry. **96**; Solis, E. 183; Solleveld **326**; Soln **656**; Solodovnichenko **614**; Solomunović 62; Solonar, I. **271**; Solozhenkin 355; Sondermann, J. **823**; Sorokina, A. 373; Sosiuk 805; Sousa, J.D. **560**; Sousa, R. 836; Sowul **810**; Spal 142; Spielmann, Al. **929**; Spindelboeck 172; Srebrnić, M. **840**; Stabolewski **837**; Stahl, C. 716; Stahnke, A. **947**; Stamenković, Dr. 595; Stanec 917; Staniszewski, Pi. 96; Starostits, I. **472**, **688**; Stavast 914; Stavrakakis 122; Stayt 46; Stefansson 564, 783; Steinert, Mart. 330; Steininger, D. 606; Stepanov, E. 655; Stepovaia Dianchenko 241; Sterliagova 539; Stević 117; Stiri 640; Stocko, J. 643; Stojanović, Mari. **666**; Stojić, S. **342**; Stokke, K. 107, 569; Stoven **872**; Stoyko **777**; Straka, Jo. **831**; Straka, Z. ***page 131***; Strand, Kj. 188; Straslipka 674; Strating 865; Straubinger, D. **573**; Struik, T. **189**; Stubberud **807**; Studen 430; Stuhl 83; Stutz, Al. 507; Sudakova 308; Sukharukova 535; Sultimov **178**; Susilodinata

588; Suto **684**; Sutovsky **604**, **745**, 897; Svetlov **850**; Svetushkin 224; Svihel **160**; Swinkels, R. **307**, 626; Sycova 803; Syrokhvatov **802**; Szabo, Ja. **127**; Szabo, Z.J. 365; Szalanczy 216; Szatmary **493**; Szaz 73; Szeberenyi 460; Szegi, Ta. 161; Szekeres, R. 71; Szekeres, Sa. 523; Szelag 281; Szieberth **847**, 892; Szirmai **7**; Szobi, G. **772**; Szoen **959**; Sztaray, G. 866

Taborsky, R. **279**; Tadić 758; Tairova 782; Tasić, Z. **747**; Tassopoulos **44**; Tatar Kis **798**; Tate, A. **942**; Taylor, Pe. 385; Taylor, T. **633**; Tazbir **735**; Tedy **474**; Temple, J. **481**; Ten, V. **40**; Tessmer, He. 619; Thakur **91**; Thinius **621**; Thomson, C. **301**; Thorfinnsson, Br. 726; Thybo, Je. **438**; Tibensky **520**; Tikholov **486**; Tikkanen, H. 41; Timman **128**, **894**; Timoshenko 229; Tirard **369**; Tischbierek 243; Titz, Hei. **599**; Tiurin 662; Tkachev, T. **423**; Tkachev, V. **14**, **94**, **502**, 711; Tkeshelashvili 623; Todorov, T. 893; Tokar **815**; Tomba, P. **700**; Tomczak, Raf. 612; Tomić-Potrebujes **861**; Tomka, J. **300**; Tompa **375**; Topalov **345**, **363**; Topić, Boz. 601; Torrecillas, A. 583; Tosoni 613; Toth, Jo. **686**; Tozer **727**; Tratar 145; Tratatovici, D. **357**; Trejo Morales, J. **630**; Trent **76**; Tri Hoang **161**; Trigo Conde, I. 88; Tristan **336**; Tseitlin, Ma. 368; Tsepeleva 304; Tsigelnitsky **651**; Tsomis **522**; Tsuboi 80; Tudor, A. **274**; Tukhvatullin 82; Tuma, J. **871**; Turner, J. 559; Turner, M. **976**; Turutin **26**; Tuvshintugs, Bat. 210; Tvauri **99**

Ubiennykh **637**, **744**; Ubilava 765; Udeshi **175**; Ueti **415**; Ugrin **769**; Uksini **477**; Ulianin **113**; Ulms 18; Ulybin **748**; Ursić, Ma. **944**; Uwira, O. **66**

Vaibhav 614; Vaisman 934; Vajda, L. ***page 217***; Vakhidov, B. **675**; Vakhidov, T. **28**; Vakhlamov 93; Valeev 26; Valens **531**; Valenzuela, H. 650; Valle, A. **529**; Vallejo Pons 168; Vamosi, J. **386**; Van Delft, M. 189; Van den Berg, B. 879; Van den Doel **379**, 525; Van der Veen, J. **1000**; Van der Velden **889**; Van der Wal, F. 404; Van der Weide **690**; Van Eijk, Sa. **895**; Van Haastert 566; Van Hoolandt **491**; Van Kemenade **885**; Van Oosterom, C. **458**, **533**; Van Rijn, W. **498**; Van Vliet, H. 33; Vandenbussche, T. 8, **17**; Vandevoort, P. 17; Varadi, V. **734**; Varchenko **513**; Varga, An. **739**; Varga, T. **75**; Vargyas 72; Varholakova 220; Varini 840; Vasiliev, Vladis. 272; Vasilkova 361; Vass, F. **635**; Vavra, P. 659; Vavrak 554, 633; Vazquez Igarza **626**; Vazquez Reyes 336; Vedmediuc 679; Vedrickas **222**; Vehi Bach **945**, **946**; Velcheva **782**; Veltman, J. 1000; Vera Pons 568; Vesely, T. 279; Vesin 100; Vigorito **278**; Villwock **851**; Vincze, I. **266**; Viot **672**; Vishnu, P. 334; Vitalsky 371; Vitouch 552; Vitoux **770**; Vladimirova, M. 814; Vlasenkov 754; Voiska **613**; Voitsekhovsky **157**; Vojar 305; Vokač 7, **882**; Vokarev 348; Volontinas 594, 605; Vorobiov, K. 850; Vorobjov, P. **2**; Voss, Ju. 265; Vovk, I. **447**; Vovk, O. 940; Vovk, Y. 169; Vrana 12; Vuilleumier 841; Vul **204**; Vybiral 843; Vysochin 620

Waage Tofte 976; Wagener, Anja **284**; Wajdy 832; Waldschmidt, G. **755**; Walkewitz **414**; Wallach, K. **528**; Walter, S. **697**; Wang Rui 680; Warkentin, J. 515; Watson, W. 502; Wedberg 894; Weeramantry **450**; Wegener, O. **731**; Wegner, E. 965; Wehner, J. **143**; Weinmann Musset **812**; Weiss, T. **310**; Wells, P. 101; Welz, P. **25**, **166**, 780; Werle 65; Westphal, Mat. 144; Wickström, L. 197, **834**; Wieferig 429; Willemze, T. **130**, 755; Williams, S. ***page 107***, **416**; Windelband **18**; Winter, L. 728; Wintzer 402, 575; Wisniewski, A. **532**; Wittmann, Mat. 697; Woeber **5**; Wolter, J. 213; Wolter, M. 307; Worek, J. 47; Wu Wenjin **341**; Wutzlhofer **330**

Yakimov, V. **620**; Yakovenko **561**, 712; Yakovich, Yul. 133; Yakovich, Yuri *page 278*; Yaksin **836**; Yang Shen **333**; Yang, D. **828**; Yarulin **710**; Ye Jiangchuan 461; Yilmaz, M. 206; Ynojosa 416; Yusupov, M. 35

Zabariansky **535**; Zablotsky, V. **594**; Zaitseva, L. 141; Zaja **344**; Zakharevich 462; Zala 701; Zanan 24; Zaragatski **283**; Zatsurdaev, D. 260; Zavacki 585; Zeinalov, F. 306; Zelbel, P. 877; Zelčić **585**, **781**; Zeltwanger **6**; Zermiche **569**; Zhigalko, S. 346; Zhu Chen 204, **504**; Zhukov, K. 829; Zimmermann, F. 941; Zinani **487**; Zivić **57**; Zojer, T. 703; Zoltan, A. 878; Zozek **247**; Zsifkovits, R. **649**; Zubritsky **757**; Zühlke, E. 812; Zukerfeld 320; Zukin **289**; Zuse **993**

FCO: Fundamental Chess Openings
Paul van der Sterren
The perfect survival guide to the chess openings. All openings are covered, with detailed verbal explanations of plans for both sides. The strategies will remain valid as long as chess is played, and so the time spent studying this book will be rewarded many times over.
480 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £19.99

The Giant Chess Puzzle Book
Zenon Franco
This fun and challenging book begins with 120 relatively easy positions suitable for novices, and ends with a selection of extremely tough puzzles, which provide a mind-bending challenge even for grandmasters. There are 1001 puzzles in total, all with detailed solutions and verbal explanations of the instructive points.
288 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $26.95 / £16.99

Play the Najdorf Sicilian
James Rizzitano
The legendary Najdorf is one of the great chess openings – regarded by top grandmasters as the best way for Black to play for a win against 1 e4. In this superbly researched guide, International Master James Rizzitano distils important ideas and themes from current practice.
144 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $22.95 / £13.99

Elements of Chess Strategy
Alexei Kosikov
Forming a plan is the most important goal of logical chess thought, but few chess-players develop a disciplined approach to planning. Here, one of the world's leading chess teachers provides step-by-step guidelines for identifying the key strategic features of a position. Kosikov's thoroughly modern approach recognizes that the opponent will have his own plans and be attempting to disrupt ours.
160 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $22.95 / £13.99

Nunn's Chess Endings Volume 2
John Nunn
In this major two-volume work, renowned endgame theoretician John Nunn teaches the skills that are most important to success in practical endgames. We discover that a staggering amount of previously published endgame analysis is simply wrong, and that many of the standard guidelines are at best partially true. This second volume focuses on rook (and rook and minor-piece) endgames.
352 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £17.99

A Killer Chess Opening Repertoire – new ed.
Aaron Summerscale & Sverre Johnsen
Bored with the same old openings? Worried about having to learn too much theory? Then this book will come as a godsend. The queen's pawn repertoire for White is based on rapid piece development, and includes many lethal attacking ideas and traps.
192 pages, 210 x 145 mm; $19.95 / £12.99

How to Beat Your Dad at Chess
Murray Chandler
This tactics manual has become a modern classic. It teaches the **50 Deadly Checkmates** – basic attacking patterns that occur repeatedly in games between players of all standards. Each mating motif is carefully and simply explained.
128 pages, 230 x 178 mm, hardback
$16.95 / £9.99

Mastering the Chess Openings Volume 4
John Watson
In this highly-acclaimed series, John Watson explains not only the ideas and strategies behind specific openings, but also the interconnections of chess openings taken as a whole. This final volume is packed with original analysis, and covers a wide variety of opening structures and variations not seen in the earlier volumes.
320 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £17.99

About the Publisher: Gambit is a specialist chess publishing company, owned and run exclusively by chess masters and grandmasters. We are passionate about producing innovative and instructive chess books, suitable for all levels of player.

GAMBIT

www.gambitbooks.com

GAMBIT www.gambitbooks.com

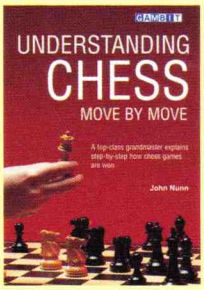
1001 Deadly Checkmates

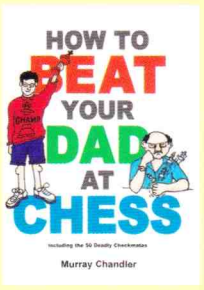
For all chess-players, from beginners to world champions, from kids to seniors, delivering checkmate is the greatest thrill the game has to offer. The ability to spot checkmates is a vital skill – and this easy-to-use book shows you how it is done. With the help of Grandmaster John Nunn, you will be ready to shock your next opponent with a deadly checkmate, whether in a school match, a club tournament – or even a championship game!

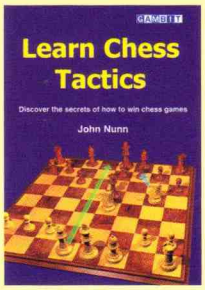
By focusing exclusively on positions from real games, ranging from junior events to grandmaster encounters, Nunn ensures that the mates featured are those which arise most often in real life. He also highlights themes and ideas that are often missed in practice. While solving these puzzles, your all-important 'mental library' of patterns will grow, leading to an immediate increase in your playing strength.

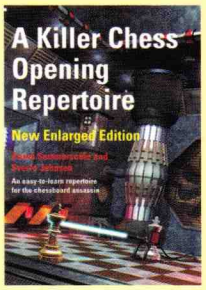
All 1001 puzzle positions have been carefully checked, and are graded by theme and difficulty. Points are awarded for finding the checkmate, so you can measure your skill. Most of the puzzles are suitable for novice and junior players. The last chapter challenges you with 'extreme checkmates', but don't worry: you'll be ready for them!

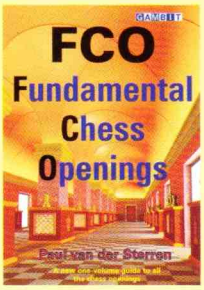
Dr John Nunn is one of the best-respected figures in world chess, having numbered among the world's leading grandmasters for nearly twenty years. He has won four gold medals in chess Olympiads, and was crowned World Chess Solving Champion in 2004, 2007 and 2010. Nunn's playing style is notoriously aggressive, with sacrifices, king-hunts and checkmates featuring in many of his finest wins.

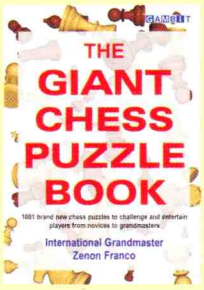


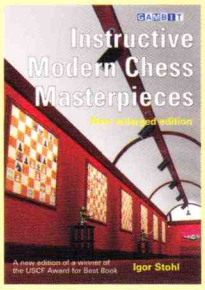


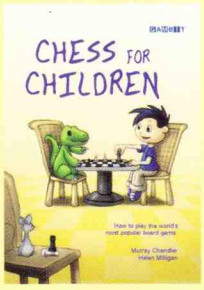












£15.99 $24.95
ISBN-13: 978-1-906454-25-8
ISBN-10: 1-906454-25-6

